LEARN TO READ
LATIN

Andrew Keller
Colgate University

Stephanie Russell
Collegiate School

Erratum for Textbook

Page 27	Remove **pugnō** from Derivatives and Cognates list.
Page 49	Add **pugnō** to Derivatives and Cognates list. Derivatives are "*pugn*acious" and "im*pugn*"; cognate is "*py*gmy."
Page 196, #3	Change meaning provided for **dūcō** to "bring home"
Page 207	In the gloss for **Erīnys**, add (= **Erīnyis**) after **Erīnyos**.
Page 233, #23	In the attribution, change "Cicero" to Caesar" and italicize the title of the work.
Page 242, #8	Change gloss entry "**caelestis, caelestis, -ium**" to **caelestis, caeleste**.
Page 262	In the example beginning **haec enim est**, deitalicize **stabilis**, and change the translation to read "no trust of constant goodwill."
Page 334, #19	Add a macron the –e- of **nātiōnēs**.
Page 337, #40	Remove **macron** from **nesciō**. Add a semicolon and three dots. after **nescio**.
Page 337, #41	In the attribution, add a comma after Juvenal.
Page 382, #17	Change meanings given for **praeclārus, -a, -um** to "very famous; excellent, oustanding."
Page 406	In line 20, add a macron to the first –a- of **vāpulat**. Also add a macron to the first –a- of the three principal parts **vāpulō, vāpulāre, vāpulāvī, ---**.
Page 448, #5	In line 2, remove the colon from the end of the sentence and in the same line place a colon after **ūteris**.
Page 464	In line 7 of reading, remove **macron** from the –u- of **cōnātus**.
Page 523	In the gloss for **pavor, pavōris**, remove "pl."
Page 538	Add "proceed" to the meanings given for **gradior**.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER II

CHAPTER III

CHAPTER IV

CHAPTER V

CHAPTER VI

CHAPTER VII

CHAPTER VIII

CHAPTER IX

CHAPTER X

CHAPTER XI

CHAPTER XII

CHAPTER XIII

CHAPTER XIV

CHAPTER XV

PREFACE

Learn to Read Latin is an introductory grammar and reader in one. The aim of this book is to help students acquire as quickly as possible an ability to read and appreciate the great works of Latin literature. Respectful of both teachers and students, the book assumes a serious interest in learning Latin well and thoroughly.

LTRL grew out of an earnest wish to make available to others the immense pleasure we have both experienced in reading Latin literature in Latin. For many years it has seemed to us that too much emphasis has been placed on teaching students to translate Latin and that even the most diligent Latin students have attained too little intimacy with the Latin language and the styles of great Latin writers. Many beginning Latin books expect students to translate several volumes of stories in Latin written not by ancient authors but by the authors of the books themselves. This seems to us an inefficient use of student energy and a pedagogical method of limited value if one's goal is to prepare students to read and appreciate Caesar, Cicero, Livy, Vergil, Horace, and so many others.

In addition, we have noted how often introductory books present tidbits of information about Roman domestic life and culture, while failing to provide students with information about the many authors and literary works that will become available to them as their proficiency increases. In our experience this has meant that many students choose not to continue their studies beyond the introductory level in part because they are unaware of what they might read at the intermediate and advanced levels. We have tried to create a beginning Latin book that relies primarily on the ancient authors themselves as the means by which students may learn about Latin syntax and style. We have sought to introduce students to the Latin literature that for many will be the focus of their later studies, and we firmly believe that the best introduction to Roman culture is through the reading of as much Roman literature drawn from as wide a variety of authors as possible.

LTRL owes much to the two texts written for use at the Brooklyn College of

CUNY Latin/Greek Institute, *Latin: An Intensive Course* by Floyd L. Moreland and Rita M. Fleischer, and *Greek: An Intensive Course* by Hardy Hansen and Gerald M. Quinn. Both books were designed for rapid-paced summer courses in which a new unit is covered each day. Both are models of clarity, efficiency, and completeness. From Floyd Moreland, who was our teacher and colleague, we learned the importance of the order of presentation of points of grammar and morphology and the value of brief, clear explanations. He imparted to both of us his own deep interest in Latin syntax and style. He taught us to go in order when reading and translating, to care about the smallest details, and to love Latin literature. His powerful presence informs much that is good in our book. From Hardy Hansen and Gerry Quinn we borrowed the idea of placing numbered observations below presentations of morphology and syntax, and we modeled our vocabulary notes on theirs, including a considerable amount of linguistic information, as they did in their Greek book.

Since *LTRL* was not written to meet the special requirements of an intensive summer course, our book departs from its forebears in several important ways. The chapters are longer and present whole systems or closely related elements of vocabulary, morphology, and syntax. Many drills and drill sentences are provided in the workbook for use in class, for homework, and for extra and remedial work with individual students. Certain points of English grammar and usage are explained at some length, and drills are provided for these as well. Two aims determined the order of presentation of grammatical points in *LTRL*. We wished to give the student a sense of the logical development of Latin syntax and a steadily deepening understanding. We also wished to provide the earliest possible access to unabridged Latin passages.

LTRL is perhaps the first book of its kind to make extensive use of the Packard Humanities Institute CD-ROM containing much of the corpus of Latin literature up to Justinian. With the aid of this powerful tool we have often been able to establish correct Latin usage for drills and drill sentences, and we have tried to exclude any phrase or piece of syntax not occurring in extant classical Latin. Although there may still be some errors of usage, we believe that the Latin in our book that has been written by us resembles what students will read in the ancient authors. We have also used the CD-ROM to locate many passages that well illustrate the vocabulary, morphology, and syntax presented in each chapter of the book. The wide range of authors and texts represented in *LTRL*—including choice passages from authors not commonly read—was made possible in part by this CD-ROM. Several Latin grammars and dictionaries were regularly consulted during the writing of this book, and we relied in particular on *A Latin Grammar* by George M. Lane and *A New Latin Syntax* by E. C. Woodcock. For vowel quantities in Latin words we have consulted *Lateinisches Etymologisches Wörterbuch* by Walde and Hofmann.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

DESCRIPTION AND USE OF
LEARN TO READ LATIN

The following is a detailed description of all the components of *LTRL*, accompanied by suggestions for their most effective use by students and teachers.

The main text of *LTRL* comprises fifteen chapters that present all the basic morphology and syntax for an elementary course in Latin. Depending on the amount of time available for one's course (meetings per week, minutes per meeting), these fifteen chapters may be studied during two or three college semesters or two or two and a half years in middle or high school.

The actual teaching and learning units of this book are the *sections,* and each chapter comprises several sections. Two or three weeks in college, more in high school, may be devoted to the study of each chapter (containing approximately ten sections). Substantial vocabulary lists and complex Latin sentences (both synthetic and authentic) allow the student to significantly advance his or her knowledge of syntax and to practice and refine his or her reading skills. The book as a whole, as well as each of the fifteen chapters taken individually, aims not at hasty coverage of material but at abiding understanding and engagement with Latin literary texts.

Each chapter of *LTRL* presents new vocabulary, morphology, and syntax to be learned. These three basic elements of language study, which are defined in an introductory section, are useful not only in organizing new material but also in identifying weaknesses or areas for improvement.

Each chapter begins with a list of new words to be memorized. The vocabulary for each chapter has been chosen to provide students with words that appear commonly in as wide a variety of classical authors as possible. *In many chapters certain pieces of morphology and syntax must be presented in conjunction with new vocabulary, but the vocabulary is placed first to emphasize its importance and to encourage its acquisition by the student as early as possible in the study of each chapter.* As the book progresses and chapters are devoted to more advanced syntax, words that are com-

monly found with the constructions to be learned in that chapter are included in the vocabulary.

Vocabulary notes follow the word list in each chapter. Since essential information about the meanings and usage of new vocabulary words is contained in the vocabulary notes, the student should always read them, and the teacher should identify the most important points. Particularly in the early chapters, important information about the form of vocabulary entries and new morphology is also included in the vocabulary notes. This information must be presented in conjunction with new material in the chapter. It is included in the vocabulary notes for ease of reference, and the student should consult these vocabulary notes often while mastering the material in each chapter. For the student who is curious about the development of the Latin language, information about word formation and Indo-European linguistic features has also been included.

The sections that present new morphology and syntax are numbered consecutively through the entire book, as in a reference grammar. Frequently throughout these sections (and sometimes also in the vocabulary notes) brief imperative sentences appear in small capital letters (*for example*, "MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM"). These sentences are addressed directly to the student and are intended to make sure that no point that must be learned well is overlooked. Following many of the morphology and syntax sections is a note referring to appropriate drills for individual sections or groups of sections; these drills are provided in the workbook. The drills are designed to reinforce new material immediately after its presentation. The notes referring to appropriate drills indicate the natural breaks within chapters, and they should be used to determine how much material to introduce in a class period.

Drills on new forms and syntax use only vocabulary from earlier chapters, unless new material requires the use of new vocabulary. For example, when third-declension noun morphology is introduced, it is necessary to make use of new third-declension nouns in order to drill new forms. Drills are provided in sufficiently large numbers that some may be done at sight as new material is presented, others may be assigned as homework, and still others may be used for individual work.

Drill sentences are also provided in the workbook. These sentences are synthetic Latin and have been written to allow comprehensive practice for all new vocabulary, morphology, and syntax introduced in a chapter, as well as to reinforce material presented earlier in the book. Drill sentences should *not* be assigned until all new material in a chapter has been introduced unless the teacher selects in advance only those sentences that contain material already presented.

In the synthetic Latin sentences (drills, drill sentences, and examples used in introducing new material), we have tried to include only usages found in extant Latin; often exact phrases drawn from classical authors have been included in these sentences. However, we have allowed certain extrapolations from extant Latin usage. For example, since *homō pius* appears in Cicero, we have allowed *hominēs piī*. In our experience *LTRL* works best when translations of some of these drill sentences are

assigned as written homework, while class time is devoted to the reading of other drill sentences at sight. As many as eighty such sentences are provided for the early chapters, but this number is gradually reduced as it becomes possible to reinforce new material through unabridged Latin passages.

Beginning in Chapter II the introduction of new material is followed by a section of short readings, *unabridged* Latin passages drawn from a wide range of ancient authors. Each passage is preceded by a brief introduction to establish context and is followed by vocabulary glosses for words that do not appear in chapter vocabularies. These short readings increase in number and size throughout the book until they outnumber their synthetic counterparts. The inclusion of many short readings in the chapters reflects our firm belief in learning to read Latin chiefly from the study of specimens of authentic Latin as soon as this is possible. The short readings have been chosen to reinforce the vocabulary, morphology, and syntax of the chapters in which they appear and to provide examples of the various word orders of actual Latin prose and poetry.

Beginning in Chapter IV each section of short readings is followed by a section of longer readings, also unabridged Latin passages. In addition to introductions and necessary vocabulary glosses, we have included brief biographies of the authors and descriptions of the works from which the readings are taken. These biographies and descriptions are placed after the vocabulary glosses whenever an author or a work appears for the first time in the longer readings. An index of authors and passages has been provided to allow the student or teacher to consult these biographies and descriptions when authors and works appear again in subsequent longer readings or to investigate further an author or work that appears in the short readings.

With the aims of providing the student with a basic knowledge of the history and development of Latin literature and of fostering an interest in its further study, we have in each chapter organized all selections from ancient authors (short readings and longer readings) in chronological order. Since the texts of Latin literature that survive contain examples of the language as each writer in each period chose to style it, this chronological arrangement helps the student observe the evolution of various styles of both prose and poetry. Through the short and longer readings, *LTRL* is meant to become in part a literary venture, and there are many opportunities for consideration of rhetoric and style as well as of forms and syntax.

Beginning in Chapter X each section of longer readings is followed by a section of continuous readings. Two poetry passages (from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphōsēs*) are presented with brief introductions and appropriate vocabulary glosses. Beginning in Chapter XI two extended prose passages (from Cicero's *Ōrātiō Prīma in Catilīnam* and Sallust's *Bellum Catilīnae*) are added. These continuous readings are intended to give the student practice in reading in context and in developing a sense of the basic stylistic features of a given author and text. They also offer a preliminary experience in what lies ahead for the student when he or she finishes with the basic grammar book and moves on to upper-level reading courses. Students and teachers may choose to read any or all of the continuous readings, favoring prose or

poetry as they prefer. If all four are read, students will complete the book with a significant first experience in reading four major Latin authors.

Interspersed between some chapters in *LTRL* are brief sections devoted to additional material related to the study of the Latin language. Sections on Roman names and numbers, on metrics, and on rhetorical terms, for example, should be studied as seriously as each chapter. Some of these sections even contain a few vocabulary words that the student is expected to learn, and all will greatly enhance the student's reading and appreciation of the authentic Latin passages in the chapters.

ABBREVIATIONS

*	indicates that a form is hypothetical	frag.	fragment
< >	enclose an element added by editors	fut.	future
		gen.	genitive
[ ]	used to indicate that, contrary to the tradition, an author is *not* the writer of a work	IE	Indo-European
		imper.	imperative
		imperf.	imperfect
		indef.	indefinite
<	(derived) from	indic.	indicative
>	becomes	interj.	interjection
§	section	interrog.	interrogative
1-intr.	first conjugation intransitive verb	intr.	intransitive
		loc.	locative
1-tr.	first conjugation transitive verb	m.	masculine
		masc.	masculine
abl.	ablative	n.	neuter
acc.	accusative	neut.	neuter
act.	active	nom.	nominative
adj.	adjective	pass.	passive
adv.	adverb	perf.	perfect
cf.	*confer,* compare	PIE	Proto-Indo-European
conj.	conjunction	pl.	plural
dat.	dative	pluperf.	pluperfect
demonstr.	demonstrative	prep.	preposition
etc.	*et cētera,* and the remaining things	pres.	present
f.	feminine	pron.	pronoun
fem.	feminine	rel.	relative

sc.	*scīlicet*, namely		subjunc.	subjunctive
sēd inc.	*sēdēs incerta*, uncertain location		subst.	substantive
			tr.	transitive
sing.	singular		voc.	vocative
subj.	subject		→	changes to
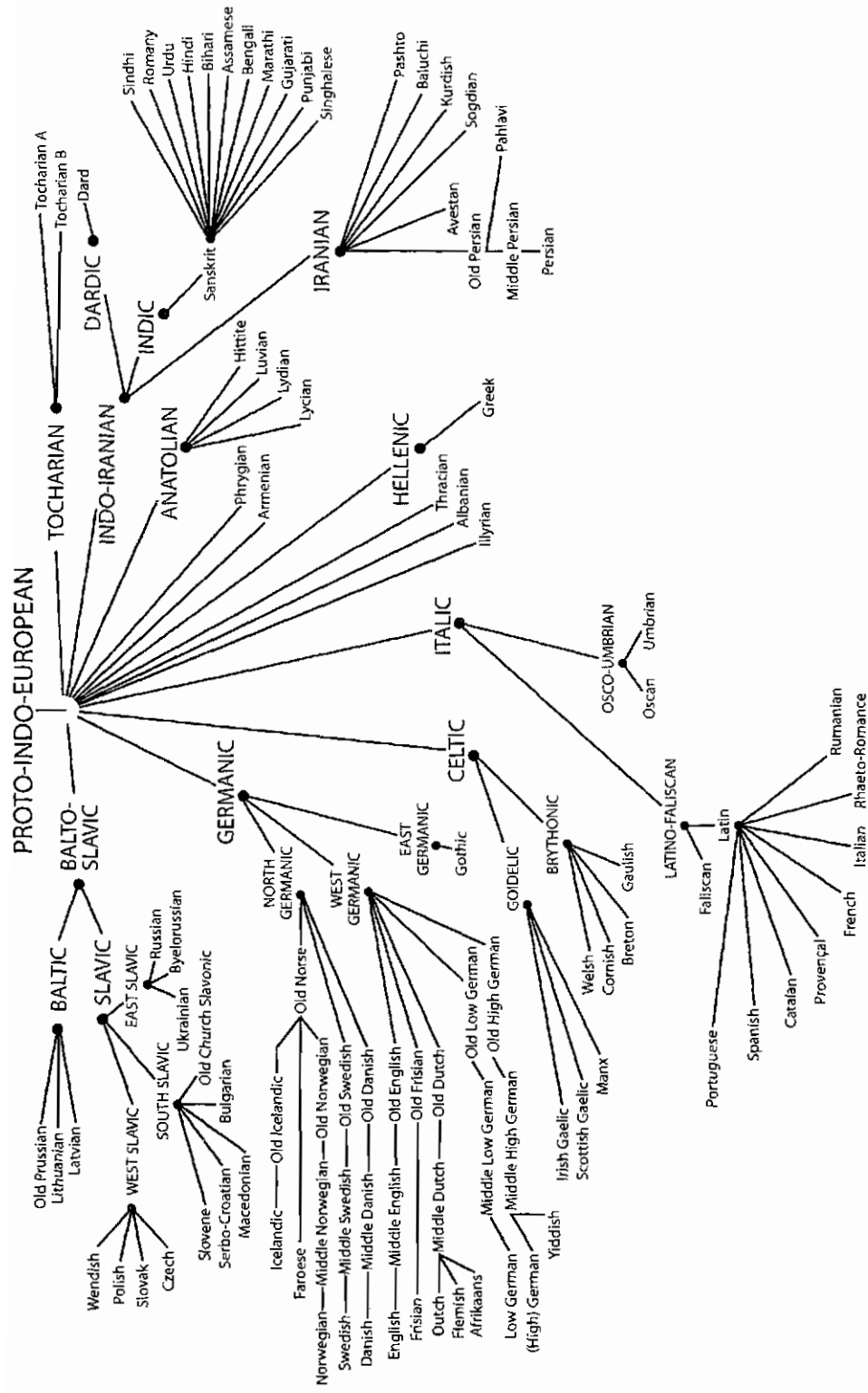
Figure 1. This chart shows the principal languages of the Indo-European family, arranged in a diagrammatic form that displays their genetic relations and loosely suggests their geographic distribution. Copyright © 1981 by Houghton Mifflin Company. Adapted and reproduced by permission from *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language.*

INTRODUCTION

The Latin Language

The Latin language belongs to the Indo-European family of languages. The name "Indo-European" indicates the geographic area where these languages were originally spoken. The family includes most of the languages spoken in Europe, as well as those spoken as far east as ancient Persia, Afghanistan, and India. By the careful comparison of vocabulary, morphology, and syntax, scholars have shown that all these languages have descended from a common ancestor that is called either **Indo-European (IE)** or **Proto-Indo-European (PIE)**, which was probably spoken some time in the fifth millennium B.C.E. (see figure 1). Over time, it is supposed, the people who spoke this original language gradually dispersed throughout Europe, Asia, and India, and the language changed differently in different places until the variety of languages belonging to this family gradually appeared.

No direct evidence—that is, written or archaeological evidence—survives either for PIE or for the people who spoke it. What is known of the language comes from the comparative study of the languages that survive. The study of these languages began at the end of the eighteenth century when Sir William Jones, a lawyer and student of eastern languages, first asserted publicly that Greek, Latin, and the language of ancient India, Sanskrit, were descended from a common source. The scientific study of the Indo-European languages commenced with the work of Franz Bopp in the early part of the nineteenth century. He compared the forms of the verb in Latin, Greek, Sanskrit, ancient Persian, and the Germanic languages, of which English is one.

The Indo-European languages have been analyzed and divided into various subgroups, or dialects, and Latin belongs to one called **Italic** because the languages of this subgroup were all spoken on the Italian peninsula. Italic, like PIE, left behind no direct evidence, but the four languages that belong to this group—**Latin, Faliscan,**

Oscan, and Umbrian[1]—are more closely related to each other than to the other IE
languages and thus are thought to derive from a single source.

The early speakers of the Latin language are known as *Latīnī*. By the early part
of the first millennium B.C.E. they were living in many settlements in central Italy.
Rome was only one of these settlements. While little is certain about Rome's early
history, the traditional date for its founding is 753 B.C.E., and recent excavation gives
some corroboration to this early date. Tradition also records that for the first 250
years of its existence, Rome was ruled by kings of Etruscan descent. Etruscan civi-
lization dominated the central Italian peninsula until Rome's rise to power in the
third century B.C.E. Latin borrowed many words from the Etruscan language, which
is *not* related to PIE.

The first written evidence of the Latin language that has survived to our time ap-
pears in the form of inscriptions dated to the late seventh and early sixth centuries
B.C.E. The language of these inscriptions is recognizably Latin, although very differ-
ent from the Latin spoken and written several hundred years later at the height of
Rome's power. These inscriptions come from many towns in central Italy and not
only from Rome. Other evidence for the Latin of this period comes from citations of
the language of an earlier time in later Latin authors.

According to Roman tradition, the Etruscans ruled as monarchs in Rome until
509 B.C.E., when the Romans overthrew their foreign rulers and established the Re-
public. Power passed into the hands of two annually elected magistrates called con-
suls, who, along with the senate, held political power in Rome. Over the next few
centuries, Rome was engaged in two conflicts, one external and one internal. The
Romans were almost continually at war against the other peoples of the Italian pe-
ninsula, as well as the other powers in the Mediterranean, most notably the Cartha-
ginians, a people based in northern Africa. At the same time, the Romans struggled
with their own internal conflict between the lower-class plebs and the aristocratic
families who ruled them. Despite setbacks both external and internal, Rome gradu-
ally expanded its influence, through treaty and conquest, until by the end of the third
century B.C.E. it controlled most of modern-day Italy and had made inroads into the
eastern Mediterranean as well.

Latin literature first appears in the later part of this period of political expan-
sion. The most prominent authors of this period whose works survive are the comic
poets **Plautus** (254–184 B.C.E.) and **Terence** (185?–159), the epic poet **Ennius** (239–
169), and the orator, historian, and essayist **Cato** (234–149). The language of the co-
medians is often believed to contain evidence of the way Latin was actually spoken
at this time because the characters of the comic plays are drawn from all walks of
life. Ennius, who spoke both Greek and Oscan in addition to Latin, borrowed and
adapted many features of the Greek language and was one of the first writers of epic
poetry in Latin. His style greatly influenced later poets, and he may be said to be the

---

1. Faliscan was spoken in the area of Italy called Etruria (central Italy), Oscan in Campania (southern Italy), and
Umbrian in Umbria (north-central Italy). The Samnites, an ancient Italian people with whom Rome came into con-
flict early, spoke Oscan.

first to have established a *literary language*—a written language with increasingly strict rules of vocabulary and syntax. Together, these authors represent what may be called **early Latin**.

Over the next two centuries to the end of the first century B.C.E., Roman authors, much influenced by the Greek literature with which they had come into contact after the conquest of Greece, continued to develop a literary language in Latin. They established rules of spelling, morphology, syntax, and vocabulary, and also distinguished between correct usages for poetry and for prose. The result is usually called **classical Latin**, the language that was written and spoken[2] by the educated Roman populace during the period of the late Republic and early Empire (roughly 100 B.C.E.–100 C.E.).[3] Among the authors who wrote classical Latin are, in prose: **Caesar** (100–44 B.C.E.), **Cicero** (106–43 B.C.E.), and **Livy** (59 B.C.E.–17 C.E.); and in poetry: **Catullus** (84?–54? B.C.E.), **Vergil** (70–19 B.C.E.), and **Horace** (65–8 B.C.E.).

This book introduces the student to the language written by these authors and others of the same period. Distinctions of usage between prose and poetry will be pointed out, but for the most part, the rules of classical Latin presented here may be presumed to hold true for the literature of this period as a whole.

Pronunciation of Classical Latin

Although there must have been variations in the pronunciation of classical Latin such as are evident in any modern language, there is considerable ancient evidence for a standard in pronunciation, and rules approximating that standard are presented here.[4]

The rules for pronouncing classical Latin have been reconstructed from several types of evidence:

1. the statements of Latin grammarians and Latin authors on specific points of Latin pronunciation. The Latin grammarians were active much later than the period assigned to classical Latin, but they cite the work of earlier Latin authors and confirm features of pronunciation known from other sources.

2. the orthography, or spelling, of Latin words in inscriptions. Ancient spelling, both in Latin and in other ancient languages, was considerably less standardized than modern spelling. Variations in spelling usually indicate differences in pronunciation.

3. the representation or transliteration of Latin words in other languages and the representation or transliteration of foreign words in Latin. The transliteration of names, in particular, provides valuable information about how names were pronounced at different periods of Roman history.

---

2. Some surviving texts, such as the orations of Cicero, suggest that classical Latin was both written *and* spoken.

3. There are, of course, variations in usage and style from author to author and from the beginning of this period to the end. It remains common to speak of Golden Age Latin (the Latin of first-century B.C.E. writers such as Caesar, Cicero, Vergil, and Horace) and Silver Age Latin (the Latin of first-century C.E. writers such as Seneca and Quintilian).

4. For this presentation of pronunciation the authors are indebted to W. S. Allen's *Vox Latina* (Cambridge, 1965).

4. the internal grammatical and poetic structure of Latin. This includes the evidence available from the metrical structure of Latin poetry.

5. the etymology of Latin words and the development of Latin words in the Romance languages descended from Latin.

Alphabet

The Latin alphabet is almost the same as the English alphabet. It lacks a **j** and a **w**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. **k** is used in only a few words, mostly of foreign origin. **y** and **z** occur in transcriptions of words borrowed from Greek.

2. **i** can be either a consonant or a vowel. In some Latin texts, **j** is used as the sign of consonantal **i**, but in this book **i** is used for both the consonant and the vowel. This usage is both ancient and common in Latin texts.

3. **u** also can be either a consonant or a vowel. In the classical period (and for several centuries afterward), Romans used the letter **v** to represent both the consonant and the vowel, and **u** was simply a rounded version of this letter. Some modern editors use **u** for both consonant and vowel, while others maintain the convention of using **v** for the consonant and **u** for the vowel. This latter convention is the one followed in this book.

4. The capital letter **C**, in origin a form of the Greek letter *gamma* (Γ), originally was used by the Etruscans, who did not distinguish between the sounds of English hard **g** and hard **c**. Even after Latin developed a separate new letter to represent hard **g**, capital **C** continued to represent hard **g** in abbreviations for certain first names (*e.g.*, C. = Gaius).

Consonants

The Latin consonants are generally identical in pronunciation with their English equivalents. Exceptions are:

b as in English, but **bs** is pronounced as **ps** in "taps"; **bt** as **pt** in "apt"

c *always* has the **k** sound as in "cart" (this is called hard **c**)

g *always* as in "get" (this is called hard **g**)

h *never* silent, *always* pronounced, as in "hat"

OBSERVATION

h represents the expelling of air called aspiration.

i, as consonant, has the **y** sound as in "yawn"

OBSERVATIONS

1. **i** is consonantal at the beginning of a word when followed by a vowel (Iūnō, pronounced "Yūnō") and in the middle of a word when it falls between vowels (biiugis, pronounced "bi-yugis"). **i** may also be consonantal in the middle of a compound (that is, a word made with a root word and a prefix (iniustus [< in- + iustus], pronounced "in-yustus").

2. An exception to this rule occurs in certain words borrowed from Greek, in which an initial **i** is pronounced as a vowel (iambus, pronounced "i-ambus").

n as in English, but **nc**, **ng** as in "bank" and "hang"

qu counts as a *single consonant* in Latin and is *always* pronounced as in "quit"

Although **qu** is written with a -**u**, this **u** is the consonantal **u** (**v**). This spelling convention is also used in the combinations **su** and **gu**, pronounced as in "persuade" and "anguish." **su** and **gu** when so pronounced count as *single consonants*. That is, although they are spelled with two letters, they represent a single sound in Latin.

r probably rolled

s *always* sibilant, as in "serpent" (*never* a z sound)

v (consonantal u) *always* as **w** as in "wet"

x counts as a *double consonant* (= ks) and is pronounced as in "axe"

z counts as a *double consonant* (= dz) and is pronounced as in "gadzooks"

z is a consonant representing the Greek *zeta* (Z), which itself represented a double consonant in Greek.

ch as in English "character"

ph as in English "people"

th as in English "tea"

ch, **ph**, and **th** represent sounds introduced into Latin from Greek. Greek distinguished between the *unaspirated* and *aspirated* consonants **c** and **ch**, **p** and **ph**, and **t** and **th**. The -**h** represents the puff of air (aspiration) that is emitted after the consonant sound is made. This distinction between unaspirated and aspirated consonants is also made in modern French and in other Romance languages *although not in English*: the English pronunciation of **c**, **p**, and **t** always includes aspiration. In order to distinguish **ph** and **th** from **p** and **t**, it has become conventional to pronounce **ph** as in "philosophy" and **th** as in "theater." The pronunciations given above (people, tea) are to be preferred.

Vowels

Latin has two sets of five vowels:

	Short	Long
	a	ā
	e	ē
	i	ī
	o	ō
	u	ū

1. Vowels have both *quantity* and *quality*. *Quantity* refers to the *length* of a vowel. A Latin vowel marked with a **macron** or **long mark** (⁻) is *long* and takes approximately twice as long to pronounce as a short vowel. Vowels not so marked are *short*. *Quality* refers to the way a vowel is pronounced. For example, ā and ō are the same in *quantity* but different in *quality*.

2. A vowel in a Latin word is either long or short *by nature*. It is important to realize that, for example, a and long ā are two different vowels, even if they are closely related.

3. Differences in vowel length often convey significant differences in meaning. For example, the word **alium** (with a short -a-) means "another man"; the word **ālium** (with a long -ā-) means "garlic."

A MACRON ON A LONG VOWEL SHOULD BE CONSIDERED PART OF THE SPELLING OF A
LATIN WORD. WHEN LEARNING NEW VOCABULARY, MEMORIZE ALL MACRONS AND AL-
WAYS WRITE THEM ON LONG VOWELS.[5]

The vowels are pronounced as follows:

a as in the *first* a in "await" or the u in "cup"

ā as in "father"

e as in "pet"

ē as in the a of "fate"

i as in "fit"

ī as in the ee of "feet"

o as in the o of "soft" or the au of "caught"

ō as in the o of "hope"

u as in "put"

ū as in the oo of "fool"

OBSERVATIONS

1. a and ā are very similar in quality and differ only in quantity. Special attention must be paid
to distinguish these two vowels. All other pairs of vowels (e and ē, etc.) differ *both* in quality *and*
in quantity and are easier for the English speaker to differentiate.

2. y is a vowel representing the Greek *upsilon* (Y). This vowel is pronounced as a French u (a
sound in between the English i and u). It may be long or short; the long vowel is pronounced
twice as long as the short.

Diphthongs

A diphthong is a *single* vocalic sound made from pronouncing *two vowels together*.
(The word *diphthong* in Greek means "double sound.") The six diphthongs in Latin
are ae, oe, ei, ui, au, and eu. They are pronounced as follows:

ae as in the i of "high"

oe as in the oy of "boy"

ei as in the ay of "day"

ui as in the wi of "twin"

au as in the ow of "how"

eu as a combination of e + u

OBSERVATION

There is no English sound corresponding to the Latin diphthong eu. As its spelling indicates, it
is a combination of the short vowels e and u pronounced as one sound. If Elmer Fudd pro-
nounced "very" (vewy), the ew would closely resemble the Latin sound.

·

·

5. All long vowels in this book will be marked by macrons. Vowels not so marked are short.

Accentuation

Latin has a stress accent. This means that one syllable in a word is slightly *stressed* or emphasized when the word is pronounced. To determine which syllable is to be stressed, one must first divide a Latin word into syllables.

Syllabification
A syllable is a sound or succession of sounds uttered with a single breath-impulse. A LATIN WORD HAS AS MANY SYLLABLES AS IT HAS VOWELS OR DIPHTHONGS. THERE ARE *NO* SILENT VOWELS OR CONSONANTS IN LATIN.

When dividing words into syllables, note that:

1. a single consonant goes with the *following* vowel:

anima	a/ni/ma
aurum	au/rum
gladius	gla/di/us

2. if there are two or more consonants in a row, the *last* consonant goes with the fol-lowing syllable:

imperium	im/pe/ri/um
sānctus	sānc/tus
virumque	vi/rum/que[6]
puella	pu/el/la

3. if, however, the combination of two consonants is a **mute (c, k, t, p, ch, th, ph, g, d, b)** or the fricative **f** followed by a **liquid (l, r)**, the two consonants are kept together:[7]

patria	pa/tri/a
agricola	a/gri/co/la
impleō	im/ple/ō

Accentuation
The *last* syllable in a Latin word is called the **ultima** (< Latin syllaba ultima ["last syl-lable"]). The *second* syllable from the end is called the **penult** (< Latin syllaba paenul-tima ["almost-last syllable"]). The *third* syllable from the end is called the **antepenult** (< Latin syllaba antepaenultima ["before-the-almost-last syllable"]).

ONLY THE *PENULT* OR THE *ANTEPENULT* OF A LATIN WORD MAY BE STRESSED. *If a word has only two syllables, the penult is stressed.* The following words are stressed on

---

6. Remember that qu counts as a single consonant.

7. A consonant that requires a stoppage of breath when pronounced is called a mute. When pronouncing a g, for example, the throat is contracted and breath is stopped. Similarly, when pronouncing a p, the lips are closed and breath is again stopped. These sounds are also called stops or plosives. A fricative is a consonant produced by forc-ing breath through a constricted passage. Only f and s are fricatives; they are also called spirants. l and r are called liquids because their sounds are capable of being prolonged as vowels.

the penult because they are two syllables *only*. Practice pronouncing them out loud and accent the penult by stressing that syllable.

tamen	cōnsul
mūtat	opus

If a word has more than two syllables, its stress accent is determined according to a rule called the **law of the penult**:

IF THE *PENULT* IS *LONG*, IT IS *STRESSED*. IF THE *PENULT* IS *SHORT*, THE *ANTE-PENULT* IS *STRESSED*.

A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (**long by nature**)
2. a short vowel *followed by* two or more consonants *not necessarily in the same syllable* (**long by position**)

The following words are stressed on the penult because their penults are *long by nature*. Practice pronouncing them out loud and accent the penult by stressing that syllable.

inimīcus	figūra
magnārum	labōrēs
patiēmur	persaepe
poēta	perpauca

The following words are stressed on the penult because their penults are *long by position*. Practice pronouncing them out loud and accent the penult by stressing that syllable.

ocellīs	contactum
magister	expressit
intellegenda	adversōs
cōnferrī	dēportant

OBSERVATIONS

1. In words of more than two syllables, the number of syllables is not important for determining the syllable to be stressed. *Only* the length of the penult determines stress.

2. The lengths of the syllables *other* than the penult are not important for determining stress.

The following words are stressed on the antepenult because their penults are *short*. Practice pronouncing them out loud and accent the antepenult by stressing that syllable.

scientia	tempora
aequora	mediocriter
audācia	populus
omnium	cēperis

☛DRILL A ON PRONUNCIATION MAY NOW BE DONE.

Language Study: Vocabulary, Morphology, and Syntax

Elementary language study may be divided into three parts: vocabulary, morphology, and syntax.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary refers first to the acquisition of the English meanings of words in another language. Thus, the Latin word **puella** means "girl"; the word **superō** means "overcome, conquer." In addition to English meanings, vocabulary also encompasses certain other important elements that give crucial information about gender (for nouns), stems, and parts of speech. A *full vocabulary entry* (the way the word appears in the dictionary) includes all these pieces of information. ALWAYS MEMORIZE THE FULL VOCABULARY ENTRY FOR EACH NEW WORD TO BE LEARNED; THE ENGLISH MEANING ALONE WILL NEVER BE ENOUGH.

Morphology

Morphology refers to the study of the different *forms* words take in a given language. In English, for example, various pieces of verb morphology must be learned:

1. the third-person singular present tense form of most English verbs is formed by the addition of -s or -es:

   walk → walks   go → goes

2. the past tense of many English verbs is formed by the addition of -**ed**:

   walk → walk**ed**

Morphology extends as well to nouns, adjectives, and certain other parts of speech that have multiple forms. *The changing of form to convey changed meaning* is called in-**flection**.

Some languages are more **inflected** than others. Thus the English noun regularly appears in only four forms:

boy (singular)	boys (plural)
boy's (singular possessive)	boys' (plural possessive)

The Latin noun, by contrast, regularly appears in ten or more forms. Since *Latin is a more highly inflected language than English, Latin morphology is considerably more extensive than English morphology and requires complete mastery.*

Syntax

The *grammatical function of a word in a sentence* is the syntax of that word. Consider the English sentence "The woman gives the cat a toy." "Woman," "cat," and "toy" all

have different grammatical functions that help convey the complete meaning of the sentence:

> woman: subject
> cat: indirect object
> toy: direct object

The terms **subject**, **indirect object**, and **direct object** are examples of English syntax, and these and many other terms of English syntax are also used in Latin syntax. Accurate translation of a Latin sentence requires the identification of the syntax of the words in that sentence. Throughout this book, new Latin syntactical terms will be introduced and defined. These terms will always be boldfaced at their first appearance. LEARN ALL BOLDFACED SYNTACTICAL TERMS.

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary

agricola, agricolae *m.* farmer
➤ anima, animae *f.* breath; life force; soul[1]
➤ dea, deae *f.* goddess
➤ fāma, fāmae *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame
fēmina, fēminae *f.* woman; wife
➤ fīlia, fīliae *f.* daughter
īnsula, īnsulae *f.* island
Italia, Italiae *f.* Italy
nauta, nautae *m.* sailor
patria, patriae *f.* country, homeland
pecūnia, pecūniae *f.* money
➤ poēta, poētae *m.* poet
puella, puellae *f.* girl
rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.* queen
via, viae *f.* way, road, street

ager, agrī *m.* field
➤ deus, deī *m.* god
➤ dominus, dominī *m.* master, lord
➤ fīlius, fīliī *m.* son
gladius, gladiī *m.* sword
liber, librī *m.* book
puer, puerī *m.* boy
servus, servī *m.* slave
vir, virī *m.* man; husband

aurum, aurī *n.* gold
bellum, bellī *n.* war
➤ cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment
dōnum, dōnī *n.* gift
factum, factī *n.* deed
➤ ferrum, ferrī *n.* iron; sword
oppidum, oppidī *n.* town
perīculum, perīculī *n.* danger
verbum, verbī *n.* word

➤ ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (away) from
➤ ad (prep. + acc.) toward, to
cum (prep. + abl.) with
➤ dē (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning
➤ ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (out) from
➤ et (conj.) and;
   (adv.) even, also
   et . . . et . . . both . . . and . . .
➤ in (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against
   (prep. + abl.) in, on
ō (interj.) O
➤ -que (enclitic conj.) and

---

1. An arrow next to a vocabulary entry indicates that there is additional important information about this entry in the vocabulary notes that follow.

Vocabulary Notes

anima, animae *f.* has a physical meaning, the "breath" of the wind or of a human being. By extension, it may mean the "breath" of life, the "life force." Although it may he translated "soul," it refers only to the force that gives an animate being life and not to the notion of "soul" as the seat of emotion and thought. For this latter meaning Latin usually employs another word.

dea, deae *f.* has deābus as its dative and ablative plural form.

fāma, fāmae *f.* derives from an Indo-European root that means "speak" (cf. Gk. *phēmí*; Skt. *bhāsh*, speak). The word fāma indicates primarily what is spoken publicly or by the people, and its basic meaning is "talk" (something spoken) or "rumor." A fāma often told becomes a "story," and when it is passed down from generation to generation, it becomes a "tradition." A person's fāma is his or her "reputation" or "fame." This may be positive or negative. Finally, if the word is capitalized, Fāma is the goddess Rumor.

fīlia, fīliae *f.* has fīliābus as its dative and ablative plural form.

Note that poēta is a three-syllable word. -oē- is *not* a diphthong.

deus, deī *m.* has certain common irregular forms in the plural. Memorize the following declension:

Nom./Voc.	deus	dī or deī
Gen.	deī	deōrum or deum
Dat.	deō	dīs
Acc.	deum	deōs
Abl.	deō	dīs

Note in particular the alternate genitive plural deum, which is identical with the accusative singular. Deus has no separate vocative singular form: the nominative and vocative singular are identical.

The noun dominus, dominī *m.* is cognate with the Latin word for house (domus); that is, the two words dominus and domus are descended from the same linguistic root. The original meaning of dominus was "master of the house."

fīlius, fīliī *m.* has fīlī as its vocative singular form.

cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* may mean the act of *deliberating* about something (deliberation), or it may mean the "plan" or "intention" that results from deliberating. It may also mean the capacity to deliberate (judgment). Finally, it may refer to a group of people who deliberate, a "council."

ferrum, ferrī *n.* means "iron." By the rhetorical device *metonymy* (change of name) it also means "sword"—that is, something made of iron.

Prepositions

A preposition (< praepōnō, place before) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. The preposition and the noun or pronoun together are called a "prepositional phrase." In Latin, prepositions are most often followed by one of two cases, the accusative or the ablative. Prepositions that require a noun in the accusative case are said to "take the accusative" and are marked in the vocabulary entry by the notation *(prep. + acc.)*. Prepositions that require a noun in the ablative case are similarly said to "take the ablative" and are marked by the notation *(prep. + abl.)*.

Prepositions that take the accusative emphasize the idea of motion toward, into, around, and through. Prepositions that take the ablative indicate one of the three functions of the ablative (separation, association/instrument, location). A few prepositions can take either case, and *their meanings differ according to which case they take.*

The prepositions ā/ab, ē/ex, and dē all require a noun in the ablative case and express *separation* (from). However, they have distinct differences in meaning. ā/ab expresses motion *away* from a place; ē/ex expresses motion *out* from a place; dē expresses motion *down* from a place. These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.

ab is used before words beginning with vowels or h-. Both ā and ab are used before words beginning with consonants, but ā is more frequent.

ex is used before words beginning with vowels or h-. Both ē and ex are used before words beginning with consonants, but ex is more frequent.

ad takes the accusative and expresses motion to or toward a place. Compare the meaning of ad with that of in (+ acc.) in the diagram that follows.

in may take either the accusative or the ablative case. When it takes the accusative, it means "into" or "onto." By extension of this meaning it may also mean "against." When it takes the ablative case, it expresses *location* and means either "in" or "on." These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.
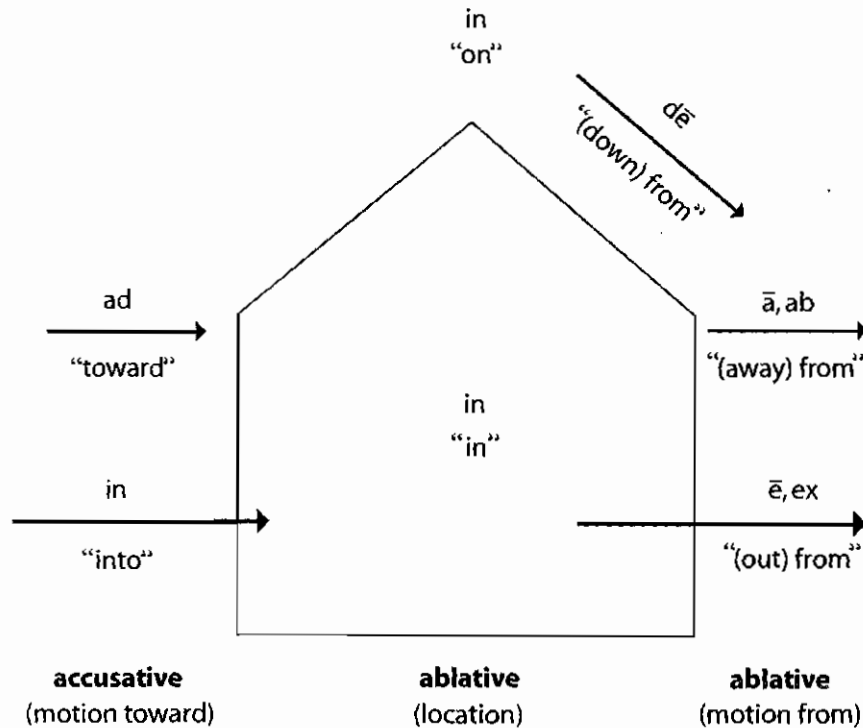
Figure 2. Prepositions

et is a coordinating conjunction. This means that it connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. When two nouns are connected, they must be in the same case: for example, nautārum et agricolārum (of the sailors and of the farmers [genitive]). Parts of speech other than nouns may also be connected by et. For example, in the phrases "tall *and* snow-covered," "he sings *and* he dances," "in Italy *and* in Gaul," et could again be used to connect two adjectives, two verb phrases, or two prepositional phrases.

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, et is often used to mark *each element*. Thus, et nautārum et agricolārum. It is convenient to translate the first et by the English word "both" (both of the sailors and of the farmers). When such a parallel series is longer than two (et nautārum et agricolārum et poētārum), omit translating the first et and say "and" for the others (of the sailors and of the farmers and of the poets).

et may also be used as an *adverb* that usually qualifies a single word (noun, verb, adjective): et vir (even the man, *or* the man also).

-que is an enclitic conjunction. The word enclitic is derived from the Greek verb *enklīnō* (lean on), and an enclitic *leans on* or is directly attached to the word preceding it. The hyphen before que indicates that *it cannot stand alone as a separate word.* -que is attached to the second element of a closely related pair, whose elements are often opposite *or* complementary. -que should be translated "and" **before** the word to which it is attached: for example, vir fēminaque (husband *and* wife [subjects]). Like et, -que may connect grammatical elements other than nouns.

-que is used in place of the first et in the phrase et . . . et . . . by certain prose stylists (the historians Livy, Sallust, and Tacitus) and by many poets. Caesar and Cicero *never* use -que . . . et . . . The use of -que . . . -que . . . is found only in poetry and occasionally in the historians.

Derivatives and Cognates

Many words in English are *derived from* Latin words; that is, they descend directly from words in Latin. Such words are called derivatives. For example, the English word "counsel" is a derivative of the Latin word cōnsilium. In many instances, the differences in sound and spelling between an English word and its Latin parent are not significant enough to obscure the fact that the two words are related. Some English derivatives descend from the *roots* of Latin words. A root is the basic element or ultimate stem of a word that carries its meaning and from which many other words are made by the addition of prefixes and suffixes.

When an English and a Latin word are called cognates (< cognātus, -a, -um, related), they are related because they both descend from a common PIE word or root, but the English word is derived not from Latin but from another ancient language such as Greek. It is often impossible to tell that a word in Latin and a word in English are cognates because they have undergone radically different changes in pronunciation and spelling as they have developed in their respective language families. For example, the Latin word quīnque (five) is cognate with the English word "five," but the words do not appear to be related.

In each chapter some English derivatives and cognates of the new Latin vocabulary will be listed at the end of the vocabulary notes. This list is intended in part to help the student remember the meanings of new vocabulary items. It will also help the student expand his or her English vocabulary and stimulate further interest in learning about the relations among words. The cognates are provided to show how the same root or word in PIE has given rise to a wide variety of seemingly unrelated words in English. Where only the *root* of an English word is related to the corresponding Latin word, the portion of the English word that descends from that root is italicized.[2]

	Derivatives	Cognates
ager	*agr*arian	acre
anima	*anim*ate	
bellum	*bell*icose	
cōnsilium	counsel	
dea, deus	*dei*ty	*Ju*ly
dominus	*domin*ate	
factum	fact	*thes*is
fāma	*fam*ous	*prophet*; *ban*al
fīlia, fīlius	*affili*ate	
īnsula	*insu*late; *isol*ate	
liber	*libr*ary	
nauta	*naut*ical	astro*naut*; *naus*ea
pecūnia	*pecun*iary	fee
perīculum	peril	fear; *pir*ate
puella, puer	*puer*ile	*fo*al; encyclo*pedia*
rēgīna	cor*rect*, *reg*ent	maha*rajah*; *right*; rich
verbum	verb	*word*; *irony*
via	tri*vial*, de*viate*	way; weigh
vir	*viri*le, *virtue*	*werewolf*; *world*

.

.

2. For further information on these and other derivatives and cognates, consult the Indo-European Roots Appendix of the *American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 3rd ed. (Houghton-Mifflin, 1992).

§1. The Latin Noun and Its Properties: Gender, Number, Case

A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing.[3] Every noun in Latin has three properties: **gender, number,** and **case**.

GENDER—Latin nouns have the genders **masculine** or **feminine**. Nouns that are neither masculine nor feminine are called **neuter** (< **neuter, neutra, neutrum,** neither). In the vocabulary entry for each noun, gender will be indicated by *m., f.,* or *n.* THIS INFORMATION MUST BE MEMORIZED FOR EACH NOUN.

NUMBER—Latin nouns appear in the **singular** when referring to one and in the **plural** when referring to more than one.

CASE—Latin nouns occur in a variety of different forms in both the singular and the plural. Each different form or **case** is indicated by a special ending attached to a stem that remains constant. Each ending indicates the syntax, the grammatical function, that a noun has in a sentence. For example, when a Latin noun serves as the subject of a sentence, it has one case ending, but when it serves as the direct object in a sentence, it has a different case ending.

The parent language of Latin, Indo-European, had eight different cases for nouns, each case with its own grammatical functions. Latin has only six cases, which nevertheless express all the functions of the original eight.[4] This is possible because one case in Latin has been made to perform multiple functions. The names of the Latin cases and their basic functions are:

Nominative Case

—used for the *subject* of a sentence
—used for the *predicate nominative*

The two essential elements of every sentence are the *subject* and the *predicate*. The **subject** is *that which is spoken about*, and the **predicate** is *all that is said about the subject*. For example:

John sneezed.
The waiter cleared the dishes from the table.

In these sentences, "John" and "the waiter" are subjects; "sneezed" and "cleared the dishes from the table" are predicates. Both "John" and "the waiter" would be in the nominative case in Latin, and the syntax of each would be **Nominative, Subject.**

Certain verbs such as "be," "become," and "seem" are called **copulative** or **link-ing** verbs. A linking verb is *never* followed by a direct object but rather by *an element*

---

3. There are, in fact, several kinds of nouns:
   common nouns: man, book, city, dumpling
   proper nouns: Mary, Italy, New York
   collective nouns: crowd, tribe, senate, army
   abstract nouns: love, beauty, slavery, citizenship
   verbal nouns: running (gerund), to run (infinitive)

4. A few Latin nouns have a seventh case, the locative, used to express location in a place.

that is equivalent to the subject, and this element is called the **Predicate Nominative.** For example:

> John is a waiter.
> The frog became a prince.

In these sentences, "John" and "the frog" are subjects, while "a waiter" and "a prince" are Predicate Nominatives. Both the subjects and the Predicate Nominatives would be in the nominative case in Latin.

Genitive Case

—used to *qualify* or *limit* another noun in a variety of ways
—usually corresponds to a translation using the English preposition "of"

In the phrases "the house of friends," "a fear of snakes," "a jar of pennies," the words "of friends," "of snakes," and "of pennies" serve to *qualify* or *limit* in a variety of ways the nouns on which they depend. "Of friends," "of snakes," and "of pennies" would be expressed in Latin by "friends," "snakes," and "pennies" in the genitive case *with no preposition;* that is, the genitive case ending *contains the notion of "of" within it.*

One idea commonly expressed by the genitive case is that of ownership or possession: "the book of the girl" (= the book belonging to the girl). The phrase "of the girl" would be expressed in Latin by the word "girl" in the genitive case, and the syntax of that word would be **Genitive of Possession.**

Dative Case

—used to express *the person or thing interested in* or *affected by* the action of the verb
—usually corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions "(with reference) to" or "for"

In the sentence "To the sailor the danger of the sea is real," "to the sailor" expresses the person *with reference to whom* "the danger of the sea is real." The phrase "to the sailor" would be expressed in Latin by the word "sailor" in the dative case *with no preposition;* that is, the dative case ending *contains the notion of* "(with reference) to" *within it.* The syntax of the word "sailor" in Latin in the dative case would be **Dative of Reference.**

In the sentence "The girl gives a toy to the cat" or "The girl gives the cat a toy," "a toy" expresses the *direct* object of the verb, while "to the cat" or "cat" expresses the *indirect* object, the person or thing *indirectly* interested in or affected by the action of the verb. Again, "to the cat" or "cat" would be expressed in Latin in the dative case *with no preposition,* and the syntax of that word would be **Dative of Indirect Object.** This use of the dative case appears most often with verbs of *giving, showing,* and *telling.*

Accusative Case

—used for the *direct object* of a verb
—used following certain prepositions

In the sentence "The poet writes poems," "poems" is the *direct object* of the verb "writes" because the action of the verb "writes" is directly exerted on the object "poems." The word "poems" would be expressed in Latin in the accusative case, and the syntax of that word would be Accusative, **Direct Object**.

In addition to being used to express the direct object of a verb, the accusative case follows prepositions that express *motion toward, into, around,* and *through.* For example, to express the phrase "toward the field" in Latin, the preposition **ad** (toward) is followed by the word "field" in Latin in the accusative case.

Ablative Case

—used to express *separation* (original function of the ablative case); in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English preposition "from"
—also expresses *association* or *instrument*; in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions "with" or "by"
—also expresses *location* (in space or time); in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions "in," "on," or "at"

Separation
In the sentence "He came from Italy," the phrase "from Italy" expresses motion from a place: "he" is *separated from* "Italy." In the sentence "The king freed the people from slavery," "the people" are *separated from* "slavery." These two examples suggest the range of meaning expressed by the ablative's separative function. The idea of going *from* a *place* (out from/away from/down from) usually requires a preposition and a noun in the ablative case. Thus, in the example above, "from Italy" would be expressed in Latin by the preposition **ab** ([away] from) and "Italy" in the ablative case. The idea of "from slavery" in the second example would be expressed by the word "slavery" in the ablative case and might be accompanied by a preposition.

Association/Instrument
In the sentence "The farmer came to the party with a poet," the phrase "with a poet" indicates that the farmer was *accompanied by* a poet. The phrase "with a poet" would be expressed in Latin by the preposition cum (with) and "poet" in the ablative case; the syntax of that word would be Ablative of Accompaniment. Note that the Ablative of Accompaniment *requires* the preposition *cum*.

In the sentence "The farmer is fighting with a sword," the phrase "with a sword" indicates what the farmer *uses* to fight, or the *instrument by means of which* he is fighting. The phrase "with a sword" would be expressed in Latin by the word "sword" in the ablative case *with no preposition;* the syntax of that word would be

Ablative of Means (or **Ablative of Instrument**). NOTE THAT *NO* PREPOSITION IS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

Location

In the sentences "Farmers work in fields" and "The queen lives on an island," the phrases "in fields" and "on an island" express ideas of *location* or *place where*. The phrases "in fields" and "on an island" would be expressed in Latin by the preposition *in* (in, on) and the words "fields" and "island" in the ablative case. NOTE THAT SUCH AN ABLATIVE *REQUIRES* THE PREPOSITION **IN**.

Vocative Case

—used for *addressing* someone *directly*

In the sentence "Tell me, father, why you have come," the word "father" expresses the person being directly addressed by the speaker of the sentence. The word "father" would be expressed in Latin in the vocative case. In Latin, a word in the vocative case is sometimes preceded by the interjection ō (O).

Summary of Cases and Their Basic Functions	
Case Name	**Used to Express**
Nominative	1. subject
	2. predicate nominative
Genitive	"of"
Dative	"to," "for"
Accusative	1. direct object
	2. with certain prepositions
Ablative	1. "from"
	2. "with," "by"
	3. "in," "on"
Vocative	direct address

☛ DRILL 1 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§2. The Five Declensions

Latin nouns are grouped in five different families called **declensions**. Each noun belongs to *one declension only*, and each declension has its own distinctive set of case endings. The five groups of nouns are most reliably distinguished and identified by the *genitive singular* ending of each declension:

	Genitive Singular Ending
1st declension	-ae
2nd declension	-ī
3rd declension	-is
4th declension	-ūs
5th declension	-eī/-eī

A full vocabulary entry for a Latin noun contains, in the following order, the *nominative singular* form, the *genitive singular* form, a notation of gender, and the English meaning(s). For example:

> puella, puellae *f.* girl
> servus, servī *m.* slave
> vir, virī *m.* man; husband
> perīculum, perīculī *n.* danger

OBSERVATIONS

1. The -ae ending on the genitive singular form of **puella** indicates that this noun belongs to the first declension.

2. The -ī endings on the genitive singular forms of **servus, vir,** and **perīculum** indicate that these nouns all belong to the second declension. Even though the endings of their nominative singular forms differ, the endings of the genitive singular forms do not.

Finding the Stem

The genitive singular form is given in the vocabulary for purposes of identifying the declension to which each noun belongs, but the genitive singular is also the form from which a **stem** is derived for use in making all other forms of the noun.

To find the stem of *any* noun, *remove the ending from the genitive singular form* (the second element given in the vocabulary). What remains is the stem.

patria, *patri*/ae *f.* country	stem ≈ **patri-**
puella, *puell*/ae *f.* girl	stem = **puell-**
liber, *libr*/ī *m.* book	stem ≈ **libr-**
servus, *serv*/ī *m.* slave	stem = **serv-**
vir, *vir*/ī *m.* man; husband	stem ≈ **vir-**

All the forms of a noun are created by taking the stem of that noun and adding the case endings that belong to its particular declension. When one generates a complete set of forms for a noun in Latin, one is said to **decline** a noun, and the resulting set of forms is called a **declension** of the noun.[5]

§3. Noun Morphology: First Declension

Gender Note: Most nouns of the first declension are feminine, some are masculine. There are no neuter first-declension nouns.

Case Endings of the First Declension		
	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative/Vocative	-a	-ae
Genitive	-ae	-ārum
Dative	-ae	-īs
Accusative	-am	-ās
Ablative	-ā	-īs

5. There are thus two meanings for the word "declension": 1. the name for each of the five families of nouns (first declension, second declension, etc.); 2. a complete set of forms for an individual noun.

ALL REGULAR NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE
THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND
THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a noun of the first declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

puella, puellae *f.* girl
stem = puell-

		Singular
Nom./Voc.	puella	the girl (subject or predicate nominative)
		girl! (addressed directly)
Gen.	puellae	of the girl
Dat.	puellae	to the girl/for the girl
Acc.	puellam	the girl (direct object)
Abl.	puellā	from the girl; by/with the girl; in the girl
		Plural
Nom./Voc.	puellae	the girls (subj. or pred. nom.)
		girls! (addressed directly)
Gen.	puellārum	of the girls
Dat.	puellīs	to the girls/for the girls
Acc.	puellās	the girls (d.o.)
Abl.	puellīs	from the girls; by/with the girls; in the girls

OBSERVATIONS

1. The abbreviations for the case names used in the model declension above are standard and will appear frequently in this book, as will the abbreviations *subj.* (subject), *pred. nom.* (predicate nominative), and *d.o.* (direct object).

2. In the first declension, as in most other declensions, the nominative and vocative endings in both singular and plural are identical and will therefore be listed together.

3. Certain endings of the first declension are used to mark more than one case: -ae = genitive singular, dative singular, and nominative/vocative plural; -īs = dative plural and ablative plural. ALWAYS CONSIDER ALL POSSIBILITIES WHEN IDENTIFYING THE FORM OF A NOUN. CONTEXT USU-ALLY HELPS TO DISTINGUISH FORMS WITH MORE THAN ONE POSSIBLE INTERPRETATION.

4. Two first-declension words in the vocabulary of this chapter, **dea, deae** *f.*, "goddess," and **filia, filiae** *f.*, "daughter," have irregular dative and ablative plural forms: **deābus** and **filiābus**. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

5. The Latin language has *no definite article* (the) and *no indefinite article* (a, an). ENGLISH DEFI-NITE OR INDEFINITE ARTICLES MAY BE FREELY ADDED IN TRANSLATIONS OF LATIN NOUNS AS CON-TEXT DEMANDS. Thus, the noun translated above as "the girl," "of the girl," etc., could also be translated "a girl," "of a girl," etc. Sometimes it is appropriate to use *no* article: "money" or "of books." Although there *are* words in Latin for "his," "her," and "their," possessive adjectives such as these are often omitted in Latin. They may be freely added in English translations.

☞ DRILL 2–3 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§4. Noun Morphology: Second Declension

Gender Note: Most nouns of the second declension are masculine, some are feminine, and many are neuter with endings slightly different from masculine and feminine nouns.

Case Endings of the Second Declension: Masculine/Feminine		
	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative	-us/--	-ī
Genitive	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-um	-ōs
Ablative	-ō	-īs
Vocative	-e	-ī

ALL REGULAR MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *masculine* or *feminine* noun of the second declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

servus, servī *m.* slave
stem = serv-

		Singular
Nom.	servus	a slave (subj. or pred. nom.)
Gen.	servī	of a slave
Dat.	servō	to a slave/for a slave
Acc.	servum	a slave (d.o.)
Abl.	servō	from a slave; by/with a slave; in a slave
Voc.	serve	slave! (addressed directly)
		Plural
Nom./Voc.	servī	slaves (subj. or pred. nom.) slaves! (addressed directly)
Gen.	servōrum	of slaves
Dat.	servīs	to slaves/for slaves
Acc.	servōs	slaves (d.o.)
Abl.	servīs	from slaves; by/with slaves; in slaves

---

6. Most masculine and feminine nouns of the second declension use -us as the nominative singular ending. As will be clear from the vocabulary entries, however, a number of nouns lack any nominative singular ending and instead use a *form of the stem of the noun* as the nominative singular form. Thus, servus, servī *m.* slave, but puer, puerī *m.* boy and liber, librī *m.* book.

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the second declension are used to mark more than one case: -ī = genitive singular and nominative/vocative plural; -ō = dative singular and ablative singular; -īs = dative plural and ablative plural. ALWAYS CONSIDER ALL POSSIBILITIES WHEN IDENTIFYING THE FORM OF A NOUN. CONTEXT USUALLY HELPS TO DISTINGUISH FORMS THAT HAVE MORE THAN ONE POSSIBLE INTERPRETATION.

2. Many endings of the second declension are either similar to or identical with corresponding endings of the first declension. Compare accusative singular -um to -am; genitive plural -ōrum to -ārum; dative and ablative plural -īs to -īs; and accusative plural -ōs to -ās.

3. Second declension nouns whose stems end in -i have *two* possible forms for the genitive singular, one a contraction of the other. For example:

gladius, gladiī *or* gladī *m*. sword

In the second form, the short -i of the stem has contracted with the -ī of the ending. This shortened form of the genitive singular will not be given in the vocabulary entry for nouns whose stems end in -i, but it will appear in drills, sentences, and readings.

4. The second declension is the *only* declension in which the vocative differs from the nominative, and it does so *only* in the *singular* for masculine and feminine nouns whose nominative singular forms end in -us. For other masculine or feminine nouns of this declension, the vocative singular is identical with the nominative singular. For example:

| servus | vocative singular = serve |
| puer | vocative singular = puer |

5. Every vocative plural is identical with the nominative plural in all declensions.

6. The noun **filius** and proper names of the second declension whose nominative singular forms end in -ius have a vocative singular ending in -ī. Thus:

fil*ius*, filiī *m*. son   vocative singular = filī[7]

MEMORIZE THIS VOCATIVE SINGULAR ENDING.

7. The noun **deus, deī *m*.** has certain irregular forms in the plural: **dī** (nom./voc. pl.), **deum** (gen. pl.), and **dīs** (dat./abl. pl.). For the full declension of this noun see the vocabulary note on p. 12.

Case Endings of the Second Declension: Neuter	Singular	Plural
Nominative/Vocative	-um	-a
Genitive	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-um	-a
Ablative	-ō	-īs

ALL NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *neuter* noun of the second declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

7. Note that this vocative singular form is identical with the shortened form of the genitive singular.

periculum, periculī *n.* danger
stem = pericul-

		Singular
Nom./Voc.	periculum	danger (subj. or pred. nom.)
		danger! (addressed directly)
Gen.	periculī	of danger
Dat.	periculō	to danger/for danger
Acc.	periculum	danger (d.o.)
Abl.	periculō	from danger; by/with danger; in danger
		Plural
Nom./Voc.	pericula	dangers (subj. or pred. nom.)
		dangers! (addressed directly)
Gen.	periculōrum	of dangers
Dat.	periculīs	to dangers/for dangers
Acc.	pericula	dangers (d.o.)
Abl.	periculīs	from dangers; by/with dangers; in dangers

OBSERVATIONS

1. Most of the endings for neuter nouns of the second declension are identical with the endings for masculine/feminine second-declension nouns. Neuter nouns differ *only* in having -um in the nominative and vocative singular and -a in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural. ALL NEUTER WORDS IN LATIN HAVE IDENTICAL NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE FORMS IN BOTH THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL.

2. As is true for masculine/feminine second-declension nouns, neuter nouns whose stems end in -i have two possible forms for the genitive singular, one a contraction of the other. For example:

cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *or* cōnsilī *n.* plan, advice; judgment

☞ DRILL 4 MAY NOW BE DONE.

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary

cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety
➤ īra, īrae *f.* anger, wrath
poena, poenae *f.* punishment, penalty
sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom
vīta, vītae *f.* life

➤ animus, animī *m.* (rational) soul, mind;
spirit; *in pl.*, strong feelings
➤ arma, armōrum *n. pl.* arms, weapons
➤ studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm;
pursuit, study
vēlum, vēlī *n.* sail

➤ ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum
(1-intr.) walk
➤ amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus (1-tr.) love
➤ cōgitō (1-tr.) think; ponder
➤ dō, dare, dedī, datus give, grant
➤ poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty
➤ vēla dare (idiom) to set sail
➤ dōnō (1-tr.) give; present, reward
errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake
labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed
➤ mōnstrō (1-tr.) show, point out
➤ optō (1-tr.) desire; choose
➤ vocō (1-tr.) call; summon; name

➤ dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus owe; ought
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold;
consider
➤ iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus order
➤ moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus set in mo-
tion, stir (up), move
respondeō, respondēre, respondī,
respōnsus answer
➤ timeō, timēre, timuī, — fear, be afraid (of)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see

➤ sum, esse, fuī, futūrus be; exist
➤ possum, posse, potuī, — be able, can

cūr (interrog. adv.) why
➤ enim (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed;
for
➤ etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact
➤ nam (conj.) for
➤ namque (conj.) for in fact
➤ -ne (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the
first word of a question*
➤ neque or nec (conj.-adv.) and not
neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .
neither . . . nor . . .
➤ nōn (adv.) not
sed (conj.) but

Vocabulary Notes

When īra appears in the plural, it may be translated "(feelings of) anger."

animus, animī *m.* is the "(rational) soul" or "mind" of a human being. It is distinct from anima, which is the physical soul, that part of a human that would descend to the underworld. By comparison, Greek and English have one word, *psychē* and "soul" respectively, that is used for both. animus may also mean "heart" as the source of emotion and passion, or it may indicate a specific passion. In the plural, it often means "spirits" in the sense of "strong feelings," and in certain contexts "anger," "courage," or "pride."

The second-declension noun arma, armōrum *n. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin. Hence, the vocabulary entry is given in the plural but is analogous in other respects to any other vocabulary entry for a noun: it gives the nominative, the genitive, the gender, and the meaning(s) of the word. All such entries *also* indicate that the word listed is *plural*.

studium, studiī *n.* expresses both an eager desire toward something and that to which one devotes one's attention. When it is used in a political context, it often means "(partisan) support."

Principal Parts

As is explained in §7, the fourth principal part of a verb is *usually* the perfect passive participle of that verb. In this book, two different endings of the perfect passive participle— -us and -um—are used in the vocabulary lists beginning each chapter. Verbs that are *transitive*—that express an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in -us. Verbs that are intransitive—that express an action that is *not* directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in -um. For more on the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs, see §11.

Certain intransitive verbs have no perfect passive participle. For some intransitive verbs a future active participle, whose ending is -ūrus, is supplied as the fourth principal part. This is true, for example, for the irregular intransitive verb sum, esse, fuī, futūrus. The fourth principal part, futūrus, is a future active participle.

Certain verbs, both transitive and intransitive, have no fourth principal part at all.[1] When memorizing and reciting aloud such verbs, say "blank" for the missing fourth principal part.

Most verbs of the *first* conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum (an intransitive verb) or amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus (a transitive verb). Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in -āre, -āvī, -ātus will be identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-tr.) following the first principal part. Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in -āre, -āvī, -ātum will be identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-intr.). No other principal parts will be listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL FOUR PRINCIPAL PARTS. For example, optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus, *not* optō (1-tr.).

cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus takes two grammatical constructions. It takes a direct object, or it may also be used with the preposition dē.

Animam cōgitat.	She is pondering the soul.
Dē animā cōgitat.	She is thinking about the soul.

dō, dare, dedī, datus is an irregular first-conjugation verb because its principal parts do not follow the pattern of other first-conjugation verbs, and its present stem, da-, contains a *short* -a-. However, two forms have -ā-: the second person singular present active indicative (dās) and the second person singular present active imperative (dā). (For the indicative see §9; for the imperative see §32.) MEMORIZE THESE FORMS. The third principal part, dedī, is called reduplicated because the first consonant of the root, d-, has been doubled with an intervening vowel. Like all verbs of *giving, showing,* and *telling,* dō regularly takes both a direct object and an indirect object.

Two common idioms using dō are poenās dare, "to pay the penalty," and vēla dare, "to set sail." An idiom is an expression whose meaning cannot be rendered by a literal translation. Idioms are included in the vocabulary lists with their verbs in the infinitive. MEMORIZE EACH IDIOM AS A SEPARATE VOCABULARY ENTRY.

Nautae *poenās dabunt.*	The sailors *will pay the penalty.*
Nautae *vēla non dant.*	The sailors *are not setting sail.*

---

1. A missing fourth principal part may indicate only that no forms derived from this part occur in the Latin that has survived.

dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus is a denominative verb. The term denominative is used of verbs that are derived from nouns or adjectives. The verb dōnō is derived from the noun dōnum, dōnī *n*. Two constructions regularly occur with this verb.

> Poētae pecūniam dōnāmus.   We are giving money to the poet.
> Poētam pecūniā dōnāmus.   We are rewarding the poet with (by means of) money.

In the first sentence dōnō functions as an ordinary verb of *giving, showing,* and *telling* and takes a direct object and an indirect object. In this usage dōnō is a synonym of dō. In the second sentence dōnō means "present" or "reward" with a *person* as an Accusative, Direct Object and an Ablative of Means.

mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus is a verb of *giving, showing,* and *telling* and thus takes both a direct object and an indirect object.

optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus may take an Object Infinitive (see §13). When it means "choose," it sometimes has ē/ex + ablative to express the group out from which something or someone is chosen.

> Poētam ē virīs īnsulae optābimus.   We shall choose a poet (out) from the men of the island.

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus means "call" both in the sense of "summon" and in the sense of "name." When it has the sense of "name," it regularly takes a direct object and another noun called a Predicate Accusative.

> Patriam īnsulam vocō.   I call *the island* (d.o.) (my) *homeland* (Predicate Accusative).

The verb dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus has two distinct meanings and usages. When it takes a direct object, it should be translated "owe." When it is followed by a Complementary Infinitive, it should be translated "ought" (see §12).

> Poētae pecūniam dēbeō.   I owe money to the poet.
> Labōrāre dēbeō.   I ought to work.

To translate the past and future tenses of dēbeō with a Complementary Infinitive, use the English verb "have."

> Labōrāre *dēbēbam.*   *I had* (was having) to work.
> Labōrāre *dēbēbō.*   *I shall have* to work.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus frequently takes an Object Infinitive (see §13), most often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (see §107). This accusative should be translated as if it were a direct object of the form of iubeō.

> Rēgīna *nautam* labōrāre iubet.   The queen orders *the sailor* to work.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus means "set (something or someone) in motion," either physically or emotionally.

timeō, timēre, timuī,— lacks a fourth principal part and thus *lacks the tenses formed from this principal part.* MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. Timeō is transitive but may be used absolutely (see §11). It may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference or by the preposition dē (as well as by other prepositions).

> Agricola timet.   The farmer is afraid. (used absolutely)
> Agricola rēgīnam timet.   The farmer fears the queen. (transitive)
> Agricola rēgīnae timet.   The farmer fears for the queen. (with dative)
> Agricola dē fīliō timet.   The farmer is afraid about (his) son. (with dē + ablative)

The principal parts of the irregular verb sum, esse, fuī, futūrus derive from two different PIE roots, *Ees-, "be; exist" (the root for the first two principal parts) and *bheu-, "be, exist, grow" (for the third and fourth principal parts).[2] The fourth principal part, futūrus (about to be), is the future active participle. Sum has two different uses but is always intransitive. For the conjugation and uses of sum see §10.

possum, posse, potuī, — is an intransitive verb that is regularly followed by a Complementary Infinitive (see §12). It lacks a fourth principal part and thus *lacks the tenses formed from this principal part.* MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. For the conjugation of possum see §10.

---

2. An asterisk next to a form indicates that the form is hypothetical.

enim is called a **postpositive** conjunction (< **postpōnō**, put after) because it is regularly *placed after* the first word (or second word) in a sentence. **Enim** is used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains (for) or confirms (in fact, indeed) a preceding one.

> Regina ad oppidum ambulat. Dōna *enim* dīs dare optat. (enim with explanation)
> The queen is walking to the town. For she desires to give gifts to the gods.
> Agricola vēla dare optat. Nihil *enim* timet. (enim with confirmation)
> The farmer desires to set sail. Indeed, he is afraid of nothing.

Enim is never placed first in a Latin sentence, but it is nearly always the first word in an English translation.

etenim (et + enim) is stronger than enim but identical in usage. However, it is *not* postpositive.

nam is another conjunction used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains or confirms a preceding one.

> Regina ad oppidum ambulat. *Nam* dōna dīs dare optat.
> The queen is walking to the town. For she desires to give gifts to the gods.

namque (nam + -que) is stronger than nam but identical in usage.

-ne is an enclitic[3] added to the first word of a sentence to indicate that it is a question. Its use in questions is *optional*, and it has no English translation. The word to which it is added is often a verb, since verbs often occur first in questions, but -ne may be added to other words as well.

> Optāsne reginam insulae vidēre? Do you desire to see the queen of the island?
> Regīnamne insulae vidēre optās? Do you desire to see the queen of the island?

neque or nec is a conjunction (and) *and* an adverb (not) at the same time.

> Vir pugnat *nec* dē periculō cogitat. The man fights and does not think about danger.

neque ... neque ..., nec ... nec ..., or a mixture of the two mark balanced pairs and may be translated "neither ... nor ..."

> Nec fēminae nec virō dōnum dabō. Neither to the woman nor to the man shall I give a gift.

When a parallel series is longer than two (nec fēminae nec virō nec rēgīnae), translate the first nec as "not" and say "and not" for the others (not to the woman and not to the man and not to the queen).

nōn (adv.) almost always precedes the word it emphasizes.

> Agricola dōna nōn optat. The farmer does not desire gifts.
> Agricola agrum, nōn pecūniam, optat. The farmer desires a field, not money.

	Derivatives	Cognates
ambulō	somn*ambul*ist	
cūra	*cur*ious	
dō, dōnō	*don*ative; par*don*	anti*dote*; *dose*
habeō	*hab*it; *abl*e	give; *gav*el
īra	*ira*te	*iron*; *hier*archy
moveō	*mob*ile; e*mot*ion	
possum	*poss*ible; *pot*ent	despot; Pa*dish*ah
pugnō	*pugn*acious; im*pugn*	*pygm*y
sapientia	in*sip*id; *sav*ant; *savv*y	
sum, esse	int*er*est; *abs*ent; *ess*ence	am; is; yes; sin
fuī, futūrus	*fut*ure	be; *buil*d; *phys*ics
videō	*vis*ion; *vis*age; *voy*eur	guide; wise; *idol*
vīta	*vit*al	*bio*-; *quick*; *hygiene*; *whisk*ey
vocō	*voc*al; in*voke*; *vow*el	epic

---

3. See the vocabulary note on -que (p. 14).

§5. The Finite Latin Verb and Its Properties: Person, Number, Tense, Voice, Mood

A verb is the part of speech that expresses action, existence, or occurrence. It is used to declare or assert something about the subject.[4] Every verb form in Latin may have five properties: **person, number, tense, voice,** and **mood.** A *finite* verb form is *defined* or limited by *all five* of these properties.

PERSON—Latin verbs appear in the **first person** when the subject of the verb is the speaker or speakers (I, we), in the **second person** when the subject is the person addressed (you, you [pl.]), and in the **third person** when the subject is the person or thing spoken about (he, she, it, they, or any specific noun that could replace these pronouns: e.g., the boy, Cicero, dangers).[5]

NUMBER—Latin verbs appear in the **singular** when the subject is one and the **plural** when the subject is more than one.[5]

TENSE—The tense of a Latin verb indicates both **time** and **aspect:**

1. time: present, past, or future
2. aspect: simple, progressive, repeated, or completed

Aspect refers to the way the action of a verb is looked at and in particular indicates the relation of the action to the passage of time.

A verb that has *simple aspect* represents an action as *simply* occurring.

> Mom, I *see* a baby duck! (present time)
> That boy *ate* two dinners. (past time)
> The candidate *will lose* the election tomorrow. (future time)

A verb that has *progressive aspect* represents an action as *being in progress.*

> The girl *is eating* an ice-cream cone. (present time)
> The boy *was walking* to school when he saw a baby duck. (past time)
> She*'ll be comin'* 'round the mountain when she comes. (future time)

A verb that has *repeated aspect* represents an action as *repeated* or habitual.

> She *walks* to school every day. (present time)
> The boy *used to eat* ice-cream cones. (past time)
> I *shall sit* here on and off for days and days. (future time)

A verb that has *completed aspect* represents an action as already *completed.*

> I *have* now *finished* my lunch. (present time)
> When they returned home, the sailors *had sailed* a thousand miles. (past time)
> She *will have cleaned up* her room by the time Dad gets home. (future time)

---

4. There are, in fact, several kinds of verbs:
   —transitive verbs, which carry the action from a subject to a direct object: the cat *catches* the mouse
   —intransitive verbs, which do *not* carry the action from a subject to a direct object: the cat *sleeps*
   —linking (copulative) verbs, which equate the subject with a noun or adjective in the predicate: the cat *is* a thief; the cat is black.

5. A verb agrees with its subject in *person* and *number.* This is called subject-verb agreement.

It should be clear that verb tenses can *share the same time* but *differ in aspect*. The verbs in the following English sentences are all in past time; they differ *only* in aspect.

The boy *laughed*.	simple aspect
The boy *was laughing*.	progressive aspect
Every time his friend sang, *the boy laughed*.	repeated aspect
Because *the boy had laughed*, his friend was angry.	completed aspect

All the Latin tenses that express progressive aspect may also express repeated aspect. Context usually makes clear whether a progressive aspect or a repeated aspect translation is more appropriate.

VOICE—Latin verbs appear in the **active** voice when their subjects are performing the action of the verb. (The cat scratches.) They appear in the **passive** voice when their subjects are receiving the action of the verb. (The cat is scratched.)

MOOD—Latin verbs occur in one of three different moods based on the *writer's or speaker's attitude* toward the factuality or likelihood of the action expressed. One uses the **indicative** mood to represent something as factual or to ask a question of fact. (The cat *is scratching* the furniture. Why *is* the cat *scratching* the furniture?) One uses the **imperative** mood to give a command. (Mom, *scratch* my back.) To represent an action as *possible, wished for, doubtful*, or *nonfactual* in some other way, one uses the **subjunctive** mood. (*If only* my cat *would not scratch* the furniture. My cat *might scratch* your arm.)

§6. The Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood: Overview

Since Latin tenses have three possible times (*present, past, future*) and three possible aspects (*simple, progressive/repeated, completed*—the progressive and repeated always being grouped together in Latin), it would have been most efficient if Latin had had nine tenses corresponding to the nine possible combinations of time and aspect. In fact, Latin has only six tenses in the indicative mood. Three Latin tenses have two possible combinations of time and aspect. A list of the six tenses of the indicative mood and their times and aspects follows, with sample English translations for each.

1. **Present**: reports an action in *present* time with either *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She thinks. She is thinking. She thinks [every day/often/repeatedly].)
2. **Imperfect**: reports an action in *past* time with *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She was thinking. She used to think. She thought [every day/often/repeatedly].)
3. **Future**: reports an action in *future* time with either *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She will think. She will be thinking. She will think [every day/often/repeatedly].)
4. **Perfect**:
   a. reports an action in *present* time with *completed* aspect (She has thought.)
   or b. reports an action in *past* time with *simple* aspect. (She thought.)
5. **Pluperfect**: reports an action in *past* time with *completed* aspect. (She had thought.)
6. **Future Perfect**: reports an action in *future* time with *completed* aspect. (She will have thought.)

The chart below shows these six tenses arranged according to time and aspect with a sample verb showing the corresponding tense in English:

The Six Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood

A S P E C T

T		Simple	Progressive/Repeated	Completed
I	Present	Present "he sings"	Present "he is singing" "he sings (every day)"	Perfect "he has sung"
M	Past	Perfect "he sang"	Imperfect "he was singing" "he sang (every day)"	Pluperfect "he had sung"
E	Future	Future "he will sing"	Future "he will be singing" "he will sing (every day)"	Future perfect "he will have sung"

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present indicative and the future indicative have both simple aspect and progressive/repeated aspect. Be flexible when considering how to translate these tenses. Context helps to determine the appropriate translation.

2. The perfect tense is unique among the indicative tenses in that it refers to *two different times* with *two different aspects* (present completed or past simple). Context helps to determine the appropriate translation, but always consider *both* possibilities.

☛ DRILL 5–6 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§7. The Vocabulary Entry for a Verb: Principal Parts

The full vocabulary entry for a verb contains four **principal parts** and English meanings for the verb. The four principal parts are the *given elements* from which all the forms of a Latin verb are created. For example:

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus move

Principal Part			
1	**moveō**	first person sing. present active indicative	"I move"
2	**movēre**	present active infinitive	"to move"
3	**mōvī**	first person sing. perfect active indicative	"I moved" / "I have moved"
4	**mōtus**	perfect passive participle	"(having been) moved"

LEARN WHAT EACH PRINCIPAL PART IS AND HOW IT IS TO BE TRANSLATED. ALWAYS MEMORIZE ALL FOUR PRINCIPAL PARTS OF EACH VERB.

6. Latin verbs are named by the first principal part (**moveō, vocō**). By contrast, English verbs are named by the infinitive (to move, to call).

7. An infinitive is a verbal noun with the properties of tense and voice.

8. A participle is a verbal adjective with the properties of tense and voice. As mentioned in the vocabulary note on principal parts (p. 25), the fourth principal part is *usually* but not *always* the perfect passive participle ending in either -us or -um. Certain verbs that lack perfect passive participles have future active participles as their fourth principal parts, which end in -ūrus.

§8. The Four Conjugations

Latin verbs are grouped in four different families called **conjugations**. Each verb belongs to *one conjugation only*, and each conjugation differs slightly from the others in how it creates certain forms. The four conjugations are distinguished and identified by the *vowel preceding the -re ending of the second principal part* (present active infinitive). The following sets of principal parts will serve as examples of the four conjugations:

1st conjugation	-ā-	vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus call
2nd conjugation	-ē-	moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus move
3rd conjugation	-e-	regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule
4th conjugation	-ī-	audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear

OBSERVATION

The -ē- indicating a second conjugation verb is *long*, but the -e- indicating the third conjugation is *short*.

The finite forms of a Latin verb are created by:

1. taking a stem from one of the principal parts
2. *sometimes* adding an **infix**[9] that indicates the tense
3. adding *personal endings* that indicate three things: person, number, and voice.

When one generates a complete set of forms of a particular tense in Latin, one is said to **conjugate** the verb in that tense, and the resulting set of forms is called a **conjugation** of that tense.[10]

Since verbs of the first and second conjugations form the present, imperfect, and future active indicative in the same ways, they are here introduced together.

Finding the Present Stem

For all conjugations the stem for the present, imperfect, and future active indicative is found by removing the -re from the *second principal part*. This stem is called the **present stem**. All verb forms made with the present stem when taken together are called the **present system** of the verb. The vowel at the end of this stem is called the **stem vowel**. Thus, for example:

1st:	vocō, *vocā*re, vocāvī, vocātus call	present stem: vocā-
2nd:	moveō, *movē*re, mōvī, mōtus move	present stem: movē-

☛ **DRILL 7–8 MAY NOW BE DONE.**

---

9. An **infix** (< **īnfīgō**, fasten in) is an inflectional element appearing in the middle of a word.

10. There are thus two meanings for the word "conjugation": 1. the name for each of the four families of verbs (first conjugation, second conjugation, etc.); 2. a complete set of forms for a particular tense of a given verb.

§9. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

Present Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the present active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the -re from the *second principal part*)
2. add the **active personal endings** directly to the present stem

The active personal endings are:

Person	Singular	
1	-ō, -m	I
2	-s	you
3	-t	he, she, it
	Plural	
1	-mus	we
2	-tis	you (pl.)
3	-nt	they

OBSERVATIONS

1. The active personal endings are used to form the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. Although two endings are given for the first person singular (-ō, -m), they are *not* interchangeable. The present active indicative and the future active indicative use -ō. The imperfect active indicative uses -m.

2. The active personal endings will be used to form many tenses and conjugations in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

Thus the present active indicative conjugations of, for example, vocō and moveō, are:

Present Stem:	vocā-		movē-	
Singular				
1	vocō	I call	moveō	I move
2	vocās	you call	movēs	you move
3	vocat	he, she, it calls	movet	he, she, it moves
Plural				
1	vocāmus	we call	movēmus	we move
2	vocātis	you (pl.) call	movētis	you (pl.) move
3	vocant	they call	movent	they move

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present active indicative of first- and second-conjugation verbs has no infix to mark tense. The personal endings are added directly to the present stem.

2. In the first person singular form of all first-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -ā- contracts with the -ō of the ending (*vocāō > vocō).[11] THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR FORM IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART AND MUST BE MEMORIZED.

3. In the first person singular form of all second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -ē- shortens before the -ō of the ending (*movēō > moveō). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR FORM IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART AND MUST BE MEMORIZED.

11. The symbol > means "becomes."

4. In the third person singular and plural of *both* first- and second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowels (-ā- and -ē- respectively) shorten before the endings -t and -nt. A long vowel always shortens when it immediately precedes these two endings. The shortening of long vowels before certain final consonants is referred to in this book as the **long vowel rule**.

5. Although there *are* words in Latin for the personal pronouns "I," "you," etc., these are regularly omitted when they are the subjects of verbs. THE ACTIVE PERSONAL ENDINGS SUPPLY THE SUBJECTS, AND SO THESE PRONOUNS ARE NOT REQUIRED. In the third person singular, if no subject is expressed, the appropriate pronoun (he, she, or it) must be determined from context. If the subject *is* expressed, *no pronoun should be supplied*. Compare, for example:

ambulat	he, she, *or* it walks
poēta ambulat	the poet walks

6. The English translations for the present-tense forms given above have simple aspect. Because the present tense also has progressive/repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I am calling," "I call (repeatedly)," etc.

Imperfect Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the imperfect active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the -re from the *second principal part*)
2. add the *infix* for the imperfect active indicative: -bā-
3. add the *active personal endings* (use -m for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active indicative conjugations of, for example, **vocō** and **moveō** are:

Present Stem:		vocā-		movē-	
Infix:		-bā-		-bā-	
Singular					
1		vocābam	I was calling	movēbam	I was moving
2		vocābās	you were calling	movēbās	you were moving
3		vocābat	he, she, it was calling	movēbat	he, she, it was moving
Plural					
1		vocābāmus	we were calling	movēbāmus	we were moving
2		vocābātis	you (pl.) were calling	movēbātis	you (pl.) were moving
3		vocābant	they were calling	movēbant	they were moving

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending -m, as they do before the endings -t and -nt. Hence the long vowel rule is:

THE ENDINGS -M, -T, AND -NT SHORTEN PRECEDING LONG VOWELS.

2. The English translations for the imperfect tense forms given above have progressive aspect. Because the imperfect tense also has repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I used to call," "I called (repeatedly)," etc.

Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the future active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the -re from the *second principal part*)
2. add the *infix* for the future active indicative: -bi-
3. add the *active personal endings* (use -ō for first person singular)

Thus the future active indicative conjugations of, for example, vocō and moveō are:

Present Stem:		voca-		move-	
Infix:		-bi-		-bi-	
Singular					
1		vocābo	I shall call	movēbo	I shall move
2		vocābis	you will call	movēbis	you will move
3		vocābit	he, she, it will call	movēbit	he, she, it will move
Plural					
1		vocābimus	we shall call	movēbimus	we shall move
2		vocābitis	you (pl.) will call	movēbitis	you (pl.) will move
3		vocābunt	they will call	movēbunt	they will move

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the -i- of the infix -bi- contracts with the ending -ō to give the resulting form (*vocābiō > vocābō; *movēbiō > movēbō). MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION TO THE RULES FOR FORMING THE FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE.

2. In the third person plural, the -i- of the infix -bi- changes to -u-. The -u- is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the future active indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

3. The English translations for the future tense forms given above have simple aspect. Because the future tense also has progressive/repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I shall be calling," "I shall call (repeatedly)," etc.

☛ DRILL 9 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§10. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of the Irregular Verbs *sum* and *possum*

The verb **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,**[12] "be, exist," and the verb **possum, posse, potuī, —,** "be able, can," are irregular verbs. An **irregular verb** is a verb that does *not* belong to any of the four conjugations. **Sum** and **possum** have irregular forms in the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. The conjugations of these three tenses of these verbs are presented below. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

---

12. The fourth principal part of most verbs is the perfect passive participle (see §7). However, the fourth principal of sum—futūrus—is a future active participle and is translated "about to be."

Present Active Indicative of sum and possum

Singular

1	sum	I am	possum	I am able
2	es	you are	potes	you are able
3	est	he, she, it is	potest	he, she, it is able

Plural

1	sumus	we are	possumus	we are able
2	estis	you (pl.) are	potestis	you (pl.) are able
3	sunt	they are	possunt	they are able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present active indicative, the stem of **sum** shifts between s- (first person singular and plural, third person plural) and **es-** (second person singular and plural, third person singular). The active personal endings are familiar: **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.**

2. The verb **possum** is in origin a combination of the Latin adjective potis or pote (able) and the verb **sum**. The adjective appears as a prefix: either pos- (added to forms of sum beginning with s-) or pot- (added to forms of sum beginning with e-).

Imperfect Active Indicative of sum and possum

Singular

1	eram	I was	poteram	I was able
2	erās	you were	poterās	you were able
3	erat	he, she, it was	poterat	he, she, it was able

Plural

1	erāmus	we were	poterāmus	we were able
2	erātis	you (pl.) were	poterātis	you (pl.) were able
3	erant	they were	poterant	they were able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the imperfect active indicative, the stem of **sum** is erā-.[13] The stem vowel -ā- in the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural shortens according to the long vowel rule. Compare this stem vowel (-ā-) with the sign of the imperfect active indicative for first- and second-conjugation verbs (-bā-).

2. Since the stem of **sum** in the imperfect active indicative begins with e-, the prefix pot- is used throughout the imperfect active indicative conjugation of **possum**.

3. A strict English translation of the verb **sum** in the imperfect tense with progressive aspect would be "I was (being)," "you were (being)," etc. However, the English past tense is regularly used in contexts that makes this progressive aspect clear. For example, in the phrase "when I was a girl," the state of being a girl is understood to have occurred over time. Thus the past tense in English may express progressive aspect.

---

13. erā- was derived by the addition of -ā- to the original stem *es-. Whenever the single letter *-s- appeared between vowels in Latin, it changed to -r-. This sound change is called **rhotacism** (< the Greek letter *rho*) and is thought to have occurred in the fifth and fourth centuries B.C.E.

Future Active Indicative of **sum** and **possum**				
Singular				
1	erō	I shall be	poterō	I shall be able
2	eris	you will be	poteris	you will be able
3	erit	he, she, it will be	poterit	he, she, it will be able
Plural				
1	erimus	we shall be	poterimus	we shall be able
2	eritis	you (pl.) will be	poteritis	you (pl.) will be able
3	erunt	they will be	poterunt	they will be able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the future active indicative, the stem of sum is eri-.[14] Compare this stem vowel (-i-) with the sign of the future active indicative for first- and second-conjugation verbs (-bi-). In the first person singular, the stem vowel -i- contracts with the -ō of the ending (*eriō > erō). In the third person plural, the -i- changes to a -u-, a linguistic remnant of an earlier form. Compare the third person plurals of the future active indicative conjugation of first- and second-conjugation verbs.

2. Since the stem of sum in the future active indicative begins with e-, the prefix pot- is used throughout the future active indicative conjugation of **possum**.

The Two Meanings of the Verb *sum*

The two meanings given for the verb **sum**, "be, exist," must be carefully distinguished. For example:

Rēgīna *est* fīlia deae.	The queen *is* the daughter of a goddess.
Est rēgīna in īnsulā.	A queen *exists* on the island.
	There is a queen on the island.

In the first sentence, est is a copulative or linking verb. It equates the subject (rēgīna, queen) with a Predicate Nominative (fīlia, daughter). When **sum** is used as a copulative verb, it is usually placed between the subject and the Predicate Nominative.

In the second sentence, est is *not* a copulative verb. It simply states that the subject (rēgīna, queen) *exists*. When **sum** is not copulative, it asserts the existence of the subject and often (though not always) precedes the subject. It is convenient to translate this use of **sum** with the English word "there" and the appropriate form of the verb "be" (as in the second translation offered above ["there is"]). Although "there" comes first in the translation, it is *not* the subject: it is the "queen" who exists.[15]

☛ DRILL 10 MAY NOW BE DONE.

---

14. **eri-** was derived by the addition of -i- to the original stem *-es, and, by rhotacism, the intervocalic -s- changed to an -r-.

15. The word "there" in this usage is called an **expletive** (< expleō, fill out). It stands in place of and anticipates the actual subject.

§11. Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

A **transitive verb** expresses an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing. The person or thing receiving the action is the direct object (see §1). For example:

> The dog *catches* the ball.
> She *was sending* a package.

The verbs in these sentences ("catches" and "was sending") are *transitive* (< **trānseō**, go across). The direct objects in these sentences, "ball" and "package," would be expressed in Latin in the accusative case.

Many transitive verbs, such as "catches" and "was sending," *require direct objects to complete their meanings.* Many transitive verbs, however, may be used **absolutely**; that is, they may occur without an expressed direct object. For example, to the question "What are you doing?" the response "I am writing" could be considered complete, although a direct object (book, some letters) is implied.

An **intransitive verb** expresses an action that is *not* directly exerted on a person or thing. It cannot take a direct object. For example:

> He *stands* on the corner.
> I *shall go* home.

Two important types of intransitive verbs are *copulative verbs*[16] and *verbs that express motion* (go, come, etc.). The actions of the verbs in these sentences are not exerted on direct objects. In the second sentence, the adverb "home" (= homeward) is *not* a direct object since the action of "shall go" is not exerted upon "home."

For the most part, verbs that are transitive in English are transitive in Latin. However, there are several important exceptions. These are indicated in the vocabulary lists and notes.

☛ DRILL 11 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§12. Complementary Infinitive

The infinitive is an *abstract verbal noun* in the *neuter singular.* It is indeclinable; that is, although it is a noun, it does *not* have case endings, and it has limited syntactic functions. The infinitive has the verbal properties of tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive).[17] As noted in §7, the second principal part of every verb is the present active infinitive and is regularly translated "to _____." For example: **movēre**, "to move."

---

16. For a definition of *copulative* verbs see §1.

17. An infinitive (< **īnfīnītīvus**, not limited) is a verb form that is *not limited* by person and number.

The infinitive may be used to *complete* the meaning of another verb. Such an infinitive is called a **Complementary Infinitive** (< compleō, fill out). For example:

Insulam *vidēre* possum.   The island (d.o.) *to see* I am able.
                                  I am able *to see* the island.
Labōrāre dēbēmus.   *To work* we ought.
                                  We ought *to work*.

The syntax of each italicized word (vidēre, labōrāre) is **Complementary Infinitive**.

OBSERVATION

> In the first sentence the verbal idea begun with "I am able" is completed by the infinitive "to see": the infinitive specifies *what* the subject of possum is able to do. Similarly, in the second sentence the verbal idea begun with "we ought" is completed by the infinitive "to work": the infinitive specifies *what* the subject of dēbēmus ought to do. Verbs that can take a Complementary Infinitive, such as possum and dēbeō, are identified in the vocabulary notes.

§13. Object Infinitive

The infinitive may be used as the *direct object* of another verb. Such an infinitive is called an **Object Infinitive**. For example:

Agricola *labōrāre* optat.   The farmer *to work* desires.
                                    The farmer desires *to work*.

The syntax of the italicized word (labōrāre) is **Object Infinitive**.

OBSERVATION

> The Object Infinitive may be understood as a variety of Complementary Infinitive. The infinitive labōrāre in the sentence above both is the direct object of **optat** and serves to complete the verbal idea begun with **optat**.

§14. Dative of the Possessor

The dative case may be used to indicate the *person who possesses* something. This use is an extension of the case's referential function, and a dative so used is called the **Dative of the Possessor**.[18] For example:

Dominō est liber.   *To the master* there is a book.
                                  The master has a book.
Erat *fēminīs* consilium.   There was *to the women* a plan.
                                  The women had a plan.

The syntax of each italicized word (**dominō, fēminīs**) is **Dative of the Possessor**.

OBSERVATIONS

> 1. In a sentence containing a Dative of the Possessor, the noun *possessed* appears in the nominative case as the subject of a form of the verb sum. The verb asserts the existence of the noun in the nominative case with reference to the person in the dative case.

18. The Dative of the Possessor is also known as the Dative of Possession.

2. The translations of these sentences move from the more to the less literal. In the less literal translation, the Dative of the Possessor becomes in English the subject of the verb "have," and the nominative of the thing possessed becomes the direct object.

3. The Dative of the Possessor is *always* a person.

Expressions of Possession Compared

In addition to the Dative of the Possessor, Latin may report that someone possesses something in two other ways: with the verb **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus,** "have, hold; consider" and with the Genitive of Possession (see §1). Although these three constructions differ slightly in emphasis, the differences cannot always be represented in English translations. For example:

Dominus librum habet.	The master a book (d.o.) has.
	The master has a book.
Dominō est liber.	To the master there is a book.
	The master has a book.
Liber est dominī.	The book is of the master.
	The book is the master's.

The sentence **Dominus librum habet** is a neutral statement of ownership, in which equal stress is given to both possessor and thing possessed.

In the sentence **Dominō est liber** (Dative of the Possessor), the thing possessed receives slightly greater stress because it is the subject of the sentence. A sentence with a Dative of the Possessor asserts *both* the existence of the thing possessed *and* possession by the person in the dative.

In the sentence **Liber est dominī**, the Genitive of Possession *in the predicate* lays stress on the possessor. The existence of the thing possessed is assumed, and the sentence asserts only its possession by the person in the genitive.

The first two sentences answer the question "What does the master have?" The third answers the question "Whose is the book?"

§15. Introduction to the Latin Sentence and Prose Word Order

Like any language, Latin seeks to be understood, and its aim is most often toward *clarity*. A sentence of Latin prose is not a puzzle to be figured out and not an ill-arranged version of English in a foreign tongue. Although it is rarely the same as the order of an English sentence with equivalent meaning, the word order of a Latin sentence is important and joins with the words themselves to convey the writer's precise meaning. The same may be said of English, but because English words have far fewer inflectional endings than Latin words, fewer orders are available for conveying a particular meaning. In the sentence "The girl loves the boy," "girl" is understood as the subject of the verb because it appears *before* the verb, and "boy" is understood as the direct object because it appears *after* the verb.

A greater degree of inflection of its nouns and verbs allows Latin a more flexible

word order than is possible in English. The same sentence (The girl loves the boy) could theoretically be written in Latin in six different orders. The three words **puella**, **puerum**, and **amat** could appear in any order, and basic syntax and meaning would be clear from the particular inflectional ending on each word.

Meaning may thus be conveyed by a variety of orders, but the determining factors in the order of a Latin sentence are **emphasis, balance, and economy**.

EMPHASIS—The two most important places in a Latin sentence are the beginning (first word) and the end (last word).[19] If no special emphasis is given to any element of a sentence, the subject and the verb—the most important syntactic elements of a sentence—normally occupy these positions, the subject first and the verb last. The other elements of a sentence (e.g., direct object, indirect object, prepositional phrases) appear between the subject and the verb. This unemphatic Latin word order may be called **neutral** because although it contains two important positions (first and last), no special emphasis is placed on the words that occupy these positions.

When neutral order is *not* followed, the words in the first and last positions often receive special emphasis. For example:

Rēgina nautīs dōna dat.	The queen to the sailors gifts (d.o.) is giving.
(neutral word order)	The queen is giving gifts to the sailors.
Dōna rēgina nautīs dat.	Gifts (d.o.) the queen to the sailors is giving.
(dōna emphasized)	The queen is giving *gifts* to the sailors.

The second sentence violates neutral word order by placing the direct object first, ahead of the subject. Thus **dōna** receives additional emphasis.[20] However, in the sentence **Dōna nautīs dat** (She gives gifts to the sailors), *no additional emphasis* is placed on **dōna** because no subject expressed in the nominative case has been moved from its normal position at the beginning of the sentence.

BALANCE—Latin sentences often exhibit symmetrical arrangements and thereby achieve a kind of balance. For example, the placing of subject first and verb last gives equal weight to the beginning and end of a sentence. The use of conjunctions that signal parallelism such as **et** ... **et** ... also contributes to an impression of balance.

Latin writers often achieve *balance between contrasting phrases* by arranging grammatical elements in *parallel* sequence:

Rēgina et *gladiōs nautīs* et *dōna incolīs* dat.	
A B A B	
The queen both *swords* (d.o.) *to the sailors* and *gifts* (d.o.) *to the inhabitants* gives.	
The queen gives both *swords to the sailors* and *gifts to the inhabitants.*	

In this sentence the accusatives (**gladiōs** and **dōna**) and the datives (**nautīs** and **incolīs**) are placed in a parallel ABAB arrangement.

---

19. The observations made here regarding the Latin sentence apply as well to Latin phrases and clauses.

20. Such emphasis is often hard to convey in an English translation, but stressing or italicizing the emphasized word(s) is sometimes effective.

Equally common is the arrangement of grammatical elements in inverted sequence:

Rēgīna et *gladiōs nautīs* et *incolīs dōna* dat.
        A   B   B   A
The queen both *swords* (d.o.) *to the sailors* and *to the inhabitants gifts* (d.o.) gives.
The queen gives both *swords to the sailors* and *to the inhabitants gifts.*

In this sentence a grammatical sequence (accusative, dative) is reversed the second time it appears (dative, accusative). In this way, the contrasting parts of the sentence (gladiōs nautīs and incolīs dōna) are balanced against each other. This ABBA, or inverted, arrangement is the rhetorical device chiasmus (< Greek letter *chi* [χ], in which the lines are crossed).

ECONOMY—Consider the following Latin phrase and its English translation:

librum poētae   the book [d.o.] of the poet

Because Latin has inflectional endings for its nouns and because Latin lacks a definite article (the), five words and a notation about syntax are required in English to translate what Latin expresses in two. This comparison gives some indication of the *natural economy* of the Latin language.

In general, Latin writers use all the syntactic features of the language to express ideas in the shortest and clearest way. A common feature of Latin writing is called ellipsis, the omission of one or more words that can easily be supplied from context. For example:

Nautae dōnum rēgīna dat, poētae librum.
To the sailor a gift (d.o.) the queen gives, to the poet a book (d.o.).
The queen gives to the sailor a gift; [the queen gives] to the poet a book.

In this sentence a grammatical sequence is set forth in the first clause (dative, accusative, nominative, verb). This pattern is then repeated in the second clause (dative, accusative), but the syntactic elements *common* to the two clauses (subject, verb) are omitted: *only the changed elements are expressed.* That is, the reader is expected to supply rēgīna dat to complete the second clause.

Latin sentences that contain ellipses of this kind may seem to exhibit a quality that is the very opposite of balance since one clause is longer and contains more grammatical elements than the other. However, the ready comprehension of a sentence with ellipsis is only possible because of an underlying sense of symmetry, a predisposition to make the parts of a sentence as balanced as possible.

Often grammatically shared elements are *distributed between* two balanced clauses. For example:

Puerī nautās in viā, in agrō agricolās vident.
The boys sailors (d.o.) in the street, in the field farmers (d.o.) see.
The boys [see] sailors in the street; [the boys] see farmers in the field.

The subject and verb, placed first and last, are common to both clauses. Ellipses of this kind create clauses and sentences that exhibit both balance (in length) and economy (in words).

Guidelines for Reading and Translating Latin Sentences

Reading Latin means comprehending Latin in Latin. *English does not play a part in reading Latin,* but an important stage on the way to achieving reading ability in Latin is the translating of many Latin sentences and larger texts into English. Translation should usually be as literal as possible because the English rendering should replicate as closely as possible the Latin original. Literal translation allows student and teacher to be sure that the Latin text is being understood in the same way, particularly with reference to syntax. Moreover, literal translation trains the student to think in the syntactic patterns of Latin and thereby to achieve true *reading* proficiency more quickly. The following guidelines will help develop good habits for both translating and reading.

1. WHEN TRANSLATING A LATIN SENTENCE, GO IN ORDER FROM LEFT TO RIGHT. First translate in Latin word order, then give a second version, making minimum necessary changes for clear English. Going in order makes it possible to:
   a. note and appreciate nuances of meaning signaled by particular word orders;
   b. give correct sense when ambiguities arise;
   c. most important, *read and understand Latin as it was written.*

2. IF NO NEW NOMINATIVE SUBJECT IS EXPRESSED, ASSUME THAT THE SUBJECT IS THE SAME AS THE SUBJECT OF THE PRECEDING SENTENCE.

3. MAJOR GRAMMATICAL ELEMENTS (SUBJECT, INDIRECT OBJECT, DIRECT OBJECT), PARTICULARLY THOSE REFERRING TO *PEOPLE* RATHER THAN *THINGS,* TEND TO BE PLACED AT OR NEAR THE BEGINNING OF A SENTENCE.

4. GENITIVES ARE REGULARLY PLACED *AFTER* THE NOUNS THEY QUALIFY OR LIMIT.

5. ADVERBIAL ELEMENTS (ADVERBS, ADVERBIAL PHRASES) ARE REGULARLY PLACED *BEFORE* THE VERBS OR OTHER WORDS THEY MODIFY.

6. IN QUESTIONS, VERBS TEND TO BE PLACED *FIRST.*

7. COPULATIVE VERBS ARE GENERALLY PLACED *BETWEEN* SUBJECTS AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVES OR PREDICATE ADJECTIVES, BOTH OF WHICH TEND TO COME FIRST IN SENTENCES OR CLAUSES.

8. WHEN SUM MEANS "EXIST," IT TENDS TO COME *BEFORE* ITS SUBJECT AND OFTEN FIRST IN A SENTENCE.

9. POSTPOSITIVE WORDS APPEAR IN THE SECOND OR THIRD POSITION IN A SENTENCE. A postpositive word is a conjunction that does not appear first in a sentence, but, because it connects two sentences and *indicates the logical relation between them,* it is usually *translated first.*

☛ DRILL 12–15 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A clever slave, Davus, is pretending not to understand his master's plan to stop his son's marriage.

   Davo' sum, nōn Oedipus. (TERENCE, *ANDRIA* 194)

   Davus, Davī *m.* Davus; **Davo'** = **Davos**, archaic nom. sing. for **Davus**
   Oedipus, Oedipī *m.* Oedipus, who solved the riddle of the Sphinx

2. A remark attributed to Herodes Atticus (an Athenian who became a Roman consul in 107 C.E.) when he responded to a man attempting to appear to be what he was not

   videō barbam et pallium; philosophum nōndum videō.

   (AULUS GELLIUS, *NOCTĒS ATTICAE* IX.2.4)

   barba, barbae *f.* beard
   nōndum (adv.) not yet
   pallium, palliī *n.* cloak
   philosophus, philosophī *m.* philosopher

§16. Names in Latin I

Like any noun, each proper name in Latin belongs to a particular declension and is declined using the endings of that declension. For example:

> **Rōmulus, Rōmulī** *m.* Romulus, legendary founder of Rome
> **Remus, Remī** *m.* Remus, brother of Romulus

While legendary and fictional characters often had one name, a Roman man regularly had three names: a **praenōmen** (name in front), a **nōmen** (name), and a **cognōmen** (additional name).[1] For example:

Lūcius   **Cornēlius** **Sulla,**   **Lūciī Cornēliī Sullae** *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla

praenōmen   nōmen   cognōmen

The *praenōmen* was the name for an individual and is equivalent to a first name in English. The *nōmen* was the name of the **gēns** (clan or group of families) to which a person belonged and is equivalent to a last name. The *cognōmen* often indicated a particular family or a smaller group of families within the *gēns*. In the example above, **Lūcius** is a first name, **Cornēlius** is the name of the clan to which he belongs, and **Sulla** a particular family within that clan.[2] A Roman might be addressed by his *praenōmen* alone or by a combination of his *praenōmen* and *nōmen* (e.g., **Lūcī** or **Lūcī Cornēlī**). A Roman might also be addressed by his *cognōmen* alone (e.g., **Sulla**).

There are very few *praenōmina* in common use in Latin, and they are often abbreviated. The most common *praenōmina* and their abbreviations are:

A.	Aulus, Aulī *m.* Aulus	P.	Publius, Publiī *m.* Publius
App.	Appius, Appiī *m.* Appius	Q.	Quīntus, Quīntī *m.* Quintus
C.	Gaius, Gaī *m.* Gaius	Sex.	Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus
Cn.	Gnaeus, Gnaeī *m.* Gnaeus	Ser.	Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius
D.	Decimus, Decimī *m.* Decimus	Sp.	Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius
L.	Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* Lucius	T.	Titus, Titī *m.* Titus
M.	Marcus, Marcī *m.* Marcus	Ti.	Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius
M'.	Manius, Maniī *m.* Manius		

---

1. The plurals of *praenōmen, nōmen,* and *cognōmen* are **praenōmina, nōmina,** and **cognōmina.**

2. Sometimes the *cognōmen* was based on some attribute of an old member of a family. An early hero of Rome, for example, **Gaius Mūcius**, earned the *cognōmen* **Scaevola** (Lefty) because when he was captured in the camp of an enemy king, he defiantly burned his right hand to demonstrate the stubborn will of the Roman people. The name **Mūcius Scaevola** then passed on to his descendants. The origins of many *cognōmina*, however, are unknown.

3. A capital C is in origin a form of the Greek letter *gamma*. In the abbreviations C. and Cn. it still represents a sound equivalent to English and Latin G.

4. **Gaius** is pronounced as if it were spelled *Gaiius. The first -i- combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, -ai-, which is pronounced exactly the same as -ae-. The second -i- is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English -y-. Only one -ī is written in the genitive and vocative singular forms, but they are pronounced as if they were spelled *Gaiī (with a consonantal and a vocalic i).

All these *praenōmina* belong to the second declension and decline regularly using the case endings of that declension.

A Roman woman had only a single name, and this was derived from the name of the *gēns* to which she belonged. The Roman writer Cicero, for example, had the *nōmen* **Tullius**. His daughter was therefore named **Tullia, Tulliae** *f.* If Cicero had had several daughters, a numerical adjective might have been used to distinguish one from another (e.g., **Tertia** [third] = **Tullia Tertia**, [the] Third Tullia).

The following is a list of names that belong to the first or second declension. These names and the names above will be used in the sentences throughout this book. FAMILIARIZE YOURSELF WITH THESE NAMES AND BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THEM AS THEY OCCUR. When translating proper names into English, always give the nominative form of the name. For example, **Marcō librum dabō**, "I shall give a book to *Marcus*."

Historians and Poets

Cornēlius Tacitus, Cornēliī Tacitī *m.* Cornelius Tacitus (Tacitus) (see p. 175)

Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātiī Flaccī *m.* Quintus Horatius Flaccus (Horace) (see p. 172)

C. Sallustius Crispus, C. Sallustiī Crispī *m.* Gaius Sallustius Crispus (Sallust) (see p. 167)

C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valeriī Catullī *m.* Gaius Valerius Catullus (Catullus) (see p. 202)

Historical and Legendary Figures[5]

Aenēās, Aenēae *m.* Aeneas; **Aenēān** = *acc. sing.*; **Aenēā** = *voc. sing.*[6]

M. Antōnius, M. Antōniī *m.* Marcus Antonius (Marc Antony)

L. Cornēlius Sulla, L. Cornēliī Sullae *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla (Sulla)

M. Licinius Crassus, M. Liciniī Crassī *m.* Marcus Licinius Crassus (Crassus)

Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Cn. Pompeiī Magnī *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great)

Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus

C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* Gaius Sempronius Gracchus

L. Sergius Catilīna, L. Sergiī Catilīnae *m.* Lucius Sergius Catilina (Catiline)

5. Aeneas is the legendary Trojan son of Venus and the subject of Vergil's epic poem the *Aeneid*. The Gracchi, as the two brothers Tiberius and Gaius are often called, were prominent in the political struggles at the end of the second century B.C.E. Each was murdered by members of the senatorial class after attempting to introduce various legal reforms. Sulla was a successful general and conservative politician of the late second and early first centuries B.C.E. In 63 B.C.E., Catiline led a conspiracy of dissatisfied nobles and debtors that was suppressed by Cicero when he was consul. Crassus, Pompey (who chose the *cognōmen* "Great" for himself), and Julius Caesar were the three most powerful men in Rome in the middle of the first century B.C.E. Together they made up what is referred to as the "First Triumvirate." Octavian, Caesar's adopted son, and Antony, Caesar's right-hand man, spent the years following Caesar's death in 44 B.C.E. fighting over Caesar's legacy. Octavian defeated Antony in 31 and shortly after took the title Augustus and was established as Rome's first emperor.

6. Aenēās is a first declension noun with an irregular nominative singular (Aenēās).

Famous Women[7]
Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* Julia
Līvia, Līviae *f.* Livia

Place Names
Graecia, Graeciae *f.* Greece
Īlium, Īliī *n.* Ilium, Troy
Troia, Troiae *f.* Troy

---

7. Livia was Augustus's wife. **Julia** is the name of both the daughter and the granddaughter of Augustus, each notorious.

CHAPTER III

Vocabulary

dīligentia, dīligentiae f. diligence,
attentiveness
➤ incola, incolae m. or f. inhabitant
mora, morae f. delay
➤ prōvincia, prōvinciae f. province
terra, terrae f. land, earth

➤ amīcus, amīcī m. friend
➤ forum, forī n. public square, market-
place, forum
➤ imperium, imperiī n. power, authority,
command; empire
➤ inimīcus, inimīcī m. (personal) enemy
odium, odiī n. hatred
➤ populus, populī m. (the) people; populace
➤ Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum m. pl. (the)
Romans

➤ nihil or nīl (indeclinable noun) n. nothing

laudō (1-tr.) praise
➤ pugnō (1-intr.) fight
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass

➤ teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus hold, grasp;
keep, possess; occupy
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus in passive,
be seen; seem (§25)

eō, īre, iī or īvī, itum go (§29)

➤ amīcus, -a, -um friendly (+ dat.)
  ➤ inimīcus, -a, -um unfriendly, hostile
  (+ dat.)
bonus, -a, -um good
➤ laetus, -a, -um happy
➤ līber, lībera, līberum free
➤ magnus, -a, -um large, big; great
malus, -a, -um bad, evil
miser, misera, miserum wretched,
pitiable, miserable
multus, -a, -um much, many
parvus, -a, -um small, little
➤ pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful,
handsome
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman

ā, ab (prep. + abl.) by (§24)
➤ atque or ac (conj.) and (what's more)
➤ mox (adv.) soon; then
nunc (adv.) now
➤ prō (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of,
for; in return for, instead of
propter (prep. + acc.) on account of,
because of:
semper (adv.) always
sine (prep. + abl.) without

Vocabulary Notes

incola, incolae *m.* or *f.* may be either masculine or feminine, although it is much more often masculine. Nouns that may be either gender are said to be common gender; in this book, they will always be indicated by the notation *m.* or *f.*

próvincia, próvinciae *f.* is the term applied to a legally defined territory outside of Italy that had been ac-quired by the Romans and made part of their *imperium*. The first Roman province was Sicilia, Siciliae *f.* Sicily.

amīcus, amīcī *m.* and inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* are substantives of the adjectives amīcus, -a, -um and inimī-cus, -a, -um (see §19). These and certain other substantives require their own vocabulary entries. MEMORIZE SUBSTANTIVES AS VOCABULARY ENTRIES INDEPENDENT OF THEIR RESPECTIVE ADJECTIVES OF ORIGIN.

forum, forī *n.* refers to the center of a town where business, politics, entertainment, and public life take place. The Roman forum (Forum Rōmānum) housed the law courts and many major temples.

imperium, imperiī *n.* may mean simply a "command," "order," or the "authority" that a person in power has to give a command. When a Roman general or legate was sent to a province in order to govern, he was given imperium—that is, "power" or "authority"—over that province. By extension from these specific cases the word came to mean "supreme power" and finally, in the Imperial period, it came to be the word used to describe the "empire."

inimīcus is used to designate a "personal enemy" as opposed to a public or political enemy.

populus, populī *m.* is a collective noun, a noun that denotes a collection of persons regarded as a single entity. If it is used in the plural, it refers to several peoples.

> *Populus Rōmānus nōn timet.*   The Roman *populace* is not afraid *(people* are not afraid).
> *Dī populōs Italiae amant.*   The gods love the *peoples (populaces)* of Italy.

Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* is a substantive of the adjective Rōmānus, -a, -um. Although Rōmānī is mas-culine, it may refer to a group of mixed gender.

nihil is an *indeclinable neuter singular* noun. A noun that is indeclinable lacks case endings and has only one form. Nihil may perform only the functions of the nominative or the accusative case.

nīl is a contracted form of nihil: the -h- has dropped out, and the two -i-'s have contracted into one -ī-.

pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum is an intransitive verb. It often takes an Ablative of Accompani-ment that indicates the person *against* whom one is fighting.

> *Nautae cum agricolīs pugnant.*   The sailors are fighting *with (= against) the farmers.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus may mean "hold" something in one's hands or "grasp" something with one's intellect. It has an accessory idea of maintaining possession of something once held or grasped. It may also mean "occupy" in the sense of holding to one's place of habitation.

Adjectives

Most first-second-declension adjectives have masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms that follow exactly the pattern of amīcus, amīca, amīcum. Thus they are given in the vocabulary list in a short-ened form (e.g., inimīcus, -a, -um). However, when learning new adjectives, ALWAYS WRITE OUT ADJECTIVE EN-TRIES IN FULL (e.g., inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum). Adjectives that do *not* follow this pattern are written out in full in the vocabulary lists.

Both amīcus, -a, -um and inimīcus, -a, -um are often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the *person to whom* someone is friendly or unfriendly. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

> *Regīna amīca dōnum dōnat.*   The *friendly* queen is giving a gift.
> *Regīna animam puerīs inimīcam habet.*   The queen has a soul *hostile to boys.*

inimīcus, -a, -um is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix in-[2] (not) to amīcus. (For the prefix in-[2] see Appendix P.)

The most common meaning for laetus, -a, -um in all periods of Latin literature is "happy," but when it describes plants, crops, etc., it may mean "flourishing" or "luxuriant." The same word is used metaphorically of literary or oratorical style, in which context its closest English equivalents are "rich" or "luxuriant." When it describes omens or weather, laetus often carries the notion of "favorable" or "propitious."

> *Laetī sunt nautae.*   The sailors are *happy.*
> *Agrōs laetōs agricolae videō.*   I see the *flourishing* fields of the farmer.

līber, lībera, līberum means "free" both in a general sense (unrestrained, open) and in a social sense (free as opposed to enslaved). Līberī, līberōrum *m. pl.* is a substantive of the adjective līber, lībera, līberum and means "children." In classical Latin, it is regularly used *only* in contexts where there is reference made to parents.

magnus, -a, -um has a quantitative sense (big, large) and a qualitative sense (great).

Remember that the stem of pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum is pulchr- and thus, for example, the masculine singular genitive is pulchrī. Latin does not distinguish between "handsome" and "beautiful"; the adjective is used equally of men and women.

atque and its alternate form ac are coordinating conjunctions. They connect a more particular or emphatic element or clause to what has gone before and thus may sometimes be translated "and (what's more)" or "and . . . (too)." atque or ac also may introduce a new point or aspect to a subject already under discussion. While there is no difference in meaning between the two words, atque is used before words beginning with vowels and words that begin with h-. Both are used before words beginning with consonants.

The basic meaning of the adverb **mox** is "soon." By extension from this basic meaning it may mean "then" to mark the next in a series of events or actions.

> Poēta in viam ambulat. *Mox* rēgīnam vidēbit.
> The poet is walking into the street. *Soon* he will see the queen.
> Poēta īram virōrum cōgitābit, *mox* deōrum.
> The poet will ponder the anger of men, *then* the anger of the gods.

The preposition prō has several distinct meanings illustrated in the following sentences:

> Est via *prō* oppidō. There is a street *in front of* the town.
> *Prō* fīliīs labōrat. He works *on behalf of* (his) sons.
> *Prō* factīs poenās dabit. He will pay the penalty *in return for (in exchange for)* (his) deeds.

	Derivatives	Cognates
bonus	*bon*anza; boon	
forum	*for*eign, *for*ensic	*door*
imperium	*imper*ial	
malus	*mal*ice; *mal*ady	
nihil	*nih*ilistic; ann*ih*ilate	
teneō	ob*tain*; tenet; *ten*acious	*ten*don; tone
terra	*terr*itory	*toast; thirst*

§17. First-Second-Declension Adjectives

An **adjective** describes or modifies a noun. Examples of adjectives in English are "good," "happy," "green," "generous."

The vocabulary entry for a first-second-declension adjective contains the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms, followed by the English meaning(s). For example:

bonus, bona, bonum good

With very few exceptions, Latin nouns have only one gender and belong to only one declension. Adjectives, by contrast, have *all genders*, and first-second-declension adjectives use endings borrowed from the first declension when modifying a feminine noun and from the second declension when modifying masculine and neuter nouns.

Like nouns, adjectives are declined. To decline a first-second-declension adjective, TAKE THE *STEM FROM THE FEMININE SINGULAR NOMINATIVE FORM BY DROPPING THE -A* AND ADD ENDINGS FAMILIAR FROM THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS. For example:

bonus, *bona*, bonum
Stem: **bon-**

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Voc.	bone					

OBSERVATIONS

1. The endings of masculine/feminine second-declension *nouns* are used *only* for masculine forms of the adjectives. Feminine forms are supplied by the endings of the *first* declension. The endings of neuter second-declension nouns are used for neuter forms of the adjectives.

2. Adjectives whose masculine singular nominative ends in -us have a separate vocative singular ending (-e). All other vocative forms of adjectives are identical to the nominative forms.

3. As is true for certain masculine/feminine second-declension nouns, some adjectives lack a masculine singular nominative ending and use instead a version of the stem as the masculine singular nominative form. For example:

> miser, misera, miserum   wretched, pitiable, miserable
> pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum   beautiful, handsome

For these adjectives also, the stem is taken from the feminine singular nominative form. Thus the stem of **miser, misera, miserum** is **miser-**, and the stem of **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is **pulchr-**.

§18. Noun-Adjective Agreement

Adjectives are usually placed *after* the nouns they modify, but adjectives of size or quantity often *precede* their nouns. Although a Latin adjective is usually placed after its noun, it is best translated before.

fēmina bona	good woman
multum aurum	much gold

The forms **bona** and **multum** in the examples above have the same *gender, number,* and *case* as the nouns they modify (**bona** = feminine singular nominative or vocative; **multum** = neuter singular nominative, vocative, or accusative). ADJECTIVES MUST AL-WAYS AGREE WITH THE NOUNS THEY MODIFY IN GENDER, NUMBER, AND CASE. This is called **noun-adjective agreement**. For example:

deam pulchram	a beautiful goddess (d.o.)
servōrum miserōrum	of miserable slaves

Because the noun **deam** is feminine singular accusative, the form of the adjective **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** that modifies it must be feminine singular accusative. Similarly, because the noun **servōrum** is masculine plural genitive, the form of the adjective **miser, misera, miserum** must be masculine plural genitive. Consider also the following example:

poēta bonus	a good poet (subj.)

Although **poēta** is a first declension noun, since it is masculine in gender, the adjective that modifies it must have *masculine* (i.e., second declension) endings. From this last example it may be seen that nouns and their modifying adjectives do *not* always have endings that are spelled the same. Their agreement is rather one of *gender, number,* and *case.*[1]

When a noun is modified by two or more adjectives, **et** or **-que** is regularly used to connect the modifiers:

vir magnus et bonus	a great and good man (subj.)

☛ DRILL 17–18 MAY NOW BE DONE.

---

1. When an adjective modifies more than one noun of different genders, it may agree in gender and number with the noun nearest to it. Otherwise, the adjective is masculine and plural if one of the nouns denotes a man, and it is neuter if all the nouns it describes are things.

§19. Substantive Use of the Adjective

Sometimes an adjective stands alone and does not modify a noun. When this occurs, the adjective is being **used substantively** (as a noun) and may be called a **substantive**. When adjectives are used as substantives, they often are translated with the addition of the English words "man," "woman," "thing" (sing.) or "men," "women," "things" (pl.), depending on the gender and number indicated by the ending of the adjective.[2] Case, as always, determines syntax. For example:

Laetus bonam amat.	The happy man the good woman (d.o.) loves.
	The happy man loves the good woman.
Sunt multa in oppidō.	There are many things in the town.

Because **laetus** has a masculine singular ending, the word "man" is added to the translation; because **bonam** has a feminine singular ending, the word "woman" is added to the translation. Because **multa** has a neuter plural ending, the word "things" is added to the translation.

Some Latin adjectives are so commonly used as substantives that they have become virtual nouns: **amīcus, amīcī** *m.*, "friend" (friendly man); **inimīcus, inimīcī** *m.*, "(personal) enemy" (unfriendly man); **Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.*, "(the) Romans" (Roman men).

☛ Drill 19 may now be done.

§20. Predicate Adjective

Like nouns, adjectives may appear with copulative verbs. When an adjective functions in this way, it is called a **Predicate Adjective**, and it must agree with the noun it modifies in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. For example:

Liber est malus.	The book is bad.
Miserī erant servī.	Miserable were the slaves.
	The slaves were miserable.
Puerōs iubēbō esse bonōs.	The boys I shall order to be good.
	I shall order the boys to be good.

The syntax of **malus** and **miserī** is **Predicate Adjective in the nominative case**. The syntax of **bonōs** is **Predicate Adjective in the accusative case**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences, malus, miserī, and bonōs agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case.

2. Predicate adjectives may sometimes be viewed as substantives. Thus the second sentence may be translated "The slaves were miserable men." If the adjective miserī, for example, is understood as a substantive, its syntax is Predicate Nominative.

☛ Drill 20 may now be done.

2. The substantive use of the masculine plural *may* refer to groups of mixed gender. Hence, bonī, for example, may be translated "good people" to indicate that it refers to both men and women.

§21. Introduction to the Passive Voice

The subject of a verb in the *active* voice *performs the action* of the verb. When a verb is in the *passive* voice, the subject does not perform but rather *receives the action* of the verb (see §5). For example:

> The farmers *love* the queen.
> The farmers *are loved* by the queen.

In the first sentence the subject, "farmers," *performs the action* of the verb, "love," and the verb "love" is in the *active* voice. The farmers are *doing the loving.* In the second sentence the subject, "farmers," *receives the action* of the verb, "are loved," and the verb "are loved" is in the *passive* voice. The farmers *are being loved.*

OBSERVATION
> In Latin, as in English, any *transitive* verb—one that takes a direct object—may be found in both the active voice and the passive voice. An *intransitive* verb—one that does *not* take a direct object—is generally *not* found in the passive voice in Latin.[3]

The Latin translation of the first sentence above is:

Agricolae rēgīnam amant.

The verb **amant** is third person plural present *active* indicative. In the second sentence the Latin translation of the verb "are loved" requires a verb in the third person plural present indicative, but since the subject, "farmers," receives the action of the verb, the voice must be *passive.*

All English passive forms are called **compound forms** (< compōnō, put together) because they are made of at least two separate words. For example, "are loved" is a compound of "are" (the third person plural present indicative of the verb "be") and "loved" (the past participle of the verb "love"). *Some* Latin tenses use compound forms in the passive, but many are *un*compounded.

☛ DRILL 21 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§22. Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

Passive Personal Endings

The present, imperfect, and future passive indicative of the first and second conjugations are formed exactly as are their active counterparts, except that passive personal endings are added instead of active personal endings.

---

3. For the impersonal use of the passive of intransitive verbs, see §59.

	Active Personal Endings	Passive Personal Endings
Person	Singular	Singular
1 I	-ō, -m	-or, -r
2 you	-s	-ris/-re
3 he, she, it	-t	-tur
	Plural	Plural
1 we	-mus	-mur
2 you (pl.)	-tis	-minī
3 they	-nt	-ntur

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although two endings are given for the first person singular passive (-or, -r), they are *not* interchangeable. Rather, when an active form ends in -ō, its corresponding passive form ends in -or. When an active form ends in -m, its corresponding passive form ends in -r.

2. The second person singular endings -ris and -re *are* interchangeable. There is no distinction in meaning.

3. Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending -r and the third person plural ending -ntur. Thus, the *full* LONG VOWEL RULE is:

LONG VOWELS SHORTEN BEFORE THE ENDINGS -M, -T, -NT, -R, AND -NTUR.

MEMORIZE THIS RULE.

4. The passive personal endings are used to form many tenses in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

Nearly every form of the present passive system may be formed *by replacing the active personal ending of a particular form with the equivalent passive ending.*

Present Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the present passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the *passive personal endings* (use -or for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the present passive indicative conjugation of vocō, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: vocā-

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular				
1	vocō	I call	vocor	I am (being) called
2	vocās	you call	vocāris/vocāre	you are (being) called
3	vocat	he, she, it calls	vocātur	he, she, it is (being) called
Plural				
1	vocāmus	we call	vocāmur	we are (being) called
2	vocātis	you (pl.) call	vocāminī	you (pl.) are (being) called
3	vocant	they call	vocantur	they are (being) called

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the stem vowel -ā- contracts with the ending -or (*vocāor > vocor) (cf. §9). In the first person singular of second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -ē- shortens before the ending -or (e.g., *movēor > moveor) (cf. §9).

2. For verbs of both the first and second conjugations, whenever the ending -re is used, the second person singular present passive indicative resembles exactly the present active infinitive (e.g., vocāre). Context determines whether such a form is an indicative or an infinitive. ALWAYS WRITE OUT ALL ALTERNATE FORMS COMPLETELY WHEN DOING DRILLS OR EXERCISES.

3. Long vowels shorten before the third person plural ending -ntur according to the long vowel rule. Long vowels do not shorten before the third person singular ending -tur.

4. The English translations for the present passive forms given above reflect the fact that these forms, like their active counterparts, may indicate either simple or progressive/repeated aspect (see §9). For example, vocor may be translated "I am called" (simple aspect), "I am called (repeatedly)" (repeated aspect), or "I am being called" (progressive aspect).

Imperfect Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the imperfect passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the infix for the imperfect indicative: -bā-
3. add the *passive personal endings* (use -r for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the imperfect passive indicative conjugation of voco, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: vocā-
Infix: -bā-

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE
Singular				
1	vocābam	I was calling	vocābar	I was being called
2	vocābās	you were calling	vocābāris/ vocābāre	you were being called
3	vocābat	he, she, it was calling	vocābātur	he, she, it was being called
Plural				
1	vocābāmus	we were calling	vocābāmur	we were being called
2	vocābātis	you (pl.) were calling	vocābāminī	you (pl.) were being called
3	vocābant	they were calling	vocābantur	they were being called

OBSERVATION

Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending -r and the third person plural ending -ntur according to the long vowel rule. Long vowels do not shorten before the third person singular ending -tur.

Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the future passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the infix for the future indicative: -bi-
3. add the *passive personal endings* (use -or for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the future passive indicative conjugation of vocō, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: voca-
Infix: -bi-

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular				
1	vocābō	I shall call	vocābor	I shall be called
2	vocābis	you will call	vocāberis/ vocābere	you will be called
3	vocābit	he, she, it will call	vocābitur	he, she, it will be called
Plural				
1	vocābimus	we shall call	vocābimur	we shall be called
2	vocābitis	you (pl.) will call	vocābiminī	you (pl.) will be called
3	vocābunt	they will call	vocābuntur	they will be called

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the -i- of the infix -bi- contracts with the ending -or to give the resulting form (*vocābior > **vocābor**) (cf. §9).

2. In the second person singular passive, the -i- of -bi- changes to -e- before the endings -ris and -re. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

3. In the third person plural, the -i- of the infix -bi- changes to -u-. The -u- is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the future passive indicative (cf. §9). MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

§23. Synopsis I: Present Active and Passive Indicative

A **synopsis** (< Greek *synopsis*, a seeing all together) is a brief summary or condensed view of the forms of a Latin verb. Generating a synopsis is a systematic way of reviewing and sharpening one's knowledge of verb morphology. To make a synopsis, one chooses at random a verb and then a person and number for the subject. Then the principal parts for that verb are generated, followed by the forms of the verb in all tenses in the given person and number. Here is a model synopsis for timeō in the third person singular.

Principal Parts:	timeō, timēre, timuī, ———				
Person and Number:	3rd sing.				
Indicative	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Present	timet	he, she, it fears	timētur	he, she, it is (being) feared
Imperfect	timēbat	he, she, it was fearing	timēbātur	he, she, it was being feared
Future	timēbit	he, she, it will fear	timēbitur	he, she, it will be feared

OBSERVATIONS

1. This synopsis reviews the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative. When new verb forms are introduced, the synopsis will expand accordingly.

2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given.

☛ DRILL 22–23 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§24. Ablative of Personal Agent

The preposition ā/ab followed by a noun in the ablative case is frequently used with verbs in the passive voice to express the *agent* or *person by whom* the action of the verb is done. The preposition ā/ab is translated "by,"[4] and an ablative so used is called the **Ablative of Personal Agent.** For example:

| Fīlius ā rēgīnā vocābātur. | The son *by the queen* was being summoned. |
| | The son was being summoned *by the queen.* |

The syntax of **rēgīnā** is **Ablative of Personal Agent.**

The Ablative of Personal Agent expresses the person *by whose agency* an action is performed. Thus it is quite different from the Ablative of Means, which expresses the inanimate tool or instrument *by means of which* an action is performed. For example:

Nautae *verbīs* poētae moventur.	The sailors *by (means of) the words* of the poet are (being) stirred up.
	The sailors are (being) stirred up *by the words* of the poet.
Nautae *ā poētā* moventur.	The sailors *by (the agency of) the poet* are (being) stirred up.
	The sailors are (being) stirred up *by the poet.*

Note that *no* preposition is used with the Ablative of Means, while the preposition ā/ab *must* be used with the Ablative of Personal Agent.

---

4. Although it is convenient to translate the Ablative of Personal Agent with the English preposition "by," in Latin the agent of an action in the passive is understood as the person *from* whom the action originates, and thus Latin uses the preposition ā/ab.

§25. The Uses of *video* in the Passive Voice

The verb **video** has two meanings in the passive voice: "be seen" (the passive of "see") and "seem" (i.e., be seen as). When **video** means "be seen," it is often accompanied by an Ablative of Personal Agent. When **video** means "seem," it functions as a copulative verb with a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Adjective in the nominative case.[5] In this usage **video** may also be accompanied by a Complementary Infinitive, a Dative of Reference, or both. For example:

Poēta ā rēgīnā *vidētur.*	The poet by the queen *is (being) seen.*
	The poet *is (being) seen* by the queen.
Miser rēgīnae poēta (esse) *vidētur.*	Wretched to the queen the poet (to be) *seems.*
	The poet *seems* to the queen (to be) wretched.

These sentences illustrate how context helps determine which English translation to use for a form of video in the passive voice.

§26. Ablative of Manner

A noun in the ablative case may express the *way* or *manner* in which an action is performed. An ablative so used is called the **Ablative of Manner**. WHEN A NOUN FUNCTIONING AS AN ABLATIVE OF MANNER IS *NOT MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE*, THE PREPOSITION **CUM** *MUST* BE USED. WHEN A NOUN *IS* MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE, **CUM** IS OPTIONAL. For example:

Agricolae cum *studiō* **labōrābant.**	The farmers *with zeal* were working.
	The farmers were working *with zeal.*
	The farmers were working *zealously.*
Magnā (cum) *cūrā* **in viā ambulābō.**	*With great care* in the street I shall walk.
	I shall walk in the street *with great care.*
	I shall walk in the street *very carefully.*

The syntax of each italicized word (**studiō**, **cūrā**) is **Ablative of Manner**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence **cum** is *required* because no adjective modifies **studiō**.

2. In the second sentence, because **magnā** modifies **cūrā**, **cum** is optional. If **cum** does occur, it usually appears *between* the adjective and the noun, as shown above, because it is the least important element of the phrase, and greater balance of the important elements (**magnā** and **cūrā**) is achieved.

3. An Ablative of Manner may often be translated—less literally—by an English adverb ending in "-ly." In the translation of the second sentence, the word "very" must be used to represent the force of the adjective **magnā**.

---

5. For a definition of copulative verbs see §1.

§27. Subject Infinitive

The infinitive is an indeclinable verbal noun in the neuter singular (see §12). The infinitive may be used as the *subject* of another verb. Such an infinitive is called the **Subject Infinitive.** For example:

> **Bonum est** *labōrāre.*
> Good is to work.
> To work is good.
> Working is good.
>
> **Pulchrum est patriam** *amāre.*
> Beautiful is the country (d.o.) to love.
> To love the country is beautiful.
> Loving (one's) country is beautiful.

The syntax of each italicized word **(labōrāre, amāre)** is **Subject Infinitive.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences **bonum** and **pulchrum** are neuter singular nominative to agree with the subject infinitives they modify. The syntax of each is Predicate Adjective in the nominative case. They may also be considered substantives functioning as Predicate Nominatives (To work is *a good thing,* To love (one's) country is *a beautiful thing*).

2. The Subject Infinitive may take a direct object. In the second sentence **patriam** is the direct object of the infinitive **amāre.**

3. Each of the two subject infinitives in the sentences above may also be translated with an English gerund, also a verbal noun: "working," "loving."

4. When translating sentences with Subject Infinitives, it is often convenient to add the English expletive "it."[6] For example: "It is good to work."

§28. Apposition

Sometimes a noun receives further definition or limitation from another noun placed next to it and often set off in commas. The second noun is called an **appositive** (< ad-**pōnō**, place near to) or is said to be **in apposition** to the noun before it. A NOUN IN APPOSITION MUST BE IN THE SAME CASE AS THE WORD THAT IT DEFINES OR LIMITS.

> **Rēgīna,** *fēmina* **bona et magna, patriam** *Italiam* **amat.**
> The queen, a good and great woman, (her) country (d.o.) Italy loves.
> The queen, a good and great woman, loves (her) country, Italy.

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Rēgīna** is in the nominative case because it is the subject of the verb. **Fēmina** is nominative because it is *in apposition to* or is an *appositive of* **rēgīna.** **Fēmina bona et magna** defines **rēgīna.**

2. **Patriam** is in the accusative case because it is the direct object of the verb. **Italiam** is accusative because it is *in apposition to* or is an *appositive of* **patriam.**

☛ DRILL 24–28 MAY NOW BE DONE.

6. For the meaning of "expletive," see §10.

§29. The Irregular Verb *eō*

The verb eō, īre, iī *or* īvī, itum, "go," is an irregular intransitive verb. It has irregular forms in the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. The conjugations of these three tenses of eō are presented below. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

	Active Indicative		
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*
Singular			
1	eō	ībam	ībō
2	īs	ībās	ībis
3	it	ībat	ībit
Plural			
1	īmus	ībāmus	ībimus
2	ītis	ībātis	ībitis
3	eunt	ībant	ībunt

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although the second principal part of eō has an -ī- before the -re ending, it is *not* a fourth-conjugation verb.

2. In the present active indicative, the stem of eō shifts between e- (first person singular and third person plural) and ī-. (The ī- shortens in the third person singular according to the long vowel rule.) The -u- in the third person plural is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural.

3. In the imperfect and future active indicative, the stem of eō is always ī-. The infixes -bā- and -bi- are used to form these two tenses.

4. For all tenses of eō, the active personal endings are familiar: -ō/-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.

☞DRILL 29 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. An old man desires his friend to be understanding about his newfound crush.

   hūmānum amārest, hūmānum autem ignōscerest. (PLAUTUS, *MERCĀTOR* 320)

amārest = amāre est[7]
autem (postpositive adv.) however; moreover
hūmānus, -a, -um human
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus forgive, pardon; ignōscerest = ignōscere est[7]

2. In a discussion about poverty, the lives of ancient philosophers call to mind the following line of the comic poet Caecilius Statius.

   saepe est etiam sub palliolō sordidō sapientia.

   (CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNĒS* III.56)

etiam (adv.) even
palliolum, palliolī *n.* little cloak
saepe (adv.) often
sordidus, -a, -um dirty, grimy, unwashed
sub (prep. + abl.) under

3. The poet describes the bliss of two lovers.

   mūtuīs animīs amant amantur. (CATULLUS XLV.20)

mūtuus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual

4. The historian reports the command of the leader Camillus to the Roman soldiers starving at the time of the siege of the Gauls. (The soldiers and other Romans had been about to pay ransom for their freedom.)

   suōs in acervum conicere sarcinās et arma aptāre ferrōque nōn aurō reciperāre

   patriam iubet . . . (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* V.49.3)

acervus, acervī *m.* heap, pile
aptō (1-tr.) fit, put on
conicio, conicere,[8] coniēcī, coniectus throw together

reciperō (1-tr.) get back, recover, regain
sarcina, sarcinae *f.* pack, bundle
suus, -a, -um his own

---

7. When es or est follows a word ending in -m or -e, it may drop the initial e- and join the preceding word. This is called aphaeresis (< Greek *aphairesis*, taking away).

8. conicio and conicere are pronounced as if they were spelled *coniicio and *coniicere (with a consonantal and a vocalic -i-).

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary

➤ causa, causae *f.* reason, cause; case
glōria, glōriae *f.* renown, glory
➤ invidia, invidiae *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will,
resentment
➤ sententia, sententiae *f.* thought, feeling;
opinion

➤ altum, altī *n.* deep sea; height
➤ auxilium, auxiliī *n.* aid, help
   ➤ auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* auxiliary
   troops
   caelum, caelī *n.* sky, heaven
➤ socius, sociī *m.* ally, comrade

➤ agō, agere, ēgī, āctus drive; do; spend,
conduct
causam agere (idiom) to conduct *or* plead
a case
➤ canō, canere, cecinī, cantus sing (of)
➤ capiō, capere, cēpī, captus take (up),
capture; win
   cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a
   plan
➤ dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus say, speak, tell
➤ dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus lead; consider
➤ faciō, facere, fēcī, factus make; do
➤ gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus bear; manage,
conduct; perform
   bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war
➤ mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus send
➤ pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus put, place;
set aside
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus write

➤ audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear,
listen (to)
➤ sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive;
feel
➤ veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum come

ego, meī (personal pron.) I; me (§37)
nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) we;
us (§37)
tū, tuī (personal pron.) you (§37)
vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) you
(pl.) (§37)

is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these,
those; *as third-person personal pron.*, he,
she, it; they; him, her, it; them (§37)

altus, -a, -um tall, high; deep
➤ clārus, -a, -um bright, clear; famous
➤ cupidus, -a, -um desirous (+ gen.)
decem (indeclinable adj.) ten
meus, -a, -um my, mine (§38)
noster, nostra, nostrum our, ours (§38)
socius, -a, -um allied
tuus, -a, -um your, yours (§38)
validus, -a, -um strong; healthy
vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.), yours
(pl.) (§38)

➤ equidem (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my
part
per (prep. + acc.) through
➤ quidem (adv.) indeed, certainly; at least
   nē . . . quidem not even

Vocabulary Notes

The noun causa, causae *f.* has a general meaning of "reason" or "cause" and a more particular meaning of legal "case."

invidia, invidiae *f.* is derived from the verb invideō (in + video, look askance at, regard with ill-will).

sententia, sententiae *f.* is derived from the verb sentiō and refers to an opinion, either privately held (thought, feeling) or publicly given (vote, opinion). In the former sense, it may refer to the meaning underlying a speech or an expression. In the latter sense, it may mean the "judgment" or "sentence" of a court. It may also refer to a written or spoken "sentence."

altum, altī *n.* is a substantive of the adjective altus, -a, -um and may mean either "deep sea" or "height."

auxilium, auxiliī *n.* is an abstract noun, a noun that denotes something that cannot be perceived by the senses (e.g., wisdom, happiness, slavery). THE PLURAL OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IN LATIN IS OFTEN USED WITH A CONCRETE MEANING. Thus, in military contexts, the plural of auxilium—auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.*—means "auxiliary troops."

socius, sociī *m.* is a substantive of the adjective socius, -a, -um. It is used both in personal contexts (comrade) and in legal and political ones (ally). It is often used of cities or peoples from outside Italy that were allies of Rome.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus is a verb describing action generally, its particular meanings being derived from context and from the specific direct objects accompanying the verb. It may mean "drive" (cattle, goats, plunder, a chariot, the winds); "do," "act," "manage," "plead" (a court case); or "spend," "conduct" (time, life).

canō, canere, cecinī, cantus is a transitive verb and thus takes a direct object. The third principal part, cecinī, is reduplicated. (See vocabulary note on dō, p. 25.)

> Poeta bellum *canēbat.*   The poet *was singing of war.*

The translation includes the preposition "of" because this is the common English expression. In Latin the direct object of this verb is *always accusative.*

In the third principal part of capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, the root vowel changes to a long -ē-. The change of the vowel indicates a change in tense. A change in root vowel that corresponds to a change in meaning is called ablaut. This phenomenon is common to all PIE languages. Cf. English sing, sang, sung; song.

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus is a verb of *giving, showing,* and *telling* and thus may take a direct object and an indirect object.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus has a concrete and an abstract meaning: "lead" and "consider."

In the third principal part of faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to -ē- (cf. capiō). faciō is a transitive verb that means "make," "do." "Make" includes ideas of *creating, causing,* or *representing* something. "Do" means *perform* or *carry out* an action, a deed, a crime, orders, etc.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus has three distinct senses: 1. "bear" or "carry" (equipment, clothing); 2. "have" or "bear" as a permanent or temporary feature of body or mind (wounds, reputation, anger); or 3. "manage," "conduct," or "perform" (oneself, business, political office). The first of these three meanings is found only in poetry.

In the third principal part of mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to -ī-. mittō is regularly found with two constructions indicating the recipient: ad + accusative or a Dative of Reference.

> Agricola *ad* fīlium pecūniam mittit.   The farmer sends money *to his* son.
> Agricola fīliō pecūniam mittit.   The farmer sends money to his son.

When mittō is accompanied by ad + accusative, the prepositional phrase emphasizes *motion toward* someone or something. With a Dative of Reference, the *person for whom* something is meant is emphasized (i.e., The farmer sends money *meant for* his son).

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus has two distinct meanings: "put," "place," *or* "set aside." Compare the following sentences:

> Incolae arma in oppidō *pōnunt.*   The inhabitants *are placing* weapons in the town.
> Incolae arma pōnunt.   The inhabitants *are setting aside* (their) weapons.

Context helps to determine which meaning is appropriate.

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely. When it takes a direct object, it may be translated either "hear" or "listen to." When it is used absolutely, it may be translated either "hear" or "listen."

| Rēgīna incolās audit. | The queen listens to/hears the inhabitants. |
| Rēgīna audit. | The queen listens/hears. |

In the third principal part of sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to -ē-. The -ē- in the fourth principal part is long before -ns-. -NS- ALWAYS LENGTHENS A PRECEDING VOWEL (cf. īnsula). The basic meaning of sentiō is "perceive through one of the senses." Thus it has an intellectual sense (perceive, observe, notice) and a more physical or emotional sense (experience, feel, suffer).

In the third principal part of veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to -ē-. Veniō is an *intransitive* verb.

The basic meaning of clārus, -a, -um is the visual idea of "bright" or "clear." In this sense, it regularly describes such things as sky, color, or lightning. It has a transferred sense of "evident" or "manifest," and in this sense regularly describes more abstract concepts (plans, affairs). When applied to people, it means "famous" or "distinguished."

cupidus, -a, -um is an adjective often found with an Objective Genitive (see §36).

equidem is an adverb that most often occurs with a verb in the first person (singular or plural). It is used to emphasize a fact concerning oneself or to affirm one's own opinion. It occurs rarely with verbs in the second or third person, but even in such cases it usually has some reference to the writer's or speaker's own opinion.

| Nihil equidem video. | I indeed (for my part) see nothing. |

quidem is an adverb that may: 1. emphasize an immediately preceding word or phrase (indeed, certainly); 2. emphasize an entire sentence (indeed, in fact); 3. emphasize a word, phrase, or sentence as a concession (at least); or 4. add a word, phrase, or sentence as a reinforcement or afterthought of something that precedes (and what is more, and . . . at that).

	Derivatives	Cognates
agō	act, *agent*	*agony; pedagogue; protagonist; axiom*
auxilium	*auxiliary*	wax
caelum	*celestial*	
canō	*cantata;* chant, *incentive*	hen
capiō	*capture;* perceive; muni*cipal*	have; haven; *hawk;* gaff
clārus	*calendar;* de*clare*	low; hale
decem	De*cem*ber; de*ci*mal; *dime;* do*zen*	seven*teen;* dean; *decade;* ten
dīcō	di*ct*ate; *ditto;* ditty	token; para*digm;* theo*di*cy
dūcō	ab*duct; duke;* pro*duce*	tug; tow; team
ego	ego	I
meī		me; *myself*
gerō	*ger*und	
invidia	*invidious;* envy	
is	*id;* *id*entify; *it*erate	
mittō	*missive; intermitt*ent	
nōs	*nos*trum	*us; our*
scrībō	*scr*ibble; manu*scr*ipt	
sentiō	*sent*ence; *sent*iment; sense	send
socius	*soci*al; *soci*ety; as*soci*ate	
validus	in*val*id; *val*ence; a*vail*	wield
veniō	*event;* co*ven*ant; pre*ven*t	come

§30. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

Verbs of the third conjugation are distinguished by a short -e- at the end of the present stem. For example:

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule   Present Stem: **rege-**

A subgroup of the third conjugation (third i-stem) is further distinguished by an -i- before the -ō ending of the first principal part. For example:

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus take, capture   Present Stem: **cape-**

Verbs of the fourth conjugation are distinguished by a long -ī- at the end of the present stem *and* an -i- before the -ō ending of the first principal part. For example:

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear, listen (to)   Present Stem: **audī-**

To form the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of first- and second-conjugation verbs, infixes, endings, or *both* are added directly to the present stem. By contrast, to form the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of third-, third i-stem-, and fourth-conjugation verbs, CERTAIN REGULAR CHANGES MUST BE MADE IN THE STEM VOWELS BEFORE INFIXES OR ENDINGS CAN BE ADDED.

Present Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the present active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	3rd i-stem	4th
-e- → -i-	-e- → -i-	-i- stays as is

3. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use -ō or -or for first person singular) directly to the *changed* present stem

Thus the present active and passive indicative conjugations of, for example, regō, capiō, and audiō are:

Changed Present Stems:

	regi-		capi-		audī- (no change)	
Singular						
	Active	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*
1	regō	regor	capiō	capior	audiō	audior
2	regis	regeris/	capis	caperis/	audīs	audīris/
		regere		capere		audīre
3	regit	regitur	capit	capitur	audit	audītur
Plural						
1	regimus	regimur	capimus	capimur	audīmus	audīmur
2	regitis	regiminī	capitis	capiminī	audītis	audīminī
3	regunt	reguntur	capiunt	capiuntur	audiunt	audiuntur

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular of all third-conjugation verbs, the -i- at the end of the changed present stem contracts with the endings -ō and –or (*e.g.*, *regiō > regō; *regior > regor). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.

2. In the third person plural of all third-conjugation verbs, the -i- changes to -u-. The -u- is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

3. In the first person singular of all third i-stem-conjugation verbs, the -i- at the end of the changed present stem does *not* contract with the endings -ō and –or. THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.

4. In the third person plural of all third i-stem-conjugation verbs, the -i- is followed by -u-. The -u- is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

5. In the second person singular *passive* indicative of third- *and* third i-stem-conjugation verbs, the -i- changes to an -e- before the endings -ris and -re.[1] MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

6. In the present indicative, third i-stem-conjugation verbs differ from third-conjugation verbs *only in the first person singular and the third person plural.*

7. In the first person singular of fourth-conjugation verbs, the -ī- at the end of the present stem shortens before the endings -ō and **-or** (*e.g.*, *audiō > audiō; *audior > audior). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.

8. In the third person plural of all fourth-conjugation verbs, the -ī- is shortened to -i- and is followed by -u-. The -u- is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present active indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

9. In the third person singular *active* of all fourth-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -ī- shortens according to the long vowel rule.

10. Third i-stem-conjugation verbs and fourth-conjugation verbs are identical in their first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural forms.

Imperfect Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the imperfect active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	*3rd i-stem*	*4th*
-e- → -ē-	-e- → -iē-	-ī- → -iē-

3. add the *infix* for the imperfect indicative: -bā-
4. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use -m or -r for first person singular)

---

1. The original stem vowel of the third conjugation was -i-, but this -i- changed to -e- before the -re ending of the present active infinitive.

Thus the imperfect active indicative conjugations of, for example, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

Changed Present Stems:					
	regē-		capiē-		audiē-
Infix	-bā-		-bā-		-bā-
Singular					
	Active	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*
1	regēbam	regēbar	capiēbam	capiēbar	audiēbam	audiēbar
2	regēbās	regēbāris/	capiēbās	capiēbāris/	audiēbās	audiēbāris/
		regēbāre		capiēbāre		audiēbāre
3	regēbat	regēbātur	capiēbat	capiēbātur	audiēbat	audiēbātur
Plural					
1	regēbāmus	regēbāmur	capiēbāmus	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
2	regēbātis	regēbāminī	capiēbātis	capiēbāminī	audiēbātis	audiēbāminī
3	regēbant	regēbantur	capiēbant	capiēbantur	audiēbant	audiēbantur

OBSERVATIONS

1. The changed present stem of third-conjugation verbs (*e.g.*, regē-) is identical with the present stem of second-conjugation verbs (*e.g.*, movē-). As a result, the conjugation of the imperfect indicative of third-conjugation verbs resembles that of second-conjugation verbs.

2. The imperfect indicative of both third i-stem- and fourth-conjugation verbs has -iĕ- before the infix -bā-. As a result, the conjugation of the imperfect indicative of third i-stem-conjugation verbs resembles that of fourth-conjugation verbs.

3. In the first person singular active and passive, third person singular active, and third person plural active and passive of all three conjugations above, long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

<center>Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third,
Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations</center>

To form the future active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	*3rd i-stem*	*4th*
-e- → -ē-	-e- → -iē-	-ī- → -iē-

3. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use -m or -r for first person singular)

Thus the future active indicative conjugations of, for example, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

Changed Present Stems:

	regē-		capiē-		audiē-	
Singular						
	Active	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*
1	regam	regar	capiam	capiar	audiam	audiar
2	regēs	regēris/	capiēs	capiēris/	audiēs	audiēris/
		regēre		capiēre		audiēre
3	reget	regētur	capiet	capiētur	audiet	audiētur
Plural						
1	regēmus	regēmur	capiēmus	capiēmur	audiēmus	audiēmur
2	regētis	regēminī	capiētis	capiēminī	audiētis	audiēminī
3	regent	regentur	capient	capientur	audient	audientur

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular of third-conjugation verbs, -ā- appears rather than -ē- before the endings -m and -r. Similarly, in the first person singular of third i-stem- and fourth-conjugation verbs, -iā- rather than -iē- appears before the endings -m and -r. MEMORIZE THESE EXCEPTIONS. In all cases, -ā- shortens before -m and -r according to the long vowel rule. In all other persons, the sign of the future is -ē-.

2. The infix -bi-, used to mark the future tense of first- and second-conjugation verbs, is *not* used in the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations. For these conjugations the sign of the future is -ē-. The following mnemonic device may be useful:

> IN CONJUGATION NUMBER 3, THE SIGN OF THE FUTURE IS LONG -Ē-,
> IN CONJUGATION NUMBER 4, THE LONG -Ē- OF THE FUTURE APPEARS ONCE MORE.

3. In the first person singular active and passive, third person singular active, and third person plural active and passive of all three conjugations above, long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

☞ DRILL 30 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§31. Present Passive Infinitive of All Verbs

As noted in §12, the infinitive is a verbal noun with the properties of tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive). The second principal part of every verb is the present active infinitive and is regularly translated "to_____." To form the present passive infinitive for verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, CHANGE THE FINAL -E OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE TO —Ī. For example:

Present Active Infinitive	*Present Passive Infinitive*
vocāre (to call)	vocārī (to be called)
movēre (to move)	movērī (to be moved)
audīre (to hear)	audīrī (to be heard)

To form the present passive infinitive of third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs, *DROP THE FINAL* **-ERE** *OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE AND ADD* **-ī**.[2] For example:

Present Active Infinitive	*Present Passive Infinitive*
regere (to rule)	regī (to be ruled)
capere (to capture)	capī (to be captured)

§32. Present Active and Passive Imperative of All Verbs

The *imperative* mood has been identified as the mood used for giving direct commands (see §5). Each of the verbs italicized below would be rendered in Latin by a verb in the imperative mood:

> *Eat* your vegetables!
> *Give* me a sword.
> *Listen*, friends.

Commands such as these are addressed either to "you" (singular) or "you" (plural). These second-person subjects are seldom expressed in Latin or English. Because imperatives are in the second person, they are often (but not always) found with nouns in the vocative case that indicate the persons to whom the commands are addressed. In the third sentence above, for example, "friends" would be in the vocative plural.

To form the present active imperative of all four conjugations:

1. (for the singular) take the present stem *and make no changes*
2. (for the plural) take the present stem and add -te

Present Stem	*Present Active Imperative Sing.*		*Present Active Imperative Pl.*	
vocā-	vocā	summon	vocāte	summon (pl.)
movē-	movē	move	movēte	move (pl.)
rege-	rege	rule	regite	rule (pl.)
cape-	cape	take	capite	capture (pl.)
audī-	audī	listen	audīte	listen (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present active imperative plural of third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -e- changes to -i- before the ending -te. Compare this stem vowel change to the change that occurs in the present active and passive indicative of third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs (*e.g.*, rege- > regi-).

2. The present active imperative singular of dō is dā. Although the stem has a short -a-, the -a- is lengthened in the imperative singular form (dā) by analogy with other first-conjugation verbs.

3. The imperatives of eō are *regularly* formed: ī (singular) and īte (plural).[3]

Four third-conjugation verbs (dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō[4]) have irregular present active imperative forms *in the singular*. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

---

2. The present passive infinitive of faciō is supplied by another verb. See §125.

3. The irregular verb possum has no imperative forms. The imperative forms of sum are es (singular) and este (plural). Both forms are very rare except in compounds of sum.

4. The verb ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, "bring," "bear," "carry," "endure," is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system, which are presented in §43.

Present Active Imperative Sing.		Present Active Imperative Pl.	
dīc	say	dīcite	say (pl.)
dūc	lead	dūcite	lead (pl.)
fac	make	facite	make (pl.)
fer	carry	ferte	carry (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The singular forms of these imperatives lack the stem vowel of the present stem.

2. Dīcō, dūcō, and faciō have regular imperative forms in the plural. The imperative of ferō is irregular in the plural also, where it again lacks a stem vowel.

To form the present passive imperative of all four conjugations:

1. (for the singular) take the present stem and add -re
2. (for the plural) take the present stem and add -minī

Present Stem	Pres. Passive Imperative Sing.		Pres. Passive Imperative Pl.	
vocā-	vocāre	be summoned	vocāminī	be summoned (pl.)
movē-	movēre	be moved	movēminī	be moved (pl.)
rege-	regere	be ruled	regiminī	be ruled (pl.)
cape-	capere	be taken	capiminī	be captured (pl.)
audī-	audīre	be heard	audīminī	be heard (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present passive imperative plural of third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -e- changes to -i- before the ending -minī.

2. Both the singular and plural present passive *imperative* forms resemble exactly the second person singular and plural present passive *indicative* forms. Thus, for example, vocāre may be imperative (be summoned) or indicative (you are [being] summoned). In addition, the singular present passive *imperative* for all verbs resembles exactly the present active *infinitive* (to summon). Context helps to determine whether a form is an imperative, an indicative, or an infinitive.

Dīcō and dūcō have regular present passive imperative forms. The present passive imperative singular of ferō is ferre (be carried). MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM. The plural is regular (feriminī, be carried [pl.]). Faciō does not have passive imperative forms.

The present active imperative forms of agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, "drive," "do," age and agite, are often used in colloquial Latin to strengthen other commands. They may be translated "come on!" For example:

> *Age, dōnā puellīs dōna!*   *Come on, give gifts to the girls!*
> *Agite, ō virī, pugnāte!*   *Come on, o men, fight!*

§33. Synopsis II: Present Active and Passive Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative

When a synopsis is given that includes imperatives, they appear in the second person singular and plural only. Always give the second person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person and number have been chosen for the remaining forms. Here is a model synopsis of **capiō** in the first person plural.

Principal Parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus
Person and Number: 1st pl.

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	capimus	we are capturing	capimur	we are (being) captured
Imperfect	capiēbāmus	we were capturing	capiēbāmur	we were being captured
Future	capiēmus	we shall capture	capiēmur	we shall be captured
Infinitive				
Present	capere	to capture	capī	to be captured
Imperative				
Singular	cape	capture	capere	be captured
Plural	capite	capture	capiminī	be captured

OBSERVATIONS

1. This synopsis reviews the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative, the present active and passive infinitive, and the present active and passive imperative. When new verb forms are introduced, the synopsis will expand accordingly.

2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given.

☛ DRILL 31–33 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§34. Partitive Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case represents the *whole* of which another noun is a *part*, it is called the **Partitive Genitive.**[5] For example:

Multī *incolārum* nōn labōrābunt.	Many *of the inhabitants* will not work.
Nihil *odiī* habeō.	Nothing (d.o.) *of hatred* I have.
	I have nothing *of hatred.*

The syntax of each italicized word (incolārum, odiī) is **Partitive Genitive.**

OBSERVATION

With certain words, in particular cardinal numerals, ē/ex or dē + ablative replaces the Partitive Genitive. For example:

Decem *ē nautīs* ad īnsulās vocantur. (decem [indeclinable adj.] ten)
Ten *out from the sailors* to the islands are being called.
Ten *of the sailors* are being called to the islands.

§35. Subjective Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case expresses the person or thing *performing a verbal action implied in another noun*, it is called the **Subjective Genitive.** For example:

Magnum erat odium *malī* in bonōs.
Great was the hatred *of the bad man* against good men.

---

5. The Partitive Genitive is also known as the Genitive of the Divided Whole.

In this sentence the syntax of the italicized word (malī) is **Subjective Genitive** since the bad man *feels* or *performs the action* of hating implied by the noun **odium**: the bad man (subject) *hates* the good men.

§36. Objective Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case expresses the person or thing *receiving a verbal action implied in another noun*, it is called the **Objective Genitive**. For example:

> **Propter odium *dominōrum* servī nōn labōrant.**
> On account of (their) hatred *of (their) masters*, the slaves are not working.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this sentence the syntax of the italicized word (**dominōrum**) is **Objective Genitive** since the masters *receive* or *are objects of* the action of hating implied by the noun **odium**: the slaves *hate* their masters (d.o.).

2. An Objective Genitive is often translated more idiomatically into English with the preposition "for." Thus the sentence above may be translated "On account of (their) hatred for (their) masters, the slaves are not working."

In addition to depending on other nouns, the Objective Genitive may appear with certain adjectives and verbs. For example:

> **Cupidus *aurī* erat vir malus.**   *Desirous of gold* was the bad man.
> **(cupidus, -a, -um desirous)**   The bad man was *desirous of gold.*

In this sentence the Objective Genitive (**aurī**) depends on the adjective **cupidus**: the bad man desired gold (d.o.).

Subjective and Objective Genitives may appear together, and word order may help to distinguish between them. For example:

> **Magnum erat *malī* odium *bonōrum*.**
> Great was *of the bad man* (Subjective Genitive) the hatred *of good men* (Objective Genitive).
> The hatred *of the bad man for good men* was great.

The Subjective Genitive often precedes and the Objective Genitive often follows the noun on which both depend. It is possible, however, that this sentence means "The hatred of the good men (Subjective Genitive) for the bad man (Objective Genitive) was great." Context helps to determine whether a particular genitive is subjective or objective.

☞ Drill 34–36 may now be done.

§37. Personal Pronouns

A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, and a **personal pronoun** represents the speaker(s) or writer(s) (I, we), the one(s) spoken to (you, you [pl.]), or the one(s) spoken about (he, she, it, they).

Like nouns, personal pronouns in Latin are *declined*. These declensions are somewhat irregular and must be memorized. For the first- and second-person personal pronouns, MEMORIZE DOWN THE SINGULAR AND DOWN THE PLURAL.

	First Person Singular		Second Person Singular	
Nom.	ego	I	tū	you
Gen.	meī	of me	tuī	of you
Dat.	mihi	to/for me	tibi	to/for you
Acc.	mē	me (d.o.)	tē	you (d.o.)
Abl.	mē	from me (etc.)	tē	from you (etc.)
	Plural		*Plural*	
Nom.	nōs	we	vōs	you (pl.)
Gen.	nostrum/ nostrī	of us	vestrum/ vestrī	of you (pl.)
Dat.	nōbīs	to/for us	vōbīs	to/for you (pl.)
Acc.	nōs	us (d.o.)	vōs	you (pl.) (d.o.)
Abl.	nōbīs	from us (etc.)	vōbīs	from you (pl.) (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Personal pronouns do *not* have vocative forms.

2. Since the inflectional endings of finite verbs indicate the subject (-ō = "I," -s = "you," etc.), the nominative forms of all personal pronouns are not required in a Latin sentence. Nominative case forms of personal pronouns are most often used for added emphasis only. For example:

Ego ambulō, nōn *tū*.   *I* am walking, not *you*.

3. The *genitive* forms of the first- and second-person personal pronouns can be used as *Partitive or Objective Genitives only*. (See §§34 and 36.) In the plural these functions of the genitive are distinguished by different endings: -um = partitive, -ī = objective. For example:

Habēsne odium *meī?*	Do you have a hatred *of me?* (objective)
Multī *nostrum* rēgīnam amant.	Many *of us* love the queen. (partitive)
Magnum erat odium *vestrī.*	Hatred *of you (pl.)* was great. (objective)

4. When a first- or second-person personal pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition cum is attached directly to the pronoun. Thus, m**ē**cum (with me), nōbīscum (with us), tēcum (with you), and vōbīscum (with you [pl.]).

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE THIRD-PERSON PERSONAL PRONOUN *ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL* (is, ea, id, eius, eius, eius . . .).

Third Person

Singular

	M.		F.		N.	
Nom.	is	he	ea	she	id	it
Gen.	eius	of him	eius	of her	eius	of it
Dat.	eī	to/for him	eī	to/for her	eī	to/for it
Acc.	eum	him (d.o.)	eam	her (d.o.)	id	it (d.o.)
Abl.	eō	from him (etc.)	eā	from her (etc.)	eō	from it (etc.)

Plural

	M.		F.		N.	
Nom.	eī/iī	they	eae	they	ea	they
Gen.	eōrum	of them	eārum	of them	eōrum	of them
Dat.	eīs/iīs	to/for them	eīs/iīs	to/for them	eīs/iīs	to/for them
Acc.	eōs	them (d.o.)	eās	them (d.o.)	ea	them (d.o.)
Abl.	eīs/iīs	from them (etc.)	eīs/iīs	from them (etc.)	eīs/iīs	from them (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Eius is pronounced as if it were spelled *eiius. The first -i- combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong ei-. The second -i- is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English y.

2. All forms of is, ea, id are *disyllabic* with these exceptions: is, id (monosyllabic), eōrum, eārum, eōrum (trisyllabic).

3. When a form of is, ea, id refers to a person or thing previously mentioned, it agrees in *gender* and *number* with the noun to which it refers. For example:

Liber pulcher puellae dabitur. *Eum*ne habēs?

The beautiful book will be given to the girl. Do you have *it*? (eum refers to liber)

The personal pronoun is, ea, id is in origin a demonstrative adjective (this, that; these, those), and the demonstrative adjective remains in use. For example:

eum virum	this (or that) man (d.o.) (eum is a demonstrative adj. modifying **virum**)
ea perīcula	these (or those) dangers (subj. or d.o.) (ea is a demonstrative adj. modifying **perīcula**)

It is sometimes convenient to translate the forms of the personal pronoun with mild demonstrative force, particularly to indicate gender more clearly. For example: eōs, "these (or those) men (d.o.)."

§38. Possessive Adjectives

A noun in the genitive case may express ownership or possession: liber *puerī* (the book *of the boy*) (see §1). However, the genitives of the first- and second-person personal pronouns (meī, nostrum/nostrī, tuī, vestrum/vestrī) are *not* used to express possession (see §37). There are instead **possessive adjectives** that correspond to each personal pronoun:

Personal Pronoun		Corresponding Possessive Adjective	
ego	I	meus, -a, -um	my, mine
nōs	we	noster, nostra, nostrum	our, ours
tū	you	tuus, -a, -um	your, yours
vōs	you (pl.)	vester, vestra, vestrum	your, yours (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Meus, noster, tuus, and vester are all first-second-declension adjectives.

2. Like all adjectives, possessive adjectives agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case. For example:

meās fīliās	my daughters (d.o.)
patriā nostrā	from our homeland (etc.)
amīcīs tuīs	for your friends *or* from your friends (etc.)
dominus vester	your (pl.) master (subj.)

3. Possessive adjectives may precede or follow the nouns they modify.

4. Possessive adjectives may function as substantives. For example:

| meōrum | of my men *or* of my things |
| tuōs | your men (d.o.) |

5. The masculine singular vocative form of meus is mī. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR VOCATIVE FORM.

6. The idea of a Subjective Genitive (less frequently an Objective Genitive) may be expressed by a possessive adjective. For example:

Magna erat mea cūra populī.

Great was *my* care of [for] the people.

My care for the people was great.

The noun cūra implies the action of caring, and mea expresses the subject of that action.

7. Possessive adjectives are often omitted if the meaning is clear without them, but they are used for added clarity, emphasis, or contrast.

The third-person personal pronoun (is, ea, id) does *not* have a corresponding possessive adjective. Rather, the genitive singular and genitive plural forms are used as Genitives of Possession. For example:

librōs *eius*	the books (d.o.) *of him/of her*
	his/her books (d.o.)
rēgīna *eōrum*	the queen (subj.) *of them* (m.)
	their queen (subj.)

Summary of Possession			
First Person	meus fīlius	my son	meus and noster are possessive
	noster fīlius	our son	adjectives modifying fīlius
Second Person	tuus fīlius	your son	tuus and vester are possessive
	vester fīlius	your (pl.) son	adjectives modifying fīlius
Third Person	fīlius eius	his/her son	eius and eōrum are personal
	fīlius eōrum	their son	pronouns in the genitive case
			expressing possession

☛ DRILL 37-38 MAY NOW BE DONE

§39. Ablative of Respect

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* is used to *limit* or further *specify* the meaning of an adjective or a verb, it is called the **Ablative of Respect.**[6] For example:

> **Bonus *cōnsiliō* erat Gracchus.**
> Good *in respect to judgment* was Gracchus.
> Gracchus was good *in judgment.*
> **Meā *sententiā* imperium habēre dēbēs. (sententia, sententiae *f.* opinion)**
> *In respect to my opinion* power (d.o.) to have you ought.
> *In my opinion* you ought to have power.
> **Gaius Marcum *dīligentiā* superat.**
> Gaius Marcus (d.o.) *in respect to diligence* surpasses.
> Gaius surpasses Marcus *in diligence.*

The syntax of each italicized word (**cōnsiliō, sententiā, dīligentiā**) is **Ablative of Respect.**

---

6. The Ablative of Respect is also known as the Ablative of Specification.

Short Readings

1. Andronicus translates the first line of Homer's *Odyssey* into Latin.

   Virum mihi, Camēna, īnsece versūtum . . . (Livius Andronicus, *Odyssey* frag. 1)

   Camēna, Camēnae *f.* Camena, any one of the Italic divinities connected with springs and waters and
   identified with the (Greek) Muses
   īnsecō, īnsecere, īnsexī, —— tell of
   versūtus, -a, -um versatile, cunning

2. One drunk slave sings the following to another.

   ego tū sum, tū es ego: ūnanimī sumus. (Plautus, *Stichus* 731)

   ūnanimus, -a, -um of one mind; harmonious

3. In a discussion of immortality the Roman epic poet Ennius is paraphrased.

   Rōmulus in caelō cum dīs agit aevum. (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.28)

   aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime; life

4. A Stoic view of the gods

   magna dī cūrant, parva neglegunt. (Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* II.167)

   cūrō (1-tr.) watch over, look after
   neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctus overlook, neglect

5. A Roman proverb

   amāre et sapere vix deō concēditur. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A22)

   concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus concede, grant; permit
   sapiō, sapere, sapiī or sapīvī, —— be intelligent, show good sense
   vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

6. A Roman proverb

   animō virum pudīcae nōn oculō ēligunt. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A36)

   ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus select, choose
   oculus, oculī *m.* eye
   pudīcus, -a, -um chaste, pure, honorable

7. With these opening words the poet suggests that his epic poem will be a blend of the *Iliad*
   and the *Odyssey*.

   Arma virumque canō . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.1)

8. The chorus of a tragic play comments on the nature of rulers.

   metuī cupiunt metuīque timent. (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 73)

   cupiō, cupere, cupiī or cupīvī, cupītus desire, long for, want
   metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread

Chapter IV
Longer Readings

1. Varro, *Dē Linguā Latīnā* VI.77

   Varro explains the different shades of meaning of certain Latin verbs.

   potest* enim aliquid facere et nōn agere, ut poēta facit fābulam et nōn agit; contrā

   āctor agit et nōn facit, . . . contrā imperātor . . . neque facit neque agit sed gerit . . .

*potest, *subject is *"one"*	fābula, fābulae *f.* story, tale; play, drama
āctor = *masc. sing. nom.*, doer, actor	imperātor = *masc. sing. nom.*, general,
aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, something	commander
contrā (adv.) in opposition, in turn	ut (conj.) as; when

   Marcus Terentius Varro (116–27 B.C.E.) was a follower of Pompey during the civil war between Pompey and Caesar, but he was forgiven by Caesar and avoided being killed in the same year as Cicero. Varro may have been the most prolific writer in ancient Rome. Only a few works have survived and those only in partial form.

       The *Dē Linguā Latīnā* (About the Latin Language) was originally a work of twenty-five books; only six partially preserved books (books 5–10) are known. They were dedicated to Cicero shortly before his death. In the *Dē Linguā Latīnā* Varro analyzes Latin vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and style.[7]

2. Martial I.32

   The poet has a brief message for Sabidius.

   Nōn amo* tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē:

     hoc tantum possum dīcere, nōn amo* tē.

   *The -ō of amō here scans *short.*
   hoc = *neut. sing. acc. of demonstr. pron.*, this thing
   quārē (interrog. adv.) why
   Sabidius, Sabidiī *m.* Sahidius, an acquaintance of the poet
   tantum (adv.) only

   Marcus Valerius Martiālis (38?–104? C.E.) was born in Spain and came in 64 to Rome, where he was befriended and aided by Seneca. Martial lived more than three decades in Rome before returning to Spain. His poetry reflects the poet's ambivalent relationship with the city, which he appears to have disliked for its artificiality and conventionality, but upon which he and his poetry thrived. Martial's poems, written between 80 and 102, are collected and published in twelve books as *Epigrammata* (Epigrams). The poems are composed in a variety of meters, but the elegiac couplet is most common. Martial owes much to Catullus and the neoteric ideals of brevity and wit. His poems are often light, satiric in nature (though there are exceptions), and concerned with everyday events. He offers vignettes of Roman life and human behavior, and his poems are filled with vain and petty people—misers, legacy hunters, bad poets, etc.—most of whom are typecast, satirized, and thus immortalized by Martial's wit.

---

7. For these and all biographical and literary notes, the authors are indebted to G.B. Conte, *Latin Literature: A History* (Johns Hopkins, 1994).

CHAPTER V

Vocabulary

➤ amīcitia, amīcitiae *f.* friendship
　➤ inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* enmity,
　　hostility

➤ fātum, fātī *n.* destiny, fate; *in pl. (often),*
　death
　proelium, proeliī *n.* battle

➤ —, meī (reflexive pron.) myself (§44)
➤ —, nostrum/nostrī (reflexive pron.)
　ourselves (§44)
➤ —, tuī (reflexive pron.) yourself (§44)
➤ —, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.)
　yourselves (§44)
➤ —, suī (reflexive pron.) himself, herself,
　itself; themselves (§44)

➤ accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus receive;
　accept; hear (of), learn (of)
➤ cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum go, move;
　yield; withdraw
　➤ accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum
　　go *or* come to, approach
　➤ discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum
　　go away, depart
➤ interficiō, interficere, interfēcī,
　interfectus kill
➤ perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus
　complete, accomplish

➤ abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum go away
➤ ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring, bear, carry;
　endure (§43)

➤ meminī, meminisse (defective verb)
　remember, be mindful (of)
➤ ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb) hate
➤ redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum go back, return

　dūrus, -a, -um hard; harsh
　ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive adj.) -self,
　-selves; very (§46)
　meus, -a, -um my (own) (§45)
　noster, nostra, nostrum our (own) (§45)
➤ pius, -a, -um dutiful, loyal
　➤ impius, -a, -um disloyal, wicked
　suus, -a, -um his (own), her (own), its
　(own); their (own) (§45)
　tuus, -a, -um your (own) (§45)
　vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.) (own) (§45)

　bene (adv.) well
　etsī (conj.) although
➤ male (adv.) badly
　multum (adv.) much, a lot
　nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless
　postquam (conj.) after
　quamquam (conj.) although
　quoniam (conj.) since, because
　sī (conj.) if
➤ sīc (adv.) thus, so, in this way, in such a
　way
➤ tamen (adv.) nevertheless
➤ ubi (conj.) when; (interrog. adv.) where,
　when
➤ ut (conj.) as; when

Vocabulary Notes

amīcitia, amīcitiae *f.* and inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* are both abstract nouns. They are formed by the addition of the *suffix* -tia to the stems of amīcus, -a, -um and inimīcus, -a, -um. All abstract nouns of this type are thus first-declension nouns. A suffix (< suffīgō, fasten beneath {as a support}) is a unit of meaning added to the end of a word to produce another word.

    inimīcitia usually appears in the plural to indicate not the abstract notion of "enmity" but a concrete instance of it. The plural may be translated "unfriendly relations," "enmity."

    fātum, fātī *n.* is derived from a verb that means "utter"; hence, its basic meaning is an "utterance" (cf. fāma). Through the meaning of "prophetic utterance" or "oracle" it came to mean "destiny" or "fate." The plural often means "ill fate" and thus "death." When capitalized in the plural, Fāta refers to the divine "Fates."

    —, meī; —, nostrum/nostrī; —, tuī; —, vestrum/vestrī; and —, suī are *reflexive pronouns.* Because they are reflexive pronouns, they do *not* have nominative forms. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR. For the forms and meanings of these words see §44.

Compound Verbs, Prefixes, Assimilation, and Vowel Weakening

A compound verb (< compōnō, put together) is a verb formed from the combination of a simple, or uncompounded, verb and a *prefix.* A prefix (< praefīgō, fasten in front) is a unit of meaning added to the beginning of a word to produce another word. Most prefixes in Latin are derived from adverbs, and many prefixes have corresponding prepositions. A prefix has a basic meaning, and the meaning of a compound Latin verb can sometimes be deduced by combining the meaning of the simple verb with the basic meaning of the prefix. Thus accēdō is a compound formed by the addition of the prefix ad- (to, toward) to cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum "go," and this compound means "go toward," "approach." However, the meanings of many compound verbs *cannot* be deduced in this way, and for this reason compound verbs are given as separate vocabulary entries. The basic meanings of the prefixes used to form compounds are given in Appendix P.

    When a prefix is combined with a simple verb, two kinds of phonetic change[1] may occur: *assimilation* and *vowel weakening.* Assimilation (< assimilō, make similar to) occurs when the prefix ends in a consonant and that consonant *changes to become similar to or identical with* the sound of the first consonant of the simple verb. For example: ad + cēdō > accēdō. The -d at the end of ad *assimilates to* the c- at the beginning of cēdō.

    Vowel weakening refers to the change in the *quality* of the vowel of a *stem.* For example: ad- + capiō > accipiō. When the compound accipiō was formed, the addition of the prefix ad- to capiō caused the -a- of the stem cap- to change (weaken) into -i-. Vowel weakening is due to an earlier accentual system in Latin, whereby only the first syllable of a word was stressed. The other, unstressed syllables were regularly pronounced more weakly than they would have been if accented. When the first syllable of a simple verb was no longer the initial syllable (because of the addition of a prefix), it was more weakly pronounced.

    The vowels of Latin (as of English) are regularly represented by the vowel triangle:
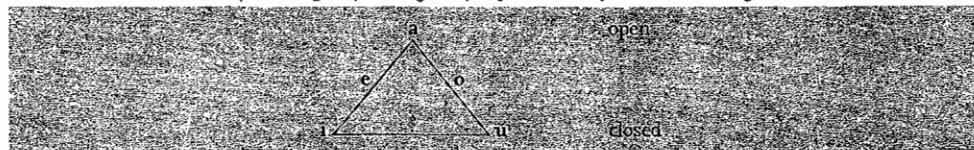
The vowel a is described as open because the tongue is placed at the bottom of the mouth, and the mouth is as open as possible when it is pronounced. The vowels i and u at the bottom of the triangle are described as closed because the tongue is raised when the vowels are pronounced and the mouth is more closed. e and o are in between. When vowel weakening occurs, open vowels become more closed. When initial vowels become medial (i.e., not first), the following instances of vowel weakening are most frequent:

    There are compound verbs in which vowel weakening does *not* occur. The compounds of audiō, dūcō, gerō, mittō, moveō, pōnō, scrībō, sentiō, veniō, and videō—all verbs from previous chapters—*do not show vowel weakening.* WHEN A COMPOUND OF ONE OF THESE VERBS APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE

---

1. A phonetic change is an alteration in pronunciation with a corresponding change in spelling.

NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN. Instances of vowel weakening or retention of the simple verb within the compound are cited in the vocabulary notes.

The concepts and rules of assimilation and vowel weakening highlight and explain the similarities between sets of principal parts. (Cf. perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus with interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus.) Familiarity with these rules will aid in the speedy acquisition of new vocabulary by making similarities in patterns of principal parts more apparent and by making it possible to anticipate the patterns of other compound verbs.

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ad- to capiō, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix ad- see Appendix P.) Its basic meaning is "take to oneself," "receive." Accipiō may also mean "hear (of)" (receive through one's ears). By extension of this meaning accipiō may refer to *understanding* information received and thus may mean "learn (of)." Compare audiō, whose meaning is more restricted. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **CAPIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ACCIPIŌ*. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **CAPIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum is an intransitive verb. In addition to its basic meaning of "go" or "move," it may mean "yield" to a person or idea or "withdraw" from a place or activity. Compounds of cēdō do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A *COMPOUND* OF *CĒDŌ* APPEARS IN *READINGS*, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ad- to cēdō, and its basic meaning is "go to" or "come to." (For the prefix ad- see Appendix P.) Accēdō is usually *intransitive* in prose authors and is regularly followed by ad + accusative. The preposition ad repeats the prefix ad- and often cannot be translated.

Auxilia ad oppidum *accēdēbant.*   The auxiliary troops *were approaching (toward)* the town.

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix dis- to cēdō. (For the prefix dis- see Appendix P.) It is an intransitive verb.

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix inter- to faciō, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix inter- see Appendix P.)

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix per- to faciō, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix per- see Appendix P.) THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **FACIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *INTERFICIŌ* AND *PERFICIŌ*. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FACIŌ** APPEARS IN *READINGS*, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ab- to the irregular verb eō, and its basic meaning is "go away." (For the prefix ab- see Appendix P.) abeō conjugates exactly as eō *except* that it has only *one* third principal part. For the forms of eō in the perfect active indicative, see §41.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system (see §43). ferō derives from two PIE roots: *bher- and *telA-. Ferō may mean "bring," "bear," or "carry," and by extension "endure" (hardships, troubles). Ferō may also mean "say," "report," particularly when a common story or a myth is being reported. When ferō takes a reflexive pronoun as a direct object, the combination may mean "proceed (quickly)," "go."

Auxilium virīs provinciae *ferō.*   *I am bringing* aid to the men of the province.
Multa mala *tulī.*   *I have endured* many evil things.
Mē ad provinciam *ferēbam.*   *I was proceeding (quickly)* to the province.

meminī, meminisse is a defective verb, a verb that lacks certain normal inflected forms. Meminī has forms of the perfect active system *only* (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present*, the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is memin-. The second principal part meminisse is the perfect active infinitive (see §104), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to remember).

meminī often takes an Objective Genitive.[2] Meminī may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. It may also take an Object Infinitive.

---

2. The Objective Genitive that appears with meminī is also called the Genitive with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

> Meministine *patriae?*   Do you remember *(your) homeland?* (Objective Genitive)
> *Id* memineram.   I was remembering *it.* (Accusative, Direct Object)
> Semper *tuī* meminerō.   I shall always remember *you.* (Objective Genitive)

meminī has no present active imperative forms, but it uses instead the future active imperative forms memento (singular) and mementōte (plural) with present meanings. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

ōdī, ōdisse is a defective verb. Ōdī has forms of the perfect active system *only* (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present*, the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is ōd-. The second principal part ōdisse is the perfect active infinitive (see §104), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to hate).

> Nautās malōs *ōdimus.*   *We hate* bad sailors.
> Nautās malōs *ōderātis.*   *You (pl.) used to hate* bad sailors.
> Nautās malōs *ōderō.*   *I shall hate* bad sailors.

Ōdī has no imperative forms.

redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix red- to eō, and its basic meaning is "go back." (For the prefix re- see Appendix P.) Redeō conjugates exactly as eō *except* that it has only *one* third principal part. For the forms of eō in the perfect active indicative, see §41.

pius, -a, -um describes a person who acts in accordance with duty to one's family, one's country, or one's gods. When pius describes a thing (war, weapon, cause), the dutifulness of a person has been transferred to the thing. Impius, -a, -um is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix in-[2] (not) to pius. (For the prefix in-[2] see Appendix P.)

male, "badly," includes the following range of meanings: "wickedly," "wrongfully"; "poorly," "scarcely"; "inopportunely," "ill-advisedly."

The adverb sīc indicates that the action of the verb it modifies is being done in a manner that has just been indicated in a preceding clause or sentence or is about to be indicated in a following clause or sentence.

> Sīc pugnābant.   They were fighting *in such a way (as I have just described).*
>   They were fighting *in such a way (as I shall now describe).*

The subordinating conjunction ut and the adverb sīc are often used together to make comparisons. The subordinate clause introduced by ut provides a standard of comparison for the main clause, which includes sīc.

> *Ut* agricola agrōs, *sīc* poēta verba cōgitat.
> *As* a farmer ponders the fields, *so* a poet ponders words.

The adverb tamen regularly occurs in a main clause following a concessive clause. Tamen may also occur without an expressed concession in the preceding clause or sentence to indicate that the statement that includes tamen is true in spite of what has just been said.

> Quamquam bonam fāmam optās, *tamen* cum incolīs malīs nōn pugnās.
> Although you desire a good reputation, *nevertheless* you are not fighting against the bad inhabitants.
> Dominus nōn est in agrīs. Servus *tamen* cum dīligentiā labōrat.
> The master is not in the fields. *Nevertheless* the slave is working diligently.

ubi may be used as a subordinating conjunction (when) that introduces a temporal clause or as an interrogative adverb (when, where) that introduces a question.

> *Ubi* ad oppidum venit, labōrāre nōn optat.   *When* she comes to the town, she does not desire to work.
> *Ubi* veniet? *Ubi* est?   *When* will she come? *Where* is she?

	Derivatives	Cognates
cēdō	an*cest*or; *cease*, *cede*; ne*cess*ary	
ferō, ferre	circum*fer*ence; *differ*; *suffer*, *fer*tile; aqui*fer*; vo*cifer*ous	*bear*; *bier*; *barrow*; *burly*; *burden*; *birth*; *bring*; eu*phoria*; *periphery*; *paraphernalia*
tulī, lātus	re*late*; col*late*; super*lative*; legis*lator*	*toll*; *tolerate*; *extol*; (perhaps) A*tlas*
—, suī	*sui*cide	*self*; *swami*; *secede*; *secret*; *sober*; *ethnic*; Sinn *Fein*

§40. The Perfect Active System

Since the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of all conjugations are formed with a stem taken from the second principal part (present active infinitive), it is convenient to say that these tenses belong to the present system of the verb (see §8).

The remaining three tenses of the active indicative, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are said to belong to the **perfect active system** because they are all formed with a stem taken from the third principal part (first person singular perfect active indicative).

Each of the three tenses of the perfect active system (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect) is formed in the same way for *all* verbs of *all* conjugations *and* for **sum** and **possum**.

Finding the Perfect Active Stem

For all verbs the stem for the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active indicative is found by removing the ending -ī from the third principal part. This stem is called the **perfect active stem**. For example:

vocō, vocāre, *vocāvī*, vocātus call	Perfect Active Stem:	vocāv-
moveō, movēre, *mōvī*, mōtus move	Perfect Active Stem:	mōv-
regō, regere, *rēxī*, rēctus rule	Perfect Active Stem:	rēx-
capiō, capere, *cēpī*, captus take	Perfect Active Stem:	cēp-
audiō, audīre, *audīvī*, audītus hear	Perfect Active Stem:	audīv-
sum, esse, *fuī*, futūrus be	Perfect Active Stem:	fu-
possum, posse, *potuī*, —— be able	Perfect Active Stem:	potu-

§41. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the perfect active indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending -ī from the third principal part)
2. add the **perfect active personal endings** directly to the perfect active stem

The perfect active personal endings are:

Person	Singular	
1st	-ī	I
2nd	-istī	you
3rd	-it	he, she, it
	Plural	
1st	-imus	we
2nd	-istis	you (pl.)
3rd	-ērunt or -ēre	they

1. The perfect active personal endings are used to form the perfect active indicative of *all* verbs in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

2. There are *two* possible endings in the third person plural, -ērunt or -ēre. -ēre is the older ending, and certain authors in all periods preferred it to -ērunt. There is no distinction in meaning. MEMORIZE BOTH ENDINGS.

Thus the perfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem:　rēx-

Singular

1	rēxī	I ruled; I have ruled
2	rēxistī	you ruled; you have ruled
3	rēxit	he, she, it ruled; he, she, it has ruled

Plural

1	rēximus	we ruled; we have ruled
2	rēxistis	you (pl.) ruled; you (pl.) have ruled
3	rēxērunt/rēxēre	they ruled; they have ruled

1. The first person singular perfect active indicative is the third principal part.

2. The perfect is the only tense of the indicative that has *two* different times with *two* different aspects (see §6). It is therefore important always to keep in mind *two translations*. For example, rēxī may be translated "I ruled" (past time, simple aspect) *or* "I have ruled" (present time, completed aspect). Context helps to determine which translation is correct.

Eō has two third principal parts, iī and īvī, with two corresponding perfect active stems, i- and īv-. The perfect active indicative conjugation formed from īv- is regular, but the conjugation formed from i- displays certain irregularities. MEMORIZE THIS CONJUGATION.

	Singular	*Plural*
1	iī	iimus/īmus
2	īstī	īstis
3	iit/īt	iērunt/iēre

The second person singular *and* plural perfect active indicative forms (īstī, īstis) are contractions of the stem, i-, with the endings -istī and -istis. The third person singular and first person plural perfect active indicative may be contracted (īt, īmus) or uncontracted (iit, iimus). The -ī- of īt does *not* shorten before final -t.

Pluperfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect active indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending -ī from the third principal part)
2. add the *infix* -erā-
3. add the active personal endings (use -m for first person singular)

Thus the pluperfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem:	rēx-
Infix:	-erā-
Singular	
1 rēxeram	I had ruled
2 rēxerās	you had ruled
3 rēxerat	he, she, it had ruled
Plural	
1 rēxerāmus	we had ruled
2 rēxerātis	you (pl.) had ruled
3 rēxerant	they had ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural, the -ā- of the infix shortens according to the long vowel rule.

2. The pluperfect active indicative conjugation may also be viewed as the perfect active stem plus the imperfect active indicative of **sum**. For example: rēxeram = rēx- + eram.

3. The English word "had" is *always* used in translating the pluperfect indicative. This tense is used to indicate an event that was completed *before another past event*. The pluperfect tense has past time with completed aspect.

4. The pluperfect active indicative conjugation of eō is *regularly* formed from *both* stems.

Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the future perfect active indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending -ī from the third principal part)
2. add the *infix* -eri-
3. add the active personal endings (use -ō for first person singular)

Thus the future perfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem:	rēx-
Infix:	-eri-
Singular	
1 rēxerō	I shall have ruled
2 rēxeris	you will have ruled
3 rēxerit	he, she, it will have ruled
Plural	
1 rēxerimus	we shall have ruled
2 rēxeritis	you (pl.) will have ruled
3 rēxerint	they will have ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the -i- of the infix -eri- contracts with the ending -ō (*rēxeriō > rēxerō).

2. The future perfect active indicative conjugation may also be viewed as the perfect active stem plus the future active indicative of sum. For example: rēxerō = rēx- + erō. (Note, however, that the third person plural form is rēxerint.)

3. The future perfect indicative is used to indicate an event that will be completed at a future time. It has future time with completed aspect.

4. The future perfect active indicative conjugation of eō is *regularly* formed from *both* stems.

§42. Synopsis III: Present Indicative System, Perfect Active Indicative System, Infinitive, and Imperative

Here is a model synopsis of sentiō in the third person plural. It includes the forms of the perfect active indicative system.

Principal Parts: sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sensus
Person and Number: 3rd pl.

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	sentiunt	they perceive	sentiuntur	they are (being) perceived
Imperfect	sentiēbant	they were perceiving	sentiēbantur	they were being perceived
Future	sentient	they will perceive	sentientur	they will be perceived
Perfect	sēnsērunt/ sēnsēre	1. they perceived 2. they have perceived		
Pluperfect	sēnserant	they had perceived		
Future Perfect	sēnserint	they will have perceived		
Infinitive				
Present	sentīre	to perceive	sentīrī	to be perceived
Imperative				
Singular	sentī	perceive	sentīre	be perceived
Plural	sentīte	perceive	sentīminī	be perceived

OBSERVATIONS

1. This synopsis reviews the present indicative system, the perfect active indicative system, the present active and passive infinitive, and the present active and passive imperative. When new verb forms are introduced, the synopsis will expand accordingly.

2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given. Note that the perfect indicative requires two translations because it can be either past time with simple aspect *or* present time with completed aspect.

3. Imperatives appear in the second person singular and plural only. Always give the second person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person and number have been chosen for the remaining forms.

☛ DRILL 40–42 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§43. The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō*

The verb **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** "bring, bear, carry; endure" is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present indicative, present infinitive, and present imperative, which are *italicized* below. These irregular forms *lack the stem vowel*, but the remaining forms of the present system are conjugated regularly as if the present stem were **fere-**. *All* the forms of the perfect active system are *regular*. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING FORMS.

Present Indicative		Present Infinitive	
Active	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*
Sing.		*ferre*	*ferrī*
1 *ferō*	feror		
2 *fers*	ferris/ferre	Present Imperative	
3 *fert*	fertur	*Active*	*Passive*
Pl.		*Sing.*	
1 ferimus	ferimur	*fer*	*ferre*
2 fertis	feriminī	*Pl.*	
3 ferunt	feruntur	*ferte*	feriminī

☛ DRILL 43 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§44. Reflexive Pronouns

A reflexive pronoun *bends back* (< **reflectō**, bend back) or *refers to* the subject of the clause or sentence in which it appears. For example:

> I saw *myself* in the mirror.
> The women spoke among *themselves*.

Each italicized word is a *reflexive pronoun* because it *refers to the subject* of the sentence in which it appears.

In Latin, reflexive pronouns for the first and second persons borrow the forms of the personal pronouns.

	First Person		Second Person	
	Singular		*Singular*	
Nom.	——		——	
Gen.	meī	of myself	tuī	of yourself
Dat.	mihi	to/for myself	tibi	to/for yourself
Acc.	mē	myself (d.o.)	tē	yourself (d.o.)
Abl.	mē	from myself (etc.)	tē	from yourself (etc.)
	Plural		*Plural*	
Nom.	——		——	
Gen.	nostrum/ nostrī	of ourselves	vestrum/ vestrī	of yourselves
Dat.	nōbīs	to/for ourselves	vōbīs	to/for yourselves
Acc.	nōs	ourselves (d.o.)	vōs	yourselves (d.o.)
Abl.	nōbīs	from ourselves (etc.)	vōbīs	from yourselves (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are no nominative forms of the reflexive pronouns because reflexive pronouns *refer to but never are* the subjects of clauses or sentences in which they appear.

2. The genitive forms of reflexive pronouns, like those of personal pronouns, can be used as Partitive or Objective Genitives *only*.

3. Note the difference in the English translation between the personal pronouns and the reflexive pronouns in the first and second persons. For example:

Mē videt.	He sees *me*. (mē is a personal pron.)
Mē videō.	I see *myself*. (mē is a reflexive pron.)

4. When a first- or second-person reflexive pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition cum is attached directly to the pronoun. Thus mēcum (with myself), nōbīscum (with ourselves), tēcum (with yourself), and vōbīscum (with yourselves).

For the third person *one* reflexive pronoun functions as both the singular and the plural. The third-person reflexive pronoun is *not* borrowed from the third-person personal pronoun and must be memorized.

Third Person Singular/Plural		
Nom.	—	
Gen.	suī	of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves
Dat.	sibi	to/for himself, to/for herself, to/for itself, to/for themselves
Acc.	sē, sēsē	himself (d.o.), herself (d.o.), itself (d.o.), themselves (d.o.)
Abl.	sē, sēsē	from himself, from herself, from itself, from themselves (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. There is no nominative form of the third-person reflexive pronoun because reflexive pronouns *refer to but never are* the subjects of clauses or sentences in which they appear.

2. The alternate accusative and ablative forms sē and sēsē are interchangeable, although originally sēsē may have conveyed greater emphasis.

3. The correct translation of the third-person reflexive pronoun is determined by the subject. For example:

Puer *sē* in perīculō pōnit.	The boy is putting *himself* in danger.
Incolae *sē* regēbant.	The inhabitants were ruling *themselves*.

4. Like the genitive forms of personal pronouns, the genitive form of the third-person reflexive pronoun can be used as Partitive or Objective Genitive *only*.

5. When a third-person reflexive pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition cum is attached directly to the pronoun. Thus, sēcum (with himself, with herself, with itself, or with themselves).

6. The third-person personal pronoun and the third-person reflexive pronoun differ in both form and English translation. For example:

Eum videt.	He (person A) sees *him (person B)*. (eum is a personal pron.)
Sē videt.	He sees *himself*. (sē is a reflexive pron.)

§45. Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives

The genitive forms of the reflexive pronouns are *not* used to express possession. There are instead **reflexive-possessive adjectives** that correspond to each reflexive pronoun.

Reflexive Pronoun		Reflexive-Possessive Adjective	
— meī	of myself, etc.	meus, -a, -um	my (own)
— nostrum/nostrī	of ourselves, etc.	noster, nostra, nostrum	our (own)
— tuī	of yourself, etc.	tuus, -a, -um	your (own)
— vestrum/vestrī	of yourselves, etc.	vester, vestra, vestrum	your (pl.) (own)
— suī	of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, etc.	suus, -a, -um	his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first- and second-person reflexive-possessive adjectives are borrowed from the possessive adjectives and differ in translation only. For example:

| *Meōs* librōs habēs. | You have *my* books. (meōs is a possessive adj.) |
| *Meōs* librōs habeō. | I have *my (own)* books. (meōs is a reflexive-possessive adj.) |

2. The third-person reflexive-possessive adjective is *not* borrowed from a possessive adjective form, and it is used for both singular and plural. For example:

| *Suam* patriam amat. | She loves *her (own)* homeland. |
| *Suam* patriam laudant. | They praise *their (own)* homeland. |

§46. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum is an *intensive* adjective. An **intensive** adjective emphasizes or intensifies the noun it modifies.[3] MEMORIZE ITS DECLENSION *ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL*.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

OBSERVATIONS

1. Ipse does *not* have vocative forms.

2. The declension of ipse differs from that of ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in the genitive and dative singular *only*.

The translation of **ipse** depends on the word it modifies or replaces. Words such as "himself," "herself," "itself," or "themselves" may be used. When **ipse** modifies the

---

3. Ipse is used rarely as a substantive. When ipse is used as a substantive, it is sometimes called an intensive **pronoun**.

unexpressed subject of a verb, phrases such as "I myself," "he himself," "she her-self," "they themselves" may be used. For example:

Catilina *ipse* ad prōvinciam iit.   Catiline *himself* is going to the province.
Ipsa ad prōvinciam ībam.   *I myself* (f.) was going to the province.
Antōnius causam *ipsam* cōgitat.   Antony is pondering the case *itself*.

Ipse may also serve to identify a particular person or thing and may then be trans-lated "very."

In *ipsīs* agrīs rēgīnae eram.   I was in the *very* fields of the queen.

Ipse often appears in sentences containing reflexive pronouns and modifies the subject *or* the reflexive pronoun. For example:

Ipse prō sē pugnābat.   He *himself* was fighting for himself.
Prō sē *ipsō* pugnābat.   He was fighting for his *very* self.

In the first sentence, **ipse** intensifies the subject of the verbal action (he). In the sec-ond sentence, **ipsō** intensifies the reflexive pronoun (himself).

☛ DRILL 44–46 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§47. Adverbs I

An adverb may modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Some examples of En-glish adverbs are "not," "happily," "well," "very." Many Latin words are identified as adverbs in the vocabulary entries, but other adverbs may be formed from adjectives.

To form adverbs from first-second-declension adjectives:

1. take the stem (by dropping the ending of the feminine singular nominative)
2. add the ending -ē

Thus, for example:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb	
altus, *alta*, altum	alt-	altē	highly, deeply
pulcher, *pulchra*, pulchrum	pulchr-	pulchrē	beautifully

Some first-second-declension adjectives do not have corresponding adverbs, and some have irregularly formed adverbs. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON IRREGULAR ADVERBS:

Adjective	Irregular Adverb	
multus, -a, -um	multum	much, a lot
bonus, -a, -um	bene	well
malus, -a, -um	male	badly
validus, -a, -um	validē	strongly (regularly formed)
	valdē	strongly (irregularly formed)

OBSERVATION

> Certain adjectives, such as validus, -a, -um, have both a regularly and an irregularly formed
> adverb. Irregularities such as these will be mentioned in the vocabulary notes.[4]

Adverbs are usually placed directly before the words they modify. For example:

Puellam *nōn* amō.	The girl (d.o.) I do *not* love. (nōn modifies amō)
	I do *not* love the girl.
Poēta *pulchrē* canēbat.	The poet *beautifully* was singing. (pulchrē modifies canēbat)
	The poet was singing *beautifully*.

Note that the Ablative of Manner (see §26) represents an alternate way of expressing an adverbial idea. The Ablative of Manner, however, requires a *noun* in the ablative case and most often modifies verbs.

When certain adjectives modify the subjects (usually *not* expressed) of verbs, they may have the force of adverbs. For example:

Vēla dabant *laetī*.	They were setting sail, happy.
	They were setting sail *happily*.

☛ DRILL 47 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§48. Subordinate Clauses I

In Latin, as in English, there are three types of sentences: *simple, compound,* and *complex.* A **simple** sentence has one subject and one predicate (e.g., I cooked the dinner). A **compound** sentence has more than one subject and predicate joined by a coordinating conjunction such as "and," "but," "or," "for," "nor" (e.g., I cooked the dinner, and you slept). A **complex** sentence has one or more than one independent clause combined with one or more than one dependent clause (e.g., When I was cooking the dinner, you were sleeping).

Simple and compound sentences contain *independent clauses* only, but complex sentences contain *dependent* or *subordinate clauses* as well. An **independent clause** contains a *subject* and a *verb* and expresses a complete thought, and it *may stand alone* as a simple sentence. If it is part of a larger sentence, an independent clause is often called a **main clause**. A **dependent** or **subordinate clause** contains a *subject* and a *verb*, but it *cannot stand alone* as a complete sentence.

Subordinate clauses in both Latin and English are introduced by a wide variety of *subordinating conjunctions*. A **subordinating conjunction** is a conjunction that introduces a subordinate clause. The Latin subordinating conjunctions introduced in this chapter and their corresponding English meanings are:

---

4. In the case of **valdē**, the stress on the antepenult (válidē) resulted in a weakly pronounced penult, and the unstressed penult eventually dropped out altogether. The loss of a syllable in the middle of a word is called **syncope** (< Greek *synkopē,* cutting together). For a similar development compare Latin tabula with its English derivative, "table."

Latin	English	Type of Clause Introduced
postquam	after	Temporal
ut	as, when	Temporal
ubi	when	Temporal
quoniam	since, because	Causal
etsi	although	Concessive
quamquam	although	Concessive
sī	if	Conditional
nisi	if . . . not, unless	Conditional

OBSERVATION
_____

The subordinating conjunctions in this chapter introduce four types of subordinate clauses: *temporal, causal, concessive,* and *conditional.* A temporal clause indicates a particular *relation in time* of the event in the subordinate clause to the event in the main clause. A causal clause gives the *reason* for the event in the main clause. A concessive clause reports an event *in spite of which* the event in the main clause occurs. A conditional clause states a *condition under which* the event in the main clause occurs.

A subordinate clause in a complex sentence in either English or Latin may appear either before or after the main clause:

Ubi dīxit, audiēbam.	When he spoke, I was listening.
Audiēbam ubi dīxit.	I was listening when he spoke.

When the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, it is set off by a comma. When the subordinate clause follows the main clause, most often no comma is used.

In Latin, when an expressed subject is common to both the subordinate clause and the main clause, the order is often as follows:

Rēgīna, quoniam bellum gerēbat, arma optābat.
The queen, since war (d.o.) she was waging, arms (d.o.) was desiring.
The queen, since she was waging war, was desiring arms.
Since the queen was waging war, she was desiring arms.

OBSERVATIONS
_____

1. The placement of rēgīna in first position signals that this word is the subject of *both* the verb in the *main* clause *and* the verb in the *subordinate* clause. For greater cohesion and economy—rēgīna does not have to be repeated in the subordinate clause—the main clause **rēgīna arma optābat** surrounds the subordinate clause.

2. The third translation given above is to be preferred for correct English and requires the addition of the English pronoun "she" to begin the main clause.

☛ DRILL 48 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§49. Conditional Sentences I

A conditional sentence is the name given to a complex sentence that includes a *condition* or conditional clause—a type of subordinate clause—and a main clause. For example:

If he has friends, he does not desire money.

If he had friends, he was not desiring money.

If we capture the town, the poets will sing of our deeds.

If we had captured the town, the poets would have sung of our deeds.

The italicized portion of each of these sentences states the condition that must occur in order for the main clause to occur. For example, *only* "if we capture the town" will "the poet sing of our deeds." The subordinate clause or "if clause" of a conditional sentence is called a **protasis** (< Greek *protasis,* proposition). The main clause is called an **apodosis** (< Greek *apodosis,* giving back, return). Both in Latin and in English the protasis may precede or follow the apodosis. For example:

Protasis	Apodosis
If he has friends, he does not desire money.	
Apodosis	**Protasis**
He does not desire money if he has friends.	

There are three classes of conditional sentences in Latin: *simple, future,* and *contrary-to-fact.* **Simple** conditional sentences make statements of fact about present or past time (the first two sentences above are simple conditional sentences). **Future** conditional sentences make statements about the future (the third sentence above is a future conditional sentence). **Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentences make statements that suppose that the actions of both the protasis and the apodosis *are not occurring now* or *did not occur in the past* (the fourth sentence above is a contrary-to-fact conditional sentence). In this section only simple and future conditional sentences in Latin are introduced.[5] The protases of *all* kinds of conditional sentences in Latin are most commonly introduced by sī (if) or nisi (if . . . not, unless).

Simple Conditional Sentences

Simple conditional sentences are of two types: *present* or *past.* In a **Present Simple** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *present indicative.* In a **Past Simple** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in *any past tense of the indicative.* The first two sentences above would be rendered in Latin as follows:

Sī amīcōs *habet,* pecūniam nōn *optat.* (Present Simple)
If he *has* friends, he *does* not *desire* money.
Sī amīcōs *habēbat,* pecūniam nōn *optābat.* (Past Simple)
If he *(repeatedly) had* friends, he *(repeatedly)* did not *desire* money.

---

5. For contrary-to-fact conditional sentences, see §68.

1. Simple conditional sentences make simple factual statements about the present or the past in the indicative mood, the mood used to express something as factual. They may have a *particular* meaning, stating something about a particular moment in time, or a *generalizing* meaning, making a general statement. Context helps to determine whether a simple conditional sentence is particular or general.

2. The syntax of, for example, habēbat is imperfect indicative in the protasis of a Past Simple conditional sentence.[6]

Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences

One kind of **future conditional sentence** is called the **Future More Vivid** because it vividly imagines future events in the indicative mood.[7] In a Future More Vivid conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *future indicative*. The third sentence above would be rendered in Latin as follows:

> Sī oppidum *capiēmus*, poētae nostra facta *canent*.
> If *we shall capture* the town, the poets *will sing of* our deeds.
> If *we capture* the town, the poets *will sing of* our deeds.

1. A Future More Vivid conditional sentence in Latin requires the future indicative in both the protasis and the apodosis because both events will occur in the future. The second translation above is to be preferred, however, since it is common to use an *English present tense* when translating the protasis. The English phrase "if we capture" is understood to refer to future time because the verb in the main clause clearly indicates future time.

2. The syntax of, for example, canent is future indicative in the apodosis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence.

The *future perfect indicative* may sometimes appear in the protasis of a future conditional sentence in combination with a *future indicative* in the apodosis. Such a conditional sentence is called a **Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis**. The future perfect may emphasize the speed or completeness with which the action in the protasis will be done. For example:

> Sī oppidum *cēperimus*, poētae nostra facta *canent*.
> If *we shall have captured* the town, the poets *will sing of* our deeds.
> If *we capture* the town, the poets *will sing of* our deeds.

1. Since English cannot easily express the special emphasis indicated by the future perfect in the protasis, once again the *English present tense* is to be preferred in translation. Thus the translations of Future More Vivid and Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis conditional sentences are the *same*.

2. The syntax of, for example, cēperimus is future perfect indicative in the protasis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence with Emphatic Protasis.

---

6. The syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, reason for mood, and reason for tense.

7. For Future Less Vivid conditional sentences, see §68.

In all future conditional sentences, it is possible to replace the future indicative in the apodosis with an *imperative* since commands look to future time. For example:

> Sī rēgīnam vidēre optābis, *venī* ad forum.
> If the queen (d.o.) to see you desire, *come* to the forum.
> If you desire to see the queen, *come* to the forum.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the imperative venī is used instead of a future indicative in the apodosis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence.

Summary of Conditional Sentences		
Name	Verbs in Latin	Verbs in English[8]
Present Simple	Present Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	NO SPECIAL TRANSLATION
Past Simple	Any Past Tense of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	NO SPECIAL TRANSLATION
Future More Vivid[9]	Future Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	Present (does) in Protasis, Future (will do) in Apodosis
Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis[10]	Future Perfect Indicative in Protasis, Future Indicative in Apodosis	Present (does) in Protasis, Future (will do) in Apodosis

☛ DRILL 49 MAY NOW BE DONE.

---

8. The model verb "do" is used to indicate English translation formulas.

9. This name is commonly abbreviated FMV.

10. This name is commonly abbreviated FMVE.

Short Readings

1. A quick exchange between two slaves

   Euclio: Tacē atque abī intrō. *Staphyla:* Taceō atque abeō. (PLAUTUS, *AULULĀRIA* 103)

   intrō (adv.) within, inside
   taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep silent

2. An example of Ennian alliteration in a scornful remark perhaps uttered by Romulus against
   Titus Tatius, a Sabine king

   Ō Tite, tūte, Tatī, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulistī. (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLĒS* I.104)

   tantus, -a, -um so great, so much
   Titus Tatius, Titī Tatiī *m.* Titus Tatius
   tūte = emphatic form of **tū**
   tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; absolute ruler

3. Cato gives a summary of the essence of agriculture.

   quid est agrum bene colere? bene arāre. quid est secundum? arāre. quid tertium?

   stercorāre. (CATO, *DĒ AGRĪ CULTŪRĀ* 61)

   arō (1-tr.) plough, till   secundus, -a, -um second
   colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend   stercorō (1-tr.) spread manure
   quid = *neut. sing. nom. of interrog. pron.,* what   tertius, -a, -um third

4. The orator identifies what is of value to the Romans.

   ōdit populus Rōmānus prīvātam luxuriam, pūblicam magnificentiam dīligit.

   (CICERO, *PRŌ MURĒNĀ* 76)

   dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus value, esteem, love
   luxuria, luxuriae *f.* extravagance, excess, luxury
   magnificentia, magnificentiae *f.* magnificence, sumptuousness
   prīvātus, -a, -um private
   pūblicus, -a, -um public

5. A remark in a letter of Cicero after he has asked a friend to attend to some business for him

   nōs, cum* salvī vēnerimus, reliqua per nōs agēmus. (CICERO, *AD FAMILIĀRĒS* XIV.5.2)

   *cum, *here* (conj.) when
   reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)
   salvus, -a, -um safe, sound

6. A Roman proverb

   Avārus miseriae causa est suae. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A14)

   avārus, -a, -um greedy
   miseria, miseriae *f.* misery

7. The poet concludes a poem to a wealthy but always worried friend, who insists on trying to make the poet worry as well.

ut tū fortūnam, sīc nōs tē, Celse, ferēmus. (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I.8.17)

Celsus, Celsī *m.* Celsus
fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune

8. The poet describes an emotional difficulty.

ōderō sī poterō; sī nōn, invītus amābō. (OVID, *AMŌRĒS* III.11.35)

invītus, -a, -um unwilling

9. A portion of Queen Clytaemnestra's soliloquy

tēcum ipsa nunc ēvolve fēmineōs dolōs . . . (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 116)

dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick, cunning
ēvolvō, ēvolvere, ēvolvī, ēvolūtus unroll; turn over (in one's mind)
fēmineus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to a woman, feminine

10. When Clytaemnestra hesitates to carry through their deadly plan, her lover and partner-in-crime, Aegisthus, urges her to action.

nec rēgna socium ferre nec taedae sciunt. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 259)

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
sciō, scīre, scīvī or sciī, scītus know (how to) (+ infin.)
taeda, taedae *f.* (marriage) torch

11. Aegisthus speaks bravely about the possible consequences of his planned actions.

exilia mihi sunt haud nova; assuēvī malīs. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 302)

assuēscō, assuēscere, assuēvī, assuētum become accustomed; *in perfect*, be accustomed (+ dat.)
exilium, exiliī *n.* exile
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
novus, -a, -um new

12. Cassandra addresses the god Apollo, her nemesis.

recēde, Phoebe, iam nōn sum tua. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 722)

iam (adv.) now; by now
Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
recēdō (re- + cēdō) go back, withdraw

13. In a passage examining Cicero's reasoning in his legal speeches, Quintilian ponders the rationale behind the following defense of murder.

sī occīdī, rēctē fēcī; sed nōn occīdī. (QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTITŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* IV.5.13)

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill
rēctē (adv.) rightly, justly

14. Each reader's capacity determines how he evaluates the books he reads.

    . . . habent sua fāta libellī. (Terentianus Maurus, *Dē Syllabīs* 1286)

libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book

15. A Roman gravestone inscription

    Plōtia C.l.* Thalassia virīs suīs et amīcīs amāra fuit numquam. (*CIL* VI.7595)

*C.l. = Gaī līberta   numquam (adv.) never
amārus, -a, -um bitter   Plōtia, Plōtiae *f.* Plotia
līberta, lībertae *f.* freedwoman   Thalassius, -a, -um Thalassian

16. A Roman gravestone inscription

    Fātīs cessit suīs. (*CIL* X.7658)

Longer Reading

Cicero, *Acadēmica* I.18

Atticus, friend to Cicero and a character in a philosophical dialogue, encourages his friend Varro to continue speaking about their favorite subjects.

"Tū vērō perge, Varrō; valdē enim amō nostra atque nostrōs, mēque ista dēlectant cum* Latīnē dīcuntur et istō modō."

*cum, *here* (conj.) when
dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
ista = *neut. pl. nom. of demonstr. adj.*, those (of yours)
istō = *neut. sing. abl. of demonstr. adj.*, that (of yours)
Latīnē (adv.) in Latin

modus, modī *m.* way, manner
pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed, continue
Varrō = *masc. sing. voc.*, (M. Terentius) Varro, writer and friend of Cicero
vērō (adv.) (but) in fact, indeed

Marcus Tullius Cicero (106–43 B.C.E.), lawyer, statesman, philosopher, and would-be poet, is central to any study of Latin prose style, and he is the single most influential Latin prose writer. His smooth and balanced style was studied by all, emulated by many, and steadfastly avoided by a strong-minded few. Cicero's many writings that have survived—including political and legal orations, philosophical works, and volumes of letters—paint the most detailed portrait that we have of a life in ancient Rome. His political career reached its height when as consul (in 63) he repressed an attempted revolt led by the prominent nobleman Catiline. Twenty years later he was killed at the order of Marc Antony, whose enmity he had incurred through a series of virulent public attacks.

The *Acadēmica*, of which only portions survive, was a philosophical work concerned with epistemology. In one part Varro, Atticus, and Cicero converse, chiefly about Varro's theories.

CHAPTER VI

Vocabulary

➤ Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* Athens
nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature
Rōma, Rōmae *f.* Rome

dictum, dictī *n.* word; saying
domus, domī *f.* house, home

➤ amor, amōris *m.* love
animal, animālis, -ium *n.* animal
➤ carmen, carminis *n.* song, poem
➤ Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.* Carthage
➤ cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m.* or *f.* citizen
corpus, corporis *n.* body
frāter, frātris *m.* brother
➤ homō, hominis *m.* human being, man;
in pl., people
➤ hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (public) enemy
➤ iūs, iūris *n.* right, law; judgment; court
➤ iūre (adv.) rightly, justly
➤ mare, maris, *-ium *n.* sea
māter, mātris *f.* mother
➤ mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* mind; intention,
purpose; attitude
mīles, mīlitis *m.* soldier
➤ moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (city) walls
pater, patris *m.* father
➤ patrēs cōnscrīptī, *voc. pl.* enrolled
fathers, senators
rēx, rēgis *m.* king
➤ rūs, rūris *n. in sing. or pl.,* country(side)

➤ servitūs, servitūtis *f.* slavery
soror, sorōris *f.* sister
timor, timōris *m.* fear
➤ urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* city
➤ vīs, ——, -ium *f.* force, power; violence;
in pl., (physical) strength (§53)

➤ līberō (1-tr.) free, liberate

➤ careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus lack,
be without, be free from (+ abl.)

➤ legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus gather; choose;
read
➤ intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī,
intellēctus understand
➤ vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victūrus live, be alive

antīquus, -a, -um old, ancient
novus, -a, -um new; strange
➤ paucī, paucae, pauca few
➤ autem (postpositive conj.) however;
moreover
inter (prep. + acc.) between, among;
during
➤ sub (prep. + acc.) under; up to
(prep. + abl.) under; at the foot of;
near
umquam (adv.) ever
numquam (adv.) never

Vocabulary Notes

Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* appears in the plural only. (In English, too, the "s" on the end of Athens indicates that the name is plural in form.)

The plural of amor, amōris *m.* may be translated "(feelings of) love," "affection," "love affair," or "object of affection." In Latin, the plural of an abstract noun is often used with a concrete meaning. When capitalized, Amor refers to the god Cupid.

carmen, carminis *n.* is formed by the addition of the suffix -men to a stem of the verb canō. The basic meaning of carmen is thus something sung or chanted. It may mean a hymn, a ritual utterance, or incantation. Since ancient poetry was often sung and always spoken out loud, carmen may describe a poem, a play, or a part of a play, regardless of whether it was actually sung. It may also refer abstractly to "poetry" or "song."

Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.* (often spelled with a K) was a city in northern Africa and the capital of the Carthaginian (or Phoenician) empire. The Carthaginian empire was the most powerful in the western Mediterranean until Rome's expansion. War broke out between Rome and Carthage in the third century b.c.e. and again in the middle of the second century b.c.e. These wars are referred to as the Punic wars (< Pūnicus, -a, -um, Phoenician, Carthaginian). The last of the Punic wars ended with the destruction of Carthage. Its legendary founder and queen was Dido, whom Aeneas encounters in the *Aeneid.*

cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m.* or *f.* is common gender. It means "citizen" of a political unit as opposed to a foreigner, noncitizen, or slave. It may also mean "fellow citizen" or "countryman," particularly in political addresses.

The basic meaning of homō, hominis *m.* is "human being" as distinct from anything nonhuman (gods, animals). homō is more neutral than vir, which is always explicitly male and may convey the notion of a man of honor or principle. When a man from an unestablished family achieved a major political office for the first time, he was called a homō novus or novus homō, "new man." The term often carried an implied insult. The plural forms of homō are often used to mean "people" in general as opposed to populus, which means a particular "people" or "populace."

Hominēs multa impia dīcunt.   People say many wicked things.

hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* is a "public enemy" of a country as opposed to inimīcus, a "personal enemy."

iūs, iūris *n.* expresses the abstract notion of "law" or "right," rather than a particular law, for which Latin uses the word lēx. It may also refer to "right" in the sense of "rights of citizens." iūs may also mean "judgment" or "court" (the place of judgment). The adverb iūre is in origin the ablative singular of iūs.

mare, maris, *-ium n.* has an asterisk before the genitive plural ending because the form *marium does not occur in the Latin literature that survives. Although the genitive form marum does occur, mare displays all other i-stem features.

mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* may mean "mind" as the seat of intellectual activity, "intention" or "purpose" as a result of that intellectual activity, or "frame of mind," "attitude."

moenia, moenium *n. pl.* is the word for the walls that surround a city for defense.

The phrase patrēs cōnscrīptī, most frequently seen in the vocative case, means "fathers (having been) enrolled" (in the senate) (< cōnscrībō [con- + scrībō], cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus, enroll). It is a frequent appellation for the collective Roman senate. The phrase occasionally appears in other cases. The plural patrēs *without* the participle cōnscrīptī may also be used to mean "senators."

rūs, rūris *n.* indicates the "countryside" as opposed to the city and often appears in the plural as well with this meaning. Its locative form is rūrī.

servitūs, servitūtis *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -tūs to the stem of the noun servus.

The final -bs of urbs is pronounced as ps in "taps." Urbs often refers specifically to Rome, while oppidum designates a smaller town in Italy.

vīs, —, -ium *f.* is an irregular third-declension noun. (For the full declension of vīs see §53.) In the singular, vīs has the meaning "force," "power," or "violence," while in the plural it means "(physical) strength."

Incolae oppidum vī cēpērunt.   The inhabitants captured the town *by force.*
Vīrēs nautārum superābantur.   The *strength* of the sailors was being overcome.

līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātus is a transitive verb that is often accompanied by an Ablative of Separation (see §54).

Incolās perīculō līberāvimus.   We freed the inhabitants *from danger.*

careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, caritūrus (about to lack), is a future active participle. In addition to its basic meanings of "lack" and "be without," careō may mean "be free from." Careō takes an Ablative of Separation that may be translated as a direct object in English.

Agricola *amīcīs* nōn caret.	The farmer does not lack *friends*.
	The farmer is not without *friends*.
Fīlius rēgīnae *cūrīs* caruit.	The son of the queen was free *from cares*.

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus may mean "gather" (shells, bones, spoils of war) or "choose" (leaders, judges). Through the notion of gathering something with one's eyes and observing something, it comes to have the particular meaning of "read."

intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix inter- to legō. (For the prefix inter- see Appendix P.) In compounds inter- often means "thoroughly." From the notion of thoroughly reading or observing something, intellegō comes to mean "understand."

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, vīctūrus (about to live), is a future active participle.

Because the adjective paucī, paucae, pauca means "few," it almost never appears in the singular. Its vocabulary entry therefore includes the masculine, feminine, and neuter *plural* nominative forms. The stem is pauc-.

autem is a postpositive conjunction that joins two sentences or clauses. Most often autem adds a thought that is in opposition to a previous one (however), but sometimes the new thought is merely a different, additional idea (moreover).

Nihil scrībō. Multa *autem* legō.	I write nothing. *However*, I read many things.
Antōnius bene dīcit. Bene *autem* scrībit.	Antony speaks well. *Moreover*, he writes well.

Like in, the preposition sub takes both the accusative and the ablative. When it takes the accusative, it conveys either an idea of motion "under" or of motion from below "up to" a place (city walls, mountains). When it takes an ablative, it indicates something "under" which someone or something is located. It can also mean "at the foot of," "close up to," or "near" (city walls, mountains).

Mīlitēs *sub moenia* mīsit.	He sent the soldiers *up to the city walls*.
Erant mīlitēs *sub oppidō*.	There were soldiers *close up to/at the foot of the town*.

	Derivatives	Cognates
careō	caret	*castrate; castle; chaste; caste; incest*
cīvis	*civil; city*	*Shiva; cemetery*
homō	*homicide; hombre; homage*	*bridegroom; chameleon; humble*
hostis	host; *hostile*	guest
iūs	*jury; injury; perjure; just*	
legō	*legend; legible; collect; lectern*	*lexicon; dyslexia; -logue; logic*
mare	*maritime; marine*	*mermaid; meerschaum; marsh; morass*
māter	*maternal; matrix; matrimony*	mother; *metropolis; material; Demeter*
mēns	*mental; demented*	mind; *automatic; maenad; mentor; mania; mantra*
pater	*paternal; patrician; patron*	father; *patriarch*
paucī	*paucity;* poco	*pony*
rūs	*rural; rustic*	room; *rummage; ream*
vīs	vim; *violate; violent*	

§50. The Perfect Passive System

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative are all formed with the fourth principal part combined with forms of the verb **sum**. These two parts are written separately, and all forms of the perfect passive system are called **compound verb forms.**

The fourth principal part has been identified as the perfect passive participle, and the participle has been defined as a verbal adjective with the properties of tense and voice. Although the perfect passive participle of a transitive verb appears in the vocabulary entry with the ending **-us,**[1] it may also be written with a full set of adjective endings: **-us, -a, -um.** For example: **rēctus, -a, -um.** When this adjective joins with forms of **sum** to make compound forms in the perfect passive system, it always agrees with the *subject of the verb* and therefore is *always in the nominative case.* The subject also determines the *gender* and *number.*

§51. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the perfect passive indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the present tense of **sum**

Thus the perfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um	
Singular	
1 rēctus, -a, -um sum	I was ruled; I have been ruled
2 rēctus, -a, -um es	you were ruled; you have been ruled
3 rēctus, -a, -um est	he, she, it was ruled; he, she, it has been ruled
Plural	
1 rēctī, -ae, -a sumus	we were ruled; we have been ruled
2 rēctī, -ae, -a estis	you (pl.) were ruled; you (pl.) have been ruled
3 rēctī, -ae, -a sunt	they were ruled; they have been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the perfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises *cannot be translated word by word* but *must* be treated *as a unit* and translated in accordance with the two meanings of the perfect tense (past time with simple aspect *or* present time with completed aspect). In *all* compound forms in Latin it is common for the form of **sum** to appear after the participle; however, these forms are often reversed, and other words may intervene. For example, **captus est** and **est captus** are equally correct.

2. The perfect passive participle ends in **-us** (sing.) or **-ī** (pl.) if the subject is masculine, **-a** (sing.) or **-ae** (pl.) if the subject is feminine, **-um** (sing.) or **-a** (pl.) if the subject is neuter. For example:

---

1. The perfect passive participle of *intransitive verbs* is given with the neuter ending **-um.** Remember that intransitive verbs are generally not found in the passive voice, but see §59.

Rēctus est.	He was/has been ruled.
Rēctae sumus.	We (fem.) were/have been ruled.
Oppida rēcta sunt.	The towns were/have been ruled.

Pluperfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect passive indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the imperfect tense of **sum**

Thus the pluperfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēctus, -a, -um**

Singular

1	rēctus, -a, -um eram	I had been ruled
2	rēctus, -a, -um erās	you had been ruled
3	rēctus, -a, -um erat	he, she, it had been ruled

Plural

1	rēctī, -ae, -a erāmus	we had been ruled
2	rēctī, -ae, -a erātis	you (pl.) had been ruled
3	rēctī, -ae, -a erant	they had been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the pluperfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises *cannot be translated word by word* but must be treated *as a unit* and translated in accordance with the meaning of the pluperfect tense (past time with completed aspect). The English words "had been" always appear in translations of the pluperfect passive indicative.

2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle. For example:

Rēcta erat.	She had been ruled.
Nautae rēctī erant.	The sailors had been ruled.

Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the future perfect passive indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the future tense of **sum**

Thus the future perfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēctus, -a, -um**

Singular

1	rēctus, -a, -um erō	I shall have been ruled
2	rēctus, -a, -um eris	you will have been ruled
3	rēctus, -a, -um erit	he, she, it will have been ruled

Plural

1	rēctī, -ae, -a erimus	we shall have been ruled
2	rēctī, -ae, -a eritis	you (pl.) will have been ruled
3	rēctī, -ae, -a erunt	they will have been ruled

1. Each form of the future perfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises *cannot be translated word by word* but must be treated *as a unit* and translated in accordance with the meaning of the future perfect tense (future time with completed aspect).

2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle. For example:

Oppidum rēctum erit.	The town will have been ruled.
Rēctī erunt.	They (masc.) will have been ruled.

The Omission of *sum* in Compound Verb Forms

In the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the forms of **sum** are frequently omitted, or one form of **sum** may apply to more than one participle. For example:

> **Postquam oppidum *captum* [est], miserī erant incolae.**
> After the town *(was) captured,* wretched were the inhabitants.
> After the town *was captured,* the inhabitants were wretched.
> **Poēta ā populō et *vīsus* et *audītus est*.**
> The poet by the people both *(was) seen* and *was heard.*
> The poet *was* both *seen* and *heard* by the people.

The tense of the compound verb form from which sum has been omitted is most often perfect, and the tense of sum omitted is present. In special contexts, the tense may be assumed to be pluperfect or future perfect.

A Note on the Perfect Passive Participle

Apart from its use in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative, the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part) may be used like any other first-second-declension adjective. It is then translated "(having been) _____ed." For example:

Servōs *captōs* vīdimus.	The slaves *(having been) captured* (d.o.) we saw.
	We saw the *captured* slaves.
Fēminīs *interfectōrum* auxilium dabō.	To the wives *of the (having been) killed men* aid I shall give.
	I shall give aid to the wives *of the killed men.*

1. The perfect passive participle in the first sentence agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. The parentheses indicate that the words "having been" may be omitted from the translation.

2. The perfect passive participle in the second sentence is used substantively. Certain substantives of perfect passive participles are so common that they are considered neuter second-declension nouns. For example: factum, factī *n.* deed ([having been] done thing); dictum, dictī *n.* word ([having been] said thing).

3. When the perfect passive participle appears *alone as an adjective* (i.e., *not* in a compound verb form), the action it describes is always already completed at the time of the main verb. For example, "we saw" the slaves when they had *already been* "captured."

☞ Drill 50–51 may now be done.

§52. Synopsis IV: Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes the perfect passive system, one chooses a *gender* for the subject in addition to a verb, a person, and a number because the compound forms of the perfect passive system include an adjective (the perfect passive participle) that *always* agrees with the subject of the verb. Here is a model synopsis of **agō** in the first person singular feminine:

Principal Parts: **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus**
Person, Number, and Gender: **1st sing. f.**

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	agō	I drive	agor	I am (being) driven
Imperfect	agēbam	I was driving	agēbar	I was being driven
Future	agam	I shall drive	agar	I shall be driven
Perfect	ēgī	1. I drove	ācta sum	1. I was driven
		2. I have driven		2. I have been driven
Pluperfect	ēgeram	I had driven	ācta eram	I had been driven
Future Perfect	ēgerō	I shall have driven	ācta erō	I shall have been driven
Infinitive				
Present	agere	to drive	agī	to be driven
Imperative				
Singular	age	drive	agere	be driven
Plural	agite	drive	agiminī	be driven

OBSERVATIONS

1. This synopsis reviews the indicative and imperative moods and the present active and passive infinitive. When new verb forms are introduced, the synopsis will expand accordingly.

2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given. Note that the perfect indicative requires two translations because it can be either past time with simple aspect *or* present time with completed aspect.

3. Imperatives appear in the second person singular and plural only. Always give the second person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the remaining forms.

☞ Drill 52 may now be done.

§53. Noun Morphology: Third Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE *THIRD* DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-IS**.

Gender Note: The third declension contains masculine nouns and feminine nouns, which have a common set of endings, and neuter nouns, which have endings slightly different from those of the masculine/feminine nouns.

Case Endings of the Third Declension					
Masculine/Feminine			Neuter		
	Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	—?	-es	Nom./Voc.	—?	-a
Gen.	-is	-um	Gen.	-is	-um
Dat.	-ī	-ibus	Dat.	-ī	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-ēs	Acc.	—?	-a
Abl.	-e	-ibus	Abl.	-e	-ibus

MEMORIZE EACH OF THESE TWO SETS OF ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *masculine* or *feminine* noun or a *neuter* noun of the third declension, add the appropriate endings to the stem.[3] For example:

	miles, militis *m.* soldier	corpus, corporis *n.* body
	stem = **milit-**	stem = **corpor-**
	Singular	*Singular*
Nom./Voc.	miles	corpus
Gen.	militis	corporis
Dat.	militī	corporī
Acc.	militem	corpus
Abl.	milite	corpore
	Plural	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	militēs	corpora
Gen.	militum	corporum
Dat.	militibus	corporibus
Acc.	militēs	corpora
Abl.	militibus	corporibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine third-declension nouns are used to mark more than one case: -ēs = nominative/vocative plural and accusative plural; -ibus = dative plural and ablative plural.

2. *Most* of the endings for neuter third-declension nouns are identical with the endings for masculine/feminine third-declension nouns. Neuter nouns *differ only* in having -a in the

2. Nouns of the third declension show wide variation in the *nominative singular form*, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR ENDING. The neuter singular accusative form is always identical to the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NEUTER SINGULAR ACCUSATIVE ENDING.

3. REMEMBER: TO FIND THE STEM OF ANY NOUN, REMOVE THE ENDING FROM THE GENITIVE SINGULAR FORM.

nominative/vocative and accusative plural. The neuter singular nominative form is supplied by the vocabulary entry *only*, and the accusative singular is *always* identical with the nominative singular. REMEMBER: ALL NEUTER WORDS IN LATIN HAVE IDENTICAL NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE FORMS IN BOTH THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL.[4]

Some nouns of the third declension have a genitive plural ending **-ium** instead of **-um** and certain other slightly different endings. These nouns are called **third-declension i-stem nouns**.

Case Endings of the Third Declension i-Stem					
Masculine/Feminine			**Neuter**		
	Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	—[5]	-ēs	Nom./Voc.	—[5]	-ia
Gen.	-is	-ium	Gen.	-is	-ium
Dat.	-ī	-ibus	Dat.	-ī	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-ēs/-īs	Acc.	—[5]	-ia
Abl.	-e	-ibus	Abl.	-ī	-ibus

MEMORIZE EACH OF THESE TWO SETS OF ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *masculine* or *feminine* third-declension i-stem noun or a *neuter* third-declension i-stem noun, add the appropriate endings to the stem. For example:

	urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* city stem = urb-	**animal, animālis, -ium** *n.* animal stem = animal-
	Singular	*Singular*
Nom./Voc.	urbs	animal
Gen.	urbis	animālis
Dat.	urbī	animālī
Acc.	urbem	animal
Abl.	urbe	animālī
	Plural	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	urbēs	animālia
Gen.	urbium	animālium
Dat.	urbibus	animālibus
Acc.	urbēs/urbīs	animālia
Abl.	urbibus	animālibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The vocabulary entry for every i-stem noun in this book contains the genitive plural ending (-ium) following the full genitive singular form. This additional vocabulary element serves to identify each i-stem noun as such and must be memorized.

---

4. In *all* languages of the Indo-European family, neuter nominative and accusative forms, both singular and plural, are identical.

5. Nouns of the third declension i-stem show wide variation in the *nominative singular form*, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR ENDING. The neuter singular accusative form is always identical to the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NEUTER SINGULAR ACCUSATIVE ENDING.

2. There are *two* endings for the accusative plural of masculine/feminine i-stem nouns (-ēs/-īs) with no difference in meaning. Masculine/feminine i-stem nouns differ from ordinary third-declension nouns in the *genitive and accusative plural only*.

3. Neuter i-stem nouns differ from all other nouns of the third declension in having -ī (*not* -e) as the ablative singular ending. Neuter i-stem nouns differ from ordinary neuter third-declension nouns in having -ia (*not* -a) as the nominative and accusative plural ending.

4. There are a few masculine/feminine i-stem nouns that sometimes use -ī instead of -e in the ablative singular. Such nouns are identified in the vocabulary notes.

Among nouns of the third declension, there are many possible forms in the nominative singular and notable differences in the spellings of the nominative singular and genitive singular, from where the stem is taken. In addition, some nouns belong to the i-stem group, and others do not. All such important information for each noun is contained in the vocabulary entry. Therefore, MEMORIZING FULL VOCABULARY ENTRIES FOR EVERY THIRD-DECLENSION NOUN IS ESSENTIAL.

Since adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify only in *gender, number,* and *case,* first-second-declension adjectives are able to modify third-declension nouns. For example:

mīlitēs bonī	good soldiers (masc. pl. nom./voc.)
corpus validum	strong body (neut. sing. nom./voc./acc.)
urbis pulchrae	of the beautiful city (fem. sing. gen.)
multīs animālibus	to/for/from (etc.) many animals (neut. pl. dat./abl.)

The Irregular Third-Declension Noun *vīs*

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THIS IMPORTANT IRREGULAR THIRD-DECLENSION NOUN:

vīs, ——, -ium f. force, power; violence; *in pl.* (physical) strength

	Singular	Plural
Nom./Voc.	vīs	vīrēs
Gen.	———	vīrium
Dat.	———	vīribus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs/vīrīs
Abl.	vī	vīribus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The genitive and dative singular forms do not appear in the Latin literature that survives. MEMORIZE A BLANK AS THE SECOND ELEMENT OF THE VOCABULARY ENTRY AND BLANKS FOR THESE TWO FORMS IN THE DECLENSION.

2. In the plural vīs is a third-declension i-stem noun with the stem vīr-. The -s- of the original stem *vīs- has changed to -r- because of rhotacism (see n. 13, p. 35).

☛ DRILL 53 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§54. Ablative of Separation

When the ablative case expresses the idea that someone is *apart from* someone or something, it is called the **Ablative of Separation.**[6] The prepositions ā/ab, ē/ex, and dē are sometimes used, but the Ablative of Separation more often occurs with no preposition. It is usually translated "from _____." For example:

Vir magnus populum *perīculō* līberābit. (līberō [1-tr.] free)
The great man the people (d.o.) *from danger* will free.
The great man will free the people *from danger.*
Bona est nostra vīta; nam *cūrīs* carēmus. (careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus be without)
Good is our life; for *(from) cares* we are without.
Our life is good; for we are without *cares.*
Odiō lībera semper erat.
From hatred free always she was.
She was always free *from hatred.*

The syntax of each italicized word (perīculō, cūrīs, odiō) is **Ablative of Separation.**

§55. Ablative of Cause

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* expresses the *cause* or *reason* for a quality or verbal action, it is called the **Ablative of Cause.** For example:

Incolae *īrā* atque *odiō* bellum gerēbant.
The inhabitants *because of (from) anger* and *hatred* war (d.o.) were waging.
The inhabitants were waging war *because of anger* and *hatred.*

The syntax of each italicized word (īrā, odiō) is **Ablative of Cause.**

OBSERVATION

> The use of the ablative case to express cause indicates that cause is understood as the *source* of a particular event or as something *from which* an event arises. Thus, the Ablative of Cause reflects the basic *separative* function of the ablative case. Other expressions of reason or cause that may be equivalent to the Ablative of Cause include: **propter** + accusative, **per** + accusative, and **ē/ex** or **dē** + ablative.

---

6. For separation as the original function of the ablative case see §1.

§56. Ablative of Place From Which

When the ablative case is used to express *motion from a place*, it is called the **Ablative of Place From Which**. The prepositions **ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, or **dē** are regularly used. However, *the prepositions are omitted with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns domus and rūs*. For example:

Ab *Italiā* vēla dedimus.	*Away from Italy* we set sail.
	We set sail *(away) from Italy*.
Agēbāmur ex *patriā*.	We were being driven *out from the country*
Rōmā discēdam.	*From Rome* I shall depart.
	I shall depart *from Rome*.

The syntax of each italicized word (**Italiā, patriā, Rōmā**) is **Ablative of Place From Which**. The Ablative of Place From Which is a particular variety of the Ablative of Separation.

§57. Ablative of Place Where and the Locative Case

Ablative of Place Where

When the ablative case expresses the idea of *location*, it is called the **Ablative of Place Where**.[7] The preposition **in** (less frequently certain other prepositions such as **sub** or **prō**) is regularly used.[8] For example:

In *oppidō* erant multī nautae.	*In the town* there were many sailors.

The syntax of the italicized word (**oppidō**) is **Ablative of Place Where**.

Locative Case

At an early stage in its development, Latin had a separate case for nouns to express location. This case is called the **Locative Case** and has endings that sometimes resemble genitive endings and sometimes resemble ablative endings. Most nouns lost their locative forms early, and location came to be expressed by the ablative case. However, *the names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns domus and rūs* retained their locative case forms. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING COMMON LOCATIVE FORMS:

Noun	Locative	Translation
domus, domī *f.*	domī	at home
rūs, rūris *n.*	rūrī	in the country (as opposed to city)
Rōma, Rōmae *f.*	Rōmae	in/at Rome
Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.*	Athēnīs	in/at Athens
Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.*	Carthāginī or **Carthāgine**	in/at Carthage

---

7. For location as a function of the ablative case see §1.

8. With certain words in certain authors the preposition is omitted, and certain common phrases may also appear without the preposition. For example: **terrā marīque** (on land and on sea), **multīs locīs** (in many places).

OBSERVATIONS

1. For nouns that have surviving locative forms, the Ablative of Place Where with the preposition in is *not* regularly used.

2. For first- and second-declension nouns:

a. The locative singular ending is identical with the genitive singular ending.
b. The locative plural ending is identical with the ablative plural ending.

For third-declension nouns, no consistent rule applies. The locative singular ending may be either -ī or -e or both.

§58. Accusative of Place To Which

When the accusative case is used to express *motion toward a place*, it is called the **Accusative of Place To Which**. The prepositions ad and in (less frequently certain other prepositions such as sub) are regularly used. However, *the prepositions are omitted with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns **domus** and **rūs***. For example:

Fēmina ad *prōvinciam* mittitur.	The woman *to the province* is being sent.
	The woman is being sent *to the province*.
Rōmānī *Athēnās* vēnērunt.	The Romans *to Athens* came.
	The Romans came *to Athens*.

The syntax of each italicized word (prōvinciam, Athēnās) is **Accusative of Place To Which**.

§59. Impersonal Passive

Intransitive verbs whose fourth principal parts end in **-um** ordinarily do not have any forms in the passive voice. Sometimes, however, such verbs appear in *third person singular* passive forms with *no expressed subjects*. The third person singular passive (in any tense and any mood) of an intransitive verb is called the **impersonal passive**. (The word **impersonal** means "having no personal subject.") Such a form reports and emphasizes that the action of the verb is being done (will be done, was done, etc.) but gives no indication of who performs that action. For example:

Pugnātur in prōvinciā.	*Fighting is being done* in the province.
	There is fighting in the province.
Per viās *errātum est*.	*Wandering was done (has been done)* through the streets.
	There was wandering through the streets.

OBSERVATIONS

1. It is convenient to translate the impersonal passive using the English gerund, a verbal noun ending in -ing.

2. Compound verb forms that are impersonal passives always have a perfect passive participle ending in the *neuter* nominative singular -um (*e.g.*, **errātum est**). This *neuter* ending on the participle indicates that this form is impersonal.

☛ DRILL 54–59 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A character expresses his opinion about the gods' attitude toward human action.

   ōdērunt dī hominēs iniūrōs. (Naevius, *Tragoediae* frag. 37)

   iniūrus, -a, -um lawless, unjust

2. The opinion of a character in a comic play

   proinde ut diū vīvitur, bene vīvitur. (Plautus, *Trinummus* 65)

   diū (adv.) for a long time
   proinde (adv.) according, in the same way

3. At the outset of his epic poem, the poet recalls what he saw in a dream.

   vīsus Homērus adesse poēta . . . (Ennius, *Annālēs* I.3)

   adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present
   Homērus, Homērī *m*. Homer

4. As part of his defense of a man charged with murder, Cicero reminds the jurors of the atmosphere in a politically disturbed city.

   silent lēgēs inter arma . . . (Cicero, *Prō Milōne* 11)

   lēx, lēgis *f.* law
   sileō, silēre, siluī, ——— be silent

5. The biographer Nepos explains why Hannibal was made a king.

   ut enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc Carthāgine quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur.

   (Cornelius Nepos, *Vīta Hannibalis* 7)

   annuus, -a, -um yearly; appointed for one year
   bīnī, bīnae, bīna two each, two at a time
   cōnsul, cōnsulis *m*. consul
   creō (1-tr.) create
   quotannīs (adv.) yearly, every year

6. The poet reflects on the lives of farmers.

   . . . redit agricolīs labor āctus in orbem,

   atque in sē sua per vestīgia volvitur annus.

   (Vergil, *Georgics* II.401–2)

   annus, annī *m*. year
   labor, labōris *m*. work, labor
   orbis, orbis, -ium *m*. ring, circle
   vestīgium, vestīgiī *n*. trace; footstep, track
   volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus *in active and passive*, turn, roll

7. The poet introduces the city that would become Rome's archenemy.

   urbs antīqua fuit (Tyriī tenuēre colōnī)

   Carthāgō . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.12–13)

colōnus, colōnī *m.* farmer; settler
Tyrius, -a, -um Tyrian, Phoenician

8. The poet sends his new collection of poems off to Rome.

   Parve—nec invideō—sine mē, liber, ībis in urbem. (OVID, *TRĪSTIA* I.1.1)

invideō (in- + videō) envy, be jealous

9. When Clytaemnestra hesitates to carry out their plan, her lover Aegisthus tries to persuade
   her to follow through by suggesting how the war may have changed her husband.

                    . . . rēx Mycēnārum fuit*,

   veniet* tyrannus: prospera animōs efferunt.

   (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 251–52)

*fuit, veniet, *subject is Agamemnon*
efferō (ex- + ferō), efferre, extulī, ēlātus, bring out; increase
Mycēnae, Mycēnārum *f. pl.* Mycenae, capital city of Agamemnon's kingdom
prosperus, -a, -um prosperous, successful
tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; absolute ruler; tyrant

10. Seneca remarks on one of the consequences of wealth.

    magna servitūs est magna fortūna. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGĪ* XI.6.5)

fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune

11. A gravestone inscription for a guard dog

    Raedārum custōs numquam latrāvit ineptē:

       nunc silet et cinerēs vindicat umbra suōs. (*CIL* IX.5785)

cinis, cineris *m.* ash
custōs, custōdis *m.* or *f.* guardian, protector,
  sentry
ineptē (adv.) improperly, inappropriately
latrō (1-intr.) bark

raeda, raedae *f.* wagon
sileō, silēre, siluī, —— be silent
umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade
vindicō (1-tr.) lay claim to; protect, defend

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 4.30

Cicero addresses and attacks his enemy Clodius, who attempted to prevent Cicero's return from exile in 57 B.C.E.

an tū cīvem ab hoste nātūrā ac locō, nōn animō factīsque distinguis? caedem in forō fēcistī, armātīs latrōnibus templa tenuistī, prīvātōrum domōs, aedēs sacrās incen-distī. cūr hostis Spartacus sī tū cīvis?

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine
an (conj.) *introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer,* can it really be that . . .
armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
distinguō, distinguere, distīnxī, distīnctus mark out, distinguish
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn

latrō, latrōnis *m.* hired soldier; criminal, thief
locus, locī *m.* place; position, rank
prīvātus, -a, -um private
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred
Spartacus, Spartacī *m.* Spartacus, Thracian gladiator who led a slave revolt (73–71 B.C.E.)
templum, templī *n.* temple

The *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* (Paradoxes of the Stoics), written in 46 B.C.E., comprises explanations of six theories of the Stoic school of philosophy that appeal least to common sense.

2. Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.11.39–40

The poet expresses an emotional quandary.

sīc ego nec sine tē nec tēcum vīvere possum,

et videor vōtī nescius esse meī.

nescius, -a, -um not knowing; unaware (+ gen.)
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer; desire

Publius Ovidius Nasō (43 B.C.E.–17 C.E.) was born at Sulmo, educated in Athens, and then moved to Rome. His talent was quickly noticed, and by the age of forty Ovid was Rome's leading poet. He is usually considered the last of the great poets of the Augustan age. For reasons that are still obscure he was banished to the Black Sea in 8 C.E., where he lived out his remaining years endeavoring to return to Rome. While in exile Ovid produced many elegiac poems pleading for his return, and it is from these that most of our biographical information about him derives. In all his works Ovid's erudition combines with his fantastic imagination to produce a poetic style that is varied, allusive, and often humorous and surprising. He employs a simplicity of syntax and word choice to produce a smoothness and immediate intelligibility that belie the complexity of his material.

The *Amōrēs* (Loves or Love Affairs) is a collection of forty-nine poems written in elegiac couplets, the meter established for Latin love poetry. The *Amōrēs*, one of Ovid's first published works, describe in frankly erotic, playful, and irreverent vignettes his love relations with a woman he names Corinna, but also included are a moving elegy on the death of Tibullus (another Roman elegist) and witty parodies of poems by Catullus and Propertius.

3. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XI.141–43

After King Midas discovers that his golden touch is more of a curse than a blessing, he learns from an oracle how to rid himself of his power. The oracle sends him to a particular river and orders him to do the following.

" . . . subde caput corpusque simul, simul ēlue crīmen."

rēx iussae succēdit aquae: vīs aurea tīnxit

flūmen et hūmānō dē corpore cessit in amnem; . . .

amnis, amnis, -ium *m.* stream, torrent
aqua, aquae *f.* water
aureus, -a, -um golden
caput, capitis *n.* head
crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; fault,
   defect
ēluō, ēluere, ēluī, ēlūtus wash out, rinse out;
   remove

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
hūmānus, -a, -um human
simul (adv.) at the same time
subdō (sub- + dō), subdere, subdidī, subditus put
   or place under
succēdō (sub- + cēdō) go under, enter (+ dat.)
tingō, tingere, tīnxī, tīnctus dye, tinge

The *Metamorphōsēs* is an epic poem in fifteen books and is considered Ovid's masterpiece. It weaves some 250 mythological stories into a single narrative from the beginning of time down to the deification of Julius Caesar.

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XIV.744–46

A young Cyprian, Iphis, commits suicide after he is spurned by Anaxerete, with whom he has fallen in love. His body is then brought back to his mother.

. . . postquam miserōrum verba parentum

ēdidit* et mātrum miserārum facta perēgit,

fūnera dūcēbat mediam lacrimōsa per urbem . . .

*The subject is Iphis' mother.
ēdō (ē- + dō), ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus emit; utter
fūnus, fūneris *n. in sing. or pl.* funeral
   (procession)
lacrimōsus, -a, -um full of tears, tearful

medius, -a, -um middle (of)
parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent;
   parentum = *gen. pl.*
peragō (per- + agō), peragere, perēgī, perāctus
   thoroughly do; accomplish, complete

5. Seneca the Younger, *Herculēs Furēns* 181–85

The chorus sings of the Fates.

dūrae peragunt pēnsa sorōrēs

nec sua retrō fīla revolvunt.

at gēns hominum fertur rapidīs

obvia fātīs incerta suī:

Stygiās ultrō quaerimus undās.

at (conj.) but

fīlum, fīlī *n.* thread

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation; clan, family

incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain

obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving against, opposed (+ dat.)

pēnsum, pēnsī *n.* weight; wool (weighed out to be spun in a day); spinning

peragō (per- + agō), peragere, perēgī, perāctus thoroughly do; accomplish, complete

quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī *or* quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek

rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming; rushing, rapid

retrō (adv.) back, backward

revolvō, revolvere, revolvī, revolūtus (un)roll; go through (again)

Stygius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the underworld river Styx; Stygian

ultrō (adv.) of one's own accord, spontaneously, voluntarily

unda, undae *f.* wave, water

Lūcius Annaeus Seneca (4? B.C.E.–65 C.E.) was born in Cordoba in southern Spain and came to Rome when he was a young boy. He is called Seneca the Younger to distinguish him from his father, who was a writer of rhetorical exercises. Seneca the Younger's career as a teacher and politician saw many high and low points: he was banished on charges of adultery in 41, recalled through the influence of Claudius's wife Agrippina, and made praetor in 49. He became Nero's tutor at the same time. When Claudius was murdered and Nero became emperor, Seneca was one of his closest advisers. Eventually, however, he fell from grace and was forced to commit suicide in 65. Seneca's literary output was prodigious and includes philosophical treatises, satire, letters, speeches, geography, and, not least, tragedies.

In the *Herculēs Furēns*, based on a play by Euripides, the hero kills his wife and children while in the grip of a madness imposed on him by Juno. After he regains his sanity, Hercules considers killing himself as well, but he is kept from doing this and instead finds sanctuary with Theseus in Athens. The play abounds in the rhetorical excesses that mark all of Seneca's tragedies.

§60. Names in Latin II

Proper names in Latin may belong to the first, second, or third declension. Many of the names of Roman gods belong to the third declension. Here is a list of the names of the most prominent Roman gods and the names of the Greek gods with which they are identified.

Roman God	Greek Counterpart
Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* Jupiter, king of the gods, god of sky, weather	Zeus
Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* Juno, goddess of women, marriage	Hera
Neptūnus, Neptūnī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea	Poseidon
Dis, Dītis *m.* Dis ("Rich one"), Pluto, god of the underworld	Pluto, Hades
Cerēs, Cereris *f.* Ceres, goddess of agriculture	Demeter
Vesta, Vestae *f.* Vesta, goddess of the hearth	Hestia
Venus, Veneris *f.* Venus, goddess of desire, passion	Aphrodite
Amor, Amōris *m.* Love; Amor, son of Venus, god of desire, passion	Eros
Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* Cupid (another name for Amor)	Eros
Apollō, Apollinis *m.* Apollo, god of the arts (medicine, poetry, etc.)	Apollo
Diāna, Diānae *f.* Diana, goddess of virginity, hunting	Artemis
Minerva, Minervae *f.* Minerva, goddess of arts, sciences, wisdom	Athena
Mars, Martis *m.* Mars, god of war	Ares
Mercurius, Mercurii *m.* Mercury, messenger god, conductor of souls	Hermes
Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* Vulcan, god of fire	Hephaestus
Bacchus, Bacchī *m.* Bacchus, god of wine	Dionysus
Liber, Liberī *m.* Liber ("Free one") (another name for Bacchus)	Dionysus

The Roman poet Ennius composed two dactylic hexameter[1] lines that contain the names of the twelve principal Olympian gods:

Iūnō Vesta Minerva Cerēs Diāna Venus Mars

Mercurius Iovis Neptūnus Volcānus Apollō[2]

Although the Romans borrowed much from Greek literature and culture, many aspects of Roman religion, including most of the names of their gods, have native Italic origins. Many Italic deities lost their original significance through being identified with a particular god of the Greek pantheon. For example, although Mars became the name for the war god in classical Rome, the name originally signified an Italic god of agriculture.

The Romans also engaged in the practice of making men gods. In the historical period this began after the assassination of Julius Caesar in 44 B.C.E.[3] When a comet was seen in the sky in 43, it was declared to be **dīvus Iūlius** ("divine" or "deified Julius"). (Learn these adjectives: **DĪVUS, -A, -UM** DEIFIED, DIVINE; **DĪVĪNUS, -A, -UM** BELONGING TO THE GODS, DIVINE.) Even the title **Augustus**, adopted by Octavian in 27 B.C.E., reflects the unique relation of the Romans to things religious. Before Octavian took

---

1. For this meter see §82.

2. The -i- of Diāna here scans *long*. Iovis is here *nominative singular*, and its last syllable here scans *short*. The spelling Volcānus is archaic.

3. According to legend Romulus was also deified.

it as an honorific name, the adjective **augustus, -a, -um** ("venerable," "revered") had been applied only to religious objects, temples, and the like, but never to a person.

Below are listed names that belong to the third declension and additional names that belong to the first and second declensions. These names and the names above will not be given when they appear in the remainder of this book. FAMILIAR-IZE YOURSELF WITH THESE NAMES AND BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THEM AS THEY OCCUR.

Legendary and Fictitious Figures
Dido, Didonis *f.* Dido
Latinus, Latini *m.* Latinus
Priamus, Priami *m.* Priam
Turnus, Turni *m.* Turnus

Historical Figures[5]
C. Iulius Caesar, C. Iulii Caesaris *m.* Gaius Julius Caesar (Julius Caesar) (see p. 203)
M. Porcius Cato, M. Porcii Catonis *m.* Marcus Porcius Cato (Cato)
M. Tullius Cicero, M. Tullii Ciceronis *m.* Marcus Tullius Cicero (Cicero) (see p. 99)
Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* Hannibal

Poets
P. Ovidius Naso, P. Ovidii Nasonis *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso (Ovid) (see p. 115)
Sex. Propertius, Sex. Propertii *m.* Sextus Propertius (Propertius) (see p. 141)
P. Vergilius Maro, P. Vergilii Maronis *m.* Publius Vergilius Maro (Vergil) (see p. 168)

Poets' Names for Their Beloveds[6]
Corinna, Corinnae *f.* Corinna
Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* Cynthia
Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* Lesbia

4. **Dido** is the Phoenician princess who flees her native Phoenicia to found Carthage, Rome's archenemy. After meeting and falling in love with Aeneas in Carthage during his passage to Italy, Dido commits suicide when Aeneas reluctantly follows his destiny to Italy. **Priam** is the king of Troy, father of Hector, Paris, and many others; he is killed at Troy by the son of Achilles. **Turnus** is a king of an Italic people, the Rutulians; he becomes Aeneas's bitter enemy after **Latinus**, the king of Latium (central Italy) marries his daughter, Lavinia, to Aeneas rather than to Turnus. The most famous account of this story is in Vergil's *Aeneid*.

5. The name **Caesar** may designate Julius Caesar, but it was also taken as a *cognōmen* by all the succeeding emperors until Hadrian in the second century c.e. There are two important Romans named Marcus Porcius Cato: Cato the Elder (Catō Maior) and Cato of Utica (Catō Uticēnsis). Cato the Elder, so called to distinguish him from the second Cato, was also known as Cato the Censor. He played a central role in the political and cultural life of the second century b.c.e. Cato of Utica, the Elder's great-grandson, fought on Pompey's side against Julius Caesar and committed suicide rather than accept Caesar's pardon. **Hannibal** was the leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic War. He was Rome's fiercest opponent, invading Italy, winning many important battles, and nearly succeeding in subduing Rome.

6. **Lesbia, Cynthia,** and **Corinna** are the names assigned in their love poetry to their beloveds by the poets Catullus, Propertius, and Ovid respectively.

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary

āra, ārae f. altar

➤ cōpia, cōpiae f. abundance; in pl., troops, forces

➤ fortūna, fortūnae f. fortune, chance

➤ īnsidiae, īnsidiārum f. pl. ambush, plot, treachery

umbra, umbrae f. shadow, shade

➤ ingenium, ingeniī n. ability, talent; disposition

templum, templī n. temple

➤ ars, artis, -ium f. skill, art; guile, trick

➤ cīvitās, cīvitātis f. state, citizenry; citizenship

mors, mortis, -ium f. death

➤ pars, partis, -ium f. part

➤ virtūs, virtūtis f. manliness, courage; excellence, virtue

➤ vōx, vōcis f. voice; word

➤ maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain, stay; await

➤ terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus terrify, frighten

➤ cupiō, cupere, cupiī or cupīvī, cupītus desire, long for, want

➤ fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus flee

➤ petō, petere, petiī or petīvī, petītus ask for, seek; attack

➤ trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus hand over, surrender; hand down

➤ vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus conquer, overcome

➤ auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, take away, remove

➤ differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus carry in different directions, scatter; postpone, defer; (intr.) differ, be different

acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh

➤ cārus, -a, -um precious; dear (to) (+ dat.)

➤ certus, -a, -um sure, certain, reliable

➤ incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable

➤ falsus, -a, -um deceptive, false

vērus, -a, -um real, true

➤ ante (adv.) before, earlier, previously (prep. + acc.) before; in front of

➤ aut (conj.) or
aut . . . aut . . . either . . . or . . .

➤ etiam (adv.) also, even; still

➤ ita (adv.) in this manner, thus, so

➤ nē (adv.) not (§67)

➤ post (adv.) after(ward), later; behind (prep. + acc.) after; behind

➤ sōlum (adv.) only
➤ nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . .

➤ utinam (particle) introduces an Optative subjunctive (§67)

➤ vērō (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact)

➤ vērum (conj.) but

Vocabulary Notes

In the singular cōpia, cōpiae *f.* means "abundance" (of food, of material). In the plural it most often means "troops" or "forces" (an abundance of soldiers).

fortūna, fortūnae *f.* indicates something that is opposed to reason or predictability (fortune, chance). Fortūna may be good or bad and is often personified as the divine agent Fortune.

īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin, but it has singular meanings (ambush, plot, treachery).

ingenium, ingenii *n.* descends from the PIE root *genE (be born) and the prefix in-[1] (in). (For the prefix in-[1] see Appendix P.) Ingenium refers to any quality that is inborn or inherent in an individual or species. Its range of meanings includes "disposition," "inclination," "ability," "cleverness," and "talent."

ars, artis, -ium *f.* refers to any "skill" acquired through practice. Ars may be used of any "craft" or "trade," including the crafts of artistic expression (music, poetry). It may also mean a specific body of knowledge (the "art" or "science" of divination, philosophy). Sometimes ars is used of a particular "work of art." In contrast to nātūra or ingenium, ars may have a negative sense (artificiality, craftiness) or a positive one (art). From the idea of artificiality ars may mean "guile" or "trick." Finally, the term bonae artēs (good arts) means "liberal studies" or "cultural pursuits," those pursuits that are the mark of civilized society.

cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -tās to the stem of the noun cīvis. cīvitās may mean an organized community to which one belongs as a citizen (state, citizenry), or it may mean the rights one has as a citizen (citizenship).

> Magnō in perīculō *cīvitās* fuit.   The *state* was in great danger.
> Poētam *cīvitāte* dōnābimus.   We shall reward the poet with *citizenship*.

pars, partis, -ium *f.* refers to one of the portions into which a thing is divided. It may be repeated to indicate different groups or sections, and when it is the subject, pars may take a *plural* verb.

> Caesar *partem* mīlitum in bellum dūxit, *partem* in prōvinciam mīsit.
> Caesar led *part* of the soldiers into war, he sent *part* into the province.
> Pars hostium proelium *optābant, pars timēbant.*
> *Part* of the enemies *were desiring* battle, *part were fearing* (it).

pars may also mean a "side," "position," or "opinion" held or taken in such phrases as ex meā parte, "from my side." In both the singular and the plural, pars may refer to a political "faction" or to either "side" in a lawsuit or trial.

virtūs, virtūtis *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -tūs to the stem of the noun vir. Its specific sense is thus "manliness" or "courage," but it also may refer more generally to any intellectual or moral "excellence" or "virtue."

vōx, vōcis *f.* may mean the "voice" of a human or of a musical instrument, or it may mean that which is produced by the human voice or instrument (word or sound). The singular may also be used to refer to an "utterance" or "speech."

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus is regularly an intransitive verb (always so in Caesar and Cicero) meaning "remain" or "stay." The fourth principal part, mānsūrus (about to remain), is a future active participle. With in + ablative maneō may mean "remain steady" or "abide (by)" (the truth, a conviction, a pact). In poetry it is occasionally used transitively and means "await" or "wait for" someone or something. Compounds of maneō do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF MANEŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

> Ubi incolae discessērunt, *mānsimus.*   When the inhabitants departed, *we remained.*
> Sulla semper in sententiā *mānsit.*   Sulla always *remained (steady)* in (his) opinion.
> Fāta et bonum virum *manent.*   Death *awaits* even the good man.

Compounds of terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF TERREŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

cupiō, cupere, cupiī or cupīvī, cupītus may take an Object Infinitive, often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (see §107). Cupiō has *two* third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. While both cupiō and optō mean "desire," cupiō expresses a natural or involuntary desire, while optō suggests a more deliberate choice.

> Servī esse līberī *cupiunt.*   Slaves *desire* to be free. (natural desire)
> Servī gladiōs *optant.*   The slaves *desire* swords. (deliberate desire)

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus is most often intransitive, but is occasionally used transitively. The fourth principal part, fugitūrus (about to flee), is a future active participle. Fugiō is often used of a person going into exile. Compounds of fugiō do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF FUGIŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

petō, petere, petiī or petīvī, petītus has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. When petō means "ask for" or "seek," it takes a direct object of the *thing asked for*. The *person from whom* something is sought is expressed by ā, ab + ablative. When the verb means "attack," it takes a direct object of the *person* or *thing attacked*. Compounds of petō do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF PETŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Servus pecūniam ā dominō petit.	The slave asks for money from (his) master.
Servus gladiō dominum petit.	The slave attacks (his) master with a sword.

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix trāns- (across) to dō; it exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third and fourth principal parts. (For the prefix trāns- see Appendix P.) trādō may mean "hand over" or "surrender." It often means "hand down" in the sense of transmitting something to posterity or of relating a story. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF DŌ FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF TRĀDŌ. WHEN A COMPOUND OF DŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Compounds of vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF VINCŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus is formed by the addition of the prefix ab- to ferō. (For the prefix ab- see Appendix P.) In the first two principal parts the -b- of the prefix drops out, and the a- lengthens into the diphthong au-. When a vowel lengthens to compensate for the loss of another letter, this phonetic change is called compensatory lengthening. In the third principal part, a fuller form of the prefix, abs-, appears. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS FERŌ.

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus is formed by the addition of the prefix dis- to ferō. (For the prefix dis- see Appendix P.) In the first two principal parts the final -s- of dis- assimilates to the f- of ferō. In the fourth principal part the -s- of the prefix drops out and the -i- is lengthened. Differō is more often intransitive (differ, be different) than transitive, and it may appear with an Ablative of Respect. The person or group from whom one differs is usually expressed by a noun in the ablative case with the preposition ā/ab. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS FERŌ.

A frātre sententiā differt.	He differs from (his) brother in (respect to) (his) opinion.

The adjective cārus, -a, -um is often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the *person to whom* someone or something is dear. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Incolae dīs cārī discēdunt.	The inhabitants dear to the gods are departing.

certus, -a, -um may describe both things (plans, decisions) and people as "determined," "certain," or "fixed." Certus has both a regular adverb, certē, and an irregular one, certō. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR ADVERB.

In addition to affirming (surely, certainly), certē may *limit* (certainly, at least). The regular adverb is common in all periods and all writers of Latin prose and poetry. Certō is used regularly only by the comic poets Plautus and Terence and by Cicero (most prominently in his letters).

Verba poētae intellegere certē potes.	You are certainly able to understand the words of the poet.
Nauta nōn est in īnsulā, sed certē erit.	The sailor is not on the island, but at least he will be.

incertus, -a, -um is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix in-[2] (not) to certus. (For the prefix in-[2] see Appendix P.) Incertus has both a regular adverb, incertē, and an irregular one, incertō. There is no significant difference in meaning between the two, but the regular form is more common. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR ADVERB.

The adjective falsus, -a, -um refers to persons or things that are deceptive, fictitious, or deceitful. Falsus has both a regular adverb, falsē, and an irregular one, falsō. There is no significant difference in meaning between the two, but the irregular form is more common. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR ADVERB.

ante may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (earlier, previously, before), but it sometimes conveys the spatial sense of "ahead" or "in advance." As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (before) or a spatial one (before, in front of).

Mīlitēs *ante* ambulābant.	The soldiers were walking *ahead (in front)*.
Verba poētae *ante* nōn intellēxī.	I did not understand the words of the poet *before (previously)*.
Nauta *ante* templum ambulābat.	The sailor was walking *in front of* the temple.
Ante bellum miserī erant incolae.	*Before* the war the inhabitants were miserable.

aut is a coordinating conjunction and thus connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. **Aut** joins a previous word, phrase, or clause with another equivalent one that is antithetical to it. **Aut** is used to indicate mutually exclusive propositions.

Incola est fēmina *aut* vir.	The inhabitant is a woman *or* a man.

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, aut is often used to mark *each element*: e.g., aut fīlium aut fīliam. It is convenient to translate the first aut by the English word "either": "either the son or the daughter" (direct objects). When such a parallel series is longer than two (aut nautam aut agricolam aut poētam), omit translating the first aut and say "or" for the others: "the sailor or the farmer or the poet" (direct objects).

etiam is an adverb derived from the combination of et with another adverb, iam. **Etiam** adds a fact or thought to one already mentioned (also). That idea or thought is usually understood to be more important (even). When the additional thought is related to time, etiam often means "still." **Etiam** is most often placed immediately before the word indicating the fact or thought being added.

Discēdam. Nōn *etiam* timēbō.	I shall depart. I shall not *also* fear.
Etiam puerōs ex prōvinciā agēs?	Will you drive *even* the boys out from the province?
Quoniam superāvistī, virōs interficere *etiam* optās?	Because you have conquered, do you *still* desire to kill the men?

The adverb ita may refer to what precedes (in this manner, thus, so) or what follows (in the following manner, thus, so). Like sīc, it may be used in comparisons to correlate with ut (as).

Nōn *ita* amō ut hominēs.	I do not love so as humans (do).

In answers, it is used for strong affirmation or negation.

Ita est.	It is so.
Nōn est *ita*.	It is not so.

In questions, it often adds a mocking or surprised tone and expects the answer "yes."

Itane est?	Is it so?

nē is a negating adverb (like nōn) used *only* in particular constructions with *verbs in the subjunctive*. It may be used to negate a Hortatory/Jussive or Optative subjunctive (see §67).

post may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (after[ward], later), but it sometimes conveys the spatial sense of "behind." As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (after) or a spatial one (behind).

sōlum is an irregular adverb meaning "only." It is derived from the adjective sōlus, -a, -um (alone, only). vērum is a conjunction derived from the adjective vērus, -a, -um and means "but." It introduces a sentence or phrase that agrees with what has been said but adds a qualification. **Sōlum** and **vērum** may be used separately, but they are often used in the construction nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . (not only . . . but also . . .).

Crassus inimīcōs *nōn sōlum* pecūniā *sed/vērum etiam* gladiō superāvit.	Crassus overcame (his) enemies *not only* by money *but also* by the sword.

utinam is an introductory particle introducing an Optative subjunctive (see §67). An **introductory particle** introduces a particular kind of clause or speech. **Utinam** is *not* translated in this construction.

vērō is an irregular adverb derived from the adjective vērus, -a, -um. Although it may mean "truly," it is more often used in answers to express agreement (certainly, indeed) or with mild adversative force to join two sentences (but [in truth]) and add an additional corroborating thought. In this second usage, it is always postpositive.

"Fuistīne in oppidō?"	"*Vērō*."
Were you in the town?	"*Indeed* (I was)."
Bonus poēta erat Catullus, magnus *vērō* Vergilius.	
Catullus was a good poet, *but (in truth)* Vergil (was a) great (one).	

	Derivatives	Cognates
acerbus	*acerbic; acrid; acid*	*acme; acute; hammer*
āra	*arid*	ash
cārus	*charity; caress; cherish*	*Kamasutra*
certus	certain; *decree; secret*	*crime; critic; riddle*
maneō	*mansion*; per*manent*; *ménage*	
mors	*mortal*; amortize	*murder*; a*mbrosia; manticore*
pars	*parcel*; parse; part	pair; par; com*pare*
petō	*petition; appetite; repeat*	archaeo*pteryx*; sym*ptom*
vērus	*verity; verdict; very; verify*	*warlock*
vincō	*vanquish*; con*vince*, e*vict*	wight; Ordo*vician*

§61. Introduction to the Subjunctive

The *subjunctive* mood has been identified as the mood used to express a variety of *nonfactual* ideas (see §5). It contrasts with the *indicative*, the mood used to represent something as *factual*. For example:

Indicative	Subjunctive
We are beginning.	Let us begin. (exhortation)
I fell.	I might have fallen. (potentiality)
She will come.	If only she would come! (wish)

In Latin the verbs in the sentences on the right would all be in the subjunctive mood because the writer or speaker wishes to represent these actions as *nonfactual*.

While Latin has six tenses in the indicative mood, it has only four tenses in the subjunctive mood: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.[1] The tenses of the indicative always indicate specific times (present, past, future) and aspects (simple, progressive/repeated, completed) and always have the same translations that reflect those times and aspects in a concrete, factual way. The tenses of the subjunctive, however, may express a complex range of nonfactual ideas and therefore cannot be limited to one, always correct, translation. Sometimes a tense of the subjunctive indicates not a fixed point in time but rather a relation in time of one verb to another. Although there are many possible translations of the subjunctive, *each individual use* of this mood does have *its own translation formula that must be memorized.*

Each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood is formed in the same way for verbs of all conjugations. The four tenses of the subjunctive occur in both the active and the passive voices. Like the indicative, the subjunctive may be divided as follows:

Present System (tenses formed with the stem from the second principal part)
   Present Active and Passive Subjunctive
   Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive
Perfect Active System (tenses formed with the stem from the third principal part)
   Perfect Active Subjunctive
   Pluperfect Active Subjunctive
Perfect Passive System (tenses formed with the fourth principal part)
   Perfect Passive Subjunctive
   Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

§62. Present Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the present active and passive subjunctive of *all* conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. *change the stem* by replacing the stem *vowels* with the following infixes:[2]

1st	2nd	3rd	3rd i-stem	4th
-ē-	-eā-	-ā-	-iā-	-iā-

---

1. There is neither a future nor a future perfect subjunctive.

2. The following sentence may serve as a useful mnemonic device for remembering these infixes:
   Shē wears ā giānt diāmond.

3. add the active or passive personal endings directly to the changed present stem (use -m/-r for first person singular)

Thus the present active and passive subjunctive conjugations of, for example, vocō, moveō, regō, capiō, and audiō are:

	Active		Passive	
1st Conjugation	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
Changed	1 vocem	vocēmus	vocer	vocēmur
Stem:	2 vocēs	vocētis	vocēris/vocēre	vocēmini
vocē-	3 vocet	vocent	vocētur	vocentur
2nd Conjugation	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
Changed	1 moveam	moveāmus	movear	moveāmur
Stem:	2 moveās	moveātis	moveāris/moveāre	moveāmini
moveā-	3 moveat	moveant	moveātur	moveantur
3rd Conjugation	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
Changed	1 regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
Stem:	2 regās	regātis	regāris/regāre	regāmini
regā-	3 regat	regant	regātur	regantur
3rd Conjugation i-stem	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
Changed	1 capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
Stem:	2 capiās	capiātis	capiāris/capiāre	capiāmini
capiā-	3 capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
4th Conjugation	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
Changed	1 audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
Stem:	2 audiās	audiātis	audiāris/audiāre	audiāmini
audiā-	3 audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

OBSERVATIONS

1. The personal endings added to the changed present stems are the same as those used in the indicative conjugations. *No new endings* must be learned. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

2. *No English translations* can be given for subjunctive verb forms *unless they appear in Latin sentences* because different grammatical uses or structures require different translations. Context helps to determine the correct English translation for each subjunctive verb.

3. The *first person singular present active and passive subjunctive* of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations are identical with the *first person singular future active and passive indicative*. For example, **regam** (present subjunctive) = **regam** (I shall rule). Context helps to determine which form is more appropriate.

4. The present active and passive subjunctive conjugations of the irregular third-conjugation verb ferō are *regularly* formed.

The present active subjunctive conjugations of **sum, possum,** and **eō** are irregular and must be memorized:[3]

		Singular		
	1	sim	possim	eam
	2	sīs	possīs	eās
	3	sit	possit	eat
		Plural		
	1	sīmus	possīmus	eāmus
	2	sītis	possītis	eātis
	3	sint	possint	eant

OBSERVATIONS

1. The stem of **sum** in the present active subjunctive is sī-. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule. The present active subjunctive of **possum** adds the prefix **pos-** to the present active subjunctive of sum (see §10).

2. The stem of eō in the present active subjunctive is eā-. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

§63. Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the imperfect active and passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the present active infinitive (*all of* the second principal part)
2. lengthen the final -e (-e → -ē)
3. add the active and passive personal endings directly to the second principal part with lengthened final -ē (use **-m/-r** for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active and passive subjunctive conjugations of, for example, **regō** are:

Present Active Infinitive with			
lengthened final -e:		regerē-	
		Active	Passive
		Singular	Singular
	1	regerem	regerer
	2	regerēs	regerēris/regerēre
	3	regeret	regerētur
		Plural	Plural
	1	regerēmus	regerēmur
	2	regerētis	regerēminī
	3	regerent	regerentur

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

2. The imperfect active subjunctive conjugations of sum, possum, and eō are *regularly* formed. The imperfect active and passive subjunctive conjugations of ferō are also *regularly* formed.

§64. Perfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

Perfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the perfect active subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem
2. add the infix -eri-
3. add the active personal endings (use -m for first person singular)

Thus the perfect active subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem: rēx-
Infix: -eri-

	Singular	Plural
1	rēxerim	rēxerimus
2	rēxeris	rēxeritis
3	rēxerit	rēxerint

OBSERVATIONS

1. The conjugation of the perfect active subjunctive is identical with that of the future perfect active indicative *except in the first person singular*. For example, compare rēxerō (future perfect indicative) with rēxerim (perfect subjunctive).

2. The perfect active subjunctive conjugations of sum, possum, eō, and ferō are *regularly* formed.

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect active subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem
2. add the infix -issē-
3. add the active personal endings (use -m for first person singular)

Thus the pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem: rēx-
Infix: -issē-

	Singular	Plural
1	rēxissem	rēxissēmus
2	rēxissēs	rēxissētis
3	rēxisset	rēxissent

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

2. The pluperfect active subjunctive conjugations of sum, possum, and ferō are *regularly* formed.

3. The pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of eō is regularly formed from the stem īv-. However, the alternate stem ī- contracts with the i- of the infix -issē-. Thus the pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of eō formed from this alternate stem is: īssem, īssēs, īsset, īssēmus, īssētis, īssent.

§65. Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

Perfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the perfect passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle
2. add *as a separate word* the present subjunctive of **sum**

Thus the perfect passive subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um	
Singular	*Plural*
1	rēctus, -a, -um sim	rēctī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	rēctus, -a, -um sīs	rēctī, -ae, -a sītis
3	rēctus, -a, -um sit	rēctī, -ae, -a sint

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the perfect passive subjunctive is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises must be treated *as a unit*.

2. The perfect passive participle ends in -us (sing.) or -ī (pl.) if the subject is masculine, -a (sing.) or -ae (pl.) if the subject is feminine, -um (sing.) or -a (pl.) if the subject is neuter.

3. The perfect passive subjunctive conjugation of **ferō** is *regularly* formed.

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle
2. add *as a separate word* the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**

Thus the pluperfect passive subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um	
Singular	*Plural*
1	rēctus, -a, -um essem	rēctī, -ae, -a essēmus
2	rēctus, -a, -um essēs	rēctī, -ae, -a essētis
3	rēctus, -a, -um esset	rēctī, -ae, -a essent

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the pluperfect passive subjunctive is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises must be treated *as a unit*.

2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle.

3. The pluperfect passive subjunctive conjugation of **ferō** is *regularly* formed.

§66. Synopsis V: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes the subjunctive mood, the subjunctive immediately follows the indicative and precedes the infinitive. *No English translations are given for subjunctive forms.* Here is a model synopsis of **audiō** in the third person plural masculine:

Principal Parts: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus
Person, Number, and Gender: 3rd pl. m.

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	audiunt	they hear	audiuntur	they are (being) heard
Imperfect	audiēbant	they were hearing	audiēbantur	they were being heard
Future	audient	they will hear	audientur	they will be heard
Perfect	audivērunt/ audivēre	1. they heard 2. they have heard	audītī sunt	1. they were heard 2. they have been heard
Pluperfect	audiverant	they had heard	audītī erant	they had been heard
Future Perfect	audiverint	they will have heard	audītī erunt	they will have been heard
Subjunctive				
Present	audiant		audiantur	
Imperfect	audīrent		audīrentur	
Perfect	audivērint		audītī sint	
Pluperfect	audivissent		audītī essent	
Infinitive				
Present	audīre	to hear	audīrī	to be heard
Imperative				
Singular	audī	hear	audīre	be heard
Plural	audīte	hear	audīminī	be heard

OBSERVATIONS

1. This synopsis reviews the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods and the present active and passive infinitive. When new verbal forms are introduced, the synopsis form will expand accordingly.

2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative, infinitive, and imperative forms.

3. Imperatives appear in the second person singular and plural only. Always give the second person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person, number, and gender has been chosen for the remaining forms.

☛ DRILL 61–66 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§67. Three Independent Uses of the Subjunctive

Although its name refers to its eventual appearance in many kinds of *dependent or subordinate* clauses (subjunctive < **sub-** + **iungō**, join under), in origin the subjunctive was a mood for verbs in *independent* or *main* clauses when certain basic nonfactual ideas were to be expressed. Later uses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses developed from these basic independent uses, but the subjunctive never ceased being used as an independent mood as well.

Hortatory/Jussive Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* subjunctive may express a *strong suggestion or exhortation*. The particle **nē** is used for negation. This use of the subjunctive is called **Hortatory** (when the verb is in the first person) or **Jussive** (when the verb is in the second or third person).[4] For example:

Rōmam *eāmus.*	*Let us go* to Rome. (Hortatory)
Nē ex urbe *discēdat.*	*Let him not depart* from the city. (Jussive)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The English word "let" is regularly used to translate the Hortatory/Jussive subjunctive.

2. The syntax of, for example, discēdat is **present subjunctive, Jussive.**[5]

3. In early and colloquial Latin the Jussive subjunctive in the second person was used as the equivalent of an *imperative* to express a positive command. In the classical period the Jussive as a positive command remains common in poetry.

Negative Commands

When preceded by **nē**, the *second person singular or plural present or perfect* subjunctive expresses a *negative command*. This is a particular use of the Jussive subjunctive.

Nē *labōrēs,* serve.	*Do not work,* slave.
Nē ab hostibus *captī sītis.*	*Do not (pl.) be captured* by the enemies.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In classical Latin the perfect subjunctive is more common and more emphatic than the present subjunctive in negative commands. In this usage the perfect subjunctive has *simple* rather than completed aspect.[6]

2. The syntax of, for example, captī sītis is **perfect subjunctive, Jussive in a negative command.**

Potential Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive may express a *possibility in present or future time.* A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive may express a *possibility that existed in the*

---

4. Hortatory is derived from the Latin **hortor** (exhort) and Jussive from iubeō (order).

5. Remember that the syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, reason for mood, and reason for tense.

6. This usage of the perfect subjunctive in Latin to express simple aspect appears to be an imitation of the Greek aorist tense, which has simple aspect *only.*

past. The adverb **nōn** is used for negation. This use of the subjunctive is called **Potential**. For example:

Rōmae multa *videās.*	You could see many things in Rome. (Potential, pres./fut. time)
Id *nōn fēcerim.*	I would not do this thing. (Potential, pres./fut. time)
Domum *venīrent.*	They might have come home. (Potential, past time)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect subjunctive is rarely used in early Latin and becomes more common by the time of Cicero. In this usage the perfect subjunctive has *simple* rather than completed aspect.

2. When the potential subjunctive appears in the second person singular, its subject is often an imaginary or general "you."

3. The English words "might," "could," or "would" are regularly used to translate the Potential subjunctive in present or future time.

4. The English phrases "might have," "could have," or "would have" are regularly used to translate the Potential subjunctive in past time.

5. When the Potential subjunctive is negated, as in the second sentence, the possibility of the verbal action is *denied.* Only "would/would have" or "could/could have" should be used to translate the *negative* of Potential subjunctives.[7]

6. The syntax of, for example, venīrent is **imperfect subjunctive, Potential, past time.**

Optative Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* subjunctive may express a *wish that can be fulfilled in the future.* A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive may express a *wish that cannot be fulfilled in the present,* and a *pluperfect* subjunctive may express a *wish that could not be fulfilled in the past.* This use of the subjunctive is called **Optative**. All Optative subjunctives express wishes felt or uttered by the writer or speaker. The particle **nē** is used for negation. The word **utinam** *may* be used to introduce an Optative subjunctive, but it is not required.[8] For example:

[Utinam] mīlitēs nostrī *superent!*	If only our soldiers would conquer! May our soldiers conquer! (future wish capable of fulfillment)
Rōmae *vīverem!*	If only I were living in Rome! (present wish incapable of fulfillment)
Nē id *ēgisset!*	If only he had not done it! (past wish incapable of fulfillment)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present subjunctive in the first sentence implies that the wish *can come true* at some future time. By contrast, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives in the second and third sentences imply that these wishes *cannot/could not come true.*

7. If the second sentence were translated "I might not do this thing," the English still allows the possibility that the subject *might* do this thing.

8. Ut rather than utinam appears in early Latin and, rarely, in poetry.

2. Three English translation formulas distinguish among the three types of Optative subjunctives:

Present Subjunctive   "If only . . . would . . . " (future wish capable of fulfillment)
Imperfect Subjunctive   "If only . . . were . . . " (present wish incapable of fulfillment)
Pluperfect Subjunctive   "If only . . . had . . . " (past wish incapable of fulfillment)

A present wish capable of fulfillment may also be translated with the English word "may," as in the translation of the first sentence.

3. The syntax of, for example, **vīverem** is **imperfect subjunctive, Optative, present wish incapable of fulfillment**.

Summary of Three Independent Uses of the Subjunctive			
Name	Tense of Subjunctive	Negation	English Translation
Hortatory (1st person)	Present	ne	1st/3rd: "Let . . . "
Jussive (2nd/3rd person)	Present		2nd = imperative
Negative Commands (2nd)	Present or Perfect		"Do not..."
Potential			
Present or Future Time	Present or Perfect	non	"might,"[9] "could," "would"
Past Time	Imperfect		"might have,"[9] "could have," "would have"
Optative (utinam or ———)			
Future Capable of Fulfillment	Present	ne	"If only . . . would . . . " "May . . . "
Present Incapable of Fulfillment	Imperfect		"If only . . . were . . . "
Past Incapable of Fulfillment	Pluperfect		"If only . . . had . . . "

☛ DRILL 67 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§68. Conditional Sentences II

Some conditional sentences (Simple, Future More Vivid, Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis) have verbs in the indicative mood (see §49). Other conditional sentences have verbs in the subjunctive mood to reflect the *nonfactual* character of the ideas they express.

---

9. "Might" and "might have" can be used *only* when a potential subjunctive is *not* negated.

Future Less Vivid Conditional Sentences

In a **Future Less Vivid** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *present* subjunctive. The Future Less Vivid contrasts with the Future More Vivid in that it represents future events *less vividly* (i.e., less factually) by using verbs in the subjunctive rather than the indicative mood. For example:

> Sī Catilīna *capiātur*, laetī *sint* multī cīvēs.
> If Catiline *should be captured*, happy *would be* many citizens.
> If Catiline *should be captured*, many citizens *would be* happy.

OBSERVATION

The English words "should" (in the protasis) and "would" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditional Sentences

Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentences make statements that suppose that the actions of both the protasis and the apodosis are *not* occurring or *did not* occur. Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentences are of two types: **present** or **past**. In a **Present Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *imperfect* subjunctive. In a **Past Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verbs of both protasis and apodosis are in the *pluperfect* subjunctive. For example:

> Sī ad bellum *īrem*, arma *caperem*.
> If to war I *were going* (*but I am not*), arms (d.o.) I *would be taking up* (*but I am not*).
> If I *were going* to war, I *would be taking up* arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence, the verbs in the imperfect subjunctive report *nonfactual* or contrary-to-fact events *that are not occurring in the present.*

2. The English words "were" (in the protasis) and "would" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

> Sī rēx *interfectus esset*, cīvēs timōre *līberātī essent*.
> If the king *had been killed* (*but he was not*), the citizens from fear *would have been freed* (*but they were not*).
> If the king *had been killed*, the citizens *would have been freed* from fear.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence, the verbs in the pluperfect subjunctive report *nonfactual* or contrary-to-fact events *that did not occur in the past.*

2. The English words "had" (in the protasis) and "would have" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Mixed Conditional Sentences

In addition to the types of conditional sentences described thus far, two **mixed** conditional sentences commonly occur, which combine protases and apodoses from

two conditional sentences. In a **Mixed Future** conditional sentence, the verb of the *protasis* is in the *present subjunctive,* and the verb of the *apodosis* is in the *future indicative.* For example:

> Sī servus miser *capiātur,* poenās *dabit.*
> If the miserable slave *should be captured,* he *will pay* the penalty.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Mixed Future conditional sentence combines the *protasis* of a *Future Less Vivid* (present subjunctive) with the *apodosis* of a *Future More Vivid* (future indicative). The event of the protasis is represented less vividly (i.e., less factually) by the subjunctive. By contrast, the event of the apodosis is represented more vividly (i.e., more factually) by the indicative.

2. The English words "should" (in the protasis) and "will" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Mixed Future conditional sentence.

In a **Mixed Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verb of the *protasis* is in the *pluperfect subjunctive* and the verb of the *apodosis* is in the *imperfect subjunctive.* For example:

> Sī ad īnsulam *īvissēmus,* līberī nunc timōre bellī *essēmus.*
> If we *had gone* to the island, we *would* now *be* free from fear of war.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence combines the *protasis* of a *Past Contrary-to-Fact* (pluperfect subjunctive) with the *apodosis* of a *Present Contrary-to-Fact* (imperfect subjunctive). The verb of the protasis reports an event that *did not occur* in the *past,* and the verb of the apodosis reports an event *that is not occurring* in the *present.*

2. The English words "had" (in the protasis) and "would" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Summary of Conditional Sentences[10]

Name	Verbs in Latin	Verbs in English
Future Less Vivid	Present Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"should" in Protasis, "would" in Apodosis
Present Contrary-to-Fact	Imperfect Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"were" in Protasis, "would" in Apodosis
Past Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"had" in Protasis, "would have" in Apodosis
Mixed Future	Present Subjunctive in Protasis, Future Indicative in Apodosis	"should" in Protasis, "will" in Apodosis
Mixed Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect Subjunctive in Protasis, Imperfect Subjunctive in Apodosis	"had" in Protasis, "would" in Apodosis

☞ DRILL 68 MAY NOW BE DONE.

---

10. For other conditional sentence formulas see §49.

§69. Dative of Purpose and the Double Dative Construction

A noun in the dative case, usually not modified by an adjective, may express an idea of purpose or service. The **Dative of Purpose**[11] usually joins with a Dative of Reference (see §1) to form what is called the **double dative construction**. For example:

> **Tū** *mihi* **cūrae** es.   You *to me for the purpose of a concern* are.
>   You are *for the purpose of a concern to me.*
>   You are *a source of concern to me.*
> **Fīliō** librum **dōnō** tulī.   *For (my) son* a book (d.o.) *for the purpose of a gift* I brought.
>   I brought a book *for the purpose of a gift for (my) son.*
>   I brought a book *(to serve) as a gift for my son.*

The syntax of **cūrae** and **dōnō** is **Dative of Purpose**. The syntax of **mihi** and **fīliō** is **Dative of Reference**.

OBSERVATIONS

> 1. The Dative of Purpose may be translated literally "for the purpose of _____," but may also be translated more loosely with phrases such as "a source of _____" or "(serve as) a _____."
>
> 2. Although the Dative of Purpose frequently appears with a Dative of Reference in the double dative construction, it may also appear alone. For example:

> **Mīlitēs ad Crassum** *auxiliō* **missī sunt.**
>   Soldiers were sent to Crassus *for the purpose of aid.*

§70. Dative of Advantage, Dative of Disadvantage

Sometimes the Dative of Reference clearly expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage the event of a sentence occurs. In such sentences the Dative of Reference may be called instead the **Dative of Advantage** or the **Dative of Disadvantage**. For example:

> **Poēta carmina** *puerīs puellīsque* **canit.**
>   The poet songs (d.o.) *for (the advantage of) boys and girls* is singing.
>   The poet is singing songs *for boys and girls.*
> **Moram** *nautae* **fēcistī.**
>   A delay (d.o.) *for (the disadvantage of) the sailor* you made.
>   You made a delay *for the sailor.*
> *Servō* **poena magnō erat malō.**
>   *To (the disadvantage of) the slave* punishment *for the purpose of a great evil* was.
>   Punishment was a source of great evil *to the slave.*

The syntax of **puerīs** and **puellīs** is **Dative of Advantage**. The syntax of **nautae** and **servō** is **Dative of Disadvantage**. *All,* however, may also be identified as Datives of Reference.

☛ Drill 69–70 may now be done.

11. The Dative of Purpose is also known as the Predicate Dative.

Short Readings

1. A comic character makes an unveiled threat.

   auferēre, nōn abībis, sī ego fustem sumpserō. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUŌ* 358)

   fustis, fustis, -ium *m.* club
   sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, *seize*

2. A proverb employing metonymy

   sine Cerere et Līberō frīget Venus. (TERENCE, *EUNUCHUS* 732)

   frīgeō, frīgēre, ——, —— be cold

3. Achilles has the last word in a fragment from a tragedy by the poet Accius
   (170–CA. 86 B.C.E.).

   immō enim vērō corpus Priamō reddidī, Hectorem abstulī.

   (ACCIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 667)

   Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector, son of Priam
   immō . . . vērō no, on the contrary
   reddō (red- + dō) give back, return

4. A fragment of Cicero's poem about his consulship

   cēdant arma togae, concēdat laurea laudī . . . (CICERO, *DĒ CŌNSULĀTŪ SUŌ* FRAG. 11)

   concēdō (con- + cēdō) concede, grant; give place to, be second to
   laurea, laureae *f.* laurel branch (as token of military victory); victory
   laus, laudis *f.* praise
   toga, togae *f.* toga

5. Laelius, a character in a philosophical dialogue, makes the following remark while dis-
   cussing the views of those who believe that souls perish along with bodies.

   . . . ut nihil bonī est in morte, sīc certē nihil malī . . . (CICERO, *DĒ AMĪCITIĀ* 14)

6. The first line of a poem of Catullus

   Vīvāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus . . . (CATULLUS V.1)

7. Varro explains why agriculture has existed longer than cities.

   . . . dīvīna nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna aedificāvit urbēs.

   (VARRO, *DĒ RĒ RŪSTICĀ* III.1)

   aedificō (1-tr.) build, construct
   hūmānus, -a, -um human

8. A Roman proverb

   Amēs parentem sī aequus est, sī aliter, ferās. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A8)

   aequus, -a, -um equitable, just
   aliter (adv.) otherwise, in another way
   parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

9. A Roman proverb

   Amīcī vitia, sī ferās, faciās tua. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A16)

vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault

10. The historian describes the Roman troops after their attack on the town of Zama has been repelled.

    ... paucī integrī, magna pars volneribus cōnfectī abeunt.

    (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 60)

cōnficiō (con- + faciō) accomplish, complete; wear out, enfeeble
integer, integra, integrum whole; unscathed
volnus (= vulnus), volneris *n.* wound

11. In a poetic competition between two shepherds, one of them, Damoetas, makes this boast.

    mālō mē Galatēa petit, lascīva puella,

    et fugit ad salicēs et sē cupit ante vidērī. (Vergil, *Eclogues* III.64–65)

Galatēa, Galatēae *f.* Galatea
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
mālum, mālī *n.* apple
salix, salicis *f.* willow (tree)

12. Apollo encourages Iulus, Aeneas's young son.

    macte novā virtūte, puer, sīc ītur ad astra. (Vergil, *Aeneid* IX.641)

astrum, astrī *n.* star
macte (interj.) be blessed, hurrah, bravo

13. Jupiter informs the nymph Juturna that her brother, Turnus, is destined to die.

    disce tuum, nē mē incūsēs, Iūturna, dolōrem. (Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.146)

discō, discere, didicī, ——— learn
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
incūsō (1-tr.) (lay the) blame (on), reproach
Iūturna, Iūturnae *f.* Juturna

14. The poet compares the motives of good men to those of his addressee, Quinctius.

    ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre:

    tū nihil admittēs in tē formīdine poenae ... (Horace, *Epistulae* I.16.51–52)

admittō (ad- + mittō) admit; become guilty of, commit
formīdō, formīdinis *f.* fear
peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong

15. The poet describes Io's reaction after she has been turned into a cow.

    ... territaque est formā, territa vōce suā. (Ovid, *Hērōides* XIV.92)

forma, formae *f.* shape, form

16. Banished to Tomis on the Black Sea, the poet pleads with Augustus to forgive him and consider his writings from exile.

atque utinam revocēs animum paulisper ab īrā,

et vacuō iubeās hinc tibi pauca legī . . . (OVID, *TRĪSTIA* II. 557–58)

hinc (adv.) from this place
paulisper (adv.) for a short time
revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, recall
vacuus, -a, -um empty; idle, free from distractions

17. The historian describes fear moving through the city.

alternae vōcēs "ad arma" et "hostēs in urbe sunt" audiēbantur.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* III.15.6)

alternus, -a, -um alternating, in alternation

18. Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general and near conqueror of Rome, summarizes his relationship to the Romans.

ōdī odiōque sum Rōmānīs. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXXV.19.6)

19. In 183 B.C.E. Hannibal committed suicide with these words (according to the historian).

līberēmus diuturnā cūrā populum Rōmānum . . .

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXXIX.51.9)

diuturnus, -a, -um long-lasting, permanent, continual

20. Quintilian lays down the first principle in education.

nōmina dēclīnāre et verba* in prīmīs puerī sciant . . .

(QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTITŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* I.4.22)

*verbum, *here*, verb
dēclīnō (1-tr.) decline; conjugate
in prīmīs especially, above all; first
nōmen, nōminis *n*. name; noun
sciō, scīre, sciī or scīvī, scītus know (how to) (+ infin.)

21. The historian reports the mood of Roman soldiers unwilling to endure a long siege and impatient to attack Jerusalem.

. . . poscēbantque perīcula, pars virtūte, multī ferōciā et cupīdine praemiōrum.

(TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* V.11)

cupīdō, cupīdinis *f*. desire
ferōcia, ferōciae *f*. fierceness, savagery
poscō, poscere, poposcī, —— demand
praemium, praemiī *n*. reward, prize

22. The biographer reports what was written on a placard carried in front of a triumph of Julius Caesar. He tells us that these words indicated not what Caesar did but how quickly he did it.

VĒNĪ · VĪDĪ · VĪCĪ (Suetonius, *Vīta Iūliī* 37)

23. Caligula expresses his impatience and contempt for the fawning Roman public.

utinam populus Rōmānus ūnam cervīcem habēret. (Suetonius, *Vīta Caligulae* 30)

cervīx, cervīcis *f.* neck
ūnus, -a, -um one

24. The historian reports what the scholar M. Pomponius Porcellus said to Tiberius after the ill-spoken emperor had uttered a nonexistent word.

tū enim, Caesar, cīvitātem dare potes hominibus, verbō nōn potes.

(Suetonius, *Dē Grammaticīs et Rhētoribus* 22)

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *De Senectūte* 11

Cato recalls an exchange between M. Livius Salinator and Q. Fabius Maximus, his superior officer. (Salinator had previously lost the town of Tarentum to the Carthaginian general Hannibal.)

"meā operā, Q. Fabī, Tarentum recēpistī."

"certē," inquit, . . . "nam nisi tū āmīsissēs, numquam recēpissem."

āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose
Q. Fabius, Q. Fabiī *m.* Q. Fabius (Maximus),
  hero of the second Punic war
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing.*
  pres. act. indic.

opera, operae *f.* effort, work
recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; recapture
Tarentum, Tarentī *n.* Tarentum, town in
  southern Italy

The *Dē Senectūte* (or *Catō Maior Dē Senectūte*, Cato the Elder Concerning Old Age) is a short philosophical dialogue with Cato the Elder (author of the *Dē Agrī Cultūrā*) as the chief speaker. The dialogue is set in 150 B.C.E., shortly before Cato's death, and was written in 44 B.C.E. (the same year as the *Dē Amīcitiā*), shortly before Cicero's death.

2. Propertius II.16.1–2

The poet begins a poem with fear about a new rival for Cynthia's affection.

Praetor ab Illyricīs vēnit modo, Cynthia, terrīs,

  maxima praeda tibī,* maxima cūra mihi.

*The final -i of tibi here scans *long.*
Illyricus, -a, -um Illyrian, of Illyria, an area east
  of the Adriatic sea and a Roman province
maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

modo (adv.) only, now; just now
praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder; prey
praetor, praetōris *m.* praetor, a judicial official
  both in and outside of Rome

Sextus Propertius (49?–16? B.C.E.) was born in Umbria of equestrian rank and moved to Rome to begin a legal career. Instead, in 28 he published the first of four books of poems written in elegiac couplets, the chosen meter for love poetry in the Augustan period (see §82). In the first book Propertius, the poet-lover, introduces his beloved Cynthia, and many of the poems concern his stormy relationship with her. Shortly after his first book's publication Propertius came under the patronage of Maecenas. Propertius's poetry abounds in mythological references and ostentatious displays of obscure learning. His poems are marked by a studied unpredictability in syntax, imagery, and logical movement. Such poetry—erudite, personal, short, and dense with meaning—was meant to supplant the more sedate and grandiose epic.

3. Seneca the Younger, *Herculēs Furēns* 46–48

Juno complains that Hercules knows no ordinary human limits.

nec satis terrae patent:

effrēgit ecce līmen īnfernī Iovis

et opīma victī rēgis ad superōs refert.

ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look!
effringō, effringere, effrēgī, effrāctus break open
īnfernus, -a, -um lower, infernal
līmen, līminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold
opīmus, -a, -um rich, abundant; sumptuous,
  splendid; *as neut. pl. subst.,* spoils

pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
referō (re- + ferō), referre, rettulī, relātus carry
  back
satis (adv.) enough, sufficiently
superī, superōrum *m. pl.* (the) ones above, (the)
  living, inhabitants of the upper world

4. Martial VIII.73.5–8

The poet addresses the elegiac love poets.

Cynthia tē vātem fēcit, lascīve Propertī;

    ingenium Gallī pulchra Lycōris erat;

fāma est argūtī Nemesis formōsa Tibullī;

    Lesbia dictāvit, docte Catulle, tibi:

argūtus, -a, -um clear-voiced; melodious, tuneful
dictō (1-tr.) say repeatedly; compose, dictate
doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite
formōsus, -a, -um beautiful, shapely
Gallus, Gallī *m.* (C. Cornelius) Gallus, elegiac
  poet (69?–26 B.C.E.)
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from
  restraint

Lycōris, Lycōridis *f.* Lycoris, Gallus's poetic name
  for his beloved
Nemesis, Nemeseōs *f.* Nemesis, goddess of
  retribution; Tibullus's poetic name for his
  beloved
Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* Tibullus, elegiac poet
  (55?–19? B.C.E.)
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet

§71. Greetings and Interjections in Latin

Vocabulary

salūs, salūtis *f.* safety; health
salūtem dīcere (idiom) to say "greetings,"
   to say hello

salvē/salvēte hello! good day!
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus be strong, be
   able; be well, fare well

valē/valēte greetings! farewell!

ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look!
herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules!
mehercule or mehercu lēs (interj.) by
   Hercules!
heu (interj.) alas! oh!

MEMORIZE THESE VOCABULARY WORDS. Their meanings will not be given when they appear in the remainder of this book.

Although there are no living Latin speakers, information about everyday speech and conversation in Latin may be partially recovered from the Latin literary texts that survive. Some of the best sources for **colloquial** or spoken Latin are the comedies of Plautus and Terence, the poems of Catullus, and the letters of Cicero. It is not surprising that colloquial Latin was distinguished by short sentences, colorful idioms and metaphors, oaths and interjections, obscenities, ellipses, and other features of a living, spoken language.

There are no exact Latin equivalents for the English words "hello" and "goodbye." The Romans most often greeted and departed from one another by saying words that resembled singular and plural active imperatives.

Sing.	Pl.	
salvē	salvēte	Hello! Good day!
valē	valēte	Greetings! Farewell!

OBSERVATIONS
_____

1. While these words are imperative forms, only valē/valēte can be traced to a Latin verb with a full set of forms.

2. Both salvē/salvēte and valē/valēte may be said when departing, but valē/valēte is more common. Salvē/salvēte may be said to someone who sneezes. Both may be addressed to the dying and the dead.

Examples

Salvē, venusta Sirmiō . . .	Greetings, charming Sirmio . . . (Catullus XXXI.12)
Sirmiō, Sirmiōnis *f.* Sirmio	venustus, -a, -um charming
Valē, puella.	Farewell, girl. (Catullus VIII.12)
A. Bene valē. B. Et tū bene valē.	A. Farewell. B. You, too, farewell. (Plautus, *Poenulus* 1358)
Salvē multum, mī pater.	Greetings, my father. (Plautus, *Menaechmī* 775)
Valē atque salvē.	Farewell and good day. (Plautus, *Captīvī* 744)
A. *Valēn? valuistīn?*[1]	A. Are you well? Have you been well?
B. *Valeō, et valuī* . . .	B. Yes, I am well, and I have been well . . . (Plautus, *Trinummus* 50)
A. Ut* valēs?	A. How are you faring?
B. Nōn male.	B. (I am) not [faring] badly. (Plautus, *Mostellāria* 718)
*ut, *here* (interrog. adv.) how	

OBSERVATIONS

1. The adverbs bene and multum may appear with salvē/salvēte and valē/valēte to strengthen the greeting or farewell. There is no English equivalent for these adverbs in such contexts.

2. The second person of valeō, in both the present and perfect tenses, may be used to inquire after a person's health. There is no Latin equivalent for the English "yes"; an affirmative answer is given by repeating the verb.

The salutation of a letter in Latin is actually a complete sentence. For example:

M. Caelius M. Tulliō salūtem dīcit	Marcus Caelius to Marcus Tullius "health" (d.o.) says.
	Marcus Caelius says "greetings" to Marcus Tullius.
	Marcus Caelius says hello to Marcus Tullius.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The person writing the letter is in the nominative case and is the subject of dīcit. The person to whom the letter is being written is in the dative case and is the indirect object.

2. This common salutation is often abbreviated. For example:

M. Caelius M. Tulliō s.d.
M. Caelius M. Tulliō sal.

The first sentence after a salutation often takes a standard form:

Sī valēs, bene est.
If you are strong, it is well.

In this sentence the adverb **bene** modifies the third person singular form of **sum** *used impersonally:* that is, **sum** has *no personal subject.* This expression is an idiomatic way of reporting how a person is or how a situation is for the speaker. For example:

1. Valēn is a contracted form of valēsne, and valuistīn of valuistīne. The full forms do not occur in the Latin literature that survives.

2. This is often abbreviated: s.v.b.e. A longer version of this introduction—sī valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō—is abbreviated s.v.b.e.e.q.v. (quoque [adv.] also). Both introductions were probably formal in style.

Male est mihi.	It is badly for me.
	I am feeling bad.
Bene est mihi.	It is well for me.
	I am fine.
Nōn est mihi male.	It is not badly for me.
	It doesn't bother me.
	I'm not bad.

OBSERVATIONS

1. These expressions and other analogous ones occur frequently in conversations in the comedies of Plautus and Terence.

2. The less literal English translations given above are meant to approximate the meanings of the Latin sentences since there are no exact English equivalents for them.

Perhaps in origin a demonstrative adverb, the interjection **ecce** (lo! behold! look!) is usually used to call attention to something that is visible or present. The interjection **heu** (alas! oh!) is regularly used as an expression of pain or grief. **Hercule** or **hercle** (by Hercules!) is an oath used by men as an expression of strong feeling that adds emphasis to a particular word. In origin this interjection was an address to the deified Hercules, but its identification with the god weakened through common use.[3] **Mehercule** or **meherculēs** are extended forms of **hercule**.

A. Ubi tū es? B. Ecce mē!	A. Where are you? B. Behold me! (Here I am!)
	(Plautus, *Cistellaria* 283)
Tibi līlia ecce ferunt nymphae.	Behold! the nymphs are bringing lilies for you.
	(Vergil, *Eclogues* II.46)
līlia, līliae *f.* lily	nympha, nymphae *f.* nymph
Heu, cor meum finditur!	Alas, my heart is being split apart!
	(Plautus, *Bacchidēs* 251)
cor, cordis *n.* heart	findō, findere, fidī, fissus split apart
Sed cūr heu, Ligurīne, cūr	But why, alas, Ligurinus, why
mānat rāra meās lacrima per*	does a rare tear trickle down my cheeks?
genās?	(Horace, *Carmina* IV.1.33–34)
*per, *here,* down	mānō (1-intr.) trickle, drip
gena, genae *f.* cheek	rārus, -a, -um rare, infrequent
Ligurīnus, Ligurīnī *m.* Ligurinus	
Pulchrē mehercle dictum et sapienter.	Beautifully, by Hercules, said—and wisely.
	(Terence, *Eunuchus* 416)
sapienter (adv.) wisely	
. . . vir mehercule optimus et mihi	. . . a very good man, by Hercules, and very
amīcissimus . . .	friendly to me
	(Cicero, *Ad Atticum* I.18.1)
amīcissimus, -a, -um very friendly	optimus, -a, -um very good

---

3. The interjections ēcastor and edepol, which appear in Plautus and Terence, were originally addresses to the gods Castor and Pollux respectively.

CHAPTER VIII

Vocabulary

➤ fuga, fugae *f.* flight

annus, annī *m.* year
➤ locus, locī *m.* place
 ➤ loca, locōrum *n. pl.* places

➤ cōnsul, cōnsulis *m.* consul
nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night
tempus, temporis *n.* time

➤ cōnsulātus, cōnsulātūs *m.* consulship
➤ domus, domūs *f.* house, home
exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army
➤ manus, manūs *f.* hand; band, troop
➤ mōtus, mōtūs *m.* motion, movement;
disturbance
➤ senātus, senātūs *m.* senate

➤ aciēs, aciēī *f.* sharp edge; keenness;
battle line
➤ diēs, diēī *m.* or *f.* day
fidēs, fideī *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness;
confidence
➤ rēs, reī *f.* thing; property; matter, affair;
activity; situation
 ➤ rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.*
 accomplishments; history
 ➤ rēs novae, rērum novārum *f. pl.* revolu-
 tion
 ➤ rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae *f.* republic
species, *speciēī[1] *f.* appearance, aspect

➤ cōnor (1-tr.) try, attempt

➤ audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum confess, admit

➤ morior, morī, mortuus sum die
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus
leave (behind), abandon
➤ sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow

experior, experīrī, expertus sum test; try;
experience

➤ hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this;
these (§76)
➤ ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that;
those (§76)
➤ iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that
(of yours); those (of yours) (§76)

pūblicus, -a, -um public

ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen; fierce
➤ facilis, facile easy
 ➤ difficilis, difficile difficult
➤ fēlīx, fēlīcis fortunate, happy
 īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis unfortunate, unhappy
fortis, forte brave; strong
ingēns, ingentis huge; outstanding
omnis, omne every; all

quoque (adv.) also, too
saepe (adv.) often

---

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular form of **speciēs** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin
that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

fuga, fugae *f.* is often found with a Subjective Genitive (see §35). It may refer to an act of fleeing or the rapidity with which someone or something moves. It may also be used of "banishment" or "exile."

locus, locī *m.* may mean: 1. a physical "place"; 2. a "position," "rank," or "post" in society; or 3. "room" or "opportunity" to engage in an activity. In classical Latin, the plural of locus is most often declined as if it were a neuter noun, and therefore the entry loca, locōrum *n. pl.* is given. The masculine plural form is also used, particularly when the noun means "passages" in a written work or "topics" or "subjects." Both Vergil and Sallust, however, use the masculine plural with the more general meaning of physical "places."

cōnsul, cōnsulis *m.* is the title given to the highest political magistrate in Rome at the time of the Republic. According to tradition, the Roman Republic was founded after the expulsion of the Etruscan king Tarquinius Superbus (ca. 509 B.C.E.). Two consuls, elected annually, were the political leaders of the senate and the commanding generals whenever occasion required. Even during the imperial period—when the emperor held the highest power in Rome—there continued to be consuls, although their role in running the government and the military was greatly decreased. It was common to refer to a given year not by a number but by the names of the two consuls of that year.

cōnsulātus, cōnsulātūs *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -ātus to the stem of the noun cōnsul. It means the "office of consul" or the "consulship."

The noun domus appears here as a fourth-declension noun (**domus**, domūs *f.*), while it appeared in Chapter VI as a second-declension noun (**domus**, domī *f.*). It is declined in *both* declensions. However, some forms are more common than others. The declension of domus that follows lists the *less common forms in parentheses.*

	Sing.	Pl.
Nom./Voc.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs (domī)	domōrum or domuum
Dat.	domuī (domō)	domibus
Acc.	domum	domūs or domōs
Abl.	domō (domū)	domibus

There are only fourth-declension forms of the nominative, dative, and ablative plural. Second- and fourth-declension genitive and accusative plural forms are equally common. The locative is always domī.

manus, manūs *f.* has two distinct meanings: "hand" (of a human) or an "armed force" of any size (band, troop).

mōtus, mōtūs *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -tus to a stem of the verb moveō. It means "motion" or "movement," or, more concretely, the *result* of motion or movement, "disturbance."

senātus, senātūs *m.* "senate" is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -ātus to the stem of the substantive senex (old man). The senātus was the highest deliberating body in Rome. One became a senator by winning election to one of the higher political offices (quaestorship, praetorship, consulship). All senators were members of the senate for life unless formally removed. Sometimes the genitive singular form senātī appears, as if senātus were a *second*-declension noun.

aciēs, aciēī *f.* means the "sharp edge" of a weapon and, by extension, the sharp edge or "keenness" of one's eyes or "acuity" of one's mind. It is also used of a "battle line" or "battle formation" of troops.

diēs, diēī is regularly masculine, but when diēs refers to a festival day, a day appointed for a business transaction, or the date of a letter, it is usually feminine.

Like its most common English translation, "thing," **rēs**, reī *f.* is a noun that may convey a wide range of abstract and concrete ideas. The vocabulary entry for this word is meant to suggest five common meanings: 1. "thing," something that exists or occurs; 2. "property" or "wealth," something that belongs to a person or family; 3. "matter" or "affair," something that occupies one's attention; 4. "activity" or "practice" in a particular field; and 5. "situation," the state of affairs at a particular moment. Because rēs has such a wide range of meanings, there are several Latin idioms that include it. Three of the most common are given in the vocabulary list: rēs gestae (things [having been] accomplished) "accomplishments," "history"; rēs novae (new things) "revolution"; and rēs pūblica "republic" (cf. English commonwealth).

Deponent and Semideponent Verbs
For the vocabulary entries and conjugations of deponent and semideponent verbs see §§77 and 78. The principal parts of a deponent verb do *not* indicate whether the verb is transitive or intransitive. The English meanings given in the vocabulary list will usually indicate whether a verb is transitive or intransitive, but *all intransitive deponent verbs are so indicated in the vocabulary notes.*

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum is a transitive deponent verb. It often takes an Object Infinitive and is some-times used absolutely (make an effort).

| Hostem vincere cōnāmur. | We are trying to conquer the enemy. |
| Quamquam cōnāmur, hostis vincit. | Although we are trying, the enemy is conquering. |

audeō, audēre, ausus sum is a transitive semideponent verb. Like cōnor it may take an Object Infini-tive or be used absolutely (be bold).

morior, morī, mortuus sum is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of morior do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MORIOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUP-PLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

The compounds of sequor, sequī, secūtus sum do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF SEQUOR APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

The entry hic, haec, hoc lists the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative of the demon-strative adjective/pronoun that means "this" (in the singular) or "these" (in the plural). For its declension and uses see §76.

ille, illa, illud lists the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative of the demonstrative adjective/pronoun that means "that" (in the singular) or "those" (in the plural). For its declension and uses see §76.

iste, ista, istud lists the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative of the demonstrative adjective/pronoun that means "that (of yours)" (in the singular) or "those (of yours)" (in the plural). For its declension and uses see §76.

In addition to the meaning "easy," facilis, facile may be used of materials that are *easy to work* (tractable), of people or things that *move with ease* (nimble, agile), of gods, people, or animals that *are easily moved* (fa-vorable, gracious, indulgent, tame).

difficilis, difficile is an adjective formed by the addition of the prefix dis- to facilis. (For the prefix dis-see Appendix P.) Difficilis exhibits regular vowel weakening of the stem vowel. In addition to the meaning "difficult," difficilis may be used of people or animals that are *hard to move* (stubborn, inflexible, intractable).

When fēlīx, fēlīcis describes plants, trees, land, etc., it means "fruitful," "rich," or "productive." It may often have a more expanded meaning of "lucky" or "auspicious" for omens and the like. A person who is fēlīx is "fortunate" and by extension "happy."

	Derivatives	**Cognates**
ācer	*vinegar; acrid;* eager	ear; *acute; hammer; heaven; acme; acrobat*
fidēs	faith; *fidelity;* per*fidy*	*abide; federal;* de*fy; fiancé*
fortis	fort; *forte;* ef*fort; force*	*barrow;* ice*berg; borough; burglar*
manus	*mana*cle; *mana*ge; *manu*script; *mai*ntain; *maneuver*	e*manc*ipate; *mand*ate; com*mand*
rēs	*republic; reify; re; real*	
sequor	*sequ*ence; *segue;* sect; *suitor;* per*secute*	*socius*
speciēs	species; *especial*	e*spy; speci*men; *spec*tacle; *skeptic;* episcopal; tele*scope*
tempus	*temporary; tempest*	

§72. Noun Morphology: Fourth Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE *FOURTH* DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS -ūs.

Gender Note: Most nouns of the fourth declension are masculine, some are feminine, and a very few are neuter.

Case Endings of the Fourth Declension: Masculine/Feminine		
	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative/Vocative	-us	-ūs
Genitive	-ūs	-uum
Dative	-uī/-ū	-ibus
Accusative	-um	-ūs
Ablative	-ū	-ibus

ALL MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *masculine/feminine* noun of the fourth declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

mōtus, mōtūs *m.* motion, movement, disturbance		
stem = mōt-		
	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	mōtus	mōtūs
Gen.	mōtūs	mōtuum
Dat.	mōtuī/mōtū	mōtibus
Acc.	mōtum	mōtūs
Abl.	mōtū	mōtibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the fourth declension are used to mark more than one case: -ūs = genitive singular, nominative/vocative plural, and accusative plural; -ibus = dative plural and ablative plural.

2. The dative singular ending is regularly -uī, but the archaic form -ū is often found.[2]

3. There are only three neuter nouns of the fourth declension in common use: cornū (horn), genū (knee), and verū ([broiling] spit). The endings for these neuter nouns differ slightly from the endings of the masculine/feminine fourth declension nouns:

	Singular	Plural
Nom./Voc.	-ū	-ua
Gen.	-ūs	-uum
Dat.	-ū	-ibus
Acc.	-ū	-ua
Abl.	-ū	-ibus

Because there are only three nouns in regular use, the neuter endings of the fourth declension need not be memorized immediately.

---

2. The archaic dative and ablative plural ending -ubus also occurs occasionally.

§73. Noun Morphology: Fifth Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE *FIFTH* DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS
-EĪ OR -ĒĪ.

Gender Note: Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, one is some-
times masculine. There are no neuter fifth-declension nouns.

Case Endings of the Fifth Declension

	Singular	Plural
Nominative/Vocative	-ēs	-ēs
Genitive	-eī/-ēī	-ērum
Dative	-eī/-ēī	-ēbus
Accusative	-em	-ēs
Ablative	-ē	-ēbus

ALL NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE END-
INGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN
DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a noun of the fifth declension, add these endings to the stem. When
the stem ends in a vowel, use the ending -ēī in the genitive and dative singular. For
example:

	rēs, reī *f.* thing	diēs, diēī *m.* or *f.* day
	stem = r-	stem = di-
	Singular	*Singular*
Nom./Voc.	rēs	diēs
Gen.	reī	diēī
Dat.	reī	diēī
Acc.	rem	diem
Abl.	rē	diē
	Plural	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	rēs	diēs
Gen.	rērum	diērum
Dat.	rēbus	diēbus
Acc.	rēs	diēs
Abl.	rēbus	diēbus

OBSERVATION

Certain endings for nouns of the fifth declension are used to mark more than one case:
-ēs = nominative/vocative singular, nominative/vocative plural, and accusative plural;
-eī or -ēī = genitive singular and dative singular; -ēbus = dative plural and ablative plural.

☛ DRILL 72–73 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§74. Third-Declension Adjectives

All adjectives that are declined in Latin borrow endings from the declensions of nouns. There are *two* groups of adjectives *only*: first-second-declension adjectives, such as **bonus, bona, bonum** (see §17), and **third-declension adjectives**, which borrow their endings from third-declension nouns using *all i-stem features* all the time.

Third-declension adjectives may have three forms (m., f., n.), two forms (m./f., n.), or one form (m./f./n.) in the nominative singular. For example:

> ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen, fierce (three forms)
> fortis, forte brave, strong (two forms)
> fēlix, fēlicis happy, fortunate (one form)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a third-declension adjective has three forms in the nominative singular, the vocabulary entry contains the same elements as the entry for a first-second-declension adjective: the *masculine, feminine*, and *neuter singular nominative*.

2. When a third-declension adjective has two forms in the nominative singular, of which the first ends in -is and the second ends in -e, the first form is the nominative singular for *both masculine and feminine*, and the second form is the *neuter singular nominative*.

3. Certain third-declension adjectives have only one nominative singular form for *masculine, feminine, and neuter*. In the vocabulary entry, this form is followed by the *genitive singular*.

To find the stem of third-declension adjectives with three or two nominative singular forms, take the *feminine singular nominative* and drop the ending **-is**. To find the stem of third-declension adjectives with one nominative singular form, take the *genitive singular form* and drop the ending **-is**. Thus, for the examples above:

> ācer, ācris, ācre   Stem = ācr-
> *fortis, forte*   Stem = fort-
> fēlix, *fēlicis*   Stem = fēlic-

To decline a third-declension adjective, add these endings to the stem:

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	—	—	—	-ēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	-is	-is	-is	-ium	-ium	-ium
Dat.	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-em	—	-ēs/-īs	-ēs/-īs	-ia
Abl.	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. Third-declension adjectives show wide variation in the nominative singular, where there may be three endings, two endings, or one ending. MEMORIZE THE VOCABULARY ENTRY FOR EACH THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVE. The neuter singular accusative form is always identical with the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending.

2. *All third-declension adjectives use all i-stem features*. The ablative singular ending for all genders is -ī, an ending borrowed from neuter i-stem nouns. The plural endings include all i-stem features borrowed from third-declension i-stem nouns: -ia in the neuter nominative/vocative and accusative, -ium in the genitive, -īs as an alternate for -ēs in the masculine/feminine accusative.

The adjective **fortis, forte**, for example, declines as follows:

Stem: fort-	Singular		Plural	
	M./F.	N.	M./F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs/fortīs	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

Since adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify only in gender, number, and case, both first-second-declension adjectives and third-declension adjectives are able to modify nouns of all declensions. For example:

nautae ācrēs	fierce sailors (masc. pl. nom./voc.)
fortia facta	brave deeds (neut. pl. nom./voc. or acc.)
fēlīcīs virōs	fortunate men (masc. pl. acc.)
rēgis fortis	of a brave king (masc. sing. gen.)
fēlīcī manū	to/for/from (etc.) a fortunate band (masc. sing. dat./abl.)

☛ DRILL 74 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§75. Adverbs II

To form adverbs from third-declension adjectives:

1. take the stem[3]
2. add the ending -iter

Thus, for example:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb	
acer, ācris, ācre	ācr-	ācriter	fiercely
fortis, forte	fort-	fortiter	bravely, strongly
fēlix, fēlīcis	fēlīc-	fēlīciter	happily

Some third-declension adjectives do not have corresponding adverbs (e.g., **ingēns, ingentis**), and some have irregularly formed adverbs. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON IRREGULAR ADVERBS:

Adjective	Irregular Adverb	
omnis, omne	omnīnō	entirely, at all
facilis, facile	facile	easily, readily
difficilis, difficile	difficiliter	with difficulty (regularly formed)
	difficulter	with difficulty (irregularly formed)

OBSERVATION

Certain adjectives, such as **difficilis, difficile**, have both a regularly and an irregularly formed adverb. Other such irregularities are mentioned in the vocabulary notes.

☛ DRILL 75 MAY NOW BE DONE.

3. For adjectives with three or two endings in the nominative singular, drop the -is from the feminine singular nominative. For adjectives with one ending in the nominative singular, drop the -is from the genitive singular.

§76. Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns: *hic, iste,* and *ille*

Certain adjectives in Latin, which regularly *precede* the nouns they modify and which serve to *point out* those nouns, are called **demonstrative adjectives** (< dēmōnstrō, point out). The specific sphere of reference for each Latin demonstrative adjective is identified with one of the three persons.

1st person	hic, haec, hoc	"this" / "these" (near *me,* the speaker)
2nd person	iste, ista, istud	"that" / "those" (of *yours,* which *you* know well)
3rd person	ille, illa, illud	"that" / "those" (near *him, her, them*)

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF EACH DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE *ACROSS THE SINGU-LAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.*

hic, haec, hoc	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

OBSERVATIONS

1. Demonstrative adjectives do *not* have vocative forms.

2. The -i- of **huius** in the genitive singular is consonantal and is pronounced like English y. Thus **hu-ius** (*hu-yus*) is disyllabic. The -ui- of **huic** in the dative singular is a diphthong and is pronounced like English **wi**. Thus huic (*hwik*) is monosyllabic.

3. The letter **c** that appears at the end of many of the forms of **hic, haec, hoc** is called a **deictic** (< Greek *deiknūmi*, point out) or **demonstrative suffix**. The hard sound of this suffix strengthens the demonstrative force of the adjective.[4]

4. When forms of **hic, haec, hoc** appear in the singular, the English translation "this" should be used. Plural forms should be translated "these."

iste, ista, istud	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declension of iste, ista, istud is almost identical with that of ipse, ipsa, ipsum, except that the neuter singular nominative and accusative forms end in -ud (see §46). This neuter ending, though less common than -um, is not unique to this word.

2. The dative singular ending -ī is identical with the dative singular ending of the third declension.

---

4. The full suffix form is -ce, which appears frequently in the early comic writers Plautus and Terence (e.g., huiusce for huius, hīsce for hīs).

3. Many endings of iste, ista, istud are familiar from first-second-declension adjectives. *All* the endings of the *plural* forms are identical with the plural endings of first-second-declension adjectives.

4. When forms of iste, ista, istud appear in the singular, the English translation "that (of yours)" should be used. Plural forms should be translated "those (of yours)."

ille, illa, illud

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declension of ille, illa, illud is identical with that of iste, ista, istud. Thus all the observations made for the forms of iste apply to ille as well.

2. When forms of ille, illa, illud appear in the singular, the English translation "that" should be used. Plural forms should be translated "those."

When hic, iste, and ille are used as adjectives, they *most often precede* and *always agree* in *gender, number,* and *case with* the nouns they modify. For example:

hanc feminam	this woman (fem. sing. acc.) (d.o.)
istī amicō	to/for that friend (of yours) (masc. sing. dat.)
illōrum oppidōrum	of those towns (neut. pl. gen.)

When the demonstrative adjectives stand alone as substantives, they are referred to as **demonstrative pronouns**. Demonstrative pronouns are translated with the addition of the English words "man," "woman," "thing" (sing.) *or* "men," "women," "things" (pl.), depending on the gender and number of the ending of the pronoun. For example:

hae	these women (subj.)
istōs	those men (of yours) (d.o.)
illud	that thing (subj. or d.o.)

Special Uses of the Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns

Hic, most frequently in the neuter forms, may point to *either* what has preceded *or* what is to follow. For example:

Haec dē amicitiā dixit.	These things (i.e., the preceding things) about friendship he said.
	He said *these (preceding) things* about friendship.
Hoc petō: Esne miser?	This thing (i.e., the following thing) I am asking: Are you miserable?
	I am asking *this (following)* thing. Are you miserable?

Ille, most frequently in the neuter forms, also may point to *either* what has preceded *or* what is to follow. What is to follow is often a direct quotation.

Ille may also be used to point to what is celebrated or notorious. When ille has this meaning, it is often placed *after* the noun it modifies. For example:

> Crassus *ille* multam pecūniam habēbat.
> *That celebrated/notorious Crassus used to have much money.*

When **hic** and **ille** are used together to refer to two elements previously mentioned, they often mean "the latter" **(hic)** and "the former" **(ille)**. For example:

> Sunt in oppidō cīvēs et piī et impiī. *Hōs* ōdimus, *illōs* amāmus.
> *There are in the town both loyal citizens and disloyal (ones). The latter (citizens)*
> *(d.o.) we hate, the former (citizens) (d.o.) we love.*

Iste *may*, but does not always, express contempt. This meaning arose from its use in addressing opponents in legal or political contexts.

> *Ista* verba dē patriā audīvī, falsa et impia.
> *I heard those (contemptible) words (of yours) about the country, false and disloyal.*

☛ DRILL 76 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§77. Deponent Verbs

Certain Latin verbs are called **deponent** verbs because they appear to have "put aside" or "put down" (dē- + pōnō) their active forms.[5] These verbs may belong to any of the four conjugations, but all deponent verbs *have passive forms only and active meanings only.*[6] Deponent verbs are easily identified by their principal parts. Each has only *three* principal parts. For example:

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	try, attempt	(1st conjugation)[7]
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum	confess, admit	(2nd conjugation)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	follow	(3rd conjugation)
morior, morī, mortuus sum	die	(3rd conjugation i-stem)
experior, experīrī, expertus sum	experience	(4th conjugation)

---

5. Deponent verbs and their forms are actually derived from a *third voice* (in addition to active and passive) called the *middle* voice. PIE had *only* an active and a middle voice and *no* passive voice. Subjects of verbs in both the active and the middle performed the action of the verb, and verbs in both the active and the middle could take direct objects. When the passive voice developed, many of its forms were derived from the middle voice. The only remnant of the middle voice in Latin is the existence of deponent verbs, verbs with passive forms but active meanings.

6. For the only exceptions to this rule see §94.

7. Deponent verbs of the *first* conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum. Deponent verbs whose second and third principal parts end in -ārī, -ātus sum are identified in vocabulary lists by either the notation (1-tr.) for transitive verbs or (1-intr.) for intransitive verbs. No other principal parts are listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL THREE PRINCIPAL PARTS.

1. Each principal part of these verbs is in form the *passive equivalent* of each of the first three principal parts of a nondeponent verb. The *first* principal part is the first person singular present indicative *passive*; the *second* principal part is the present *passive* infinitive; and the *third* principal part is the first person singular (masc.) perfect *passive* indicative. Deponent verbs *lack active forms.*

2. Just as for nondeponent verbs, the ending of the second principal part of every deponent verb (the present *passive* infinitive) indicates the conjugation to which each belongs: -ārī = first conjugation, -ērī = second conjugation, -ī = third conjugation, and -īrī = fourth conjugation. Remember that third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs form their present passive infinitives by dropping -ere from the present active infinitives and adding -ī (see §31.)

3. The *third* principal part of a deponent verb provides the perfect passive participle, which has an active meaning. For example: cōnātus, -a, -um, "having tried"; secūtus, -a, -um, "having followed."

The conjugations of deponent verbs follow all the same rules of formation (including various regular changes in the present stem) that apply to nondeponent verbs. Thus there are *no new forms* to be learned for deponent verbs. The present stem for first-, second-, and fourth-conjugation deponent verbs may be found by dropping -rī from the second principal part. For the third conjugation, it is useful to imagine a present *active* infinitive (e.g., **sequere, *morere*) from which the present stem may be found by dropping -re (e.g., **seque-, more-**). *All* deponent verbs form the *imperfect subjunctive* conjugation *by adding regular passive endings to an imaginary present active infinitive with a lengthened final -e:*

Present Passive Infinitive	Present Stem	Imaginary Present Active Infinitive with Lengthened Final -e
cōnārī	cōnā-	cōnāre-
fatērī	fatē-	fatēre-
sequī	seque-	sequere-
morī	more-	morēre-
experīrī	experī-	experīre-

In order to generate a synopsis of a deponent verb, follow the regular synopsis format, but enter all deponent verb forms on the *passive* side. Remember that the English *meanings* are *active*. Here is a model synopsis of **morior** in the third person plural masculine:

Principal Parts: **morior, mori, mortuus sum**
Person, Number, and Gender: 3rd pl. m.

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present			moriuntur	they die
Imperfect			moriebantur	they were dying
Future			morientur	they will die
Perfect			mortui sunt	1. they died
				2. they have died
Pluperfect			mortui erant	they had died
Future Perfect			mortui erunt	they will have died
Subjunctive				
Present			moriantur	
Imperfect			morerentur	
Perfect			mortui sint	
Pluperfect			mortui essent	
Infinitive				
Present			mori	to die
Imperative				
Singular			morere	die
Plural			morimini	die

§78. Semideponent Verbs

A few verbs in Latin are *deponent in the perfect system only* and therefore are called **semideponent** verbs. These verbs are easily identified by their principal parts. For example:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum   dare

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first two principal parts of semideponent verbs are active in form and meaning and are similar to the first two principal parts of nondeponent verbs. The entire present system, made with the stem from the second principal part, has *active forms* and *active meanings*.[8]

2. As is true for deponent verbs, the third principal part of semideponent verbs is *passive in form* (first person singular [masc.] perfect indicative passive) but *active in meaning*. Ausus sum, for example, means "I (masc.) dared," "I (masc.) have dared."

To conjugate semideponent verbs in the present system, follow all the rules of formation that apply to regular, nondeponent verbs. In order to generate a synopsis of a semideponent verb, follow the regular synopsis format, but enter present system forms on the active side and perfect system forms on the passive side. Remember that the English meanings of *all* forms are *active*. Here is a model synopsis of **audeō** in the third person singular feminine:

---

8. Although passive forms could be made for the present system of semideponent verbs, these forms do not appear in the Latin that survives.

Principal Parts: **audeō, audēre, ausus sum**
Person, Number, and Gender: **3rd sing. f.**

	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	**audet**	she dares		
Imperfect	**audēbat**	she used to dare		
Future	**audēbit**	she will dare		
Perfect			**ausa est**	1. she dared
				2. she has dared
Pluperfect			**ausa erat**	she had dared
Future Perfect			**ausa erit**	she will have dared
Subjunctive				
Present	**audeat**			
Imperfect	**audēret**			
Perfect			**ausa sit**	
Pluperfect			**ausa esset**	
Infinitive				
Present	**audēre**	to dare		
Imperative				
Singular	**audē**	dare		
Plural	**audēte**	dare		

☛ Drill 77–78 may now be done.

§79. Accusative of Duration of Time

When a noun in the accusative case *with no preposition* is used to express the *amount of time during which* the action of a verb occurs, it is called the **Accusative of Duration of Time**.[9] It is translated "for _____." For example:

> In Italiā multōs *annōs* fuerant rēgēs. (**annus, annī** *m.* year)
> In Italy *for many years* there had been kings.

The syntax of the italicized word (**annōs**) is **Accusative of Duration of Time**.

OBSERVATIONS

    1. Any word that expresses some idea of time, such as "day," "night," "hour," etc., may be used as an Accusative of Duration of Time.

    2. In PIE and in early Latin the accusative case originally expressed an idea of *extent* that *limited* the action of the verb. The Accusative of Duration of Time is developed from this original idea of the accusative.

When the Accusative of Duration of Time is used with a verb in the *present* tense, the present tense indicates an action that *has been going on for some time and is still going on*. This use of the present tense requires a special English translation. For example:

___

9. Occasionally Latin uses the preposition per to strengthen the Accusative of Duration of Time.

In agrīs *multōs annōs labōrō.*
In the fields *for many years I have been working [and am still working].*
I have been working in the fields *for many years.* (action continues in the present)

§80. Ablative of Time When

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* is used to express *the point in time when* the action of a verb occurs, it is called the **Ablative of Time When.**[10] It is translated "at _____" or "on _____." For example:

Eā *nocte* Pompeius oppidum cēpit. (nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night)
On that *night* Pompey took the town.

The syntax of the italicized word (**nocte**) is **Ablative of Time When.**

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Time When expresses a *location in time* and thus arises from the ablative's ability to express location (see §1).

§81. Ablative of Time Within Which

When a noun in the ablative case *with no preposition* is used to express the *limited period of time within which* the action of a verb occurs, it is called the **Ablative of Time Within Which.** It is translated "within _____" or "in _____." For example:

Paucīs *diēbus* Vergilius magnum carmen perficiet. (diēs, diēī *m.* or *f.* day)
(With)in a few *days* Vergil will complete a great poem.

The syntax of the italicized word (**diēbus**) is **Ablative of Time Within Which.**

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Time Within Which expresses a *location in time* and thus arises from the ablative's ability to express location (see §1).

☞ DRILL 79–81 MAY NOW BE DONE.

---

10. The Ablative of Time When is also known as the Ablative of Time At Which.

Short Readings

1. A slave's response after he has been ordered to hard labor

   vīs haec quidem hercle est, et trahī et trūdī simul. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTĪVĪ* 750)

   simul (adv.) at the same time
   trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; pull
   trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsus shove, push

2. A fragment from the poet Ennius

   amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 351)

   cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, determine, perceive

3. Cato's famous advice about oratory

   Rem* tenē, verba sequentur. (CATO, *DĒ RHĒTORICĀ* FRAG. 15)

   *rēs, *here*, subject matter, topic

4. Cato summarizes the essence of farming.

   rēs rūstica sīc est: sī ūnam rem sērō fēceris, omnia opera sērō faciēs.

   (CATO, *DĒ AGRĪ CULTŪRĀ* 5)

   opus, operis *n.* work, task
   rūsticus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the country *or* a farm, rustic; **rēs rūstica**, agriculture
   sērō (adv.) late, tardily; too late
   ūnus, -a, -um one

5. A fragment from the tragic poet Accius

   sapimus animō, fruimur animā: sine animō anima est dēbilis.

   (ACCIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 296)

   dēbilis, dēbile weak, feeble
   fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
   sapiō, sapere, sapiī *or* sapīvī, —— be intelligent, show good sense

6. While prosecuting Verres, Cicero accepts some limitations.

   nē difficilia optēmus. (Cicero, *In Verrem II* 4.15)

7. Cicero asks rhetorically about how one ought to respond to divine portents.

   ... vōx ipsa deōrum immortālium nōn mentīs omnium permovēbit?

   (CICERO, *DĒ HARUSPICUM RESPŌNSĪS* 62)

   immortālis, immortāle immortal
   permoveō (per- + moveō) thoroughly move *or* stir

8. Near the end of Cicero's dialogue *Dē Amīcitiā*, Laelius recalls his recently deceased friend, Scipio Aemilianus.

mihi quidem Scīpiō, quamquam est subitō ēreptus, vīvit tamen semperque vīvet;

virtūtem enim amāvī illīus virī. (CICERO, *DĒ AMĪCITIĀ* 102)

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away
Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis *m.* (P.) Scipio (Africanus Aemilianus) (consul 147, 134)
subitō (adv.) suddenly

9. The province of Gaul does not recognize Antony as consul. Therefore, Antony is not consul.

omnēs enim in cōnsulis iūre et imperiō dēbent esse prōvinciae.

(CICERO, *PHILIPPICS IV* 9)

10. Cicero describes to the senate the fearful state of affairs in Rome after Julius Caesar's assassination.

armōrum officīnās in urbe vidētis; mīlitēs cum gladiīs sequuntur cōnsulem;

praesidiō sunt speciē cōnsulī, rē et vēritāte nōbīs; . . . (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS VII* 4)

officīna, officīnae *f.* workshop
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison
vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth

11. In January 49 Cicero replies to his friend Atticus's attempt to encourage him about Pompey's state of readiness for war with Julius Caesar.

erat enim ars difficilis rēctē rem pūblicam regere. sed iam iamque omnia sciēmus

et scrībēmus ad tē statim. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* VII.25.1)

iam (adv.) now; iam iamque, any time now
rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly
sciō, scīre, scīvī or sciī, scītus know
statim (adv.) immediately

12. In 45 Cicero writes to his friend Fabius Gallus. The letter begins with Cicero's praise of his friend for his labors. This continuation is an example of the brevity and wit of Cicero's style in his letters.

amō igitur voluntātem. sed pauca dē rē. Cipius ōlim: "nōn omnibus dormiō." sīc

ego nōn omnibus, mī Galle, serviō. (CICERO, *AD FAMILIĀRĒS* VII.24.1)

Cipius, Cipiī *m.* Cipius
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī or dormiī, dormītum sleep, be asleep
Gallus, Gallī *m.* Gallus
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore

ōlim (adv.) once, formerly
serviō, servīre, servīvī or serviī, servītum be a slave (+ dat.)
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention

13. The historian begins a comparison between those who make history and those who write it.

pulchrum est bene facere reī pūblicae, etiam bene dīcere haud absurdum est.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 3)

absurdus, -a, -um discordant; inappropriate
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

14. Vergil and Gallus come to realize that there is no escape from unhappiness in love.

omnia vincit Amor: et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* X.69)

15. Having detected a storm on the sea's surface, Neptune emerges and scolds the winds.

iam caelum terramque meō sine nūmine, ventī,

miscēre et tantās audētis tollere mōlēs? (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.133–34)

iam (adv.) now	tantus, -a, -um so much, so great
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up	tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise
mōles, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, bulk, pile	ventus, ventī *m.* wind
nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine	
spirit, numen	

16. Aeneas speaks to Dido and concludes the defense of his departure from Carthage.

dēsine mēque tuīs incendere tēque querēlīs;

Italiam nōn sponte sequor. (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.360–61)

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī or dēsīvī, dēsitum stop, cease (+ inf.)
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn; inflame, provoke
querēla, querēlae *f.* lament, complaint
*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will

17. Dido speaks before committing suicide.

         . . . moriēmur inultae,
sed moriāmur. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.659–60)

inultus, -a, -um unavenged

18. King Evander welcomes Aeneas and, after boasting that Hercules has been a guest in his humble home, issues a challenge.

audē, hospes, contemnere opēs et tē quoque dignum

finge deō, rēbusque venī nōn asper egēnīs. (VERGIL, *AENEID* VIII.364–65)

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless	fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make;
contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus	imagine
regard with contempt, scorn, disregard	hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger
dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.)	ops, opis *f.* power, ability, might, effort; *in pl.,*
egēnus, -a, -um needy, destitute	power, resources, wealth

19. Mezentius gloats as he kills an opponent.

nunc morere. ast dē mē dīvum* pater atque hominum rēx

vīderit. (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.743–44)

*dīvum = dīvōrum
ast (conj.) but

20. Turnus responds bravely to Aeneas's taunts.

        . . . nōn mē tua fervida terrent

dicta, ferōx: dī mē terrent et Iuppiter hostis. (Vergil, *AENEID* XII.894–95)

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
fervidus, -a, -um seething, burning; passionate, furious

21. At the end of a satire in which the poet's slave Davus has been attacking his master with words and finally with a stone, Davus ends his attack.

   aut īnsānit homō aut versūs facit. (HORACE, *SERMŌNĒS* II.7.117)

   īnsāniō, īnsānīre, īnsānīvī or īnsāniī, īnsānītum be mad, be crazy
   versus, versūs *m.* verse (of poetry)

22. After rejecting a well-dressed, mean-spirited friend, the poet speaks approvingly of a man whose appearance might seem more provincial and laughable.

                                  . . . at ingenium ingēns

   incultō latet hōc sub corpore. . . . (HORACE, *SERMŌNĒS* I.3.33–34)

   at (conj.) but
   lateō, latēre, latuī, —— hide, lie hidden, be concealed
   incultus, -a, -um uncouth, rough, uncultivated

23. The poet identifies one difficulty in trying to write poetry correctly.

   in vitium dūcit culpae fuga sī caret arte. (HORACE, *ARS POĒTICA* 31)

   culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault
   vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault

24. The poet describes how he won Cynthia.

   hanc ego nōn aurō, nōn Indīs flectere conchīs,

       sed potuī blandī carminis obsequiō. (PROPERTIUS I.8B.39–40)

   blandus, -a, -um charming, ingratiating, seductive
   concha, conchae *f.* sea-shell, conch; pearl
   flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influence
   Indus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to India, Indian
   obsequium, obsequiī *n.* assiduous attention

25. The poet explains the source of inspiration for his poems.

   nōn haec Calliopē, nōn haec mihi cantat Apollō.

       ingenium nōbīs ipsa puella facit. (PROPERTIUS II.1.3–4)

   Calliopē, Calliopēs *f.* Calliope, Muse of epic poetry
   cantō (1-tr.) sing; compose

26. The poet addresses this remark to Cynthia.

   omnia sī dederis ōscula, pauca dabis. (PROPERTIUS II.15.50)

   ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss

27. Odysseus attacks Ajax, his rival for Achilles' arms.

   fortis ubi est Aiāx? ubi sunt ingentia magnī

   verba virī? . . . (OVID, *METAMORPHŌSĒS* XIII.340–41)

   Aiāx, Aiācis *m.* Ajax, son of Telamon, one of the Greek leaders at Troy

28. Coriolanus's mother, Veturia, reviles her son, an exiled Roman general about to attack Rome.

    ergō ego nisi peperissem, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur; nisi fīlium habērem, lībera in

    līberā patriā mortua essem. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* II.40.8)

ergō (adv.) therefore
oppugnō (1-tr.) attack
pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth (to), bear (of a mother)

29. The historian makes a comparison between a citizen of Rome and one of the southern
    Italian city of Tarentum.

    nōn animō, nōn armīs, nōn arte bellī, nōn vigōre ac vīribus corporis pār Rōmānō

    Tarentīnus erat . . . (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXVII.16.1)

pār, paris equal
Tarentīnus, -a, -um of *or* connected with Tarentum, a town in southern Italy; Tarentine
vigor, vigōris *m.* liveliness, activity, vigor

30. Arguing with her slave, Clytaemnestra explains her own cure for anger.

    et ferrum et ignis saepe medicīnae locō est. (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 152)

ignis, ignis, -ium *f.* fire
medicīna, medicīnae *f.* medicine; treatment, cure

31. Eurybates describes the feelings of the Greeks as they look back upon Troy after setting sail
    for home.

    iuvat vidēre nūda Troiae lītora,

    iuvat relictī sōla Sīgēī loca. (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 435–36)

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist, aid; give pleasure, delight
lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted
Sīgēum, Sīgēī *n.* Sigeum, a town and promontory near Troy
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only; lonely, deserted

32. Eurybates reports the shouts of the Greeks as a storm overwhelms their ships during the
    homeward voyage from Troy.

    nīl nōbile ausōs pontus atque undae ferent?*

    ignāva fortēs fāta cōnsūment virōs? (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 517–18)

*ferō, *here*, carry away, carry off   nōbilis, nōbile noble
cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus   pontus, pontī *m.* sea
  destroy, cause the death of   unda, undae *f.* wave, water
ignāvus, -a, -um lazy, sluggish; cowardly; ignoble

33. The poet compares Cicero to Octavian, who took the title *pater patriae*.

                    . . . sed Rōma parentem,

    Rōma patrem patriae Cicerōnem lībera dīxit.* (Juvenal, *Saturae* VIII.244)

*dīcō, *here*, call
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

Longer Readings

1. Ennius, *Annālēs* I.37–42

   After the death of Aeneas, his daughter Ilia (later the mother of Romulus and Remus) relates to her sister a frightening dream.

   vīrēs vītaque corpus meum nunc dēserit omne.

   nam mē vīsus homō pulcher per amoena salicta

   et rīpās raptāre locōsque novōs. ita sōla

   postillā, germāna soror, errāre vidēbar   40

   tardaque vestīgāre et quaerere tē neque posse

   corde capessere; sēmita nūlla pedem stabilībat.

amoenus, -a, -um pleasing, beautiful
capessō, capessere, capessiī or capessīvī,
   capessītus take hold of, grasp
cor, cordis *n.* heart; mind
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon,
   desert, forsake
germānus, -a, -um having the same father and
   mother, full; true, real
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
postillā (adv.) afterward

quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī or quaesīvī, quaesītus
   search for, seek
raptō (1-tr.) carry away by force
rīpa, rīpae *f.* (river) bank
salictum, salictī *n.* willow bed
sēmita, sēmitae *f.* path, track
sōlus, -a, -um alone
stabiliō, stabilīre, stabilīvī, stabilītus make steady,
   make sure; stabilībat = stabiliēbat
tardus, -a, -um slow
vestīgō (1-tr.) track down, try to find

Quintus Ennius (239–169 b.c.e.) is the most prominent writer of archaic Latin literature. He was born near Brundisium in southern Italy and was a native speaker of Oscan. He was called the man of three hearts because he spoke Oscan, Latin, and Greek. His epic poem *Annālēs* (*Annals*) is the first Latin epic poem written in dactylic hexameter, the meter of Greek epic. It related all of Roman history in eighteen books, and several hundred fragments of it have survived. In the *Annālēs*, Ennius attempted with considerable success to incorporate many elements of Greek literary style into his work, and his pioneering efforts influenced many later Latin poets, including Vergil.

2. Ennius, *Annālēs* IX.309, *sēd. inc.,* frag. 459

   These two fragments are cited by later authors as examples of the poet's experimentation with alliteration.

   Āfrica terribilī tremit horrida terra tumultū . . .

   at tuba terribilī sonitū "taratantara" dīxit . . .

Āfricus, -a, -um African
at (conj.) but
horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible
sonitus, sonitūs *m.* sound, noise
terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening

tremō, tremere, tremuī, —— tremble, quiver,
   quake
tuba, tubae *f.* horn, trumpet
tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar

3. L. Afranius, *Togātae* frag. 298–99

Aulus Gellius cites these two lines from one of Afranius's *togātae*, the *Sella ([Magistrate's] Chair)*, in which Wisdom gives her genealogy.

ūsus mē genuit, māter peperit memoria.

"Sophiam" vocant mē Graī, vōs "Sapientiam."

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus create,
  beget (of a father)
Graī, Graiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Greeks
memoria, memoriae *f.* memory

pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear
  (of a mother)
Sophia, Sophiae *f.* wisdom (in Greek)
ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience

Lūcius Afrānius was a second-century B.C.E. writer of fābulae togātae (toga-clad stories), comic stories on Roman themes performed in Roman dress. *Togātae* developed in the course of the second century and became increasingly popular in the first century B.C.E.

4. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 16

Cicero compares literary pursuits to other forms of relaxation.

nam cēterae neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec

studia adulēscentiam acuunt, senectūtem oblectant, secundās rēs ōrnant, adversīs

perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant

nōbīscum, peregrīnantur, rūsticantur.

acuō, acuere, acuī, acūtus sharpen, stimulate
adulēscentia, adulēscentiae *f.* youth, adolescence
adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse
aetās, aetātis *f.* age; time
at (conj.) but
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),
  (the) other; cēterae = *fem. nom. pl. (sc.* forms
  of relaxation)
dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
forīs (adv.) out of doors; abroad
impediō, impedīre, impedīvī or impediī,
  impedītus obstruct, hinder, impede

oblectō (1-tr.) delight, amuse
ōrnō (1-tr.) adorn, decorate; enhance
peregrīnor (1-tr.) travel abroad
perfugium, perfugiī *n.* place of refuge, shelter,
  sanctuary
pernoctō (1-intr.) spend the night
praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus furnish,
  provide
rūsticor, rūsticārī, —— stay in the country
secundus, -a, -um favorable
senectūs, senectūtis *f.* old age
sōlācium, sōlāciī *n.* comfort, solace, relief

In 62 B.C.E., the year immediately after his consulship, Cicero successfully defended with his *Prō Archiā* (On Behalf of Archias) the citizenship of A. Licinius Archias, a Greek poet and teacher who had been granted citizenship many years earlier. The structure and the subject matter of the speech are unusual because Cicero took the opportunity presented by the case to make an impassioned plea on behalf of the importance of poetry and the liberal arts in general.

5. Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.34

Cicero quotes Ennius's epitaph, which may have been written by the poet himself. It was placed beneath a statue of the poet at the tomb of the Scipios.

Aspicite, ō cīvēs, senis Enni imāgini' formam.

    hic vestrum* pānxit maxima facta patrum.

*vestrum = vestrōrum
aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus look toward, look at; behold
Ennius, Enniī *m.* Ennius; the final -ī of Ennī here scans *short.*
forma, formae *f.* shape, form; appearance

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness; imāgini' = imāginis
maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great
pangō, pangere, pānxī or pepigī, pāctus fix, fasten; compose, record
senex, senis old

The *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* (Tusculan Disputations) takes its name from Cicero's villa in Tusculum, a town in central Italy. The *Tusculan Disputations* is an ethical treatise on five themes, the first of which is death. One book is devoted to each theme. Dedicated to Cicero's colleague and friend Brutus, this work was among the most admired of Cicero's throughout the Middle Ages.

6. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 20

At a secret meeting Catiline begins an address to his fellow conspirators.

Nī virtūs fidēsque vostra spectāta mihi* foret, nēquīquam opportūna rēs cecidisset;

spēs magna, dominātiō in manibus frūstrā fuissent, neque ego per ignāviam aut vāna

ingenia incerta prō certīs captārem.

*mihi, *here, Dative of Agent,* by me
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus fall; occur
captō (1-tr.) try to capture, seek after
dominātiō, dōminātiōnis *f.* absolute rule, dominion
frūstrā (adv.) in vain
ignāvia, ignāviae *f.* idleness; cowardice
nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

nī = nisi
opportūnus, -a, -um favorable, advantageous
spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe; examine, prove; spectāta . . . foret = *spectāta . . . esset*
spēs, speī *f.* hope
vānus, -a, -um empty, illusory; unreliable; useless
vostra = vestra

Gaius Sallustius Crispus (86–35 b.c.e.) became prominent in Roman politics as a young man but was forced out of political life because of accusations of provincial misgovernment and extortion. But Sallust is far better known as a historian. He wrote short monographs rather than long historical works, and his style is marked by a studied response to the flowing style of Cicero and by much imitation of the earlier Cato. His compressed, rapid, and antithetical style became a model for later historians, particularly Tacitus.

    The *Bellum Catilīnae* is a monograph on the conspiracy led by Catiline in 63 b.c.e., the year of Cicero's consulship.

7. Vergil, *Aeneid* I.200–203

After the Trojan fleet has endured a storm at sea, Aeneas addresses the dispirited survivors.

vōs et Scyllaeam rabiem penitusque sonantīs

accestis* scopulōs, vōs et Cyclōpia saxa

expertī: revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem

mittite;† forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit.

*accestis = accessistis
†mittō, *here,* set aside, dismiss
Cyclōpius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the Cyclopes
forsan (adv.) perhaps
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist, aid; give
   pleasure, delight
maestus, -a, -um sad, mournful, gloomy, grim
ōlim (adv.) once, formerly; one day, at some time
penitus (adv.) (from) within, deeply

rabiēs, *rabiēī f.* ferocity, savageness
revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back; recall;
   renew
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
scopulus, scopulī *m.* projecting rock, boulder,
   crag
Scyllaeus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the
   monster Scylla; Scyllaean
sonāns, sonantis full of sound, noisy; resounding

Publius Vergilius Marō (70–19 b.c.e.) was born near Mantua in northern Italy. By the time of his death his reputation as the greatest Roman poet was already established. In Vergil the Latin poetry of the Golden Age reaches its height. Each of his three works, the *Eclogues,* the *Georgics,* and the *Aeneid,* is the masterwork of its genre. Vergil's poetry is indebted to both the Greek and Roman literary traditions, but although the poet drew freely on his predecessors—in particular, Homer, Hesiod, Theocritus, Ennius, Lucretius, and Catullus—Vergil produced a series of works that demonstrate the poet's mastery of poetic technique and the depth of his insight into the whole Roman world. The study of Vergil became a staple of Roman education, and as a result his vocabulary, his syntax, and his command of the dactylic hexameter are echoed in all later Roman writers.

    The *Aeneid,* Vergil's most well-known work and the most famous work of Latin literature, is an epic poem written in dactylic hexameters and arranged in twelve books. It traces the travels and development of the Trojan hero Aeneas as he makes his way from his fallen homeland to Italy, where he is to found a new Troy in the form of Rome. Vergil may well have been encouraged by Maecenas and Augustus to write a Roman epic that could rival Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey.* In this poem Vergil creates a new kind of Roman hero, whose greatest virtue, pietās (devotion to duty), is secured at a high price. In retelling the legendary foundation of Rome, Vergil appears to weave together both a positive and negative interpretation of the Roman empire and its virtues: while praising the greatness of Rome, the *Aeneid* also questions the cost of that greatness.

8. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.26–34

Aeneas describes how the Trojans venture out of their city when they believe that the Greeks have departed.

ergō omnis longō solvit sē Teucria lūctū;

panduntur portae, iuvat īre et Dōrica castra

dēsertōsque vidēre locōs lītusque relictum:

hīc Dolopum manus, hīc saevus tendēbat Achillēs;

classibus hīc locus, hīc aciē certāre solēbant.   30

pars stupet innuptae dōnum exitiāle Minervae

et mōlem mīrantur equī; prīmusque Thymoetēs

dūcī intrā mūrōs hortātur et arce locārī,

sīve dolō seu iam Troiae sīc fāta ferēbant.

Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles
arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment,
   camp
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
classis, classis, -ium *f.* fleet; *in pl.*, ships
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon,
   desert, forsake
dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick, cunning
Dolopes, Dolopum *m. pl.* (the) Dolopes, a Greek
   people from Thessaly
Dōricus, -a, -um Doric, Greek
equus, equī *m.* horse
ergō (adv.) therefore
exitiālis, exitiāle fatal, deadly
hīc (adv.) here
hortor (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort
iam (adv.) already
innuptus, -a, -um unmarried, maiden
intrā (prep. + acc.) within
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist, aid;
   give pleasure, delight
lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach

locō (1-tr.) place
longus, -a, -um long; long-standing
lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning
mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at
mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass; bulk
mūrus, mūrī *m.* wall
pandō, pandere, ——, pānsus or passus
   spread out, open
porta, portae *f.* gate
prīmus, -a, -um first
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage
sīve or seu (conj.) or if;
   sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu) . . . whether . . . or if . . .
soleō, solēre, solitus sum be accustomed
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen; free, release
stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, —— be stunned (at),
be speechless (at)
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus
   stretch out, extend; strain, exert oneself
Teucria, Teucriae *f.* land of the Teucri, Troy
Thymoetēs, *Thymoetis *m.* Thymoetes, son of
   Laomedon, brother of Priam

9. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.290–94

As the Greeks overrun Troy, the ghost of Hector warns Aeneas.

hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Troia.   290

sat patriae Priamōque datum: sī Pergama dextrā

dēfendī possent, etiam hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.

sacra suōsque tibī* commendat Troia Penātīs;

hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere . . .

*The final -i of **tibi** here scans *long.*

comes, comitis *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade

commendō (1-tr.) entrust (for preservation),
  give in trust

culmen, culminis *n.* summit, peak

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect,
  defend; **dēfēnsa fuissent = dēfēnsa essent**

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.*
  (sc. manus), right hand

mūrus, mūrī *m.* wall

Penātēs, Penātium *m. pl.* Penates, guardian
  deities of a household or country

Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama, citadel
  of Troy

quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī or quaesīvī, quaesītus
  search for, seek

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutūrus rush; fall (with violence)

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

sat (indeclinable subst.) enough

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.324–27

The Trojan Panthus speaks to Aeneas as Troy falls.

vēnit summa diēs et inēluctābile tempus

Dardaniae. fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium et ingēns

glōria Teucrōrum; ferus omnia Iuppiter Argōs

trānstulit; . . .

Argī, Argōrum *m. pl.* Argos, Greek city, home of
  Agamemnon

Dardania, Dardaniae *f.* Dardania, city in the
  Troad used poetically for Troy

ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce, ferocious;
  cruel

inēluctābilis, inēluctābile that cannot be fought,
  inescapable

summus, -a, -um highest; final, last

Teucrī, Teucrōrum *m. pl.* descendants of Teucer,
  Teucrians, Trojans

trānsferō (trāns- + ferō), trānsferre, trānstulī,
  trānslātus carry across, transfer

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan (man); Trōes = *masc.*
  pl. nom.

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.376–81

An enraged and sarcastic Dido addresses Aeneas after she hears him claim that the gods have ordered him to leave her realm.

(heu furiīs incēnsa feror!): nunc augur Apollō,

nunc Lyciae sortēs, nunc et Iove missus ab ipsō

interpres dīvum* fert horrida iussa per aurās.

scīlicet is superīs labor est, ea cūra quiētōs

sollicitat. neque tē teneō neque dicta refellō: 380

ī, sequere Ītaliam ventīs, pete rēgna per undās.

*dīvum = dīvōrum

augur, auguris *m.* prophet, augur

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy; (the) furies

horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible, dreadful

incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn; inflame, provoke

interpres, interpretis *m.* or *f.* go-between, agent; interpreter

iussum, iussī *n.* order, command

labor, labōris *m.* work, labor

Lycius, -a, -um Lycian, of Lycia

quiētus, -a, -um calm, serene

refellō, refellere, refellī, —— contradict, refute

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

scīlicet (adv.) *often used ironically,* of course, no doubt, obviously

sollicitō (1-tr.) disturb, trouble, agitate

sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; oracle

superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above

unda, undae *f.* wave, water

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

12. Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.126–29

The Cumaean Sibyl, an Italian prophetess, responds to Aeneas's request for help in journeying to the underworld.

Trōs Anchīsiadē, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō

(noctīs atque diēs patet ātrī iānua Dītis):

sed revocāre gradum superāsque ēvādere ad aurās,

hoc opus, hic labor est . . .

Anchīsiadēs, Anchīsiadae *m.* son of Anchises; Anchīsiadē = *voc. sing.*

āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

Avernus, Avernī *m.* (lake) Avernus, entrance to the underworld

dēscēnsus, dēscēnsūs *m.* descent

ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus go out, escape

gradus, gradūs *m.* step, pace

iānua, iānuae *f.* door

labor, labōris *m.* work, labor

opus, operis *n.* work, task

pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open

revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, recall; take back

superus, -a, -um upper

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan (man)

13. Horace, *Sermōnēs* I.9.57–60

A pestering man from whom the poet cannot escape says that he intends to pursue a friendship with the poet's patron, the wealthy Maecenas.

mūneribus servōs corrumpam; nōn, hodiē sī

exclūsus fuerō, dēsistam; tempora* quaeram,

occurram in triviīs, dēdūcam. nīl sine magnō

vīta labōre dedit mortālibus.

*tempus, *here*, opportunity	labor, labōris *m.* work, labor; effort
corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī, corruptus corrupt, bribe	mortālis, mortāle mortal
	mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift
dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; escort, accompany	occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursum run to meet
dēsistō, dēsistere, destitī, —— cease, leave off	quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī or quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek
exclūdō, exclūdere, exclūsī, exclūsus deny entry, bar, exclude; exclūsus fuerō = exclūsus erō	trivium, triviī *n.* crossroads
hodiē (adv.) today	

Quintus Horātius Flaccus (65–8 B.C.E.) was born in Venusia in southern Italy, the son of a freedman. He was educated in Rome and in Athens. In Athens he joined with Brutus, Julius Caesar's assassin, and followed him in 42 to the battle of Philippi, where Brutus was killed. Horace returned to Rome, became acquainted with Vergil (who was to become his closest friend), and eventually came under the patronage of Maecenas. Horace wrote poetry in a dazzling variety of meters and tones. His works include satires, odes, and poetic epistles, in each of which Horace outdoes even Catullus in combining simplicity and sophistication. His mastery of Latin poetry written in Greek meter was never equaled (or even attempted) by another Roman writer. While his poems never attain the length of Vergilian epic, they cover an even wider variety of themes in addressing all aspects of public and private life. Like Vergil, whom Horace calls "half of my soul" (animae dīmidium meae), Horace achieved legendary status within his own lifetime.

The *Sermōnēs* (Conversations, but usually referred to as *Satires*) are Horace's first published work. Two separate books were published, the first in 35 and the second five years later. Written in dactylic hexameters, they are satiric sketches of a variety of human weaknesses. As the title *Sermōnēs* implies, the poems are conversational in tone and are marked by brevity, ellipsis, and brutal but clever frankness.

14. Propertius II.8.7–12; 17–20

The poet comments on the nature of love affairs.

omnia vertuntur: certē vertuntur amōrēs:

    vinceris aut vincis, haec in amōre rota est.

magnī saepe ducēs, magnī cecidēre tyrannī,

    et Thēbae steterant altaque Troia fuit.   10

mūnera quanta dedī vel quālia carmina fēcī!

    illa tamen numquam ferrea dīxit, "amō."

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus fall; die	rota, rotae *f.* wheel
dux, ducis *m.* leader	stō, stāre, stetī, statum stand; last
ferreus, -a, -um made of iron; hard-hearted, unfeeling	Thēbae, Thēbārum *f. pl.* Thebes
	tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; absolute ruler
mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift	vel (conj.) or
quālis, quāle what sort of, what kind of	vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn; overturn; change, reverse
quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; what size	

Later the poet addresses himself bleakly.

sīc igitur prīmā moriēre aetāte, Propertī?

sed morere; interitū gaudeat illa tuō!

exagitet nostrōs Mānēs, sectētur et umbrās,

īnsultetque rogīs, calcet et ossa mea!

aetās, aetātis *f.* age; life
calcō (1-tr.) trample upon, tread upon
exagitō (1-tr.) arouse, disturb, persecute
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be
  glad, be pleased
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore
īnsultō (1-intr.) leap upon, jump, dance (+ dat.)

interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise
Mānēs, Mānium *m. pl.* Manes, spirits of the
  dead; shade (of a particular person)
os, ossis *n.* bone
prīmus, -a, -um first; first (part of)
rogus, rogī *m.* funeral pyre; *in pl.,* ashes
sector (1-tr.) pursue, chase

15. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.1–4

The proem to Ovid's epic poem

In nova fert animus* mūtātās dīcere[†] formās

corpora—dī, coeptīs (nam vōs mūtāstis et illās)

adspīrāte meīs prīmāque ab orīgine mundī

ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen!

*fert animus (my) mind proposes
[†]dīcō, *here,* tell of, describe
adspīrō (1-intr.) breathe upon (+ dat.)
coeptum, coeptī *n.* beginning
dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; spin; compose
forma, formae *f.* shape, form

mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
mūtō (1-tr.) change; mūtāstis = mūtāvistis
orīgō, orīginis *f.* beginning, origin, birth
perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, without
  interruption; perpetual, everlasting
prīmus, -a, -um first

16. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.39.11

The historian records a speech by Fabius Maximus, one of the heroes of the second Punic war, to Aemilius Paulus (consul 216 B.C.E.), who is about to set off to meet Hannibal on Roman soil. Fabius summarizes his view of the strategic situation. Aemilius later dies in combat near the Italian town of Cannae.

in Italiā bellum gerimus, in sēde ac solō nostrō; omnia circā plēna cīvium ac so-
ciōrum sunt; armīs, virīs, equīs, commeātibus iuvant iuvābuntque,—id iam fideī
documentum in adversīs rēbus nostrīs dedērunt. . . .Hannibal contrā in aliēnā, in
hostīlī est terrā inter omnia inimīca īnfestaque, procul ab domō, ab patriā; neque illī
terrā neque marī est pāx; nūllae eum urbēs accipiunt, nūlla moenia; nihil usquam
suī videt . . .

adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse	iam (adv.) already
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien, strange	īnfestus, -a, -um hostile, antagonistic
circā (adv.) round about, on either side	iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist, aid
commeātus, commeātūs *m.* transport, convoy; *in pl.,* supplies, provisions	nūllus, -a, -um not any, no
contrā (adv.) in opposition, in turn	pāx, pācis *f.* peace
documentum, documentī *n.* example; proof	plēnus, -a, -um full
equus, equī *m.* horse	procul (adv.) at a distance, far
hostīlis, hostīle of *or* belonging to an enemy, hostile	sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home
	solum, solī *n.* soil
	usquam (adv.) anywhere

Titus Līvius (59 B.C.E.–17? C.E.) was born in Patavium in northern Italy. Little is known of his life other than that he did not take part in politics but was on good terms with Augustus. He is said to have encouraged Claudius, who later became emperor, to write history.

Livy's work, *Ab Urbe Conditā (From the Founding of the City)*, a historical work written in 142 books, is one of the greatest of Roman literary achievements. Only one quarter of the work has survived, but the contents of almost all the lost books are known from summaries that date from the fourth century C.E. Livy traces Roman history from its mythical origins to his own day. Much of Livy's material, particularly in the early books, is based on traditional tales and legends whose historical accuracy cannot be established. Livy's narrative style is marked by a significant amount of dramatic and emotional coloring, particularly in relation to his efforts to illustrate and extol the Roman qualities of **virtūs, dignitās** (worthiness), and **pietās** (devotion to duty). Livy's mixed prose style shows the influence of both Cicero and Sallust as well as that of Vergil.

17. Seneca the Younger, *Herculēs Furēns* 1–4

Juno begins the play by explaining her departure from the sky.

Soror Tonantis (hoc enim sōlum mihi

nōmen relictumst) semper aliēnum Iovem

ac templa summī vidua dēseruī aetheris

locumque caelō pulsa paelicibus dedī.

aethēr, aetheris *m. aether* or ether, the upper region of the sky; heaven	pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus push, drive (off)
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another	sōlus, -a, -um alone, only
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon, desert, forsake	summus, -a, -um highest; top (of)
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name	Tonāns, Tonantis *m.* (the) Thunderer, god of thunder
paelex, paelicis *f.* concubine, mistress	viduus, -a, -um deprived, bereft, deserted

18. Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 1

The first sentence of Tacitus's first work, a monograph on the life of his father-in-law, Agricola

Clārōrum virōrum facta mōrēsque posterīs trādere, antīquitus ūsitātum, nē nostrīs quidem temporibus quamquam incūriōsa suōrum aetās omīsit quotiēns magna aliqua ac nōbilis virtūs vīcit ac supergressa est vitium parvīs magnīsque cīvitātibus commūne, ignōrantiam rēctī et invidiam.

aetās, aetātis *f.* age; era
aliqua = *fem. sing. nom. of indef. adj.,* some
antīquitus (adv.) from of old; long ago
commūnis, commūne common
ignōrantia, ignōrantiae *f.* lack of knowledge, ignorance
incūriōsus, -a, -um not interested, not concerned (+ gen.)
mōs, mōris *m.* custom; *in pl.,* character
nōbilis, nōbile noble; remarkable

omittō (ob- + mittō) disregard, pass over; fail, neglect
posterī, posterōrum *m. pl.* descendants; posterity
quotiēns (rel. adv.) as often as, whenever
rēctus, -a, -um straight; right; *as neut. subst.,* right
supergredior, supergredī, supergressus sum pass beyond; exceed, surpass
ūsitātus, -a, -um commonly practiced, customary
vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault

Cornēlius Tacitus (55–118 c.e.) was born in northern Italy during Nero's principate and had a successful public career under a succession of emperors. Tacitus is best known for his historical works, which include three short monographs and two longer works: the *Historiae* (*Histories*) and the *Annālēs* (*Annals*). In these last two works Tacitus's prose style reaches its most distinctive form. Tacitean point and antithesis owe much to the earlier historian Sallust, with whom Tacitus shares a penchant for archaisms, weighty abstract nouns, poetic language, and Greekisms. The intensity and compressed nature of Tacitus's style are unmatched in other Latin literature.

The *Agricola* or *Dē Vītā Agricolae* (*About the Life of Agricola*), the historian's first work, is a short biography of the historian's father-in-law, Julius Agricola, who conquered and governed Britain during the principate of Domitian (81–96 c.e.). The work contains information about the geography and native population of Britain and recounts the activities of the province's governor. The son-in-law presents Agricola as an example of a virtuous man living and serving under a repressive tyrant. The mixed style of the *Agricola* shows the influences of Cicero, Sallust, and Livy.

§82. About Meter I

Introduction to Quantitative Meter

The different meters of Latin poetry are all **quantitative**; that is, they are based on the alternation of long and short syllables according to particular patterns. The quantity of each syllable in a word is either **long** (–) or **short** (�‿), terms (and marks) that indicate the *quantity* of time for which that syllable is to be held when the line is read. As with whole and half notes in music, one long syllable is equivalent to two short syllables.

Each vowel or diphthong represents a new syllable. The **quantity** (long or short) of the vowel or diphthong determines the length of the syllable. A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (**long by nature**)
2. a short vowel *followed by* two or more consonants *not necessarily in the same word* (**long by position**)[1]

If a syllable is not long, it is short.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The letter x counts as a double consonant.

2. Short vowels before consonantal -i- count long.[2]

3. The consonant groups qu, gu, and su count as *single* consonants.

4. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, the first of which is a mute (p, ph, b, t, th, d, c, g) or the fricative f followed by a liquid (l, r) or a nasal (m, n) can be *either* short or long.[3]

5. The consonant h does *not* count toward making a syllable long by position. For example, in the phrase hostis habet the second syllable of hostis (-tis) is *short*.

Dactylic Hexameter and Elegiac Couplet

Many lines of Latin poetry are regularly divided into units called **feet**. Certain metrical systems employ the **dactyl** (< Greek *dactylos*, finger), a foot composed of one long syllable followed by two short syllables: – �‿ �‿. The dactyl can be replaced by a **spondee**, a foot composed of two long syllables: – –. The meter of epic poetry (Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, Lucretius's *Dē Rērum Nātūrā*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, etc.) is called **dactylic hexameter** (< Greek *hexametron*, composed of six measures) because each line contains six dactylic feet, with substitutions of spondees for dactyls permitted. The following scheme represents the dactylic hexameter line:

$$– \overset{\smile\smile}{} \Big| – \overset{\smile\smile}{} \Big| – \overset{\smile\smile}{} \Big| – \overset{\smile\smile}{} \Big| – \overset{\smile\smile}{} \Big| – \mathbf{x}$$

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |

---

1. See Introduction, p. 8.

2. When a single consonantal i is written after another vowel, it in fact represents two i's. For example, Troia = Troiia. The first -i- combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, while the second is pronounced consonantally.

3. See Introduction, p. 7.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The sixth (last) foot always consists of *two* syllables. The x marking the final syllable of the line is the symbol used for a syllable that may be *either* long *or* short. Such a syllable is called anceps (two-headed, two-fold; doubtful).

2. In the first four feet of a dactylic hexameter line, a dactyl may be replaced by a spondee. In the metrical scheme above, this substitution is indicated by the long mark above the two short marks. The dactyl in the fifth foot is rarely replaced by a spondee. When a dactylic hexameter line contains a spondee in the fifth foot, the line is called a spondaic line.

To scan a line of poetry is to mark all the syllables in the line with long and short marks. In scanning a line of poetry, a slash (/) is used to mark the divisions between the individual feet. For example:

$$\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\;\bar{}/\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\quad\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\;\bar{}$$
(heu furi/īs in/cēnsa fe/ror!): nunc / augur A/pollō

$$\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\;\bar{}/\bar{}\quad\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\;\bar{}\smile/\bar{}\;\bar{}$$
nunc Lyci/ae sor/tēs, nunc / et Iove / missus ab / ipsō

OBSERVATION

In order to scan any line of Latin poetry, it is necessary to treat the line as one long word of many syllables. For example, in the first line, the final syllable of feror is long by position because the -o- is followed by -r and n-. Compare the length of et in the second line.

The meter of Roman elegiac poetry is called the **elegiac couplet**. It is composed of one line of dactylic hexameter in alternation with one line called **dactylic pentameter** (five feet), one foot of which is split into two halves. Catullus, Propertius, Ovid, and Martial all wrote poetry in this meter. The following scheme represents the elegiac couplet:

$$\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;\bar{}\;x$$

1	2	3	4	5	6

$$\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;\bar{}\;//\;\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;\bar{}\smile\smile\;/\;x$$

1	2	2½	3½	4½	5

$$\bar{}\;\bar{}/\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\;\bar{}/\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\;\bar{}$$
magnī /saepe du/cēs, mag/nī ceci/dēre ty/rannī

$$\bar{}\;\bar{}/\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}\;//\;\bar{}\smile\smile/\bar{}\;\smile\smile/\bar{}$$
et Thē/bae stete/rant // altaque /Troia fu/it.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The dactylic pentameter line is in fact made up of two segments of two and a half feet each. Each half of the line is also called a hemiepes. The double line in the middle of the pentameter line marks what is called a caesura (see below).

2. In the second half of the dactylic pentameter line no substitution of spondees for dactyls is regularly allowed.

3. In the elegiac couplet the pentameter line is always indented under the hexameter line.

Elision, Caesura, Diaeresis, and Hiatus

Elision (< ēlīdō, eliminate, omit) is the full or partial suppression of a final syllable of a word. It occurs in the scansion and reading of poetry under the following circumstances:

1. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or diphthong:

$$\text{(hae tibi e} | \text{runt ar} | \text{tēs), pā} | \text{cīque im} | \text{pōnere} | \text{mōrem}$$

2. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with h-:

$$\text{nunc more} | \text{re ast dē} | \text{mē dī} | \text{vum pater} | \text{atque homi} | \text{num rēx}$$

3. when a word ending in a vowel followed by -m is followed by a word beginning with a vowel, a diphthong, or h-:

$$\text{Dardani} | \text{ae, fui} | \text{mus Trō} | \text{es, fuit} | \text{Ilium et} | \text{ingēns.}$$

$$\text{dēfen} | \text{dī pos} | \text{sent, et} | \text{iam hāc dē} | \text{fēnsa fu} | \text{issent.}$$

OBSERVATIONS

1. The symbol ‿ is used in scansion to mark the elision of a syllable.

2. When elision occurs, the elided syllable either is not pronounced or is pronounced slightly and quickly so that the *quality* is heard but the *quantity* is lost. The elided syllable is *not* scanned.

When es or est follows a word ending in a vowel or ending in a vowel followed by -m, the initial e- may be dropped, and the rest of the word may be joined to the preceding word. This is called **inverse elision** or **aphaeresis** (< Greek *aphairesis*, taking away). For example, **mea est** may be pronounced and written **meast**; **relictum est** may be pronounced and written **relictumst**. BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE INVERSE ELISION OR APHAERESIS WHEN IT APPEARS IN READINGS.

A **caesura** (< caesūra, cutting) is an internal pause in a line of verse that occurs whenever *a word ends within a foot*. A double slash (//) is used to mark a caesura. For example:

$$\text{magnī} | \text{saepe} // \text{du} | \text{cēs,} // \text{mag} | \text{nī} // \text{ceci} | \text{dēre} // \text{ty} | \text{rannī}$$

When a word ends with a *long* syllable within a foot, the caesura is called **strong** or **masculine** (e.g., after **ducēs** and the second **magnī**). When a word ends with a *short* syllable within a foot, the caesura is called **weak** or **feminine** (e.g., after **saepe** and ce**cidēre**). There can be no caesura between two words that are elided.

A **principal caesura** (often simply called the caesura) falls at a natural pause in the line. In many dactylic hexameter lines it occurs in the *third* foot and is *strong*. Also common is a principal caesura in the *fourth* foot, often *balanced* by another in the *second*. When scanning a line, it is common to mark only the principal caesura(e). For example:

$$\text{magnī} | \text{saepe du} | \text{cēs,} // \text{mag} | \text{nī ceci} | \text{dēre ty} | \text{rannī}$$

$$\text{Dardani} | \text{ae,} // \text{fui} | \text{mus Trō} | \text{es,} // \text{fuit} | \text{Ilium et} | \text{ingēns.}$$

> 1. The caesura in the first line occurs in the third foot and is *strong*. It corresponds to a sense pause as well. The second line has two caesurae, both *strong*, in the second and fourth feet, and these pauses also reinforce sense.
>
> 2. The caesura in the pentameter line of an elegiac couplet regularly falls after two and a half feet.

A principal caesura may simply be a slight oral pause made by the reader of the line, but often this pause coincides with a pause in sense and aids the reader in understanding the grammatical structure of the poetic sentence. In choosing a principal caesura (or principal caesurae) for a given line, one should favor a caesura that reinforces the *sense* or *grammatical structure* of the line over a simple metrical pause.

A diaeresis (< Greek *diairesis*, division) is also a pause within a line, but it occurs *at the end of* and not within a metrical foot. When the *end of a word and the end of a foot coincide*, the resulting pause is called a diaeresis. A diaeresis is marked by a triple slash (⫻). For example:

$$\text{quid struit?} /\!/\!/ \ \text{aut quā} \ /\!/\!/ \ \text{spē} /\!/ \text{ini} / \text{mīcā in} \ /\!/\!/ \ \text{gente mo} / \text{rātur}$$

When scanning a line, it is common to mark a diaeresis *only* if it is a true sense pause. In the line just scanned, only the diaeresis after **struit** would ordinarily be marked.

A **hiatus** (< **hiātus**, gaping) occurs *when conditions for elision exist but elision does not occur*. For example:

$$\text{quid struit?} \ /\!/\!/ \ \text{aut quā} \ | \ \text{spē} \S \text{ini} / \text{mīcā in} \ | \ \text{gente mo} / \text{rātur}$$

A hiatus is marked by a wavy line (§).

> 1. Hiatus occurs between spē and **inimīcā**.
>
> 2. Hiatus is rare in classical Latin poetry, but it most often occurs when the syllable not elided is an interjection (heu, ō, etc.) or is at the principal caesura (as in the line above).

Ictus and Accent

Two different stresses may occur when certain kinds of Latin poetry are read out loud. **Ictus** is the metrical stress that occurs at the beginning of each foot. **Accent** is the spoken stress placed on each Latin word according to the rules of accentuation (see Introduction, pp. 7–8). Roman writers of dactylic hexameter poetry usually made ictus and accent coincide in the second half of the line, but there was often tension between these two stresses earlier in the line. For example (° marks ictus, ′ marks accent, and ″ marks the coincidence of ictus and accent):

$$\text{Dardani} / \text{ae,} \ /\!/ \ \text{fui} / \text{mus Trō} / \text{es,} /\!/ \ \text{fuit} \ | \ \text{Ilium et} \ | \ \text{ingēns.}$$

Note that ictus and accent coincide *only* in the fifth and sixth feet.

General Guidelines for Reading Latin Poetry

Romans did not read silently to themselves under any circumstances. All Latin poetry—indeed, all Latin literature—was written to be read out loud. Learning to read Latin poetry aloud with comparative ease will not only aid the aesthetic appreciation of that poetry but will also aid comprehension. The following guidelines will help develop good habits for reading out loud with facility:

1. READ ALL PASSAGES OF POETRY ALOUD, SLOWLY AT FIRST. MAKE LONG SYLLABLES TWICE AS LONG AS SHORT SYLLABLES.

2. FOCUS ON MAKING ELISIONS AND WORD ACCENT. Allow the meter to assert itself. Because Roman poetry necessarily follows particular metrical patterns of longs and shorts, emphasizing the metrical pattern by stressing the ictus is usually unnecessary.

3. ALWAYS PAUSE SLIGHTLY AT THE PRINCIPAL CAESURA (OR CAESURAE). The caesural breaks will help reinforce the meter and often will also clarify ambiguities of meaning.

While the word order in poetry is sometimes similar to that of prose, more often the demands of meter, the importance of line composition, and the extreme economy of poetic expression result in word orders that are somewhat different from those seen in prose. Certain observations about word order in dactylic hexameter and dactylic pentameter lines may be made:

1. INDIVIDUAL WORDS ARE PLACED FOR MAXIMUM EFFECT AND EMPHASIS EVEN IF THEY STAND FAR APART FROM MODIFIERS.

2. WORDS THAT ARE CLOSELY RELATED (SUBJECT AND VERB, NOUN AND ADJECTIVE, ETC.) ARE OFTEN PLACED AT EITHER END OF THE HEXAMETER LINE.

3. A CAESURAL PAUSE WILL OFTEN SIGNAL THE END OF A PHRASE OR WORD GROUP.

4. BOTH IN HEXAMETER AND PENTAMETER LINES, A WORD ENDING AT THE CAESURA OFTEN GOES WITH A WORD AT THE END OF THE LINE.

☛ DRILL 82 MAY NOW BE DONE.

CHAPTER IX

Vocabulary

➤ ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n*. exile, banishment
➤ modus, modī *m*. measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way
  ➤ quō modō, in what manner, how
oculus, oculī *m*. eye

➤ lēx, lēgis *f*. law
➤ lībertās, lībertātis *f*. freedom
➤ pāx, pācis *f*. peace; favor

➤ metus, metūs *m*. fear, dread, anxiety

spēs, speī *f*. hope

quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) who, which, that (§85)
quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) what . . ., which . . . (§88)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) who, what (§87)

➤ hortor (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort (§84)
➤ imperō (1-intr.) give an order, order, command (+ dat.) (§84, §90)

➤ moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus warn; remind; advise (§84)
➤ pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (§90)
➤ placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (§90)

➤ patior, patī, passus sum experience, suffer, endure; permit, allow
➤ pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus push, drive (off)

➤ quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī or quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek, ask (§84)

➤ caecus, -a, -um blind; hidden, secret, dark

gravis, grave heavy, deep; important, serious; severe
levis, leve light; trivial; fickle

➤ alius, alia, aliud other, another (§89)
➤ alter, altera, alterum the other (of two) (§89)
➤ īdem, eadem, idem same
➤ neuter, neutra, neutrum neither (of two) (§89)
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no (§89)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only (§89)
tōtus, -a, -um whole (§89)
ūllus, -a, -um any (§89)
ūnus, -a, -um one; only (§89)
➤ uter, utra, utrum (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (§89)

➤ iam (adv.) now; by now, by then, already
nē (conj.) *introduces negative Purpose clause,* in order that . . . not; *introduces negative Indirect Command,* that . . . not (§83, §84)
ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
➤ quam ob rem (rel. or interrog. adv.) on account of which thing; therefore; why
➤ quārē (rel. or interrog. adv.) because of which thing; therefore; why
➤ tandem (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and commands,* pray, I ask you, then
ut (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause,* in order that; *introduces Indirect Command,* that (§83, §84)

Vocabulary Notes

ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* may refer to the act of banishment or the place to which one is exiled. The s placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an s.

modus, modī *m.* is derived from the PIE root *med-, "measure, take appropriate measures." It means "measure" in the sense of a "quantity" (of land, of grain). From this basic notion of "quantity" or "amount" arise several extended meanings, including "limit" (an amount that should not be exceeded) and more abstractly "moderation" or "restraint." In musical and poetic contexts, it may mean "rhythm," "meter," or even the "tone" of a voice or a song. Another very common meaning of modus is "mode," "way," or "manner."

Modum agrī fīliīs dedit.	He gave a *measure* of land (field) to his sons.
Modum irae pōnet?	Will he place a *limit* to (his) anger?
Sine *modō* sē gerit.	He conducts himself without *moderation*.
Id eō *modō* fēcī.	I did it in this *way*.

The prepositional phrases in . . . modum and ad . . . modum (in the manner, according to the manner) frequently occur with a genitive or with an adjective modifying modum.

Rēgis *in/ad modum* dīxit.	She spoke *in/according to the manner* of a king.
In/Ad hunc modum dīxit.	She spoke *in/according to this manner*.

The quō in the phrase quō modō is an interrogative adjective. Quō modō is an Ablative of Manner.

lēx, lēgis *f.* means a particular law proposed (bill) or passed (statute). It may be used of a "regulation" laid down by a variety of authorities. It may also mean "law" as the collective legal authority of a state. Lēx appears in the idiom lēgem ferre, "to pass a law."

lībertās, lībertātis *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -tās to the stem of the adjective liber.

pāx, pācis *f.* initially meant a "pact" or "agreement," usually to avert or end hostilities. It then came to mean more broadly the opposite of bellum. It may also have the specialized meaning of "blessing" or "favor" granted by one or more of the gods. The ablative singular, with or without the preposition in, may be used as an Ablative of Time When.

metus, metūs *m.* is the more general term for "fear" or "dread," while timor tends to refer to a more immediate fear.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum is a transitive verb that may introduce an Indirect Command (see §84) or take a direct object only.

Caesar suōs hortātus est nē timērent.	Caesar urged his own men that they not fear.
Caesar suōs hortātus est.	Caesar encouraged his (own) men.

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum is an intransitive verb that may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (see §90). It may also introduce an Indirect Command (see §84). ANY INTRANSITIVE VERB THAT MAY TAKE A DATIVE WITH AN INTRANSITIVE VERB WILL BE INDICATED IN THE VOCABULARY LIST BY THE ADDITION OF (+ dat.) AT THE END OF THE ENTRY. THIS INFORMATION MUST BE MEMORIZED ALONG WITH THE PRINCIPAL PARTS AND ENGLISH MEANINGS GIVEN.

Caesar suīs imperāvit nē fūgerent.	Caesar commanded his own men that they not flee.

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus may introduce an Indirect Command (see §84). Compounds of moneō do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF MONEŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (see §90). The fourth principal part, pāritūrus (about to obey), is a future active participle.

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (see §90). Placeō may be used *impersonally* to mean "seem good." In public contexts it may mean "be resolved" (by the senate, etc.). When placeō is used impersonally, it often has a Subject Infinitive (see §27).

Mihi *placet* rūs īre.	To go to the country is *pleasing* to me.
	It is *pleasing* to me to go to the country.
Placuit populō bellum gerere.	It *seemed good* to the people to wage war.

The basic meaning of patior, patī, passus sum is "experience" a process or an action. It thus may mean "suffer" or "undergo" when the process or action is a difficult one. By extension patior may mean "permit" or "allow" a person or thing (accusative) to perform an action (Object Infinitive).

> Multa mala *passus sum.* — *I have experienced [suffered]* many bad things.
> Pompeium Rōmam redīre *patiar.* — *I shall permit* Pompey to return to Rome.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus has a reduplicated third principal part (cf. dō).

quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī or quaesīvī, quaesītus may introduce an Indirect Command (see §84). Quaerō has *two* third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. The person from whom something is sought is expressed by ā, ab + ablative (cf. petō).

> Marcus *ā mē* quaesīvit nē frātrem ad bellum mitterem.
> Marcus asked *from me* that I not send (his) brother to war.
> Marcus asked *me* not to send (his) brother to war.

caecus, -a, -um may have either an active sense—"blind" (i.e., not *seeing*)—or a passive one—"hidden," "secret," "dark" (i.e., not *being seen*). Many adjectives in Latin convey a variety of meanings based on an active and a passive idea in their root meaning.

The genitive singular form alterīus is regularly used for both alius, alia, aliud and alter, altera, alterum. Alius, alia, aliud and alter, altera, alterum are used in various expressions in which the adjectives are repeated and special translations are required. For example:

> *Alia* aurum, *alia* sapientiam optat.
> *One woman* desires gold, *another* wisdom.
> *Alter* in agrō labōrat, *alter* in urbe.
> *One man* (of two) works in the field, *the other* in the city.
> *Aliī* cīvēs bellum gerere optant, *aliī* timōre fugere.
> *Some citizens* desire to wage war, *others* to flee because of fear.

In these sentences forms of alius or alter are used in *parallel* constructions. The forms of these words in each sentence are the same gender, number, and case. Singular forms of alius arranged in parallel constructions should be translated "one . . . another . . . " Plural forms so arranged should be translated "some . . . other(s) . . . " Singular forms of alter should be translated "(the) one . . . the other . . . "

> *Aliōs* servōs *aliō* in agrō vidērunt.
> They saw *some* slaves in *one* field, *other* slaves in *another* field.

In this sentence two forms of alius in different cases are used *in the same sentence*. When this occurs, the two forms have a *complementary* relation. A comparison is implied, and the first part of the comparison should be supplied in the English translation.

The adjective īdem, eadem, idem is formed by the addition of the suffix -dem to the demonstrative adjective is, ea, id. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem/eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem

The declension of īdem, eadem, idem follows the declension of is, ea, id with certain variations:

1. The masculine singular nominative īdem is formed by the addition of -dem to is. When the -s- is dropped, the i- is lengthened because of compensatory lengthening (cf. auferō).

2. In the neuter singular nominative and accusative, the final -d of id is dropped before the ending -dem.

3. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final -m changes to an -n- before -dem.

4. In the masculine plural nominative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural dative and ablative, disyllabic forms of is, ea, id (e.g., iī, iīs) usually exhibit contraction of the two i's (e.g., īdem, īsdem). Occasionally the uncontracted forms iīdem and iīsdem occur.

uter, utra, utrum is an interrogative adjective that means "which (of two)?" It assumes that there are only two possible answers to the question it poses. Uter is often used substantively.

> In *utro* oppidō vivis?   In *which* town (of two [towns]) do you live?
> *Utrum* vidēre optās?   *Which (man or thing)* (of two) do you desire to see?

neuter, neutra, neutrum is an adjective formed by the addition of the negative particle nē- to uter. It thus means "neither (of two)." A word that is neuter in gender is *neither* masculine *nor* feminine.

iam is an adverb that may indicate a variety of moments in time depending on the tense of the verb and the context in which it appears. It may mean "now" as opposed to any other moment in the passage of time. It may mark the completion of an action before the time indicated by the verb: "(by) now" with a present time verb, "(by) then" or "already" with a past time verb. When iam appears with a future tense, it often emphasizes the time immediately approaching and may be translated "at once," "presently."

> Accipe *iam* haec dōna.   Receive *now* these gifts.
> Hic *iam* mihi hostis est.   This man is *(by) now* an enemy to me.
> Carmen *iam* perfēcerat.   *By then (already)* he had completed (his) poem.
> *Iam* veniet meus amīcus.   My friend will come *presently (at once)*.

When iam is used with any negative expression it is often best translated "longer."

> *Nōn* prō patriā *iam* pugnābō.   I shall *no longer (not any longer)* fight on behalf of (my) country.

The quam of the adverb quam ob rem may be either a relative adjective (see §86)—"on account of which thing," "therefore"—or an *interrogative* adjective (see §88), "on account of which thing," "why." Quam ob rem may be written as a single word (quamobrem).

The quā of the adverb quārē may be either a relative adjective (see §86)—"because of which thing," "therefore,"—or an interrogative adjective (see §88), "because of which thing," "why." Quārē was originally an Ablative of Cause. Quārē may be written as two words (quā rē).

tandem is an adverb that has a temporal meaning (finally, at last). With imperatives and questions it often expresses impatience or indignation (pray, I ask you, then).

> Ad urbem *tandem* accessimus.   *Finally* we approached the city.
> Cūr *tandem* hoc fēcistī?   *Why, pray,* did you do this thing?

	Derivatives	Cognates
alius	*alias; alien;* hid*al*go	*al*ter;[1] *al*arm; *al*ligator; *el*se; *al*legory
alter	alter; *alter*nate; sub*altern*	*al*ius;[1] par*al*lax
modus	mode; *mode*rn; *mod*ify; *mo*ld; mood	mete; *med*ical; *med*itate
oculus	mon*ocle; eye*let	optic; autopsy; op*h*thalmologist
patior	*pass*ion; *pass*ive; patient; com*pass*ion	*fi*end
pellō	pulse; push; re*pel*; com*pel*	polish; an*vil; fel*t
quī/quis	*qui*bble; *qui*ddity; *qui*p	who; what; how; *when; whi*ther; *where*

1. alius and alter are both derived from the PIE root *al-. Thus, all cognates listed under alius are cognates also of alter (and vice versa). Both are listed because English words are derived from both Latin words.

§83. Purpose Clauses and the Sequence of Tenses

Sometimes the precise relationship between the meanings of two sentences is implied but not expressed. For example:

I like him. He's nice.

Although it is likely that the second sentence (He's nice) is stating the reason or cause for the first sentence (I like him), this causal relation *is not expressed*. When independent clauses or sentences are *placed next to each other*, with neither being subordinated to the other, such an arrangement is called **parataxis** (< Greek *parataxis*, placing beside) or **coordination**. The principal feature of **paratactic** writing is the *absence of subordination*.

When the precise relation between the meanings of two independent sentences *is expressed*, a complex sentence is created with a main clause and a subordinate clause.[2] For example:

I like him *because he is nice.*

Such complex sentences are said to exhibit **hypotaxis** (< Greek *hypotaxis*, placing under) or **subordination**. Many types of subordinate clauses in Latin began as independent sentences in paratactic arrangement with other sentences. When one idea was subordinated to another, subordinating conjunctions were added, and two simple sentences arranged paratactically were joined to make one complex **hypotactic** sentence. For example:

Hunc eī librum dōnō. Rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegat.
I am giving him this book. Let him understand the history of the Romans.

The second of these two sentences, containing a Jussive subjunctive, appears to express the aim, intention, or *purpose* for the action of the first sentence. This relation was eventually expressed in a particular kind of subordinate clause called a **Purpose clause.**

Main Clause   Purpose Clause
Hunc eī librum dōnō *ut rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegat.*
I am giving him this book *in order that he may understand the history of the Romans.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subordinate clause italicized in the Latin sentence above is a Purpose clause.

2. Purpose clauses in Latin are introduced by the conjunctions ut (in order that) or nē (in order that . . . not).

3. The subjunctive verb in a Purpose clause was in origin a Jussive subjunctive. Also, the action of the verb in a Purpose clause is only *aimed at* or *intended*. As always, *nonfactual ideas* are expressed in the subjunctive mood in Latin.

4. A Purpose clause is considered an **adverbial** clause because the clause *modifies the action of the main verb as a whole:* it indicates the purpose for which the subject performs the action of the main clause.

---

2. For a review of complex sentences and subordinate clauses see §48.

The verb in the main clause in the sentence above — dōnō, the **main verb**—is in the present tense, but sentences containing Purpose clauses may have main verbs in any tense. For example:

Hunc eī librum dōnāveram ut rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegeret.
I had given him this book *in order that he might understand the history of the Romans.*

The particular *tense* of the *subjunctive verb* in any Purpose clause—*and in most other subordinate clauses in Latin that require verbs in the subjunctive mood*—is deter-mined by fixed rules called the **sequence of tenses**. These rules are represented by the following chart:

	Verb in Main Clause	Verb in Subordinate Clause
PRIMARY	Indicative[3] Present Future Perfect (present completed) Future Perfect	Subjunctive Present Perfect
SECONDARY	Imperfect Perfect (past simple) Pluperfect	Imperfect Pluperfect

MEMORIZE THIS CHART.

The tenses of the indicative in the box at the upper left all refer to *present* or *future time* and are called **primary tenses**. When any of these tenses appears as the verb in a main clause, the verb in a subordinate clause requiring the subjunctive mood *must be either the present or the perfect subjunctive,* as is represented by the box at the upper right. These tenses of the subjunctive *have no absolute time value of their own:* they have only **relative time**. The *present* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb or *subsequent* to the main verb. The *perfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *prior* to the main verb. When a com-plex sentence includes a main verb in a primary tense and a subordinate verb in either the present or perfect subjunctive, the subordinate subjunctive verb is said to be following **primary sequence**.

The tenses of the indicative in the box at the lower left all refer to *past time* and are called **secondary tenses**. When any of these tenses appears as the verb in a main clause, the verb in a subordinate clause requiring the subjunctive mood *must be either the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive,* as is represented by the box at the lower right. These tenses of the subjunctive *have no absolute time value of their own:* they have only *relative time*. The *imperfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb or *subsequent* to the main verb. The *pluperfect* sub-junctive is used to represent an action that is *prior* to the main verb. When a complex sentence includes a main verb in a secondary tense and a subordinate verb in either the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, the subordinate subjunctive verb is said to be following **secondary sequence**.

---

3. Sometimes the verb in the main clause is in the subjunctive mood. See p. 187.

1. The perfect indicative may be a *primary* tense or a *secondary* tense, depending on whether it expresses *present* time (with *completed* aspect) or *past* time (with *simple* aspect).

2. Almost all subordinate clauses that require subjunctive verbs follow the sequence of tenses.[4]

Since the verb in every Purpose clause represents an action that may occur at a time *subsequent to (after)* the verb in the main clause, the only possible tenses of the subjunctive that can be used for Purpose clauses are the *present subjunctive* in primary sequence and the *imperfect subjunctive* in secondary sequence.[5]

When a Purpose clause occurs in primary sequence and its verb is therefore in the *present* subjunctive, it should be translated: "in order that . . . *may*." When a Purpose clause occurs in secondary sequence and its verb is in the *imperfect* subjunctive, it should be translated: "in order that . . . *might*." For example:

> Gladium capiō *ut pugnem.* (Primary Sequence)
> I am taking up a sword *in order that I may fight.*
> Gladium capiēbam *ut pugnārem.* (Secondary Sequence)
> I was taking up a sword *in order that I might fight.*

OBSERVATION

The syntax of the verb pugnem is present subjunctive, Purpose clause, primary sequence. The syntax of the verb pugnārem is imperfect subjunctive, Purpose clause, secondary sequence.

Since the perfect indicative may be a primary tense *or* a secondary tense, *the tense of the subjunctive verb in the Purpose clause indicates* whether a main verb in the perfect tense is present time (with completed aspect) or past time (with simple aspect). For example:

> Gladium *cēpī* ut *pugnem.* (primary sequence: perfect must be *present completed*)
> *I have taken up* a sword in order that *I may fight.*
> Gladium *cēpī* ut *pugnārem.* (secondary sequence: perfect must be *past simple*)
> *I took up* a sword in order that *I might fight.*

Sometimes a verb in the subjunctive introduces a purpose clause (or other subordinate clause with a verb in the subjunctive). When a subjunctive verb expresses an action in *present* or *future time*, it introduces *primary sequence.* When a subjunctive verb expresses an action in *past time*, it introduces *secondary sequence.* For example:

Pres.	Primary
Subj.	Sequence

Sī hostis accēdat, arma *capiāmus* ut *pugnēmus.*

If an enemy should approach, we *would take up* arms in order that *we may fight.*

Pluperf.	Secondary
Subj.	Sequence

Sī hostis accessisset ut *pugnāret*, arma *cēpissēmus.*

If an enemy *had approached* in order that *he might fight*, we would have taken up arms.

---

4. Although conditional sentences are complex sentences containing main clauses (apodoses) and subordinate clauses (protases), the protases *do not follow the rules of sequence of tenses.*

5. The remaining subjunctive tenses that appear on the sequence of tenses chart (perfect and pluperfect) are used in many other subordinate clauses to represent actions that occurred *prior to* the main verb, but they are *not* used in Purpose clauses.

Summary of the Rules of Sequence of Tenses

1. IF THE VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE IS *PRIMARY,* THE SUBJUNCTIVE VERB IN A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE *MUST BE PRIMARY.* THE SUBJUNCTIVE VERB HAS *ONLY RELATIVE TIME.*

A *PRESENT* SUBJUNCTIVE REPRESENTS AN ACTION THAT IS *SIMULTANEOUS* WITH OR *SUBSEQUENT* TO THE MAIN VERB.

A *PERFECT* SUBJUNCTIVE REPRESENTS AN ACTION THAT IS *PRIOR* TO THE MAIN VERB.

2. IF THE VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE IS *SECONDARY,* THE SUBJUNCTIVE VERB IN A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE *MUST BE SECONDARY.* THE SUBJUNCTIVE VERB HAS *ONLY RELA-TIVE TIME.*

AN *IMPERFECT* SUBJUNCTIVE REPRESENTS AN ACTION THAT IS *SIMULTANEOUS* WITH OR *SUBSEQUENT* TO THE MAIN VERB.

A *PLUPERFECT* SUBJUNCTIVE REPRESENTS AN ACTION THAT IS *PRIOR* TO THE MAIN VERB.

☛ DRILL 83 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§84. Indirect Commands

A *direct* command may be expressed in Latin by the imperative mood or a Jussive subjunctive. For example:

> ***Audīte* dicta rēgis!** (Imperative)
> *Listen to (pl.) the words of the king!*
> ***Nē audiātis* dicta illīus rēgis malī!** (Jussive)
> *Do not (pl.) listen to the words of that evil king!*

In each of these sentences the command is expressed directly to a group in the second person plural.

When a command is *reported indirectly* as part of a complex sentence, the command is subordinated to a main verb, and the resulting subordinate clause is called an **Indirect Command.** INDIRECT COMMANDS FOLLOW THE RULES OF SEQUENCE OF TENSES. For example:

> *Petō ut dicta rēgis audiātis.*
> *I ask that you (pl.) listen to the words of the king.*
> *I ask you (pl.) to listen to the words of the king.*
> *Petimus nē dicta illīus rēgis malī audiātis.*
> *We ask that you (pl.) not listen to the words of that evil king.*
> *We ask you (pl.) not to listen to the words of that evil king.*
> *Ā dīs petīvī nē meus fīlius interficerētur.*
> *I asked from the gods that my son not be killed.*

1. The *subordinate clauses italicized* in the sentences above are all Indirect Commands. Indirect Commands in Latin are introduced by the conjunctions ut (that) or nē (that . . . not).

2. The subjunctive verb in an Indirect Command was in origin a Jussive subjunctive. Also, the action of the verb in an Indirect Command is only *ordered*. As always, *nonfactual ideas* are expressed in the subjunctive mood in Latin.

3. Indirect Commands may be distinguished from Purpose clauses by the verbs that introduce them. Verbs that mean "beg," "ask," "advise," "urge," "command," "order," etc. regularly introduce Indirect Commands. Verbs in Chapters I–IX that introduce Indirect Commands are hortor, imperō, moneō, petō, and quaerō. Iubeō, which regularly takes an Object Infinitive (with a subject in the accusative), less frequently introduces Indirect Command. Other verbs that introduce Indirect Commands are identified in the vocabulary notes.

4. Since the verb in every Indirect Command represents an action that may occur at a time *subsequent to (after)* the verb in the main clause, the only possible tenses of the subjunctive that can be used in Indirect Commands are the *present subjunctive* in primary sequence and the *imperfect subjunctive* in secondary sequence.

5. An Indirect Command is regularly translated using the *English present subjunctive.*[6] There is *no difference* between the translation of an Indirect Command in primary sequence and the translation of one in secondary sequence. An Indirect Command may also be translated using an English infinitive, as in the second translations for the first two sentences above.

6. An Indirect Command is considered a noun clause because the clause *functions as the direct object (less frequently the subject) of the main verb*: it indicates *what* is asked for, begged, advised, ordered, etc. Contrast Purpose clauses, which are *adverbial* clauses.

☞ DRILL 83–84 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§85. The Relative Pronoun *quī, quae, quod* and the Relative Clause

A **relative pronoun** introduces a subordinate clause that qualifies an **antecedent**, a word that "goes before" (< antecēdō, go before) the relative pronoun. For example:

> People *who live in glass houses* shouldn't throw stones.
> The evil *that men do* lives after them.

In these English sentences "who" and "that" are examples of relative pronouns. Each *refers to* the word that goes before it.[7] "People" is the *antecedent* of "who," and "evil" is the *antecedent* of "that."[8] The italicized portion of each sentence (*including* the relative pronoun) is called a **relative clause**. Each relative clause has a verb of its own (in addition to the verb in the main clause). A relative clause is an **adjectival clause.**

---

6. The English present subjunctive is the infinitive form of the verb with the word "to" omitted (e.g., "work," "complete," "do," etc.). For example: "I advised the dog that he not *cross* the street when there was heavy traffic."

7. The word "relative" is derived from the fourth principal part of the verb referō, referre, rettulī, relātus "bring back, refer": a relative pronoun "refers" to its antecedent.

8. In addition to "who" and "that," other forms of English relative pronouns include "whom" (direct object, object of a preposition), "whose" (possessive), "which," and sometimes "what." For more on when to use "which" and "that" in translating Latin relative pronouns, see the *Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses,* p. 191.

The relative pronoun in Latin has singular and plural forms in all three genders. MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.*

		Singular			Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The relative pronoun does *not* have vocative forms.

2. The -i- of cuius in the genitive singular is consonantal and is pronounced like English y. Thus cu-ius *(cu-yus)* is disyllabic. The -ui of cui in the dative singular is a diphthong and is pronounced like English wi. Thus cui (kwi) is monosyllabic.

3. When a form of the relative pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition cum may be attached directly to the pronoun. Thus quōcum (with whom) and quibuscum (with whom). The neuter forms are rarely used as Ablatives of Accompaniment.

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING RULE: THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AGREES WITH *ITS* ANTECEDENT IN GENDER AND NUMBER. ITS *CASE*, HOWEVER, IS DETERMINED BY ITS SYNTAX WITHIN THE RELATIVE CLAUSE. For example:

> Carmina *quae nunc legō* ā Catullō scripta sunt.
> The poems *that (d.o.) now I am reading* by Catullus were written.
> The poems *that I am now reading* were written by Catullus.
> Librum *qui est in manibus tuīs* legere optō.
> The book *(d.o.) that is in your hands* to read I desire.
> I desire to read the book *that is in your hands.*
> Ager *in quō meus frāter labōrābat* ab hostibus captus est.
> The field *in which my brother was working* by the enemies was captured.
> The field *in which my brother was working* was captured by the enemies.

In the first sentence, the relative pronoun (quae) introduces a relative clause (quae nunc legō) that describes its antecedent (carmina). Quae is *neuter* and *plural* in order to agree with carmina, its antecedent. It is *accusative*, however, because it is the direct object of legō, the verb in the relative clause. In the second sentence, quī is *masculine* and *singular* to agree with librum, its antecedent. It is *nominative*, however, because it is the subject of est, the verb in the relative clause. In the third sentence, quō is *masculine* and *singular* to agree with ager, its antecedent. It is *ablative*, however, because its syntax in the relative clause is Ablative of Place Where.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The relative pronoun usually comes first in its clause *unless* it is the object of a preposition.

2. The relative pronoun is often placed immediately after its antecedent.

3. The verb of the relative clause is often placed at the *end* of the relative clause (e.g., quae . . . legō, in quō . . . labōrābat).

A Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses

In both Latin and English there are two different kinds of relative clauses. A restrictive relative clause contains information about the antecedent that is *essential* to the meaning of the sentence. In English such a clause *is not set off in commas*, and an antecedent that is not a person is referred to in English by the relative pronoun "that." A **nonrestrictive** relative clause contains information about the antecedent that is *not essential* to the meaning of the sentence. In English such a clause *is always set off in commas*, and an antecedent that is not a person is referred to in English by the relative pronoun "which." For example:

> Restrictive Relative Clauses
> Men *who are without weapons* will not fight.
> I lost the book *that you lent me.*

In each of these sentences the relative clause *restricts* the meaning of the antecedent in a way that is essential for the sense of the sentence. The men who "will not fight" are not men in general, but "men who are without weapons." The book that "I lost" is not any book, but "the book that you lent me." Note that such restrictive relative clauses are *not set off in commas*. "That" is used when the antecedent is not a person.

> Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses
> Horace, *who was a close friend of Vergil*, lived in the country.
> You would enjoy this book, *which was written by my sister.*

In each of these sentences the relative clause contains additional but *nonessential* information about the antecedent. Note that such *nonrestrictive* clauses are *always set off in commas.* "Which" is used when the antecedent is not a person.

In Latin there are *no different pronouns* used to distinguish restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses. The two types may be distinguished *by punctuation only.*[9]

☛ Drill 85 may now be done.

§86. Special Features of the Relative Pronoun

The Indefinite or Generic Antecedent

An indefinite or generic antecedent is often *omitted* in Latin, but an antecedent should be supplied in English. Words such as "he," "she," "it," "a thing," "that thing," "they," "those," "those things," "a man," "people," etc. may be used. The gender and number of the relative pronoun indicate what word(s) should be supplied. For example:

---

9. In modern Latin texts different conventions in punctuation make even punctuation an unreliable method of distinguishing between restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses.

Quī nihil timent bellum cupiunt. (relative pron. = masc. pl.)
(They/Those/Those men/Men/People) *who* nothing (d.o.) fear war (d.o.) desire.
People *who* fear nothing desire war.
Catilīna, *quod* saepe dīxī, novās rēs cōgitat. (relative pron. = neut. sing.)
Catiline, (a thing) *that* (d.o.) I have often said, revolution (d.o.) is pondering.
Catiline, a thing *that* I have often said, is pondering revolution.

OBSERVATION

> In the second sentence the antecedent for **quod** is *either* the entire main clause (Catiline is pondering revolution) *or* an ellipsed neuter pronoun such as id, "a thing," which itself is in apposition to the main clause.

While certain kinds of antecedents may be omitted in Latin, the relative pronoun itself can *never* be omitted, although it is often omitted in English. For example:

> English: I have the book you were desiring. (relative pronoun omitted)
> Latin: **Librum *quem* optābās habeō.** (relative pronoun introduces relative clause)
> I have the book *that* you were desiring.

The Connective Relative

When a relative pronoun *begins a sentence* in Latin, its antecedent may be generic and implied, but it may also be *a specific word or an entire idea expressed in the preceding sentence*. A relative pronoun whose antecedent is to be found in a preceding sentence is called a **connective** relative pronoun.

The connective relative pronoun gives greater cohesion to the ideas being presented and makes the closest possible connection between sentences. Since standard English usage does not allow a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence, a demonstrative pronoun or adjective may be used in translation. For example:

Crassus Rōmam vēnit. *Quem* quoniam timeō, ex urbe discēdam.
Crassus to Rome has come. *Whom* since I fear, from the city I shall depart.
Crassus has come to Rome. [And] since I fear *this man*, I shall depart from the city.
Hostēs accēdēbant cīvēsque arma capiēbant. *Quae* mē terruērunt.
The enemies were approaching, and the citizens arms (d.o.) were taking up. *Which things* me (d.o.) terrified.
The enemies were approaching, and the citizens were taking up arms. [And] *these things* terrified me.

OBSERVATIONS

> 1. Because a connective relative joins two sentences, the conjunction "and" may be added to the English translation, and a demonstrative pronoun or adjective may be used to translate the relative pronoun. In the first sentence **quem** is the equivalent of et hunc. In the second sentence **quae** is the equivalent of et haec.
>
> 2. The antecedent of **quem** in the second sentence of the first example is **Crassus**, with which it agrees in gender and number (masculine and singular). The antecedent of **quae** in the second sentence of the second example is not a specific word, but is the *actions* in the first sentence, with which it agrees in gender and number (neuter and plural).
>
> 3. **Quem** is Accusative, Direct Object of **timeō**, the verb in the causal clause introduced by **quoniam**. A connective relative *always* appears first in its clause even if, as here, the clause has an introductory conjunction.

Placement of the Antecedent in and After the Relative Clause

Although a relative clause usually follows its antecedent, sometimes a relative clause *precedes* its antecedent. When this occurs, the antecedent is often simply a demonstrative pronoun that appears immediately after the relative clause.[10] The antecedent also may be *drawn inside* the relative clause and then *restated* in the main clause as a pronoun. For example:

> *Quōs multum laudābās, eōs in bellum mīsī.*
> *Whom* (pl.) you were praising a lot, *them* (*those men*) (d.o.) into war I sent.
> I sent into war *those men whom* you were praising a lot.
> *Quam urbem hostēs cēpērunt, hanc līberāre dēbētis.*
> *Which city* (d.o.) the enemies have captured, *this* (*one*) (d.o.) to free you (pl.) ought.
> You (pl.) ought to free *this city that* the enemies have captured.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the second sentence the antecedent **urbem** has been drawn inside the relative clause, and the relative word quam is virtually an *adjective* modifying **urbem**. It may be called a **relative adjective**.

2. The second translation, in which urbem has been placed in the main clause, is to be preferred.

☞ DRILL 86 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§87. The Interrogative Pronoun *quis, quid*

A pronoun used *to ask a question* is called an **interrogative pronoun**. In the questions "Who are you?" and "What are you doing?" the words "who" and "what" are examples of interrogative pronouns in English. Most of the forms of the interrogative pronoun in Latin are identical with the forms of the relative pronoun.

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN *ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.*

	Singular				Plural		
	M./F.		N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	who?	quid	what?	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	whose? of whom?	cuius	of what?	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	to/for whom?	cui	to/for what?	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	whom?	quid	what (d.o.)?	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	from whom?	quō	from what?	quibus	quibus	quibus
		(etc.)		(etc.)			

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the singular there is one set of forms for *both masculine and feminine*. All forms are identical with those of the relative pronoun *except* the masculine/feminine nominative form (quis) and the neuter nominative and accusative form (quid).

2. In the plural there are different forms for all three genders, and *all* the forms are identical with those of the relative pronoun. The English translations of the plural forms are identical with those of the singular except for the addition of notes about number and gender. For example:

10. The demonstrative pronoun "points back" to the relative pronoun and the relative clause.

quis	who?	quī	who (masc. pl.)?
quid	what? (*or* what thing?)	quae	what (pl.)? (*or* what things?)

3. When a form of the interrogative pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** is occasionally attached directly to the pronoun. Thus **quōcum** (with whom?) and **quibuscum** (with whom [pl.]?).

4. In Latin, as in English, an interrogative pronoun is placed first in a question, unless it is the object of a preposition. For example:

Quis illud dīxit?	*Who* said that thing?
Ā quō amāris?	*By whom* are you loved?
Quid tē terret?	*What* is frightening you?
Quae dīxit rēx?	*What things* did the king say?

5. The interrogative enclitic -**ne** is *not* added to an interrogative pronoun since the pronoun itself indicates a question.

§88. The Interrogative Adjective *quī, quae, quod*

In the questions "What book are you reading?" and "Which poems were written by Horace?" the words "what" and "which" are examples of interrogative adjectives in English because each modifies an *expressed noun* that directly follows. An interrogative pronoun, by contrast, stands alone. For example:

What man was chosen consul? ("what" modifies "man" and is an interrogative *adjective*)
What are you doing? ("what" stands alone and is an interrogative *pronoun*)

In Latin, the interrogative adjective *is identical in all its forms, singular and plural, with the relative pronoun*. For example:

Quem virum amās?	*Which man* do you love?
In quibus oppidīs vīxistī?	*In which towns* have you lived?
Quod animal in agrō erat?	*What animal* was in the field?
Cum quā fēminā ambulābat?	*With what woman* was he walking?

OBSERVATIONS

1. The interrogative adjective may be translated either "what" or "which."

2. The interrogative enclitic -**ne** is *not* added to an interrogative adjective since the adjective itself indicates a question.

☞ Drill 87–88 may now be done.

§89. Nine Irregular Adjectives

There are nine first-second-declension adjectives that have slight irregularities. These adjectives are:

alius, alia, aliud other, another	tōtus, -a, -um whole
alter, altera, alterum the other (of two)	ūllus, -a, -um any
neuter, neutra, neutrum neither (of two)	ūnus, -a, -um one, only
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no	uter, utra, utrum which (of two)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only	

The declension of these adjectives differs from ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in the *genitive* and *dative singular only*. For example:

Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

OBSERVATIONS

1. The genitive and dative singular endings used for these adjectives are identical with those used for the intensive adjective **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** and the demonstrative pronouns/adjectives **iste, ista, istud** and **ille, illa, illud**. Because of this similarity and because these adjectives are often used substantively, they are sometimes called **pronominal adjectives**.

2. **Alius, alia, aliud** also differs from ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in its *neuter singular nominative and accusative form* (**aliud**). (Cf. **istud, illud**.)

3. The genitive singular form **alterīus** is regularly used for both **alius** and **alter**.

§90. Dative with an Intransitive Verb

Certain intransitive verbs regularly appear with a Dative of Reference indicating the person or thing affected by the action of the verb. Such a dative is called the **Dative with an Intransitive Verb**. For example:

Mea sententia *Antōniō* placet. (**placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum** be pleasing, please)
My opinion is pleasing to *Antony*.
My opinion pleases *Antony*.
Rēgī nostrō pāreātur. (**pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus** be obedient, obey)
Let there be an obeying to our *king*.
Let our *king* be obeyed.

The syntax of each italicized word (**Antōniō, rēgī**) is **Dative with an Intransitive Verb**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Verbs that take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb are so indicated in the vocabulary list by the addition of "(+ dat.)" at the end of their entries. Although these verbs are *intransitive* in *Latin*, they may often be translated less literally by *transitive* English verbs. For example, in the second translation of the first sentence, "Antony" is the direct object of the English verb "pleases."

2. Verbs that take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb may occur in the passive voice *in an impersonal use only*. In such a construction, it is often convenient to translate the Dative with an Intransitive Verb as the personal subject of an English verb in the passive voice. For example, in the second translation of the second sentence, "king" is the subject of the passive voice English verb "let . . . be obeyed."

Short Readings

1. The first line of Ennius's epic poem

   Mūsae, quae pedibus magnum pulsātis Olympum . . . (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLĒS* I.1)

   Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse
   Olympus, Olympī *m.* (Mount) Olympus
   pēs, pedis *m.* foot
   pulsō (1-tr.) strike, beat

2. A fragment from the poetry of Ennius

   quī vincit nōn est victor nisi victus fatētur. (ENNIUS, *SED. INC.* FRAG. 513)

   victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

3. Eunomia asks her brother a pressing question.

   dīc mihi, quaesō, quis ea est quam vīs* dūcere† uxōrem? (PLAUTUS, *AULULĀRIA* 170)

   *volō, velle, voluī, —— be willing, want, wish; vīs = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*
   †dūcō, *here*, marry
   quaesō, *quaesere, ——, —— seek, pray for; *1st sing. pres. act. indic.*, I ask you, please
   uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

4. Hegio is ordered by an ecstatic and near-mad Ergasilus to fetch a sacrificial animal.

   Heg. Cūr? *Erg.* Ut sacruficēs.

   H. Cui deōrum? E. Mī hercle, nam ego nunc tibi sum summus Iuppiter,

   īdem ego sum Salūs, Fortūna, Lūx, Laetitia, Gaudium. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTĪVĪ* 862–64)

   gaudium, gaudiī *n.* joy
   laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness
   lūx, lūcis *f.* light

   mī = mihi
   sacruficō (= sacrificō) (1-intr.) perform a sacrifice
   summus, -a, -um highest

5. A woman's fate is reported with heavy irony.

   placēre occēpit graviter postquam ēmortuast. (CAECILIUS STATIUS, *PALLIĀTAE* FRAG. 163)

   ēmorior (ē- + morior) die
   occipiō (ob- + capiō) take up, begin

6. Cato's view of love

   aliud est, Philippe, amor, longē aliud est cupīdō. accessit īlicō alter ubi alter recessit.

   alter bonus, alter malus. (CATO, *ŌRĀTIŌNĒS*, FRAG. 71)

   cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire
   īlicō (adv.) at once; at that moment
   longē (adv.) far
   Philippus, Philippī *m.* Philip
   recēdō (re- + cēdō) withdraw, recede

7. Cicero notes the relation between the value of things and the degree to which they are desired.

etenim quī modus est in hīs rēbus cupiditātis, īdem est aestimātiōnis; difficile est

fīnem facere pretiō nisi libīdinī fēceris. (CICERO, *In Verrem II* 4.14)

aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis *f.* value
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m.* end, limit
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire
pretium, pretiī *n.* price, value

8. A character discusses the consequence of the agnostic and atheistic beliefs of certain Greek philosophers.

hōrum enim sententiae omnium nōn modo* superstitiōnem tollunt, in quā inest

timor inānis deōrum, sed etiam religiōnem, quae deōrum cultū piō continētur.

(CICERO, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* I.117)

*nōn modo = nōn sōlum
contineō (con- + teneō), continēre, continuī,
contentus hold in, enclose; *in pass.,* be
dependent upon
cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation; worship
inānis, ināne empty, hollow; illusory
īnsum (in- + sum), inesse, īnfuī, —— be in; be
present, be contained

religiō, religiōnis *f.* religious constraint *or* fear;
superstition; sanctity; religious practice
superstitiō, superstitiōnis *f.* (irrational) religious
awe, superstition
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take
away, remove

9. Laelius considers the plight of the tyrant who, though wealthy, loves no one and is loved by no one.

Haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta nīmīrum, in quā nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās, nūlla sta-

bilis benivolentiae potest esse fidūcia, omnia semper suspecta atque sollicita, nūllus

locus amīcitiae. (CICERO, *Dē Amīcitiā* 52–53)

benivolentia, benivolentiae *f.* goodwill,
friendliness
cāritās, cāritātis *f.* affection
fidūcia, fidūciae *f.* confidence, trust, reliance
nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, presumably
sollicitus, -a, -um disturbed, troubled

stabilis, stabile (standing) firm, constant
suspectus, -a, -um viewed with suspicion,
suspect
tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; absolute ruler;
tyrant

10. Laelius makes this observation about Fortune.

nōn enim sōlum ipsa Fortūna caeca est, sed eōs etiam plērumque efficit caecōs,

quōs conplexa est. (CICERO, *Dē Amīcitiā* 54)

conplector (= complector), conplectī, conplexus sum embrace
efficiō (ex- + faciō) make, render
plērumque (adv.) on most occasions; to a great extent

11. Cicero speaks about areas of excellence.

> itaque sē aliī ad philosophiam, aliī ad iūs cīvīle, aliī ad ēloquentiam applicant, ip-
>
> sārumque virtūtum in aliā alius māvult excellere. (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* I.115–16)

applicō (1-tr.) bring into contact; lead; apply

cīvīlis, cīvīle of or connected with citizens, civil

ēloquentia, ēloquentiae *f.* eloquence; rhetoric

excellō, excellere, ——, —— be superior, be conspicuous, excel

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— prefer; **māvult** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

philosophia, philosophiae *f.* philosophy

12. Cicero contrasts Rome with other societies.

> aliae nātiōnēs servitūtem patī possunt, populī Rōmānī est propria lībertās.
>
> (Cicero, *Philippics VI 7*)

nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)

13. Cicero asks a rhetorical question about Caesar's being allowed to run for consul *in absentia*.

> cūr imperium illī aut cūr illō modō prōrogātum est? (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* VII.3.4)

prōrogō (1-tr.) extend, prolong

14. The poet summarizes his doctrine of the eternal regeneration of atoms.

> sīc alid* ex aliō numquam dēsistet orīrī
>
> vītaque mancipiō nūllī datur, omnibus ūsū. (Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* III.
>
> 970–71)

*alid = aliud

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, —— cease

mancipium, mancipiī *n.* ownership

orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise, arise

ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use; enjoyment

15. A shepherd laments his inability to make money from selling his animals.

> nōn umquam gravis aere domum mihi dextra redībat. (Vergil, *Eclogues* I.35)

aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze; coin, money

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst. (sc.* manus), right hand

16. Aeneas speaks to his comrades as Troy falls.

> ūna salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salūtem. (Vergil, *Aeneid* II.354)

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)

17. King Latinus agrees to an alliance with the Trojans and their leader, Aeneas.

> pars mihi pācis erit dextram tetigisse* tyrannī. (Vergil, *Aeneid* VII.266)

*tetigisse, *perfect active infinitive,* to have touched

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst. (sc.* manus), right hand

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch

tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; absolute ruler; tyrant

18. Which is better, city or country?

Rōmae rūs optās; absentem rūsticus urbem

tollis ad astra levis. . . . (HORACE, *SERMŌNĒS* II.7.28–29)

absēns, absentis not present, absent
astrum, astrī *n.* star; *in pl.*, the heavens, sky
rūsticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the country or a farm, rustic
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise

19. One advantage of being in love

omne in amōre malum, sī patiāre, leve est. (PROPERTIUS II.5.16)

20. The poet responds when a friend asks him why he is so vulnerable to his beloved's cruelty.

. . . "quārē" nōn habet ūllus amor. (PROPERTIUS II.22A.14)

21. A shrewd observation on protesting too much

quī nimium multīs "nōn amo"* dīcit amat. (OVID, *REMEDIA AMŌRIS* 648)

*The -ō of amō here scans *short*.
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively

22. Part of the poet's description of the creation of animals out of soil, rock, and water after the
great flood

. . . et eōdem in corpore saepe

altera pars vīvit, rudis est pars altera tellūs. (OVID, *METAMORPHŌSĒS* I.428–29)

rudis, rude unformed, rough, raw
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

23. A couplet about the human condition

tendimus hūc omnēs, mētam properāmus ad ūnam,

omnia sub lēgēs Mors vocat ātra suās. (*EPICĒDĪON DRŪSĪ* 359–60)

āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark
hūc (adv.) to this place, hither
mēta, mētae *f.* goalpost; end, limit
properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus stretch out, extend; proceed

24. A faithful old dog responds to his master after he is scolded for losing his prey.

quod fuimus laudā sī iam damnās quod sumus.

(PHAEDRUS, *FĀBULAE AESŌPĪAE* V.10.9)

damnō (1-tr.) condemn

25. A remark of an orator taking part in a debate

quod servāre tibi difficile est avō dōnā. (SENECA THE ELDER, *CONTRŌVERSIAE* IX.5.1)

avus, avī *m.* grandfather
servō (1-tr.) preserve, save

26. The chorus puzzles over why the gods do not seem concerned with human justice.

rēs hūmānās ordine nūllō

Fortūna regit sparsitque manū

mūnera caecā . . . (Seneca the Younger, *Phaedra* 978–80)

hūmānus, -a, -um human
mūnus, mūneris *n*. present, gift
ordō, ordinis *m*. order
spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus scatter, distribute

27. The philosopher cites a remark of Aristotle about the poetic mind.

nūllum magnum ingenium sine mixtūrā dēmentiae fuit. (Seneca the Younger,

Dialogī IX.17.10)

dēmentia, dēmentiae *f.* madness, insanity
mixtūra, mixtūrae *f.* mixture; admixture

28. Quintilian cites an example of a rhetorical figure employing reversal.

nōn ut edam vīvō, sed ut vīvam edō. (Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* IX.3.85)

edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus (irregular 3rd conj. verb) eat

29. The poet suggests an example of madness.

Hostem cum* fugeret, sē Fannius ipse perēmit.

hic, rogo, nōn furor est, nē moriāre, morī? (Martial II.80)

*cum, *here* (conj. + subjunc.), when
Fannius, Fanniī *m*. Fannius
furor, furōris *m*. madness
perimō, perimere, perēmī, perēmptus destroy
rogō (1-tr.) ask; the final -ō of rogō here scans *short*.

30. The poet explains something to an acquaintance named Pontilianus.

cūr nōn mittō* meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?

nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs. (Martial VII.3)

*The -ō of mittō here scans *short*.
libellus, libellī *m*. (little) book
Pontiliānus, Pontiliānī *m*. Pontilianus, an acquaintance of the poet

31. The poet addresses a friend or lover.

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus es īdem:

nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē. (Martial XII.46)

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

32. An example of Cato the Elder's rhetoric when he expresses indignation at the beating of Roman citizens

quis hanc contumēliam, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitūtem ferre potest?

(Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* X.3.17)

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Dīvinātiō in Caecilium* 19

Cicero attacks Verres, who had been proconsul in Sicily.

Sicilia tōta sī ūnā vōce loquerētur, hoc dīceret: "Quod aurī, quod argentī, quod ornāmentōrum in meīs urbibus, sēdibus, dēlūbrīs fuit, quod in ūnā quāque* rē beneficiō senātūs populīque Rōmānī iūris habuī, id mihi tū, C. Verrēs, ēripuistī atque abstulistī . . .

*quāque = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. adj.,* each
argentum, argentī *n.* silver
beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit
C. Verrēs, C. Verris *m.* C. Verres, proconsul of Sicily, prosecuted by Cicero in 70 B.C.E.
dēlūbrum, dēlūbrī *n.* temple, shrine

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum speak
ornāmentum, ornāmentī *n.* adornment, embellishment
sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode
Sicilia, Siciliae *f.* Sicily

The *Dīvinātiō in Caecilium* was delivered in 70 B.C.E. A *dīvinātiō* was a legal inquiry held to determine who should conduct the prosecution of a case. Cicero successfully argued that he—and not Q. Caecilius, a corrupt alternative—should try the case against C. Verres, a Roman nobleman charged with severe misgovernment of the province of Sicily. The case pitted Cicero against the leading lawyer of the day, Hortensius, and Cicero's victory established him as the foremost orator in Rome. Verres was forced into exile.

2. Cicero, *Dē Fīnibus* IV.34

Cicero compares wisdom to an artist.

ut Phīdiās potest ā prīmō īnstituere signum idque perficere, potest ab aliō inchoātum accipere et absolvere, huic est sapientia similis; nōn enim ipsa genuit hominem, sed accēpit ā nātūrā inchoātum.

absolvō, absolvere, absolvī, absolūtus finish, complete
gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus create, beget (of a father)
inchoō (1-tr.) start, begin
īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus set up, establish; set to work (on), start (on)

Phīdiās, Phīdiae *m.* Phidias, fifth-century Athenian sculptor, designer of Parthenon sculpture
prīmum, prīmī *n.* first part, beginning
signum, signī *n.* sign, signal; statue, figure
similis, simile similar (+ dat.)

In the *Dē Fīnibus Bonōrum et Malōrum* (*Concerning the Ends of Goods and Evils*) Cicero surveys the doctrines of three prominent schools of philosophical thought of his day: Epicurean, Stoic, and Old Academic, the school of thought associated with the philosopher Antiochus. The *Dē Fīnibus* is considered Cicero's most technical philosophical work.

3. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* II.75–79

The poet describes the never-ending life and change of the physical world.

·   . . . sīc rērum summa novātur

semper, et inter sē mortālēs mūtua vīvunt.

augēscunt aliae gentēs, aliae minuuntur,

inque brevī spatiō mūtantur saecla animantum

et quasi cursōrēs vītāī* lampada trādunt.

*vītāī = vītae
animāns, animantis, -ium *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living
  creature; animantum = animantium
augēscō, augēscere, auxī, —— increase, grow
brevis, breve short, brief
cursor, cursōris *m.* runner
gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family
lampas, lampadis *f.* torch; lampada = *acc. sing.*
minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus make smaller,
  reduce, diminish

mortālis, mortāle mortal
mūtō (1-tr.) change
mūtua (adv.) through successive changes, recip-
  rocally, with mutual interaction
novō (1-tr.) make new, renew
quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation
spatium, spatiī *n.* course, track; lap; space,
  interval
summa, summae *f.* sum, whole, total, totality

Virtually nothing is known about the life of Tītus Lucrētius Cārus (98?–55? B.C.E.), but his didactic epic poem *Dē Rērum Nātūrā (Concerning the Nature of Things)* is one of the masterpieces of Latin literature. Lucretius explains the Greek philosopher Epicurus's atomic theory of the universe in order to dispel the fear of death and so to free mankind from religion and superstition. His style owes much to his predecessor Ennius and is thus more archaic than that of his contemporary Catullus. Lucretius's command of meter and poetic diction exerted considerable influence on Vergil's poetic development, and several lines of Lucretius's poem appear in slightly altered form in Vergil's works.

4. Catullus XCII

The poet and his beloved Lesbia have something in common.

Lesbia mī dīcit semper male nec tacet umquam

  dē mē: Lesbia mē dispeream nisi amat.

quō signō? quia sunt totidem mea: dēprecor illam

  assiduē, vērum dispeream nisi amō.

assiduē (adv.) continually, constantly
dēprecor (1-tr.) ward off by prayer; deprecate,
  abuse
dispereō (dis- + pereō), disperīre, disperiī, ——
  perish
mī = mihi

quia (conj.) because
signum, signī *n.* sign, signal
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep
  silent
totidem (indeclinable numerical adj.) just as
  many; just the same

Gaius Valerius Catullus (84?–54? B.C.E.) was born at Verona, but as a young man he came to live in Rome, where he became associated with several other young poets. These poētae novī were very much influenced by the Greek lyric poets and Hellenistic poets. Reacting against long epic and didactic models in earlier Latin poetry, the neoterics (< Greek *neōteros,* newer) chose to write shorter, personal lyrics, of which the 116 poems of Catullus are the best surviving examples. By coining new words and by giving new meanings to existing words Catullus created a new poetic diction for Latin. His vocabulary added liveliness, humor, and even obscenity to the language. Many later Latin poets, including Vergil and Horace, were significantly influenced by Catullan diction and style.

5. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.1

Caesar begins his commentary on the Gallic war.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.

appellō (1-tr.) name, call
Aquītānī, Aquītānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aquitani
Belgae, Belgārum *m. pl.* (the) Belgae
Celtae, Celtārum *m. pl.* (the) Celts
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus separate, divide
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls

Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
incolō, incolere, incoluī, —— inhabit
īnstitūtum, īnstitūtī *n.* custom, institution
lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language
tertius, -a, -um third
trēs, tria (numerical adj.) three; trēs = *fem. pl. acc.*

Gaius Iūlius Caesar (100–44 B.C.E.) was born at Rome and began his political career in the 60s. After entering into an alliance with the two most powerful people in Rome—the wealthy M. Licinius Crassus and the general Pompey—Caesar became consul for the first time in 59. After his consulship Caesar was chosen to govern the province Gaul (modern France and northern Italy). At the time Rome controlled only the southernmost portion of Gaul. Over the next several years Caesar conquered the remainder of it. Caesar then sought to return to Rome as consul in 49, but Pompey, his supporters, and others at Rome—fearing Caesar's increasing power—blocked his candidacy. As a result, Caesar invaded Italy and set off the civil war that lasted until 45 in various parts of the Roman Empire. On 15 March 44, after it had become clear that he had decided not to resign his dictatorship (a legal, temporary office in Rome), Caesar was assassinated.

The *Commentāriī dē Bellō Gallicō* (Commentaries About the Gallic War) were probably written during the campaigns in Gaul. They provide both an account of those campaigns and a description of the customs of the peoples Caesar encountered in Gaul and Britain. Written in seven books, the *Commentāriī* are a third-person account in a plain, lucid, and orderly style with a notable absence of florid rhetoric. When Quintilian surveys the orators of the late Republic, he rates Caesar second only to Cicero himself. Both Cicero and Quintilian praise Caesar's purity of vocabulary and clarity of thought as a speaker—qualities also apparent in his writings.

6. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.65–74

Aeneas, in Carthage, narrates the downfall of Troy. In this passage he begins his account of the deception of Sinon, whose false tale ensures that the Trojan horse is brought into the city.

accipe nunc Danaum īnsidiās et crīmine ab ūnō   65

disce omnīs.*

namque ut cōnspectū in mediō turbātus, inermis

cōnstitit atque oculīs Phrygia agmina circumspexit,

"heu, quae nunc tellūs," inquit, "quae mē aequora possunt

accipere? aut quid iam miserō mihi dēnique restat,   70

cui neque apud Danaōs usquam locus, et super ipsī

Dardanidae īnfēnsī poenās cum sanguine poscunt?"

quō gemitū conversī animī compressus et† omnis

impetus.

*A few lines of the *Aeneid* remained unfinished at the time of Vergil's death.

†et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of -que.

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea

agmen, agminis *n.* (battle-)line; throng

apud (prep. + acc.) at, near; in the presence of, among

circumspiciō, circumspicere, circumspexī, circumspectus look around (at)

comprimō, comprimere, compressī, compressus crush; subdue, suppress

cōnspectus, cōnspectūs *m.* sight, view

cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōnstitī, cōnstātūrus stand still

convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus turn upside down, reverse; change; win over

crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks; Danaum = *gen. pl.*

Dardanidēs, Dardanidae *m.* descendant of Dardanus (founder of Troy), Trojan

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up

discō, discere, didicī, —— learn

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault; (violent) impulse *or* urge

inermis, inerme unarmed

īnfēnsus, -a, -um hostile, threatening

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

medius, -a, -um middle (of)

Phrygius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Phrygia (the region in which Troy was situated), Phrygian, Trojan

poscō, poscere, poposcī, —— demand

restō, restāre, restitī, —— remain, be left

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

super (adv.) in addition

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion

usquam (adv.) anywhere

7. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.651–58

Before committing suicide, Dido mounts her funeral pyre and addresses relics of her love affair with Aeneas.

dulcēs exuviae, dum fāta deusque sinēbat,

accipite hanc animam mēque hīs exsolvite cūrīs.

vīxī et quem dederat cursum Fortūna perēgī,

et nunc magna meī sub terrās ībit imāgō.

urbem praeclāram statuī, mea moenia vīdī,   655

ulta virum poenās inimīcō ā frātre recēpī,

fēlīx, heu nimium fēlīx, sī lītora tantum

numquam Dardaniae tetigissent nostra carīnae.

carīna, carīnae *f.* keel; ship	nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
cursus, cursūs *m.* course	peragō (per- + agō), peragere, perēgī, perāctus
Dardanius, -a, -um Dardanian, Trojan	thoroughly do; accomplish, complete
dulcis, dulce sweet	praeclārus, -a, -um very famous
dum (conj. + indic.) while, as long as	recipiō (re- + capiō) take back, receive
exsolvō, exsolvere, exsolvī, exsolūtus set free,	sinō, sinere, sīī or sīvī, situs allow, permit
release	statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand,
exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor;	set up, establish
mementos	tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch; reach
imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness	tantum (adv.) only
lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach	ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum avenge

8. Horace, *Epistulae* I.11.25–30

The poet reflects on the restless discontent of men.

. . . nam sī ratiō et prūdentia cūrās,   25

nōn locus effūsī lātē maris arbiter aufert,

caelum nōn animum mūtant quī trāns mare currunt.

strēnua nōs exercet inertia: nāvibus atque

quadrīgīs petimus bene vīvere. quod petis, hīc est,

est Ulubrīs, animus sī tē nōn dēficit aequus.   30

aequus, -a, -um level, even; calm, tranquil	mūtō (1-tr.) change
arbiter, arbitrī *m.* overseer, controller, ruler	nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum run, rush	prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, judgment,
dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail	prudence
effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus pour out;	quadrīga, quadrīgae *f.* (four-horse) chariot
spread out	ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy,	strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic
occupy; train, exercise	trāns (prep. + acc.) across
hīc (adv.) here	Ulubrae, Ulubrārum *f. pl.* Ulubrae, a small town
inertia, inertiae *f.* inactivity, laziness	in Latium
lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide	

Written some time after 20 B.C.E., the *Epistulae* (*Letters*) are poems in dactylic hexameter in a conversational style. Much of our information about Horace's own life is derived from these *Epistulae*.

9. Propertius I.11.23-26

The poet concludes a poem with an address to his beloved Cynthia.

tū mihi sōla domus, tū, Cynthia, sōla parentēs,

omnia tū nostrae tempora laetitiae.

seu trīstis veniam seu contrā laetus amīcīs,   25

quicquid erō, dīcam "Cynthia causa fuit."

contrā (adv.) in opposition, in turn
laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
quicquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.,*
    whatever

seu (conj.) or if, whether; seu . . . seu . . .
    whether . . . or (if) . . .
trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

10. Propertius II.8.1-6

The poet reflects on his emotional state now that he has lost his love.

Ēripitur nōbīs iam prīdem cāra puella:

et tū mē lacrimās fundere, amīce, vetās?

nūllae sunt inimīcitiae nisi amōris acerbae:

ipsum mē iugulā, lēnior hostis erō.

possum ego in alterius* positam spectāre lacertō?   5

nec mea dīcētur, quae modo dicta meast?

*The -i- of alterius here scans *short.*
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch
    away
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, shed
iugulō (1-tr.) kill (by cutting the throat), slaughter
lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm
lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

lēnior, lēnius (comparative adj.) weaker, gentler;
    lēnior = *masc. sing. nom.*
modo (adv.) only, now; just now
prīdem (adv.) formerly, previously; iam prīdem,
    long since, for a long time now
spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid

11. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.5-9

Ovid describes the beginning of the universe.

ante mare et terrās et quod tegit omnia caelum   5

ūnus erat tōtō nātūrae vultus in orbe,

quem dīxēre* Chaos: rudis indīgestaque mōlēs

nec quicquam nisi pondus iners congestaque eōdem†

nōn bene iūnctārum discordia sēmina rērum.

*dīcō, *here,* call
†eōdem, *here* (adv.) to the same place
Chaos, *Chaī *n.* Chaos
congerō (con- + gerō) gather together, collect
discors, discordis discordant, unlike
indīgestus, -a, -um unarranged, without order,
    confused
iners, inertis inactive, idle, inert
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus join

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, weight, burden
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world
pondus, ponderis *n.* weight
quicquam = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,*
    anything
rudis, rude unformed, rough, raw
sēmen, sēminis *n.* seed
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

12. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 79–86

The chorus states what it believes inevitably happens to royal houses.

iūra pudorque

et coniugiī sacrāta fidēs   80

fugiunt aulās; sequitur trīstis

sanguinolentā Bellōna manū

quaeque superbōs ūrit Erīnys,

nimiās semper comitāta domōs,

quās in plānum quaelibet hōra   85

tulit ex altō.

aula, aulae *f.* royal hall, palace
Bellōna, Bellōnae *f.* Bellona, goddess of war
comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend
coniugium, coniugiī *n.* marriage
Erīnys, Erīnyos *f.* Erinys, a Fury
hōra, hōrae *f.* hour
nimius, -a, -um excessive, too great
plānum, plānī *n.* flat *or* level ground
pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

quaelibet = *fem. sing. nom. of indef. adj.,*
  any . . . it pleases
sacrātus, -a, -um hallowed, sacred
sanguinolentus, -a, -um covered with blood;
  greedy for blood
superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty
trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn, scorch, inflame,
  consume

Based in part on Aeschylus's *Agamemnon*, Seneca's play of the same name tells the tale of Agamemnon's home-coming from Troy and his subsequent murder by his wife, Clytaemnestra, and his cousin, her lover, Aegisthus.

13. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 698–709

Cassandra, the daughter of Priam, explains to the chorus why she has nothing left to fear.

Fortūna vīrēs ipsa cōnsūmpsit suās.

quae patria restat, quis* pater, quae iam soror?

bibēre tumulī sanguinem atque ārae meum.†   700

quid illa fēlīx turba frāternī gregis?

exhausta nempe: rēgiā miserī senēs

vacuā relictī, totque per thalamōs vident

praeter Lacaenam cēterās viduās nurūs.

tot illa rēgum māter et regimen Phrygum,   705

fēcunda in†† ignēs Hecuba fātōrum novās

experta lēgēs induit vultūs ferōs:

circā ruīnās rabida latrāvit suās,

Troiae superstes, Hectorī, Priamō, sibi.

*quis, *here, interrog. pron. used adjectivally*
†meum = meōrum
††in, *here,* toward
bibō, bibere, bibī, —— drink
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),
   (the) other
circā (prep. + acc.) around, near
cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus
   expend, use up
exhauriō, exhaurīre, exhausī, exhaustus drain dry
fēcundus, -a, -um fertile, productive, fruitful
ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce, ferocious
frāternus, -a, -um brotherly, fraternal
grex, gregis *m.* flock, herd
Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector, son of Priam
Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba, wife of Priam
ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire
induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on, clothe; as-
   sume, adopt
Lacaena, Laecaenae *f.* Laconian woman; Helen
latrō (1-intr.) bark, bay

nempe (adv.) without doubt, to be sure
nurus, nurūs *f.* daughter-in-law
Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except; besides
rabidus, -a, -um raging, rabid, mad
rēgia, rēgiae *f.* royal residence, palace
regimen, regiminis *n.* control, management;
   controller, manager
restō, restāre, restitī, —— remain, be left
ruīna, ruīnae *f.* downfall, ruin
sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
senex, senis old; *as masc. subst.,* old man
superstes, superstitis surviving (+ dat.)
thalamus, thalamī *m. in sing. or pl.,* inner room,
   wedding chamber; marriage
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
tumulus, tumulī *m.* burial mound, grave
turba, turbae *f.* crowd, throng
vacuus, -a, -um empty
viduus, -a, -um widowed
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

14. Tacitus, *Annālēs* I.1

The historian summarizes concisely modes of Roman rule from the city's beginnings down to Augustus.

Urbem Rōmam ā prīncipiō rēgēs habuēre; lībertātem et cōnsulātum L. Brūtus īnstituit. dictātūrae ad tempus* sūmēbantur; neque decemvirālis potestās ultrā biennium, neque tribūnōrum mīlitum cōnsulāre iūs diū valuit. nōn Cinnae, nōn Sullae longa dominātiō: et Pompeī Crassīque potentia citō in Caesarem, Lepidī atque Antōniī arma in Augustum cessēre, quī cūncta discordiīs cīvīlibus fessa nōmine prīncipis sub imperium accēpit.

*ad tempus, for the occasion, in emergencies
biennium, bienniī *n*. biennium, two years
L. Brūtus, L. Brūtī *m*. L. (Junius) Brutus, legendary founder of the Roman republic
Cinna, Cinnae *m*. (L. Cornelius) Cinna (Roman dictator 87–84 B.C.E.), enemy of Sulla
citō (adv.) quickly
cīvīlis, cīvīle of *or* connected with citizens, civil
cōnsulāre iūs, cōnsulāris iūris *n*. consular right
or power (sometimes granted to military tribunes)
cūnctus, -a, -um all
decemvirālis, decemvirāle pertaining to the *decemvirī*, a commission of ten magistrates
dictātūra, dictātūrae *f*. dictatorship, an emergency office with unlimited powers
discordia, discordiae *f*. discord, dissension, conflict
diū (adv.) for a long time
dominātiō, dominātiōnis *f*. absolute rule, dominion

fessus, -a, -um weary, exhausted, worn out
īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus set up, establish
Lepidus, Lepidī *m*. (M. Aemilius) Lepidus, member of second triumvirate with Antony and Octavian
nōmen, nōminis *n*. name
potentia, potentiae *f*. (illegitimate) power, influence
potestās, potestātis *f*. (legitimate) power
prīnceps, prīncipis first, foremost, chief; *as subst.*, leading man
prīncipium, prīncipiī *n*. beginning
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; take on, assume
tribūnus, tribūnī *m*. tribune, military commander
ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond

The *Annālēs* appear to have comprised eighteen books, of which only eight survive completely and four others in part. Their subject is the history of Rome from the death of Augustus to the death of Nero (14–68 C.E.) The *Annālēs* is generally considered Tacitus's most mature work. The first six books in particular are marked by Tacitus's love of compression and his pronounced *avoidance* of Ciceronian balance. In these books the complexity of Tacitus's thought is combined with his commanding use of the Latin language's natural tendency toward economy. The resulting narrative is vivid, surprising, and inimitable.

§91. Numbers in Latin

Cardinal numbers are adjectives that answer the question "how many?" They are the numbers used in counting. Most but not all cardinal numbers in Latin are indeclinable. Ordinal numbers are adjectives that answer the question "which one in a series?" *All* ordinal numbers in Latin are first-second-declension adjectives. Most ordinal numbers are derived from the corresponding cardinal numbers.

Arabic Numeral	Roman Numeral	Cardinal Number	Ordinal Number
1	I	ūnus, -a, -um one	primus, -a, -um first
2	II	duo, duae, duo two	secundus, -a, -um second
3	III	trēs, tria three	tertius, -a, -um third
4	IIII or IV	quattuor four	quartus, -a, -um fourth
5	V	quīnque five	quintus, -a, -um fifth
6	VI	sex six	sextus, -a, -um sixth
7	VII	septem seven	septimus, -a, -um seventh
8	VIII	octō eight	octāvus, -a, -um eighth
9	VIIII or IX	novem nine	nōnus, -a, -um ninth
10	X	decem ten	decimus, -a, -um tenth
11	XI	ūndecim eleven	ūndecimus, -a, -um eleventh
12	XII	duodecim twelve	duodecimus, -a, -um twelfth
13	XIII	tredecim thirteen	tertius decimus, -a, -um thirteenth
14	XIIII or XIV	quattuordecim fourteen	quartus decimus, -a, -um fourteenth
15	XV	quīndecim fifteen	quīntus decimus, -a, -um fifteenth
16	XVI	sēdecim sixteen	sextus decimus, -a, -um sixteenth
17	XVII	septendecim seventeen	septimus decimus, -a, -um seventeenth
18	XVIII	duodēvigintī eighteen	duodēvicēsimus, -a, -um eighteenth
19	XVIIII or XIX	ūndēvigintī nineteen	ūndēvicēsimus, -a, -um nineteenth
20	XX	vigintī twenty	vicēsimus, -a, -um twentieth
21[1]	XXI	vigintī ūnus, -a, -um or ūnus et vigintī twenty-one	vicēsimus primus, -a, -um or ūnus et vicēsimus, -a, -um twenty-first
22	XXII	vigintī duo or duo et vigintī twenty-two	vicēsimus, -a, -um alter, altera, alterum or alter, altera, alterum et vicēsimus, -a, -um twenty-second

1. In the numbers from 21 to 29, for example, the numbers up to 27 are made by *adding to twenty* the necessary numbers from 1 to 7. The numbers 28–29 are made by *subtracting from thirty* the numbers 2 and 1. Such a system is followed in every unit of ten numbers.

Arabic Numeral	Roman Numeral	Cardinal Number	Ordinal Number
23	XXIII	vīgintī trēs or trēs et vīgintī twenty-three	vīcesimus tertius, -a, -um or tertius et vīcēsimus, -a, -um twenty-third
28	XXVIII	duodētrīgintā twenty-eight	duodētrīcēsimus, -a, -um twenty-eighth
29	XXVIIII or XXIX	ūndētrīgintā twenty-nine	ūndētrīcēsimus, -a, -um twenty-ninth
30	XXX	trīgintā thirty	trīcēsimus, -a, -um thirtieth
40	XXXX or XL	quadrāgintā forty	quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um fortieth
50	L	quīnquāgintā fifty	quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um fiftieth
60	LX	sexāgintā sixty	sexāgēsimus, -a, -um sixtieth
70	LXX	septuāgintā seventy	septuāgēsimus, -a, -um seventieth
80	LXXX	octōgintā eighty	octōgēsimus, -a, -um eightieth
90	LXXXX or XC	nōnāgintā ninety	nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um ninetieth
100	C	centum hundred	centēsimus, -a, -um hundredth
200	CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus, -a, -um
300	CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus, -a, -um
400	CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus, -a, -um
500	D	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsimus, -a, -um
600	DC	sēscentī, -ae, -a	sēscentēsimus, -a, -um
700	DCC	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus, -a, -um
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus, -a, -um
900	DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus, -a, -um
1000	M	mīlle; mīlia, mīlium	mīllēsimus, -a, -um

duo, duae, duo has an irregular declension. **trēs, tria** is declined regularly as a third-declension adjective *(plural* forms *only)*. The stem is **tr-**.

	M.	F.	N.		M./F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	Nom.	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duo	duae	duo	Acc.	trēs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	Abl.	tribus	tribus

MEMORIZE THE CARDINAL NUMBERS 1 TO 10 (INCLUDING THE DECLENSIONS OF **DUO, DUAE, DUO** AND **TRĒS, TRIA**), 100, AND 1000. MEMORIZE THE ORDINAL NUMBERS THAT CORRESPOND TO 1 TO 10. REFER TO THIS SECTION *WHENEVER* CARDINAL OR ORDINAL NUMBERS APPEAR IN READINGS.

The cardinal numbers 200 to 900 are all declined (plural forms only) as first-second-declension adjectives. **Mīlle** is indeclinable in the singular, but **mīlia, mīlium**

is declined regularly as a neuter plural substantive of a third-declension adjective. The stem is mīl-. The Romans frequently measured distance in "thousands of paces" or "miles." For example:

mīlle passuum	one thousand of paces, one mile (passus, passūs *m.* pace)
decem mīlia passuum	ten thousands of paces, ten miles

OBSERVATION

In the expressions above passuum is Partitive Genitive.

CHAPTER X

Vocabulary

➤ lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* legate, envoy; lieutenant

➤ nātus, nātī *m.* son

➤ dux, ducis *m. or f.* leader

➤ fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m. or f.* end, limit, boundary; *in pl.*, territory

➤ genus, generis *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort

➤ labor, labōris *m.* work; effort, hardship

➤ mōs, mōris *m.* custom, practice; *in pl. (sometimes)*, character

➤ nēmō, nēminis *m. or f.* no one

➤ opus, operis *n.* work; need
   ➤ opus est (idiom) there is need of (+ abl. or nom.)

➤ ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.* oration, speech
   ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech
   ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.* speaker
   pectus, pectoris *n.* chest, breast; heart

➤ cāsus, cāsūs *m.* fall; occurrence; chance, misfortune

➤ quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (indef. pron.) (a) certain person, (a) certain thing

➤ quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (indef. adj.) (a) certain

➤ oppugnō (1-tr.) attack
   servō (1-tr.) save, preserve

➤ stō, stāre, stetī, statum stand; stand fast, endure

   dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus destroy

➤ cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum fall, sink; die

➤ nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum be born

➤ nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus come to know, learn, recognize; *in perfect*, know
   ➤ cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus come to know, learn, recognize; *in perfect*, know

➤ proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum set out, set forth

➤ ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum use; experience, enjoy (+ abl.)

➤ perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus suffer, endure; report

➤ referō, referre, rettulī, relātus bring back; report

➤ aequus, -a, -um level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil
   ➤ inīquus, -a, -um uneven; inequitable, unjust

➤ honestus, -a, -um honorable, respectable

➤ **medius, -a, -um** middle (of); *as subst.,* midst

➤ **apud** (prep. + acc.) at, near; at the house of, in the presence of, among

➤ **contrā** (adv.) face to face; in opposition; in turn
(prep. + acc.) facing; against, contrary to

➤ **magnopere** (adv.) greatly
quīn (conj.) *introduces Relative Clause of Characteristic,* who/that . . . not (§93)
quō (rel. adv.) to where, whither (§92)

➤ **satis or sat** (indeclinable n. subst.) enough (adv.) enough, sufficiently
ubi (rel. adv.) where (§92)
unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence (§92)

Vocabulary Notes

lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* may refer to a "legate" or "envoy" involved in matters of diplomacy. It may also be used to identify an assistant to an army commander or provincial governor (lieutenant, legate).

nātus, nātī *m.* means "a male having been born" and is a substantive of the perfect passive participle of nāscor. Less common is the feminine substantive **nāta, nātae** *f.,* "daughter."

dux, ducis *m.* or *f.* may mean a "leader" in the sense of a "guide," but it is commonly used for a political or military "leader."

The gender of **fīnis, fīnis, -ium** is regularly masculine, but in early Latin and in poetry the *singular only* is sometimes treated as feminine. In the plural, **fīnis** may refer to the "boundary" of a territory or country and, by extension, the "territory" that is enclosed by boundaries.

genus, generis *n.* is derived from the PIE root *genE- (give birth, bear). Genus may refer to an individual's "origin" or "birth." It may refer more broadly to a "race" or "class" of people or things that arise from a single origin (human race, race of the gods, Greek stock). When used of abstract things, it often means "sort" or "kind," the abstract class to which someone or something belongs.

labor, labōris *m.* means the abstract concept of "work" or "the act of working" (exertion). Labor may also mean the "effort" or "hardship" required to accomplish something.

mōs, mōris *m.* means "custom," an established practice as opposed to an enacted law. The plural **mōrēs** may mean "customs," but it may also refer to the collective habits of an individual and thus may be translated "character."

nēmō, nēminis *m.* or *f.* occurs in the singular only. Although the genitive and ablative singular forms occasionally appear, usually the genitive and ablative singular forms of **nūllus** (nūllīus, nūllō, or nūllā) replace the forms of **nēmō** (nēminis, nēmine). Nēmō is formed by the addition of the negative particle nē- to the noun homō.

opus, operis *n.* may mean something that needs to be done (work [to do], need) or something that has been accomplished ([piece of] work, product, achievement). Opus may convey the sense of how much is required to accomplish something (effort), and it is often used for the products of artistic endeavor (poetic work).

> Hoc *opus* perficere non poterit.   He will not be able to complete this *work*.
> Clara sunt *opera* poetarum.   The *works (achievements)* of the poets are famous.

The idiom **opus est** most often takes an ablative to express *the thing needed.* This ablative is translated with the English preposition "of." It is also common for a Dative of Reference to occur with this idiom.

> Mihi opus est magna diligentia.   There is need to me *of great diligence.*
>   I need great diligence.

Less frequently, the thing needed is the Nominative, Subject, and opus functions as a Predicate Nominative. A Nominative, Subject occurs most often when the subject is a *neuter pronoun.*

> Hoc mihi opus est.   This *thing* is a need to me.
>   There is need to me *of this thing.*
>   I need *this thing.*

Rarely opus est takes a genitive of the thing needed.

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.* may mean the abstract notion of "speaking," the power of "speech," or a particular "speech" or "oration."

cāsus, cāsūs *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -tus to a stem of the verb cadō. The -t- of the suffix assimilated to the -s- of the stem cās- and was then lost. In addition to its basic meaning

of "fall," cāsus refers to the "occurrence" of an event, usually by chance (accident), which may be positive (fortune) or negative (misfortune). It may also refer to the "situation" that is the result of an occurrence or series of occurrences.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam is an *indefinite pronoun* formed by the addition of the suffix -dam to the relative pronoun quī, quae, quod. An indefinite pronoun is a pronoun that does *not* define or specify the person or thing for which it stands. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

The declension of quīdam follows the declension of quī, quae, quod with certain variations:

1. The neuter singular nominative and accusative are formed by the addition of -dam to quid.
2. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final -m changes to an -n- before -dam.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam is an *indefinite adjective* formed by the addition of the suffix -dam to the relative pronoun quī, quae, quod. An indefinite adjective is an adjective that does *not* define or specify the person or thing it modifies. The declension of quīdam, quaedam, quoddam is identical with that of quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *except* in the neuter singular nominative and accusative (cf. quoddam with quiddam).

Quīdam Rōmam vēnit.	*A certain man* came to Rome. (indefinite pronoun)
Poēta quīdam Rōmam vēnit.	*A certain* poet came to Rome. (indefinite adjective)

oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ob- to pugnō. (For the prefix ob- see Appendix P.) *Unlike* pugnō, oppugnō *is a transitive* verb.

Incolae oppidum oppugnant.	The inhabitants are attacking the town.

stō, stāre, stetī, statum is an irregular intransitive first-conjugation verb. The third principal part exhibits reduplication, and the fourth principal part has a *short* -a-. In addition to its basic meaning of "stand," stō may also mean "remain standing," "endure," or "last."

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum is an intransitive verb. The third principal part, cecidī, exhibits reduplication. In addition to its basic meaning of "fall" or "sink," cadō may also mean "cease" (when the subject is winds, noise, etc.). It may also have the extended meaning of "die" or "perish."

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of nāscor do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF NĀSCOR APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus is derived from the PIE root *gneO- (know). It is an *inchoative* (< incohō, start) or *inceptive* (< incipiō, begin) verb. An inchoative verb indicates that an action is *beginning to occur*. All verbs whose first and second principal parts end in -scō and -scere are in origin inchoative verbs. The basic meaning of nōscō is "begin to know" and thus "learn." The *perfect* indicative of many inchoative verbs is often equivalent to an English *present* tense since the perfect tense indicates the *completion* of the action of the verb. Nōvī means "I have learned" and thus "I know." The *pluperfect* forms may be translated as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. On occasion, the perfect tense may be translated "have learned" or "learned," but the meaning "know" is more common.

Nātūram hominum nōscere optō.	I desire to *learn* the nature of human beings.
Lēgēs huius urbis nōvistī?	*Do you know* [= Have you learned] the laws of this city?
Nōverāsne lēgēs huius urbis?	*Did you know* (progressive/repeated [= Had you learned]) the laws of this city?

The present forms of nōscō may mean "recognize" or "become acquainted with" a person. The perfect forms may mean "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" a person or an object of study.

> Cicerōnem nōn nōvī.   I do not know [am not acquainted with] Cicero.

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix com- to nōscō. (For the prefix com- see Appendix P.) It exhibits irregular vowel weakening in the fourth principal part. Cognōscō is a strengthened form of nōscō with all the same meanings.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum is an *intransitive* third-conjugation deponent verb. In origin an inchoative verb, proficīscor means "set out" or "set forth" on a journey or from a certain starting point.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum is an intransitive verb that takes an *ablative* of the thing used or experienced. The ablative is translated as a direct object in English. Compounds of ūtor do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF ŪTOR APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

> Tuō cōnsiliō ūtar.   I shall use *your advice*.
> Utinam *bonā* nunc *fortūnā* ūteremur.   If only we were experiencing *good fortune* now.

perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix per- to ferō. (For the prefix per- see Appendix P.) Perferō regularly means "endure" or "suffer" (hardships, troubles), but it may also mean "report" or "express."

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix re- to ferō. (For the prefix re- see Appendix P.) Although referō may mean "carry back," it most commonly means "report."

From the basic physical meaning of aequus, -a, -um (level or even) come its more expanded senses of "fair" or "just" (level in a legal or political context) and "calm" or "tranquil" (i.e., level-headed). Inīquus, -a, -um is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix in-[2] (not) to aequus. (For in-[2] see Appendix P.)

honestus, -a, -um is an adjective derived from the noun honor, honōris *m.* "(political) office"; "honor," "repute." In the strictest sense honestus describes a person who is "honorable" or "respectable" because he has held a public office. honestus has a more extended sense of being "morally honorable" *or* "respectable."

medius, -a, -um expresses the notion of the "middle of" a place by *modifying that place*. It usually appears *before* the noun it modifies. As a substantive, medius is often translated "midst."

> Mīlitēs *in mediā urbe* ā rēge positī sunt.
> Soldiers were placed *in the middle of the city* by the king.
> Postquam populō dīxit, ē *mediō* discessit.
> After he spoke to the people, he departed (out) *from* (their) *midst*.

apud is a preposition that takes the accusative. It may mean "at" or "near" (places), "at the house of," "in the presence of," "among," or "with" (individuals, groups), and "in (the writings of)" (authors, books). Context helps to determine the appropriate translation.

> Virī *apud* Carthāginem manēbant.   The men were remaining *near* Carthage.
> Cicerō *apud* frātrem manet.   Cicero is staying *at the house of/with* (his) brother.
> Haec *apud* Rōmānōs sunt iūra.   These are the laws *among* the Romans.
> Haec verba *apud* Cicerōnem lēgī.   I have read the following words *in (the writings of)* Cicero.

contrā may be an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. With verbs expressing standing, seeing, looking, and the like, the adverb usually means "face to face" or "opposite." With verbs of motion, contrā may mean "against." contrā may also be used to connect a second thought or opinion that balances or opposes a preceding one (in turn, on the other hand).

> Mē *contrā* videt.
> He sees me *face to face*.
> Caesaris ille erat amīcus; tū *contrā* Pompeī.
> That man was a friend of Caesar; you *in turn* (were a friend) of Pompey.

The preposition contrā has meanings analogous to the meanings of the adverb.

Domum *contrā* templum pōnit.   He places (his) house *opposite* the temple.
Auxilia contrā hostem mittimus.   We are sending auxiliary troops *against* the enemy.

The adverb **magnopere** is in origin the Ablative of Manner **magnō opere**, and it is sometimes written as two words.

satis may be an indeclinable neuter substantive, which is often followed by a Partitive Genitive, or an adverb. The shortened form **sat** is more common in poetry.

Satis agricolae est ager bonus.   A good field is *enough* for the farmer. (subst.)
Satisne pecūniae tibi est?   Do you have *enough* (of) money? (subst. + Partitive Gen.)
Satisne labōrābās?   Were you working *enough*? (adverb)

	Derivatives	Cognates
cadō	*cad*aver; *cad*ence; cas*cad*e; *cas*e; chance; ac*cid*ent; oc*cas*ion; de*cid*uous	
fīnis	de*fin*e; *fin*al; *fin*e; *fin*ish	
genus	*gen*uine; *gen*der; *gen*re; en*gin*e; *gen*m; *gen*ital; mali*gn*	kind; *kin*g; *gen*ocide; *gen*e
mōs	*mor*al; *mor*ose; *mor*es	*moo*d
nōscō	*not*ice; *not*orious; *not*ify	*kno*w; ca*n*; *ke*n; dia*gnos*is; *no*ble
cognōscō	*cogn*ition; re*cogn*ition	
satis	*sat*isfy; *sat*urate; *sat*ire	*sa*d
ūtor	*us*e; *ut*ility; *ut*ensil	

§92. Relative Clauses of Purpose

Purpose clauses are regularly introduced by the conjunctions **ut** (in order that) or **nē** (in order that . . . not) (see §83). When a Purpose clause is instead introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb, it is called a **Relative Clause of Purpose**. For example:

> Rēgīna mīlitēs in prōvinciam mittet *quī incolās terreant.*
> The queen soldiers (d.o.) into the province will send *who the inhabitants (d.o.) may frighten.*
> The queen will send soldiers into the province *who may frighten the inhabitants.*
> The queen will send soldiers into the province *in order that they may frighten the inhabitants.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. A relative pronoun regularly replaces **ut** in introducing a Purpose clause *only when there is a clear antecedent, usually not the subject,* in the main clause.

2. When a main clause contains a verb that involves motion (**eō**, **mittō**, **veniō**, etc.), a Relative Clause of Purpose often follows.

3. In the sentence above the relative pronoun **quī** makes the closest possible connection in Latin between the subordinate clause and the main clause by referring directly to its antecedent **mīlitēs**. The third English translation (in order that they may . . .) is to be preferred, however, because it most clearly indicates the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.

4. In the sentence above the syntax of **terreant** is present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Purpose, primary sequence.

Certain relative adverbs (**ubi**, where; **unde**, whence, from where; **quō**, whither, to where) may also introduce Relative Clauses of Purpose. For example:

> Rōmam vēneram *ubi auxilium ab amīcīs peterem.*
> To Rome I had come *where aid (d.o.) from friends I might seek.*
> I had come to Rome *where I might seek aid from friends.*
> I had come to Rome *in order that there I might seek aid from friends.*
> Eāmus *quō laetī sīmus.*   Let us go *whither (to where) we may be happy.*
>   Let us go *(to a place) where we may be happy.*
>   Let us go *where we may be happy.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence **Rōmam** is the antecedent for the relative adverb **ubi**. The third English translation (in order that there . . . might . . .) is to be preferred. The addition of the English adverb "there" preserves the close connection between the main clause and the subordinate clause that the relative adverb in Latin achieves. The words "in order that . . . might" clearly indicate the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.

2. The syntax of **peterem** in the first sentence is imperfect subjunctive, Relative Clause of Purpose, secondary sequence.

3. In the second sentence the antecedent for the relative adverb **quō** is *implied* (to a place) but *is not expressed.*

§93. Relative Clauses of Characteristic

When the verb in a relative clause is in the indicative mood, the relative clause helps make clear *what specific person or thing* is indicated by the antecedent. For example:

Virum quī rem pūblicam petit nōn laudāmus.
The (specific) man (d.o.) who the republic (d.o.) is (actually) attacking we do not praise.
We do not praise the man who is attacking the republic.

When the verb in a relative clause is in the *subjunctive* rather than the indicative mood, the relative clause may supply information about *what sort of person or thing* is indicated by the antecedent. Such a clause is called a **Relative Clause of Characteristic.**[1] For example:

Virum *quī rem pūblicam petat* nōn laudāmus.
A man (d.o.) *who the republic (d.o.) (would) attack* we do not praise.
We do not praise a man *who would attack the republic.*
We do not praise *the sort of man who attacks the republic.*
Virum *quī rem pūblicam petīverit* nōn laudāmus.
The (sort of) man (d.o.) *who the republic (d.o.) attacked* we do not praise.
We do not praise *the sort of man who attacked the republic.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subjunctive mood in Relative Clauses of Characteristic developed from the Potential subjunctive, and it both *generalizes about* and *characterizes* an indefinite antecedent.

2. The *tenses* of the subjunctive verbs in a Relative Clause of Characteristic *follow the rules of sequence.* The syntax of petat in the first sentence is present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Characteristic, primary sequence, time subsequent to the main verb. The syntax of petīverit in the second sentence is perfect subjunctive, Relative Clause of Characteristic, primary sequence, time prior to the main verb.

3. Unlike Purpose clauses and Indirect Commands, Relative Clauses of Characteristic may use both the *perfect* subjunctive (in primary sequence) and the *pluperfect* subjunctive (in secondary sequence) because the action of a Relative Clause of Characteristic may occur prior to the main verb. Thus in the second sentence above petīverit is used to indicate time *prior* to the main verb and is translated accordingly.

4. When translating a Relative Clause of Characteristic, the formula "the sort of _____ who/that . . . (subjunctive verb translated as indicative)" is to be preferred. When the subjunctive verb is either *present* or *imperfect*, the alternate formula "a/an _____ who/that . . . would (subjunctive verb translated as potential)" may also be used.

Certain formulaic phrases with *indefinite antecedents* regularly introduce Relative Clauses of Characteristic. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING PHRASES:

Quis est quī . . .	Who is there (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Quid est quod . . .	What is there (of the sort) that . . . (would)
Nēmō est quī . . .	There is no one (of the sort) who . . . (would) (nēmō, nēminis *m.* no one)
Nihil est quod . . .	There is nothing (of the sort) that . . . (would)
Sunt quī . . .	There are people (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Sōlus est quī . . .	He is the only one (of the sort) who . . . (would)

[1]. The Relative Clause of Characteristic is also known as the **Generic Relative Clause.**

In addition to various unspecified or indefinite antecedents, *any* person or thing may serve as the antecedent for a Relative Clause of Characteristic. For example:

Cicerō erat quī vītam prō rē pūblicā daret.
Cicero was (a man) who would give (his) life for the republic.
Librum habeō quem amēs.
A book (d.o.) I have that you would love.
I have a book that you would love.
I have the sort of book that you love.

When the main clause contains an expressed or implied negation, the conjunction **quīn** (without its being the case that) may replace a relative pronoun in introducing a Relative Clause of Characteristic. A relative pronoun and the English adverb "not" should be added to the translation of such a clause. For example:

Nēmō est *quīn* prō patriā pugnet.
There is no one *who* would *not* fight for (his) homeland.
Sōla erat *quīn* haec intellegeret.
She was the only one *of the sort who* did *not* understand these things.

☛ DRILL 92–93 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§94. Introduction to Participles

A participle (< **particeps**, sharing in) has been defined as a *verbal adjective* with the properties of *tense* and *voice*, and one participle, the perfect passive participle, has already been learned.[2] There are a total of four participles in Latin: *present active, perfect passive, future active,* and *future passive.*[3] The following chart presents all the participles and their basic translations:

	Active	Passive
Present	Present Stem + -ns, -ntis (for 3rd i-stem and 4th conjugation verbs, change the stem vowel to -ie-) vocāns, vocantis movēns, moventis regēns, regentis "_____ing" capiēns, capientis audiēns, audientis	
Perfect		4th Principal Part vocātus, -a, -um mōtus, -a, -um rēctus, -a, -um "(having been) captus, -a, -um _____ed" audītus, -a, -um
Future	drop the -us, -a, -um from 4th Principal Part and add -ūrus, -a, -um vocātūrus, -a, -um "about to motūrus, -a, -um _____" rēctūrus, -a, -um captūrus, -a, -um "going to auditūrus, -a, -um _____"	Present Stem + -ndus, -a, -um (for 3rd i-stem and 4th conjugation verbs, change the stem vowel to -ie-) vocandus, -a, -um "having to be movendus, -a, -um _____ed" regendus, -a, -um capiendus, -a, -um "deserving to be audiendus, -a, -um _____ed"

OBSERVATIONS

1. A present active participle is a third-declension adjective with one nominative singular form for the masculine, feminine, and neuter (cf. **ingēns, ingentis**). Its stem is found by dropping the ending -is from the genitive singular form (see §74). *Unlike* other third-declension adjectives, the present active participle has -ī or -e as its *masculine/feminine singular ablative* ending. When the participle functions as an adjective and modifies an expressed noun, the ablative singular ending is usually -ī. When the participle functions as a substantive, the ablative singular ending is usually -e. For example:

> dē virō regentī — about the ruling man (adjective)
> dē regente — about the ruling man/ruler (substantive)

2. See §§50–51, in particular the *Note on the Perfect Passive Participle.*

3. The Latin verb has neither a present passive nor a perfect active participle.

2. A short vowel *lengthens* before the nominative singular ending of the present active participle (-ns) (e.g., regēns < rege- + ns). However, a long vowel *shortens* before the -nt- at the end of the stem (e.g., vocant- < vocā- + -nt-).

3. The perfect passive participle of intransitive verbs (e.g., veniō) may occur only in the impersonal passive construction with a neuter singular ending (e.g., ventum est) (see §59).

4. The fourth principal parts of certain intransitive verbs that lack perfect passive participles are future active participles (e.g., fugitūrus, about to/going to flee).

5. A long vowel *shortens* before the -nd- at the end of the *stem* of the future passive participle (e.g., vocand- < vocā- + -nd-).

6. The future passive participle conveys a sense of obligation or necessity. For example:

oppidum capiendum	the town having to be captured (nom./acc.)
verba audienda	words deserving to be heard (nom./acc.)

Participles of Irregular Verbs

Sum has *only* a future active participle (the fourth principal part), **futūrus, -a, -um**, "about to/going to be." **possum** has *no* participles.

The present active participle of **eō** is irregular: **iēns, euntis** (stem = **eunt-**). The future passive participle of **eō** is also irregular: **eundum**. It is used in the impersonal passive construction only. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES. Eō forms its future active participle *regularly:* **itūrus, -a, -um**.

The irregular third-conjugation verb **ferō** forms its present active participle *regularly:* **ferēns, ferentis**.

The verb **morior** has an *irregular* future active participle: **moritūrus, -a, -um**. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE.

Participles of Deponent and Semideponent Verbs

The participles of deponent and semideponent verbs follow all the same rules of formation that apply to nondeponent verbs. However, deponent and semideponent verbs have the following participles:

> Present active participles that are *active* in both *form* and *meaning*.
> Perfect passive participles that are *passive* in *form* but *active* in *meaning*.
> Future active participles that are *active* in both *form* and *meaning*.
> Future passive participles that are *passive* in both *form* and *meaning*.

The following chart provides an example of the forms and basic translations of the participles of deponent verbs.

	Active	Passive
Present	patiens "enduring"	
Perfect	———	passus, -a, -um, "having endured"
Future	passūrus, -a, -um "about to/going to endure"	patiendus, -a, -um "having to be/deserving to be endured"

§95. Synopsis VI: Indicative, Subjunctive, Participles, Infinitives, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes the participle, the participle follows the subjunctive and precedes the infinitive and imperative. Here is a model synopsis of sentiō in the third-person singular feminine:

Principal Parts		sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus		
Person, Number, and Gender		3rd sing. f.		
	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	sentit	she perceives	sentītur	she is (being) perceived
Imperfect	sentiēbat	she was perceiving	sentiēbātur	she was being perceived
Future	sentiet	she will perceive	sentiētur	she will be perceived
Perfect	sēnsit	1. she perceived 2. she has perceived	sēnsa est	1. she was perceived 2. she has been perceived
Pluperfect	sēnserat	she had perceived	sēnsa erat	she had been perceived
Future Perfect	sēnserit	she will have perceived	sēnsa erit	she will have been perceived
Subjunctive				
Present	sentiat		sentiātur	
Imperfect	sentīret		sentīrētur	
Perfect	sēnserit		sēnsa sit	
Pluperfect	sēnsisset		sēnsa esset	
Participle				
Present	sentiēns	perceiving	—	
Perfect	—		sēnsus, -a, -um	(having been) perceived
Future	sēnsūrus, -a, -um	about to perceive	sentiendus, -a, -um	having to be perceived
Infinitive				
Present	sentīre	to perceive	sentīrī	to be perceived
Imperative				
Singular	sentī	perceive	sentīre	be perceived
Plural	sentīte	perceive	sentīminī	be perceived

OBSERVATIONS

1. This synopsis reviews the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods, the participle, and the infinitive. When new verbal forms are introduced, the synopsis form will expand accordingly.

2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative, participle, infinitive, and imperative forms.

3. Since participles are not *finite* forms, always give the *full nominative singular* no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms.

4. Imperatives appear in the second-person singular and plural only. Always give the second-person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms.

☛ DRILL 94–95 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§96. Notes on the Participle: Relative Time; Attributive and Circumstantial Uses

The three tenses of the participle—present, perfect, future—*have no absolute time values of their own;* rather, they have only *relative time:*

> A *present* participle indicates an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb.
> A *perfect* participle indicates an action that is *prior to* the main verb.
> A *future* participle indicates an action that is *subsequent* to the main verb.

For example:

> Hominēs in agrīs *labōrantēs* vīdī. (present active participle)
> The men (do) in the fields *working* I saw.
> I saw the men *working* in the fields.
> Mihi dē mīlitibus *captīs* dīcit. (perfect passive participle)
> To me about the (having been) *captured* soldiers he speaks.
> He speaks to me about the *captured* soldiers.
> Rēx *discessūrus* arma cēpit. (future active participle)
> The king *about to depart* took up arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the present active participle **labōrantēs** indicates an action occurring *at the same time* as the main verb, **vīdī**.

2. In the second sentence the perfect passive participle **captīs** indicates an action that occurred *before* the main verb, **dīcit**.

3. In the third sentence the future active participle **discessūrus** indicates an action that is to occur *after* the main verb, **cēpit**.

4. Since a participle is a verbal adjective, it usually follows the noun it modifies. Often a participle is separated from its noun by several words in order to enclose a phrase that is *syntactically connected* to the participle. For example, **labōrantēs** is separated from **hominēs** to enclose the prepositional phrase **in agrīs**.

As in the sentences above, a participle may be used simply to indicate that the noun it modifies has the *attribute* or *quality* described by the participle. Such a use of the participle is called **attributive**. The basic translations supplied for the four Latin participles [_____ing, [having been] _____ed, about to _____, and having to be _____ed) are usually used for translating attributive participles. It is sometimes convenient to translate an attributive participle with a relative clause in English. For example, the last sentence above may be translated "The king *who was about to depart* took up arms." In such a translation care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle to the main verb.

A participle may also be used to describe the *circumstances* under which the action of the main clause occurs. This use of the participle is called **circumstantial.** Often the circumstances described by such a participle may be more specifically **temporal, causal, concessive,** or **conditional.** A phrase containing a circumstantial participle is often best translated into English as a subordinate clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction. For example:

> *Marcus ad forum iēns interfectus est.*
> *Marcus going to the forum was killed.*
> *While/When Marcus was going to the forum, he was killed. (temporal)*
> *Because Marcus was going to the forum . . . (causal)*
> *Although Marcus was going to the forum . . . (concessive)*
>
> *Marcus ad forum iēns interficiātur.*
> *Marcus going to the forum would be killed.*
> *If Marcus should go to the forum, he would be killed. (conditional)*
>
> *Caesar suōs hortātus discessit.*
> *Caesar his own (men) (i.e.) having encouraged departed.*
> *When Caesar had encouraged his own men, he departed. (temporal)*
> *After Caesar encouraged his own men . . . (temporal)*
>
> *Rēx moritūrus servōs līberāvit.*
> *The king about to die freed (his) slaves.*
> *When the king was about to die, he freed (his) slaves. (temporal)*
> *Because the king was about to die . . . (causal)*
> *Although the king was about to die . . . (concessive)*
>
> *Mīles timōre carēns nōn tamen pugnat.*
> *Although the soldier is without fear, nevertheless he is not fighting. (concessive)*

OBSERVATIONS

1. A circumstantial participle may be translated using the basic translation of the participle, but often the full meaning of the participial phrase requires that it be translated as a subordinate clause. When a circumstantial participle is translated as part of a subordinate clause, the participle is translated as a *finite verb.* In such a translation care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle to the main verb.

2. A circumstantial participle with *conditional* force always functions as the *protasis* of a conditional sentence. The main verb is the verb of the *apodosis,* and it provides the only indication of what type of conditional sentence is represented. In the second sentence above, the main verb interficiātur (present subjunctive) indicates that the conditional sentence is a Future Less Vivid, and the participle iēns is translated accordingly (If . . . should go).

3. The appropriate force of a circumstantial participle (temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional) can usually be determined by *context only.* A circumstantial participle with *concessive* force may be indicated by the presence of the adverb tamen (nevertheless) at or near the beginning of the main clause. When tamen appears in the main clause, the participle is translated as part of a concessive subordinate clause beginning with the conjunction "although." A circumstantial participle with *conditional* force is often indicated by the presence of a main verb in the *subjunctive,* as in the second sentence above.

☛ Drill 96 may now be done.

§97. Ablative Absolute

A noun in the ablative case that is *accompanied by a circumstantial participle* and *unconnected in syntax* with the rest of the sentence is called an Ablative Absolute (< ab-solūtus, having been freed from). For example:

Mīlitibus discēdentibus, omnēs cīvēs ob timōrem fugiēbant.
(With) the soldiers departing, all the citizens on account of fear were fleeing.
When the soldiers were departing, ...
Because the soldiers were departing, ...
Although the soldiers were departing, ...
Carmine perfectō, Horātius ab Augustō laudātus est.
(With) the poem having been completed, Horace by Augustus was praised.
When the poem had been completed, Horace was praised by Augustus.
Because the poem had been completed, ...

OBSERVATIONS

1. An Ablative Absolute functions as a subordinate clause and is part of a complex sentence. Like all participles, the participle in an Ablative Absolute shows time relative to the main verb. In translations of Ablatives Absolute care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle.

2. An Ablative Absolute is often best translated with a temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional clause.

3. The present active and the perfect passive participles appear most often in Ablatives Absolute.

4. An Ablative Absolute often appears first in a sentence, and several Ablatives Absolute may appear together. The Ablative Absolute allows for the compression of several actions or events into one complex sentence.

Sometimes two nouns (or a noun and an adjective) in the ablative case may form an Ablative Absolute. For example:

Rōmulō rēge, fēlix erat urbs.
(With) Rōmulus (being) king, the city was fortunate.
When Rōmulus was king, ...
Dīs inimīcīs, Aenēās ad Italiam accēdere nōn poterat.
(With) the gods (being) hostile, Aeneas was not able to approach Italy.
Because the gods were hostile, ...

OBSERVATION

Since the verb **sum** lacks a present active participle, no participle appears in this type of Ablative Absolute, but the English present participle "being" is supplied as a copulative verb when translating an Ablative Absolute of this type. If the Ablative Absolute is translated as a subordinate clause, a finite form of sum is supplied, and care must be taken to show relative time.

☛ DRILL 97 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§98. Active and Passive Periphrastics

A finite, compound verb form that comprises a form of the *future active participle* and a form of **sum** is called an **active periphrastic** (< Greek *periphrazō*, speak around). For example:

Rōma *discessūrī sumus.*	We are going to depart from Rome.
Rōma *discessūrī erāmus.*	We were going to depart from Rome.
Rōma *discessūrī erimus.*	We shall be about to depart from Rome.

OBSERVATIONS

1. An active periphrastic indicates a *future* or *intended* action (the future active participle) viewed from another point in time (the form of **sum**). The tense and mood of the active periphrastic are identical with the tense and mood of the form of **sum**. For example, discessūrī sumus is first person plural masculine *present indicative* of the active periphrastic. An active periphrastic may occur in *any* of the six tenses of the indicative or the four tenses of the subjunctive.

2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the future active participle in an active periphrastic.

3. An active periphrastic is best translated *word by word*, beginning with the form of sum.

4. As in the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the form of **sum** may appear before or after the participle in the active periphrastic. For example, **captūrus est** and **est captūrus** are equally correct.

A finite, compound verb form that comprises a form of the *future passive participle* and a form of **sum** is called a **passive periphrastic**. For example:

Cīvēs *regendī sunt.*	The citizens *are having to be ruled.*
	The citizens *must be ruled.*
	The citizens *have to be ruled.*
Cīvēs *regendī erant.*	The citizens *were having to be ruled.*
	The citizens *had to be ruled.*
Cīvēs *regendī erunt.*	The citizens *will be having to be ruled.*
	The citizens *will have to be ruled.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. A passive periphrastic indicates an action that is viewed as *obligatory* (the future passive participle) at a certain point in time (the form of **sum**). The tense and mood of the passive periphrastic are identical with the tense and mood of the form of **sum**. For example, regendī erant is third person plural masculine *imperfect indicative* of the passive periphrastic. A passive periphrastic may occur in *any* of the six tenses of the indicative or the four tenses of the subjunctive.

2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the future passive participle in a passive periphrastic.

3. Although passive periphrastics may be translated word by word, the alternate translations given above (must, have to, had to, will have to) are to be preferred. Note that "must" can be used *only* for the present indicative of the passive periphrastic.

4. As in the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the form of **sum** may appear before or after the participle in the passive periphrastic. For example, **capiendus est** and **est capiendus** are equally correct.

An active or passive periphrastic may appear wherever any finite verb form may be used. For example:

> Miles, sī hostem capiat, *laudandus sit.*
> The soldier, if the enemy (d.o.) he should capture, *would be having to be praised.*
> If the soldier should capture the enemy, *he would have to be praised.*

§99. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic

A noun in the dative case is usually used with a passive periphrastic to express the *agent* or *person by whom* the action of the verb must be done. Such a dative is called the **Dative of Agent with the passive periphrastic.** For example:

> Carmen *mihi* scrībendum est.   A poem *by me* must be written.
>   A poem must be written *by me.*

The syntax of the italicized word (mihi) is **Dative of Agent with the passive periphrastic.**

OBSERVATIONS
_____

1. The Dative of Agent with the passive periphrastic is regularly used *instead of* an Ablative of Personal Agent when the verb is a passive periphrastic.[4]

2. Occasionally the Ablative of Personal Agent may be used with the passive periphrastic for the sake of clarity. For example:

> Carmen tibi ā mē scrībendum est.   A poem must be written for you *by me.*

In this sentence the Ablative of Personal Agent (ā mē) is used to avoid the confusion that might arise if there were two datives in the same sentence.

☛ DRILL 98–99 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§100. Genitive of Description

When a noun in the genitive case *modified by an adjective* is used to *describe* another noun, it is called the **Genitive of Description.** For example:

> Rōmulus, vir magnae *dīligentiae,* multa perfēcit.
> Rōmulus, a man of great *diligence,* accomplished many things.

The syntax of the italicized word (dīligentiae) is **Genitive of Description.**

_____

4. The Dative of Agent may be derived from the Dative of the Possessor. Thus, Carmen **mihi** scrībendum est may be understood to mean "I have a poem having to be written." Therefore, "A poem must be written *by me.*"

§101. Ablative of Description

When a noun in the ablative case *modified by an adjective* is used to *describe* another noun, it is called the **Ablative of Description**. For example:

> Solus cum multis hostibus pugnabat. Erat enim magna *virtute*.
> He alone with many enemies was fighting. For he was of (with) great *courage*.
> He alone was fighting with many enemies. For he was of great *courage*.

The syntax of the italicized word (**virtūte**) is **Ablative of Description**.

OBSERVATION

Like Latin, English attaches some descriptions with "of" and some with "with." Compare, for example, the phrases "men of great courage" and "men with blue eyes." English and Latin usages do not always coincide; therefore, idiomatic English may require "of" (rather than with) in the translation of an Ablative of Description.

The noun-adjective phrases that make up Genitives or Ablatives of Description function *adjectivally* in that they *define* or *limit* another noun. The Genitive of Description is thus an extension of the basic function of the genitive case. The Ablative of Description derives from that case's associative function since an Ablative of Description is an *accompanying* feature of the noun it describes. Although some kinds of descriptions are limited to the genitive (size, number) and some to the ablative (qualities of the body), in many expressions the Genitive and Ablative of Description appear to have converged in use and meaning during the classical period.

§102. Ablative of Origin

When the ablative case, with or without the preposition ē/ex or dē, reports *parentage* or *ancestry*, it is called the **Ablative of Origin**. For example:

> Aenēās (ē) *deā* natus est.   Aeneas *from a goddess* was born.
> (nascor, nasci, natus sum be born)   Aeneas was born *from a goddess*.

The syntax of the italicized word (**deā**) is **Ablative of Origin**. The Ablative of Origin is a particular variety of the Ablative of Separation (see §54).

☛ DRILL 99–102 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Chapter X
Short Readings

1. A proverbial utterance

   dictum sapientī sat est. (Plautus, *Persa* 729; Terence, *Phormiō* 541)

   sapiēns, sapientis sensible, wise

2. An exchange of pleasantries between two characters

   Callicles. Ehō tū, tua uxor, quid* agit? *Megaronides.* Immortālis est:

   vīvit vīctūraque est. (Plautus, *Trinummus* 55–56)

   *quid, *here,* how
   ehō (interj.) *used to attract attention,* hey
   immortālis, immortāle immortal
   uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

3. A fragment from Ennius cited by Cicero for its brevity and truth

   mōribus antīquīs rēs stat Rōmāna virīsque. (Ennius, *Annālēs* V.156)

4. An alliterative line from Ennius

   ōrātor sine pāce redit rēgīque refert rem. (Ennius, *Annālēs* VI.202)

5. The speaker of the prologue of the play generalizes about originality.

   nūllumst iam dictum quod nōn sit dictum prius. (Terence, *Eunuchus* 41)

   prius (adv.) earlier, before

6. A fragment from the comic poet Lucilius about the relation between work and reward

   hunc labōrem sūmās laudem quī tibi ac frūctum ferat. (Lucilius, *Saturae* frag. 620)

   frūctus, frūctūs *m.* profit, benefit, advantage
   laus, laudis *f.* praise
   sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; take on

7. The character Thyestes speaks in a fragment of a Greek tragedy.

   vigilandum est semper; multae īnsidiae sunt bonīs. (Accius, *Tragoediae* frag. 214)

   vigilō (1-intr.) stay awake; be watchful, remain vigilant

8. In arguing that Pompey be given special command in the East, Cicero makes a transition to the next part of his argument.

   quoniam dē genere bellī dīxī, nunc dē magnitūdine pauca dīcam. (Cicero, *Prō Lēge Manīliā* 20)

   magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.* size, magnitude

9. Cicero asks Catiline a rhetorical question.

quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit, in quā nēmō est,

extrā istam coniūrātiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn

ōderit? (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 13)

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread
perditus, -a, -um lost, desperate, degenerate

10. Cicero addresses Catiline directly.

ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna. līberā rem pūblicam metū; in exsilium, sī hanc vōcem

exspectās, proficīscere. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 20)

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum go out, depart
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect

11. Cicero begins the conclusion of the defense of his client Caelius.

cōnservāte igitur reī pūblicae, iūdicēs, cīvem bonārum artium, bonārum partium,

bonōrum virōrum. (Cicero, *Prō Caeliō* 77)

cōnservō (con- + servō) (1-tr.) keep from danger, save, preserve
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge

12. Cicero reflects on a difference between the state and mankind.

itaque nūllus interitus est reī pūblicae nātūrālis ut hominis, in quō mors nōn

modo* necessāria est, vērum etiam optanda persaepe. (Cicero, *Dē Rē Pūblicā*

III.34, frag. 2)

*nōn modo = nōn sōlum	nātūrālis, nātūrāle natural
interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise	necessārius, -a, -um necessary
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly	persaepe (adv.) very often

13. A definition of law

lēx est ratiō summa īnsita in nātūrā, quae iubet ea quae facienda sunt, prohibetque

contrāria. (Cicero, *Dē Lēgibus* I.18)

contrārius, -a, -um opposite, contrary
īnsitus, -a, -um inborn
prohibeō (prō- + habeō), prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; rationale
summus, -a, -um highest

14. Cicero comments on the fate of the venerable Cato in the contemporary world.

Catōnem vērō quis nostrōrum ōratōrum, quī quidem nunc sunt, legit? aut quis

nōvit omnīnō? at quem virum,* dī bonī! mittō† cīvem aut senātōrem aut im-

perātōrem: ōrātōrem enim hōc locō quaerimus.‡ (Cicero, *Brūtus* 65)

*quem virum, *Accusative of Exclamation*, what   at (conj.) but
    a man!   imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general
†mittō, *here*, send away, dismiss   senātor, senātōris *m.* senator
‡quaerō, *here*, inquire into, examine, consider

15. While pleading in court before Caesar on behalf of a Roman ally, Cicero praises Caesar for
his temperate behavior in the wake of his victory over Pompey.

quae semper in cīvīlī victōriā sēnsimus, ea tē victōre nōn vīdimus. sōlus, inquam,

es, C. Caesar, cuius in victōriā ceciderit nēmō nisi armātus. (CICERO, *PRŌ RĒGE*

DĒIOTARŌ 32)

armātus, armātī *m.* armed man, soldier
cīvīlis, cīvīle of *or* connected with citizens, civil; resulting from civil war
inquam (defective verb) say; inquam = *1st sing. pres. act. indic.*
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

16. Laelius describes a great friendship with Scipio.

equidem ex omnibus rēbus, quās mihi aut fortūna aut nātūra tribuit, nihil habeō,

quod cum amīcitiā Scīpiōnis possim comparāre. (CICERO, *DĒ AMĪCITIĀ* 103)

comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; compare
Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis *m.* (P.) Scipio (Africanus Aemilianus) (consul 147, 134)
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow, assign

17. Cicero expresses his opinion on the only legitimate purpose for war.

quārē suscipienda quidem bella sunt ob eam causam, ut sine iniūriā in pāce

vīvātur. (CICERO, *DĒ OFFICIĪS* I.35)

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injustice, injury
suscipiō (sub- + capiō) undertake, venture upon

18. Cicero notes that only one group of Romans was captured at the Battle of Cannae.

octō hominum millia tenēbat Hannibal, nōn quōs in aciē cēpisset, aut quī perīculō

mortis diffūgissent, sed quī relictī* in castrīs fuissent* ā Paulō et ā Varrōne

cōnsulibus. (CICERO, *DĒ OFFICIĪS* III.114)

*relictī . . . fuissent = relictī . . . essent   millia = mīlia
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment,   Paulus, Paulī *m.* (L. Aemilius) Paulus (consul
    camp   216), leader at the battle of Cannae
diffugiō (dis- + fugiō) run away, flee in several   Varrō, Varrōnis *m.* (C. Terentius) Varro (consul
    directions, scatter   216), leader at the battle of Cannae

19. Cicero compares Marc Antony to Rome's ancient enemy Hannibal.

oppugnat* D. Brūtum, imperātōrem, cōnsulem dēsignātum, cīvem nōn sibi, sed

nōbīs et reī pūblicae nātum. ergō Hannibal hostis, cīvis Antōnius? quid ille fēcit

hostīliter quod hic nōn aut fēcerit aut faciat aut mōliātur et cōgitet?

(CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* V 24–25)

*oppugnat, subject is Antony
D. Brūtus, D. Brūtī *m.* D. Brutus, brother of M.
  Brutus
dēsignātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet
  installed)

ergō (adv.) therefore
hostīliter (adv.) in the manner of an enemy
imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general
mōlior, mōlīrī, mōlītus sum strive to bring
  about, plan

20. In May 49 B.C.E., after the outbreak of the civil war, Cicero writes despairingly to his friend
Ser. Sulpicius Rufus about the state of Rome.

vidēs . . . urbem sine lēgibus, sine iūdiciīs, sine iūre, sine fidē relictam dīreptiōnī

et incendiīs. itaque mihi venīre in mentem nihil potest nōn modo quod spērem

sed vix iam quod audeam optāre. (CICERO, *AD FAMILIĀRĒS* IV.1.2)

dīreptiō, dīreptiōnis *f.* plundering, pillage
incendium, incendiī *n.* fire
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion; trial

nōn modo = nōn sōlum
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

21. Cicero begins a letter to his friend Atticus in an inauspicious fashion.

erat autem nihil novī quod aut scrīberem aut ex tē quaererem.

(CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XV.1.1)

22. In a letter written in early 54 B.C.E. Cicero comments on the quality of Lucretius's poetry.

Lucrētī poēmata, ut scrībis, ita sunt, multīs lūminibus ingenī, multae tamen artis.

(CICERO, *AD QUINTUM FRĀTREM* II.10.3)

Lucrētius, Lucrētiī *m.* Lucretius (94?–55? B.C.E.), author of the poem *Dē Rērum Nātūrā*
lūmen, lūminis *n.* light; illumination; ray of light
poēma, poēmatis *n.* poem; *in pl.,* poetry

23. Caesar describes what the Romans did after the Germans' formation repelled their assault.

repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem īnsilīrent et scūta manibus re-

vellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. (CICERO, DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ I.52)

complūrēs, complūra or complūria several, very
  many
dēsuper (adv.) from above
īnsiliō, īnsilīre, īnsiluī, —— jump (on), leap (on)
phalanx, phalangis *f.* phalanx, a close formation
  of troops

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus find, discover
revellō, revellere, revellī, revulsus tear, tear away
scūtum, scūtī *n.* shield
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

24. The deaths of brave centurions change the course of an apparently hopeless battle.

    mīlitum pars hōrum* virtūte submōtīs hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra

    pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.40)

*hōrum refers to the dead centurions.
barbarus, barbarī *m.* foreigner; barbarian
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment,
  camp
circumveniō (circum- + veniō) surround
incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe

pereō (per- + eō), perīre, periī, peritūrus pass
  away, be destroyed; perish, die
perveniō (per- + veniō) come through, arrive
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond
submoveō (sub- + moveō) move from an
  occupied position, drive off

25. Caesar describes his disposition of troops.

    C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit.*

    (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VII.40)

*relinquit, subject is Caesar
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment, camp
C. Fabius, C. Fabiī *m.* C. Fabius
legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison

26. In his monograph on the conspiracy of Catiline, the historian introduces Catiline.

    L. Catilīna, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingeniō

    malō prāvōque. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 5)

nōbilis, nōbile noble
prāvus, -a, -um twisted, corrupt, perverse

27. The historian describes the reaction to Cato's speech advocating harsh punishment of the
    Catilinarian conspirators.

    postquam Catō adsēdit, cōnsulārēs omnēs itemque senātūs magna pars senten-

    tiam eius laudant, virtūtem animī ad caelum ferunt, aliī aliōs increpantēs timidōs

    vocant. Catō clārus atque magnus habētur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 53)

adsīdō, adsīdere, adsēdī, —— sit down, take one's seat
cōnsulāris, cōnsulāris, -ium *m.* ex-consul
increpō, increpāre, increpuī, increpitus make a noise, roar; reproach, upbraid
item (adv.) similarly, in turn, likewise
timidus, -a, -um fearful, cowardly

28. A Roman proverb

    Amōrī fīnem tempus, nōn animus facit. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A42)

29. The severed head of Orpheus still calls for his wife in the underworld.

  . . . Eurydicēn vōx ipsa et frīgida lingua

 ā miseram Eurydicēn! animā fugiente vocābat;

 Eurydicēn tōtō referēbant flūmine rīpae. (VERGIL, *GEORGICS* IV.525–27)

ā (interj.) ah!
Eurydicē, Eurydicēs *f.* Eurydice, wife of Orpheus;
 Eurydicēn = *acc. sing.*
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

frīgidus, -a, -um cold, icy
lingua, linguae *f.* tongue
rīpa, rīpae *f.* (river) bank

30. As Troy falls, the ghost of Hector speaks to Aeneas in a dream.

 "heu, fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs," ait, "ēripe flammīs." (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.289)

aiō (defective verb) say; ait = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away
flamma, flammae *f.* flame

31. As the battle turns, Turnus encourages himself.

 audentīs Fortūna iuvat. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.284)

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist, aid

32. The poet comments on Turnus's exultation in victory.

 nescia mēns hominum fātī sortisque futūrae

 et servāre modum rēbus sublāta secundīs! (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.501–2)

nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ gen.); not knowing how (+inf.)
secundus, -a, -um favorable
sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; destiny
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take away, carry off

33. Aeneas addresses his son Ascanius.

 disce, puer, virtūtem ex mē vērumque labōrem,

 fortūnam ex aliīs. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* XII.435–36)

discō, discere, didicī, —— learn

34. The poet addresses his patron Maecenas.

    . . . magnum hoc ego dūcō,

 quod* placuī tibi, quī turpī sēcernis honestum

 nōn patre praeclārō, sed vītā et pectore pūrō. (HORACE, *SERMŌNĒS* I.6.62–64)

*quod, *here* (conj.) the fact that
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous
pūrus, -a, -um pure
sēcernō, sēcernere, sēcrēvī, sēcrētus separate, distinguish
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

35. The poet warns the would-be writer.

    tū nihil invītā dīcēs faciēsve Minervā. (HORACE, *ARS POĒTICA* 385)

invītus, -a, -um unwilling
-ve (enclitic conj.) or

36. The poet comments on the nature of love.

    errat quī finem vēsānī quaerit amōris:

       vĕrus amor nūllum nōvit habēre modum. (PROPERTIUS II.15.29–30)

vēsānus, -a, -um frenzied, mad, insane

37. The poet summarizes his view of one part of human nature.

    singula nĕ referam, nīl nōn mortāle tenēmus

       pectoris exceptīs ingeniīque bonīs. (OVID, *TRĪSTIA* III.7.43–44)

excipiō (ex- + capiō) take out; exclude
mortālis, mortāle mortal
singulī, -ae, -a individual, single, one at a time

38. The historian describes the distribution of responsibilities by the senate after an embassy to
    the Latin tribe of the Aequi fails.

    Rōmam ut rediēre lēgātī, senātus iussit alterum cōnsulem contrā Gracchum in Al-

    gidum exercitum dūcere, alterī populātiōnem finium Aequōrum prōvinciam*

    dedit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* III.25.9)

*prōvincia, *here,* special assignment *or* task
Aequī, Aequōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aequi, an ancient people of Latium
Algidus, Algidī *m.* Algidus, a mountain in Latium
Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* Gracchus
populātiō, populātiōnis *f.* plundering

39. The historian summarizes the situation on the Roman side after the disastrous defeat at
    Cannae.

    ad Cannās fugientem cōnsulem vix quīnquāgintā secūtī sunt, alterīus morientis

    prope tōtus exercitus fuit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXII.50.3)

Cannae, Cannārum *f. pl.* Cannae, a village in southeast Italy, site of Hannibal's greatest victory
prope (adv.) nearly, almost
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

40. The historian's pithy description of Sulla

   ... cōnsulātum iniērunt Q. Pompeius et L. Cornēlius Sulla, vir quī neque ad*

   fīnem victōriae satis laudārī neque post victōriam abundē vituperārī potest.

   (VELLEIUS PATERCULUS, *HISTORIA RŌMĀNA* II.17)

*ad, *here*, up to, until
abundē (adv.) amply, fully
ineō (in- + eō), inīre, iniī or inīvī, initus enter
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory
vituperō (1-tr.) find fault with, criticize

41. The poet raises the question of how to judge whether Pompey or Caesar more justly went
   to war.

   victrīx causa deīs placuit, sed victa Catōnī. (LUCAN, *BELLUM CĪVĪLE* I.128)

deīs = dīs
victrīx, victrīcis victorious

42. The poet offers a comment on loyalty.

                    ... stat nūlla diū mortālibus usquam,

   Fortūnā titubante, fidēs.... (SILIUS ITALICUS, *PŪNICA* XI.3–4)

diū (adv.) for a long time
mortālis, mortāle mortal
titubō (1-intr.) totter, stagger, falter
usquam (adv.) anywhere

43. The historian offers an explanation of the emperor Domitian's hatred of the general
   Agricola.

   proprium hūmānī ingeniī est ōdisse quem laeseris. (TACITUS, *DĒ VĪTĀ AGRICOLAE* 42)

hūmānus, -a, -um human
laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm
proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)

44. The biographer reports what participants in a mock sea battle said to Claudius before
   commencing.

   havē imperātor, moritūrī tē salūtant! (SUETONIUS, *VĪTA CLAUDIĪ* 21)

havē greetings! hail!
imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general
salūtō (1-tr.) greet, hail, salute

Longer Readings

1. Plautus, *Mīles Glōriōsus* 33–35

    In an aside to the audience the parasite Artotrogus explains why he is forced to cater to the ego of Pyrgopolynices, no matter how distasteful.

    Artotrogus. venter creat omnīs hāsce aerumnās: auribus

    peraudienda sunt* nē dentēs dentiant,

    et adsentandumst quidquid hic mentībitur.

* peraudienda sunt, subject is the boasts of Pyrgopolynices	hāsce = intensive form of hās
adsentor (1-tr.) agree, assent	mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum lie, tell a lie;
aerumna, aerumnae *f.* task, trouble, affliction	mentībitur = *3rd sing. fut. act. indic.*
auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear	peraudiō (per- + audiō) listen to the end
creō (1-tr.) create, conceive	quidquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. rel. pron.*,
dēns, dentis, -ium *m.* tooth	whatever
dentiō, dentīre, ——, —— cut teeth; grow longer	venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

Tītus Maccius Plautus (ca. 255–184 B.C.E.) was born in north-central Italy. He is the most well-known and success-ful of Roman comic writers, and twenty of his plays survive. Plautus is renowned for his explosive comic sensibility and verbal creativity, and his plays are an important source of information about living, spoken Latin. Ellipsis, parataxis, colloquialisms, and unusual syntax and word choice abound in Plautus's plays, which are for the most part romantic comedies inhabited by stock characters.

    The *Mīles Glōriōsus* (Braggart Soldier) is considered one of Plautus's finest comedies. Its plot centers on a clever slave (Palaestrio) helping his young master secure the girl of his dreams, but the play also features a host of other memorable characters, including the swaggering, self-important, lying soldier, Pyrgopolynices (Great Tower-Taker), and a clever sycophant, Artotrogus (Bread-Eater).

2. Plautus, *Mīles Glōriōsus* 42–46

    Artotrogus has brought out a make-believe record book of Pyrgopolynices' make-believe vic-tories. Pyrgopolynices asks to be reminded of his military greatness.

    Pyrgopolynices. ecquid meministī? *Artotrogus.* meminī centum in Ciliciā

    et quīnquāgintā, centum in Scytholatrōniā,

    trīgintā Sardōs, sexāgintā Macedones—

    sunt hominēs quōs tū occīdistī ūnō diē.   45

    Pyrgo. Quanta istaec hominum summast? *Arto.* septem mīlia.

Cilicia, Ciliciae *f.* Cilicia, a country in eastern Asia Minor	quantus, -a, -um how much, how great
	Sardī, Sardōrum *m. pl.* Sardinians
ecquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, anything	*Scytholatrōnia, *Scytholatrōniae *f.* Scythian-Thief-Land
istaec = archaic form of ista	
Macedones, Macedonum *m. pl.* Macedonians	summa, summae *f.* sum, total
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill, slaughter	

3. Ennius, *Annālēs* VIII.248–51

The poet describes what happens when news of battle is proclaimed.

pellitur ē mediō sapientia, vī geritur rēs;

spernitur ōrātor bonus, horridus mīles amātur;

haud doctīs dictīs certantēs, sed maledictīs

miscent inter sēsē inimīcitiās agitantēs.

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible

maledictum, maledictī *n.* insult, taunt
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up,
  produce
spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētus scorn, reject

4. Cicero, *In Catilīnam II* 1

The opening of Cicero's second speech against Catiline

Tandem aliquandō, Quirītēs, L. Catilīnam, furentem audāciā, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriae nefāriē mōlientem, vōbīs atque huic urbī ferrō flammāque minitantem ex urbe vel ēiēcimus vel ēmīsimus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbīs prōsecūtī sumus. abiit, excessit, ēvāsit, ērūpit. nūlla iam perniciēs ā mōnstrō illō atque prōdigiō moenibus ipsīs intrā moenia comparābitur. atque hunc quidem ūnum huius bellī domesticī ducem sine contrōversiā vīcimus. nōn enim iam inter latera nostra sīca illa versābitur, nōn in campō, nōn in forō, nōn in cūriā, nōn dēnique intrā domesticōs parietēs pertimēscēmus. locō ille mōtus est, cum* est ex urbe dēpulsus. palam iam cum hoste, nūllō impediente, bellum iūstum gerēmus. sine dubiō perdidimus hominem magnificēque vīcimus, cum* illum ex occultīs īnsidiīs in apertum latrōcinium coniēcimus.

*cum, *here* (conj.) when
aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally; at (long) last (often coupled with tandem to express finality)
anhelō (1-tr.) breathe out
apertus, -a, -um open
audācia, audāciae *f.* boldness; recklessness
campus, campī *m.* plain; *here, sc.* Martius, plain of Mars
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; devise
coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus throw (together), cast, bring
contrōversia, contrōversiae *f.* dispute, controversy
cūria, cūriae *f.* (the) Curia, (the) senate house
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
dēpellō (dē- + pellō), dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus drive away
domesticus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the house; personal, domestic
dubium, dubiī *n.* doubt
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum go out, depart
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out
ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out
ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth
ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus go out, escape
excēdō (ex- + cēdō) go out, depart
flamma, flammae *f.* flame

furō, furere, ——, —— be crazy; rage, rave
impediō, impedīre, impedīvī or impediī, impedītus obstruct, hinder, impede
intrā (prep. + acc.) within
iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right
latrōcinium, latrōciniī *n.* robbery; criminality
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
magnificē (adv.) splendidly, excellently
minitor (1-intr.) threaten (+ dat.)
mōlior, mōlīrī, mōlītus sum plan
mōnstrum, mōnstrī *n.* omen, portent; monster
nefāriē (adv.) unspeakably, wickedly
occultus, -a, -um hidden, secret
palam (adv.) openly, publicly
pariēs, parietis *m.* wall (of a house)
perdō (per- + dō) lose; destroy
perniciēs, perniciēī *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster
pertimēscō, pertimēscere, pertimuī, —— become very afraid, take fright
pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
prōdigium, prōdigiī *n.* unnatural event, prodigy; creature, monstrosity
prōsequor (prō- + sequor) accompany, escort
Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity
scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy
sīca, sīcae *f.* dagger
vel (conj.) or; vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .
versō (1-tr.) twist

The *Ōrātiō Secunda in Catilīnam* was delivered on 9 November 63 B.C.E., one day after the first speech and immediately after Catiline's departure from the city. This second speech was delivered before the people.

5. Cicero, *Dē Lēgibus* III.1

An exchange between Marcus (Tullius Cicero) and Atticus at the beginning of the third book of Cicero's *Dē Lēgibus*, in which he will discuss the magistrates.

Marcus. Sequar igitur, ut īnstituī, dīvīnum illum virum . . .

Atticus. Platōnem vidēlicet dīcis.

M. Istum ipsum, Attice.

A. Tū vērō eum nec nimis valdē umquam nec nimis saepe laudāveris; nam hoc mihi

etiam nostrī illī, quī nēminem nisi suum laudārī volunt, concēdunt . . .

M. Bene hercle faciunt.

Atticus, Atticī *m.* (T. Pomponius) Atticus, friend
  of Cicero
concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore
īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus set up, es-
  tablish; set to work (on), start

nimis (adv.) too
Platō, Platōnis *m.* Plato
vidēlicet (adv.) plainly, of course
volō, velle, voluī, —— be willing, want, wish;
  volunt = *3rd pl. pres. act. indic.*

The *Dē Lēgibus* may not have been published in Cicero's lifetime. Written in the last years of Cicero's life, the *Dē Lēgibus* is a philosophical dialogue between Cicero, his brother Quintus, and his friend Atticus. Only three books of the *Dē Lēgibus* have survived (with fragments of two others). The dialogue is inspired by Plato's dialogues (in particular the *Phaedrus* and the *Laws*), and the topics discussed are the nature of law and the best regime.

6. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 5.36

A passage from Cicero's description of the truly free man

an ille mihi līber, cui mulier imperat, cui lēgēs impōnit, praescrībit, iubet, vetat quod

vidētur?* quī nihil imperantī negāre potest, nihil recūsāre audet? poscit, dandum est;

vocat, veniendum est; ēicit, abeundum; minātur, extimēscendum.

*vidētur, *here*, seems best
an (conj.) *introduces an indignant or surprised*
  question expecting a negative answer, can it
  really be that
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out
extimēscō, extimēscere, extimuī, —— take
  fright, be scared
impōnō (in- + pōnō) place, impose (acc.) upon
  (dat.)

minor (1-intr.) threaten
mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
negō (1-tr.) deny, refuse
poscō, poscere, poposcī, —— demand
praescrībō (prae- + scrībō) prescribe
recūsō (1-tr.) refuse, reject, oppose
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid

7. Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* II.65

A reflection on the causes of human responses to perilous situations

saepe enim multī, quī aut propter victōriae cupiditātem aut propter glōriae aut etiam ut iūs suum et lībertātem tenērent, volnera excēpērunt fortiter et tulērunt; īdem omissā contentiōne dolōrem morbī ferre nōn possunt; neque enim illum, quem facile tulerant, ratiōne aut sapientiā tulerant, sed studiō potius et glōriā.

contentiō, contentiōnis *f.* tension; effort; rivalry, competition
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
excipiō (ex- + capiō) take out; receive, absorb, sustain

morbus, morbī *m.* disease, illness
omittō (ob- + mittō) discontinue, leave off
potius (adv.) rather
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory
volnus (= vulnus), volneris *n.* wound

8. Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* II.140

In speaking of the wonders of the human body and nature's miraculous contribution to it, the character Balbus, recalling Aristotle, attributes to a god one particular human attribute and tells how it sets humans apart from other animals.

quī* prīmum† eōs humō excitātōs celsōs et ērectōs cōnstituit, ut deōrum cogni- tiōnem caelum intuentēs capere possent. sunt enim ex terrā hominēs nōn ut incolae atque habitātōrēs sed quasi spectātōrēs superārum rērum atque caelestium, quārum spectāculum ad nūllum aliud genus animantium pertinet.

*quī, *connecting relative whose antecedent is an un- specified god or divine force*
†prīmum, *here* (adv.) first; for the first time
animāns, animantis, -ium *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living creature
caelestis, caelestis, -ium heavenly, divine
celsus, -a, -um lofty, tall; upright, erect
cognitiō, cognitiōnis *f.* acquaintance, knowledge
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus set up, establish
ērēctus, -a, -um upright, erect

excitō (1-tr.) cause to move, stir up; raise
habitātor, habitātōris *m.* inhabitant, occupier
humus, humī *f.* earth, ground
intueor, intuērī, intuitus sum look upon, gaze at; reflect upon, consider
pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinuī, per- tentus extend, pertain
quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
spectāculum, spectāculī *n.* sight, spectacle
spectātor, spectātōris *m.* witness, spectator
superus, -a, -um upper, above

The *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* is a philosophical work in three books. Each book discusses the approach to divine things of a different school of philosophy: Epicurean, Stoic, and Academic.

9. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 37

Cicero describes App. Claudius Caecus—consul, censor, builder of the Via Appia—near the end of his life.

quattuor rōbustōs fīliōs, quīnque fīliās, tantam domum, tantās clientēlās Appius re-
gēbat et caecus et senex; intentum enim animum tamquam arcum habēbat nec lan-
guēscēns succumbēbat senectūtī; tenēbat nōn modo* auctōritātem, sed etiam im-
perium in† suōs, metuēbant servī, verēbantur līberī, cārum omnēs habēbant; vigēbat
in illā domō mōs patrius, disciplīna.

*nōn modo = nōn sōlum
†in, *here,* over
arcus, arcūs *m.* bow (for shooting arrows)
auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority, influence,
   prestige
clientēla, clientēlae *f.* client's relation to patron;
   in pl., clients, dependents (individuals, cities,
   or provinces)
disciplīna, disciplīnae *f.* training; orderly conduct
intentus, -a, -um stretched; attentive, intent
languēscō, languēscere, languī, —— grow
   feeble, decline
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread

patrius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to a father, pater-
   nal; ancestral
rōbustus, -a, -um (physically) strong; mature
senectūs, senectūtis *f.* old age
senex, senis old
succumbō, succumbere, succubuī, succubitum
   give in, yield (+ dat.)
tamquam (conj.) as it were, as if
tantus, -a, -um so great
vereor, verērī, veritus sum respect, be in awe of,
   dread
vigeō, vigēre, viguī, —— be vigorous, thrive,
   flourish

10. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* I.1–9

The poet begins his poem with an address to Venus.

Aeneadum genetrīx, hominum dīvomque* voluptās,

alma Venus, caelī subter lābentia signa

quae mare nāvigerum, quae terrās frūgiferentīs

concelebrās, per tē quoniam genus omne animantum

concipitur vīsitque exortum lūmina sōlis: 5

tē, dea, tē fugiunt ventī, tē nūbila caelī

adventumque tuum, tibi suāvīs daedala tellūs

summittit flōrēs, tibi rīdent aequora pontī

plācātumque nitet diffūsō lūmine caelum.

*dīvom = dīvum = dīvōrum
adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival
Aeneadēs, Aeneadum *m. pl.* descendants of Ae-
    neas; descendants of Aeneas's companions;
    Romans
aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water
almus, -a, -um nourishing; gracious, kindly
animāns, animantis, -ium *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living
    creature; animantum = animantium
concelebrō (1-tr.) visit frequently; fill
concipiō (con- + capiō) conceive, produce
daedalus, -a, -um skillful, dexterous, artful
diffundō, diffundere, diffūdī, diffūsus spread
    widely, extend, diffuse
exorior, exorīrī, exortus sum rise out, emerge,
    appear
flōs, flōris *m.* flower, blossom
frūgiferēns, frūgiferentis fruit-bearing
genetrīx, genetrīcis *f.* mother, creator

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum slip, glide
lūmen, lūminis *n.* light
nāviger, nāvigera, nāvigerum ship-bearing, navi-
    gable
niteō, nitēre, nituī, —— be radiant, shine
nūbila, nūbilōrum *n. pl.* clouds
plācō (1-tr.) make calm, soothe, placate
pontus, pontī *m.* sea
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus smile, laugh
signum, signī *n.* sign, signal; constellation
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun
suāvis, suāve sweet(-smelling), fragrant
subter (prep. + acc.) under, beneath
summittō (sub- + mittō) send up (from below),
    put forth
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus go to see, visit; view
voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

11. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* V.783–85

The poet describes an early state of the world.

prīncipiō genus herbārum viridemque nitōrem

terra dedit circum collīs campōsque per omnīs,

flōrida fulsērunt viridantī prāta colōre . . .

campus, campī *m.* plain
circum (prep. + acc.) around
collis, collis, -ium *m.* hill
color, colōris *m.* color
fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, —— shine, gleam
flōridus, -a, -um abounding in flowers, produc-
    ing flowers

herba, herbae *f.* small plant, herb, grass
nitor, nitōris *m.* brightness, splendor, brilliance
prātum, prātī *n.* meadow
prīncipium, prīncipiī *n.* beginning
viridis, viride green, verdant, covered in vegeta-
    tion
viridō (1-intr.) be green

12. Catullus XLVI (hendecasyllable; see §112)

A spring poem

Iam vēr ēgelidōs refert tepōrēs,
iam caelī furor aequinoctiālis
iūcundīs Zephyrī silēscit aurīs.
linquantur Phrygiī, Catulle, campī
Nīcaeaeque ager ūber aestuōsae: 5
ad clārās Asiae volēmus urbēs.
iam mēns praetrepidāns avet vagārī,
iam laetī studiō pedēs vigēscunt.
ō dulcēs comitum valēte coetūs,
longē quōs simul ā domō profectōs   10
dīversae variē viae reportant.

aequinoctiālis, aequinoctiāle equinoctial, of the
  equinox
aestuōsus, -a, -um full of heat, burning, very hot
Asia, Asiae f. Asia, a Roman province (modern
  Asia Minor)
aura, aurae f. breeze
aveō, avēre, ——, —— be eager
campus, campī m. plain
coetus, coetūs m. gathering
comes, comitis m. or f. companion, comrade
dīversus, -a, -um different
dulcis, dulce sweet
ēgelidus, -a, -um tepid, lukewarm, mild
furor, furōris m. madness
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
linquō, linquere, līquī, lictus leave (behind)
longē (adv.) far, a long way
Nīcaea, Nīcaeae f. Nicaea, a city in Bithynia (a
  Roman province on the coast of Asia Minor)

pēs, pedis m. foot
Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the
  region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan
praetrepidō (1-intr.) tremble in anticipation
reportō (1-tr.) carry back
silēscō, silēscere, ——, —— become still, fall
  silent, grow calm
simul (adv.) at the same time
tepor, tepōris m. in sing. or pl., warmth, mildness
ūber, ūberis rich, fertile
vagor (1-intr.) wander
variē (adv.) variously, differently
vēr, vēris n. spring
vigēscō, vigēscere, ——, —— come alive, be vig-
  orous
volō (1-intr.) fly
Zephyrus, Zephyrī m. Zephyr, the west wind

13. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.24–25

In the midst of hostilities with the Helvetians, Caesar is compelled to turn his troops away to seek supplies. The Helvetians follow and harass Caesar's men from behind.

postquam id* animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit† equi-tātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. ipse interim in colle mediō trip-licem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās le-giōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

Caesar prīmum‡ suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

---

*id = the pursuit of the Helvetians

†subdūcit, historical use of present tense; trans-late as perfect

‡prīmum, *here* (adv.) first

aequō (1-tr.) make equal

animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus turn one's attention to, notice

carrus, carrī *m.* cart, wagon

cohortor (1-tr.) exhort, encourage

collis, collis, -ium *m.* hill

collocō (1-tr.) place, position, arrange

committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in

compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus fill completely, cover

cōnferō (con- + ferō) collect, gather together

cōnfertissimus, -a, -um very crowded, very dense, very packed close together

cōnscrībō (con- + scrībō) enlist, enroll

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, —— take one's po-sition, make a stand, halt

cōnspectus, cōnspectūs *m.* (range of) sight, view

deinde (adv.) thereupon, then, next

dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrīnxī, dēstrictus draw

disiciō, disicere, disiēcī, disiectus break, rout, disperse

equitātus, equitātūs *m.* cavalry

equus, equī *m.* horse

Gallia citerior, Galliae citeriōris *f.* Nearer *or* Cisalpine Gaul (on the Italian side of the Alps)

Helvētiī, Helvētiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Helvetians

impedīmentum, impedīmentī *n.* hindrance; bag-gage

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault

īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus arrange, draw up

intereā (adv.) meanwhile

interim (adv.) meanwhile

iugum, iugī *n.* yoke; (mountain) ridge

legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion

mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī or mūniī, mūnītus fortify

perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus break through

phalanx, phalangis *f.* phalanx, a close formation of troops

pīlum, pīlī *n.* spear, javelin

proximē (superlative adv.) most recently

proximus, -a, -um nearest

reiciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus throw back, drive back

removeō (re- + moveō) move back, remove

sarcina, sarcinae *f.* pack, bundle; *in pl.*, luggage, baggage

subdūcō (sub- + dūcō) lead up (from below), draw up

succēdō (sub- + cēdō) approach (from below)

summus, -a, -um highest; top (of)

superior, superius (comparative adj.) upper, higher; superiōre = *masc./fem. sing. abl.*

sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinuī, —— withstand

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take away

triplex, triplicis threefold; triple

veterānus, -a, -um veteran, composed of veterans

14. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 6

The historian begins a brief survey of Roman history.

urbem Rōmam, sīcutī ego accēpī, condidēre atque habuēre initiō Troiānī, quī Aenēā
duce profugī sēdibus incertīs vagābantur, cumque hīs Aborīginēs, genus hominum
agreste, sine lēgibus, sine imperiō, līberum atque solūtum.

Aborīginēs, Aborīginum *m. pl.* (the) Aborigines,
  a tribe in Italy from whom the Romans
  descended
agrestis, agreste of *or* living in the fields, rustic;
  uncivilized
condō, condere, condidī, conditus found, build
initium, initiī *n.* beginning

profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *as subst.*, exile;
  refugee
sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode
sīcutī (conj.) just as
solūtus, -a, -um unrestricted, free; unconnected
Troiānus, -a, -um Trojan
vagor (1-intr.) wander

15. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 2

The historian reflects on the dual nature of man.

nam utī genus hominum conpositum ex corpore et animā est, ita rēs cūnctae stu-
diaque omnia nostra, corporis alia, alia animī nātūram secuntur.* igitur praeclāra
faciēs,† magnae dīvitiae, ad hoc‡ vīs corporis et alia omnia huiusce modī brevī dīlā-
buntur; at ingenī ēgregia facinora, sīcutī anima, inmortālia sunt. postrēmō corporis
et fortūnae bonōrum, ut initium, sīc finis est, omniaque orta occidunt et aucta senēs-
cunt; animus incorruptus, aeternus, rēctor hūmānī generis agit atque habet cūncta
neque ipse habētur.

*secuntur = sequuntur
†**faciēs, faciēī** *f.* face; appearance
‡ad hoc (added) to this
aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting
at (conj.) but
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus grow, increase
brevis, breve short, brief; **brevī,** *sc. tempore*
conpōnō (con- + pōnō) (= compōnō) put to-
  gether, compose
cūnctus, -a, -um all
dīlābor, dīlābī, dīlāpsus sum slip away, disappear
dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* wealth, riches
ēgregius, -a, -um outstanding, extraordinary
facinus, facinoris *n.* deed
huiusce = intensive form of huius

hūmānus, -a, -um human
igitur (conj.) therefore *(usually postpositive)*
incorruptus, -a, -um uncorrupted, pure
initium, initiī *n.* beginning
inmortālis (= immortālis), **inmortāle** immortal
occidō (ob- + cadō), **occidere, occidī, occāsūrus**
  fall; perish, die
orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise, arise
postrēmō (adv.) finally
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; radiant, beautiful
rēctor, rēctōris *m.* director, ruler, master
senēscō, senēscere, senuī, —— grow old, grow
  weak, decline
sīcutī (conj.) just as
utī = ut

The *Bellum Iugurthae* (War of Jugurtha) is the second of Sallust's surviving historical monographs. It recounts the
war between Rome and Jugurtha, king of Numidia (in North Africa), which lasted from 111 to 105 B.C.E. Sallust's
focus is the corruption of the Roman aristocracy, which allowed Jugurtha to maintain power by bribing those sent
to wage war against him.

16. Vergil, *Eclogues* IV.4–7

> The poet describes the beginning of a new age.

> ultima Cūmaeī vēnit iam carminis aetās;

> magnus ab integrō saeclōrum nāscitur ordō.

> iam redit et Virgō, redeunt Sāturnia rēgna,

> iam nova prōgeniēs caelō dēmittitur altō.

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life; era
Cūmaeus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Cumae;
   of *or* belonging to the Sibyl of Cumae
dēmittō (dē- + mittō) send down
integer, integra, integrum whole; fresh;
   ab integrō, afresh, anew
ordō, ordinis *m.* order; series, sequence
prōgeniēs, *prōgeniēī *f.* offspring, progeny

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation
Sāturnius, -a, -um of Saturn, king of the Titans
   and father of Jupiter and Juno; Sāturnia rēgna,
   (golden) age of Saturn
ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final
Virgō, Virginis *f.* (the) Virgin (Astraea), goddess
   of Justice

Vergil's first work, the *Eclogues* (< Greek *Eklogai*, Selections) or *Bucolics* (< Greek *Boukolika*, [Poems] of Oxherds), is a collection of ten pastoral poems written between 42 and 39 B.C.E. and published shortly thereafter. The poetry of the *Eclogues* demonstrates Vergil's knowledge of Greek Hellenistic poetry (particularly the work of Theocritus) and his ability to translate this genre into a Roman context. The poems are marked by rustic settings, shepherd-poets engaged in love affairs, poetic contests, and an apparent escapist atmosphere. Closer examination of these poems reveals a sociopolitical element absent from Vergil's Greek models. When first published, the *Eclogues* won Vergil wide praise in Rome's literary circle, and Vergil soon came under the patronage of Maecenas, a wealthy patron of the arts and perhaps Octavian's closest friend.

17. Vergil, *Georgics* I.505–14

The peace-loving poet describes the effects of civil war. These lines conclude the first book of the Georgics.

> . . . tot bella per orbem,   505
>
> tam multae scelerum faciēs,* nōn ūllus arātrō
>
> dignus honōs, squālent abductīs arva colōnīs,
>
> et curvae rigidum falcēs cōnflantur in ēnsem.
>
> hinc movet Euphrātēs, illinc Germānia bellum;
>
> vīcīnae ruptīs inter sē lēgibus urbēs   510
>
> arma ferunt; saevit tōtō Mars impius orbe,
>
> ut cum† carceribus sēsē effūdēre quadrīgae,
>
> addunt in spatia, et frūstrā retinācula tendēns
>
> fertur equīs aurīga neque audit‡ currus habēnās.

*faciēs, faciēī *f.* face; appearance, sight

†cum, *here* (conj. + perf. indic.) whenever; cum . . . effūdēre whenever . . . pour forth

‡audiō, *here,* heed

abdūcō (ab- + dūcō) lead away, take away, carry off

addō (ad- + dō) add; increase speed

arātrum, arātrī *n.* plough

arvum, arvī *n.* (ploughed) field

aurīga, aurīgae *f.* charioteer, driver

carcer, carceris *m.* prison; barrier (at the beginning of a racecourse)

colōnus, colōnī *m.* farmer

cōnflō (1-tr.) forge

currus, currūs *m.* chariot

curvus, -a, -um curved

dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.)

effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus pour out, pour forth; send forth; effūdēre *translate as present*

ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword

equus, equī *m.* horse

Euphrātēs, Euphrātī or Euphrātae *m.* (the river) Euphrates

falx, falcis *f.* scythe, sickle

frūstrā (adv.) in vain

Germānia, Germāniae *f.* Germany

habēna, habēnae *f.* rein

hinc (adv.) from *or* on this side

honōs, honōris *m.* office; honor, respect

illinc (adv.) from *or* on that side

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world

quadrīga, quadrīgae *f.* (four-horse) chariot

retināculum, retināculī *n.* rope, rein

rigidus, -a, -um rigid, stiff; erect; inflexible

rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus split, burst, break

saeviō, saevīre, saeviī, saevītum behave savagely, rage

scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime

spatium, spatiī *n.* course, track; lap; in spatia lap by lap

squāleō, squālēre, squāluī, —— be dirty; lie barren (from neglect)

tam (adv.) so

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus stretch out, extend

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring

Because of the success of the *Eclogues*, Vergil joined the poets Horace and Propertius in receiving the patronage of Maecenas, a close personal friend of Octavian. Vergil's next work was completed ca. 29 B.C.E. The *Georgics* (< Greek *Geōrgica*, [Poems] About Farming) is a didactic poem in four books on the art of farming. In addition to offering practical advice for farmers, the *Georgics* describes and praises the simplicity and purity of rustic life, and Vergil paints a picture of Italian country life and virtue that stands in stark contrast to the turmoil of actual life in the city Rome.

18. Vergil, *Georgics* II.490–99

In his praise of the life of the farmer the poet makes reference to the Roman poet
Lucretius, the Greek philosopher Epicurus, and, more generally, to any follower of the
Epicurean school of philosophy.

fēlīx quī potuit rērum cognōscere causās   490

atque metūs omnīs et inexōrābile fātum

subiēcit pedibus strepitumque Acherontis avārī;

fortūnātus et ille deōs quī nōvit agrestīs

Pānaque Silvānumque senem Nymphāsque sorōrēs.

illum nōn populī fascēs, nōn purpura rēgum   495

flexit et īnfīdōs agitāns discordia frātrēs,

aut coniūrātō dēscendēns Dācus ab Histrō,

nōn rēs Rōmānae peritūraque rēgna; neque ille

aut doluit miserāns inopem aut invīdit habentī.

Acherōn, Acherontis *m.* Acheron, a river of the
    underworld
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass
agrestis, agreste of *or* living in the fields, rustic
avārus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious
coniūrō (1-intr.) join in a plot, form a conspiracy;
    coniūrātō = *perf. pass. part. used with active
    meaning*
Dācus, Dācī *m.* Dacian, inhabitant of Dacia, a
    province north of the Danube (modern Roma-
    nia and Hungary)
dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus go
    down, descend
discordia, discordiae *f.* discord, dissension, con-
    flict
doleō, dolēre, doluī, —— suffer, grieve, feel pain
fascēs, fascium *m. pl.* the *fascēs*, bundle of rods
    with an axe, symbol of power
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend
fortūnātus, -a, -um fortunate
Hister, Histrī *m.* (the) Hister, the lower Danube
    (river)

inexōrābilis, inexōrābile inexorable, relentless
īnfīdus, -a, -um faithless, treacherous
inops, inopis poor, in want
invideō (in- + videō) envy (+dat.)
miseror (1-tr.) pity
Nympha, Nymphae *f.* Nymph, a semidivine fe-
    male spirit of nature
Pān, Pānos *m.* Pan, an Arcadian pastoral god;
    Pāna = *acc. sing.*
pereō (per- + eō), perīre, periī, peritūrus pass
    away, be destroyed; perish, die
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
purpura, purpurae *f.* purple-dyed cloth; purple
    color
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
senex, senis old
Silvānus, Silvānī *m.* Silvanus, a Roman god of
    the forest
strepitus, strepitūs *m.* noise; roar
subiciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus place (acc.)
    below (dat.)

19. Vergil, *Georgics* III.242–44

The poet speaks of a common impulse in all living creatures.

omne adeō genus in terrīs hominumque ferārumque*

et genus aequoreum, pecudēs pictaeque volucrēs,

in furiās ignemque ruunt: amor omnibus īdem.

*ferārumque, elides into next line
adeō (adv.) to that point; to such an extent; in-
   deed, in fact
aequoreus, -a, -um of the sea, marine
fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast
furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire,
   frenzy

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire; rage, passion
pecus, pecudis *f.* (herd) animal
pictus, -a, -um painted, colored
ruō, ruere, ruī, rutūrus rush
volucris, volucris, -ium *f.* bird

20. Vergil, *Aeneid* I.1–4

The first four lines of Vergil's epic poem

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs

Italiam fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnit

lītora, multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō

vī superum, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob īram.

iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment
Lāvīnus, -a, -um of Lavinium, a town in Italy;
   Lavinian
lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach
memor, memoris mindful, remembering
ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast

profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *as subst.,* exile;
   refugee
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage
superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above; superum
   = superōrum

21. Vergil, *Aeneid* X.466–72

> Jupiter speaks consoling words to his son Hercules, who is distressed at the imminent death of Pallas.

tum genitor nātum dictīs adfātur amīcīs:

"stat sua* cuique† diēs, breve et inreparābile tempus

omnibus est vītae; sed fāmam extendere factīs,

hoc virtūtis opus. Troiae sub moenibus altīs

tot gnātī cecidēre deum, quīn‡ occidit ūnā   470

Sarpēdōn, mea prōgeniēs. etiam suaˢ Turnum

fāta vocant mētāsque datī pervēnit ad aevī."

*sua refers to cuique, his/her own.
†cuique = *masc./fem./neut. sing. dat. of indef. pron.*, each man, each person, each thing
‡quīn, *here*, (conj.) really, verily; nay, in fact
ˢsua refers to Turnum, his own.
adfor (1-tr.) address
aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime; life
brevis, breve short, brief
extendō, extendere, extendī, extentus stretch out, extend
genitor, genitōris *m.* father
gnātī = nātī

inreparābilis, inreparābile irretrievable
mēta, mētae *f.* goal post; end, limit
occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidī, occāsūrus fall; perish, die
perveniō (per- + veniō) arrive at (+ ad + acc.)
prōgeniēs, *prōgeniēī *f.* offspring, progeny
Sarpēdōn, Sarpēdonis *m.* Sarpedon, Lycian king and Trojan ally, son of Zeus
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
tum (adv.) then, at that time
ūnā (adv.) together, at the same time

22. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.92–102

Fierce Turnus takes up a spear with which he hopes to kill Aeneas and speaks to it.

exim quae mediīs ingentī adnīxa columnae

aedibus astābat validam vī corripit hastam,

Actoris Auruncī spolium, quassatque trementem

vōciferāns: "nunc, ō numquam frūstrāta vocātūs   95

hasta meōs, nunc tempus adest; tē maximus Actor,

tē Turnī nunc dextra gerit; dā sternere corpus

lōrīcamque manū validā lacerāre revulsam

sēmivirī Phrygis et foedāre in pulvere crīnīs

vibrātōs calidō ferrō murrāque madentīs."   100

hīs agitur furiīs, tōtōque ardentis ab ōre

scintillae absistunt, oculīs micat ācribus ignis . . .

absistō, absistere, abstitī, —— move apart; burst forth

Actor, Actoris *m.* Actor, the man who used to own the spear

adnītor, adnītī, adnīxus sum lean against (+ dat.)

adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *in pl.*, house, abode

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage

astō (ad- + stō), astāre, astitī, —— stand (near)

Auruncus, -a, -um of Aurunca, a town in Campania, Auruncan

calidus, -a, -um hot

columna, columnae *f.* column

corripiō, corripere, corripuī, correptus snatch up

crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m.* hair

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst. (sc.* manus), right hand

exim (adv.) then, next, thereafter

foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile

frūstror (1-tr.) deceive, disappoint

furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy

hasta, hastae *f.* spear

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire

lacerō (1-tr.) tear to pieces, rend, mutilate

lōrīca, lōrīcae *f.* corselet, cuirass, breastplate

madeō, madēre, ——, —— be wet, drip

maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

micō (1-tr.) dart, flicker, flash

murra, murrae *f.* myrrh, an aromatic gum

ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face

Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan

pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust

quassō (1-tr.) shake, wave, brandish

revellō, revellere, revulsī, revulsus pull away, tear off

scintilla, scintillae *f.* spark

sēmivir, sēmivirī *m.* or *adj.* half-man; semimasculine

spolium, spoliī *n.* booty, spoil

sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew; lay low, slay, kill

tremō, tremere, tremuī, —— tremble, quiver, quake

vibrō (1-tr.) give a wavy appearance, crimp, curl

vocātus, vocātūs *m.* summons, call

vōciferor (1-intr.) shout, yell, cry out

23. Horace, *Carmina* I.23 (Asclepiadean; see §112)

The poet addresses a timid girl.

Vītās innuleō mē similis, Chloē,
quaerentī pavidam montibus āviīs
    mātrem nōn sine vānō
        aurārum et silvae metū.

nam seu mōbilibus vēris inhorruit   5
adventus foliīs seu viridēs rubum
    dīmōvēre lacertae,
        et corde et genibus tremit.

atquī nōn ego tē tigris ut aspera
Gaetūlusve leō frangere persequor: 10
    tandem dēsine mātrem
        tempestīva sequī virō.

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival
asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless
atquī (conj.) but, and yet
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
āvius, -a, -um pathless, trackless
Chloē, Chloēs Chloe, addressee of the poem
cor, cordis *n.* heart
dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī or dēsīvī, dēsitum stop, cease (+ inf.)
dīmoveō (dis- + moveō) separate; set in motion
folium, foliī *n.* leaf
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter, crush
Gaetūlus, -a, -um Gaetulian, Moroccan
genū, genūs *n.* knee
inhorreō, inhorrēre, inhorruī, —— bristle, quiver, shudder
(h)innuleus, (h)innuleī *m.* young deer, fawn
lacerta, lacertae *f.* lizard
leō, leōnis *m.* lion

mōbilis, mōbile movable; moving, shifting
mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain
pavidus, -a, -um trembling, frightened
persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly, pursue
rubus, rubī *m.* bramble, blackberry bush
seu (conj.) or if, whether; seu . . . seu . . . whether . . . or (if) . . .
silva, silvae *f.* forest; *for purposes of scansion,* silvae = siluae
similis, simile similar (+ dat.)
tempestīvus, -a, -um timely, ripe, ready
tigris, tigris, -ium *m.* or *f.* tiger
tremō, tremere, tremuī, —— tremble, quiver, quake
vānus, -a, -um empty, illusory; groundless, false
-ve (enclitic conj.) or
vēr, vēris *n.* spring
viridis, viride green, verdant
vītō (1-tr.) avoid

Horace's *Carmina* (usually referred to as Odes) comprise three books (eighty-eight poems) of lyric poetry published in 23 B.C.E. and a fourth book (fifteen poems), written considerably later, perhaps at the request of Augustus himself. These poems, written in the Greek lyric meters of Sappho, Alcaeus, Archilochus, and others, take as their themes all aspects of poetry, life, and death, but they do so in a delightfully enigmatic fashion. The hallmark of a Horatian ode is meticulous word choice and word placement that impart to the poem many levels of meaning.

24. Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.37–42

The poet reflects with bitterness on the early death of fellow elegiac poet Tibullus (55?–19? B.C.E.).

vīve pius—moriēre; pius cole sacra—colentem

  mors gravis ā templīs in cava busta trahet;

carminibus cōnfīde bonīs—iacet, ecce, Tibullus:

  vix manet ē tōtō parva quod urna capit!   40

tēne, sacer vātēs, flammae rapuēre rogālēs

  pectoribus pāscī nec timuēre tuīs?

bustum, bustī *n.* funeral pyre; grave mound, tomb
cavus, -a, -um hollow
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; worship
cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum put trust in, have confidence in (+ dat.)
flamma, flammae *f.* flame
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie dead
pāscor, pāscī, pāstus sum feed upon (+ abl.)

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off; consume
rogālis, rogāle of *or* belonging to a funeral pyre
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred
Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* Tibullus
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag
urna, urnae *f.* urn
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

25. Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.113–24

The poet describes the legendary Roman rape of the Sabine women, which takes place in the middle of a public entertainment to which the Sabines have been invited.

in mediō plausū (plausūs tunc arte carēbant)

     rēx populō praedae signa petīta dedit.

prōtinus exiliunt, animum clāmōre fatentēs,   115

     virginibus cupidās iniciuntque manūs.

ut fugiunt aquilās, timidissima turba, columbae,

     ut fugit invīsōs agna novella lupōs:

sīc illae timuēre virōs sine mōre* ruentēs;

     cōnstitit in nūllā quī fuit ante color.   120

nam timor ūnus erat, faciēs nōn ūna timōris:

     pars laniat crīnēs, pars sine mente sedet;

altera maesta silet, frūstrā vocat altera mātrem:

     haec queritur, stupet haec; haec manet, illa fugit . . .

*sine mōre, *here*, lawlessly, wildly	maestus, -a, -um sad, mournful, gloomy, grim
agna, agnae *f.* ewe, lamb	novellus, -a, -um young, tender
aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle	plausus, plausūs *m.* clapping, applause
clāmor, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting	praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder; prey
color, colōris *m.* color	prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway
columba, columbae *f.* dove	queror, querī, questus sum complain, protest;
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, —— make a stand,	lament
halt; remain	ruō, ruere, ruī, rutūrus rush
crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m.* hair	sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated
ex(s)iliō, ex(s)ilīre, ex(s)iluī, —— spring forth,	signum, signī *n.* sign, signal
jump out	sileō, silēre, siluī, —— be silent
faciēs, faciēī *f.* face; appearance	stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, —— be stunned, be
frūstrā (adv.) in vain	speechless
iniciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus throw (acc.)	timidissimus, -a, -um very fearful, very afraid, very
on (dat.), lay (acc.) on (dat.)	timid
invīsus, -a, -um hateful, odious	tunc (adv.) then, at that time
laniō (1-tr.) tear, mutilate	turba, turbae *f.* crowd
lupus, lupī *m.* wolf	virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

The *Ars Amātōria* (Art of Love) is a collection of three books of elegiac poems that are both erotic and didactic in subject matter and style. The poet offers detailed advice to men (books I and II) and to women (book III) on how to seduce and hold love partners. With a mixture of irony and genuine enthusiasm Ovid's counsel favors fun and pleasure over fidelity and morality. This work of the poet may have aroused the displeasure of Augustus and may have led to Ovid's exile.

26. Augustus, *Rēs Gestae Dīvī Augustī*, Proem, 1–2

The preface and opening words of Augustus's autobiographical report to the Roman people

Rērum gestārum dīvī Augustī, quibus orbem terrārum imperiō populī Rōmānī subiēcit, et impēnsārum quās in* rem pūblicam populumque Rōmānum fēcit, incīsārum in duābus ahēneīs pīlīs, quae sunt Rōmae positae, exemplar subiectum.

Annōs undēvīgintī nātus exercitum prīvātō cōnsiliō et prīvātā impēnsā comparāvī, per quem rem pūblicam ā dominātiōne factiōnis oppressam in lībertātem vindicāvī. eō nōmine senātus dēcrētīs honōrificīs in ordinem suum mē adlēgit, C. Pānsā et A. Hirtiō cōnsulibus, cōnsulārem locum sententiae dīcendae† tribuēns, et imperium mihi dedit.

*in, *here,* for
†dīcendae, *fem. sing. gen. of a gerundive;*
  sententiae dīcendae, of speaking (my) opinion
adlegō (ad- + legō), adlegere, adlēgī, adlēctus
  elect, admit
a(h)ēneus, -a, -um (made of) bronze
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; raise
cōnsulāris, cōnsulāre of *or* belonging to a
  consul, consular; of consular rank
dēcrētum, dēcrētī *n.* decision, order, decree
dominātiō, dominātiōnis *f.* absolute power,
  dominion; despotism
exemplar, exemplāris, -ium *n.* copy
factiō, factiōnis *f.* faction, partisanship
A. Hirtius, A. Hirtiī *m.* A. Hirtius (consul 43)
honōrificus, -a, -um conferring honor,
  honorific
impēnsa, impēnsae *f.* expense

incīdō, incīdere, incīdī, incīsus cut into, inscribe
  onto
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name; reason, purpose
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press
  down; suppress
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; orbis terrārum,
  circle of lands, world
ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank, class, body
C. Pānsa, C. Pānsae *m.* C. (Vibius) Pansa
  (consul 43)
pīla, pīlae *f.* column; squared pillar
prīvātus, -a, -um private
subiciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus place below;
  make (acc.) subject to (dat.)
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow,
  assign
vindicō (1-tr.) lay claim to; in lībertātem
  vindicāre, to claim as free, to free, to liberate

The *Rēs Gestae Dīvī Augustī* is one of three documents that Augustus left with the Vestal Virgins shortly before his death in 14 c.e. This first-person description of Augustus's accomplishments is written in an unadorned and clear style. After Augustus's death, and by his order, the *Rēs Gestae* were inscribed on two pillars placed in front of his mausoleum in Rome and also on numerous copies throughout the Empire (often with an accompanying Greek translation). The best surviving copy comes from Ankara in Turkey and includes the initial paragraph presented above.

27. Velleius Paterculus, *Historia Rōmāna* II.18.1–3

The historian describes a Roman enemy in the East in 88 B.C.E.

Per ea tempora Mithridātēs, Ponticus rēx, vir neque silendus neque dīcendus sine
cūrā, bellō ācerrimus, virtūte eximius, aliquandō fortūnā, semper animō maximus,
cōnsiliīs dux, mīles manū, odiō in Rōmānōs Hannibal, occupātā Asiā necātīsque in
eā omnibus cīvibus Rōmānīs quōs quidem eādem diē atque hōrā redditīs cīvitātibus
litterīs ingentī cum pollicitātiōne praemiōrum interimī iusserat, quō tempore neque
fortitūdine adversus Mithridātem neque fidē in* Rōmānōs quisquam Rhodiīs pār
fuit—hōrum fidem Mytilēnaeōrum perfidia illūmināvit quī M'. Aquilium aliōsque
Mithridātī vīnctōs trādidērunt quibus lībertās in ūnīus Theophanis grātiam posteā ā
Pompeiō restitūta est—cum† terribilis Italiae quoque vidērētur imminēre, sorte ob-
vēnit Sullae Asia prōvincia.

*in, *here*, toward
†cum, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) (under the circum-
    stances) when
ācerrimus, -a, -um most *or* very fierce
adversus (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against,
    in the face of
aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally
M'. Aquilius, M'. Aquiliī *m.* M'. Aquilius
Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia, a Roman province (modern
    Asia Minor)
eximius, -a, -um outstanding, remarkable
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude
grātia, grātiae *f.* favor, kindness; in grātiam, for
    the purpose of pleasing (+ gen.)
hōra, hōrae *f.* hour
illūminō (1-tr.) illuminate, reveal
immineō, imminēre, ——, —— hang over,
    threaten (+ dat.)
interimō, interimere, interēmī, interēmptus kill,
    do away with
litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* letter, epistle
maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great
Mithridātēs, Mithridātis *m.* Mithridates (the
    Great), king of Pontus, defeated by Sulla, Lu-
    cullus, and Pompey
Mytilēnaeī, Mytilēnaeōrum *m. pl.* Mytileneans,
    citizens of Mytilene, a city on the island Les-
    bos off the coast of Asia Minor

necō (1-tr.) put to death, kill
obveniō (ob- + veniō) be assigned to (+ dat.)
occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy
pār, paris equal
perfidia, perfidiae *f.* faithlessness, treachery
pollicitātiō, pollicitātiōnis *f.* promise
Ponticus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the region
    adjoining the Black Sea (Pontus), of Pontus
posteā (adv.) after, afterward
praemium, praemiī *n.* reward, prize
quisquam = *masc./fem. nom. sing. of indef. pron.,*
    anyone
reddō (red- + dō) give back, return; hand over,
    deliver
restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus set up
    again, restore
Rhodiī, Rhodiōrum *m. pl.* Rhodians, inhabitants
    of the island Rhodes off the coast of Asia
    Minor
sileō, silēre, siluī, —— be silent; pass over in si-
    lence
sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; lottery
terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening
Theophanēs, Theophanis *m.* Theophanis, Greek
    historian from Mytilene, friend of Pompey
vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, join, fetter

Velleius Paterculus was born in southern Italy and served under the future emperor Tiberius as commander of the
cavalry in Germany. After his rise to the rank of praetor in 14 C.E., almost nothing is known of his life. The only
known work of Velleius Paterculus is the *Historiae Rōmānae*, published in 30 C.E. in two books. The first book, the
surviving text of which contains gaps, gives a cursory account of Roman history from Romulus to the fall of
Carthage. The second book treats more contemporary history and includes a consistently positive portrait of
Tiberius. Notable in the style of Velleius are a certain awkwardness and a pronounced lack of clarity in his long pe-
riodic sentences.

28. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 507–11

> Eurybates describes the effect of a storm on the Greek sailors and their Trojan captives as
> they return from Troy.

Nīl ratiō et ūsus audet: ars cessit malīs;

tenet horror artūs, omnis officiō stupet

nāvita relictō, rēmus effugit manūs.

in vōta miserōs ultimus cōgit timor   510

eademque superōs Trōes et Danaī rogant.

artus, artūs *m.* joint (of the body), limb
cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive to-
  gether, force, compel
Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape, slip from
horror, horrōris *m.* bristling, stiffening; trem-
  bling, dread
nāvita = nauta
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, task
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning

rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar
rogō (1-tr.) ask (someone, acc.) for (something,
  acc.)
stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, —— be stunned, be
  speechless
superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan (man); Trōes = *nom. pl.*
ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final
ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer

29. Juvenal, *Saturae* X.283–88

> After recovering from a fever that might have killed him, Pompeius Magnus was killed and
> beheaded in Egypt, to where he had fled during the civil wars with Caesar. The poet reflects
> on this end in comparison to the deaths of other Roman leaders.

prōvida Pompeiō dederat Campānia febrēs

optandās, sed multae urbēs et pūblica vōta

vīcērunt; igitur fortūna ipsīus et urbis   285

servātum victō caput abstulit. hōc cruciātū

Lentulus, hāc poenā caruit ceciditque Cethēgus

integer, et iacuit Catilīna cadāvere tōtō.

cadāver, cadāveris *n.* corpse
Campānia, Campāniae *f.* Campania, a province
  in southern Italy south of Latium
caput, capitis *n.* head
Cethēgus, Cethēgī *m.* Cethegus, one of the lead-
  ers in the Catilinarian conspiracy
cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment
febris, febris, -ium *f. in sing. or pl.* an attack of
  fever, fever

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie dead
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore; then
integer, integra, integrum whole
Lentulus, Lentulī *m.* Lentulus, one of the leaders
  in the Catilinarian conspiracy
prōvidus, -a, -um having foreknowledge, provi-
  dent
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer

Decimus Iūnius Iuvenālis was born in southern Latium in the middle of the first century c.e. Juvenal began to write
poetry some time after the death of Domitian in 96 and continued to do so for the next thirty years. He lived until at
least 127.

   The *Saturae* (Satires) are sixteen satirical poems written in the dactylic hexameter, which have been divided
into five books. The poet caricatures and attacks various manifestations of what he views as the corruption of Roman
society. Rhetoric, hypocrisy, the atmosphere surrounding the emperor, women, and human frailty in general are
among the subjects scathingly attacked by the poet. Although Juvenal's subject matter is often crude, his poetry is
highly developed and often colored by the language of epic and of tragedy.

Continuous Readings

1. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.479–90

While recounting the fall of Troy, Aeneas describes how Pyrrhus (= Neoptolemus), son of
Achilles, breaks into the palace of Priam and slaughters the last members of the royal line.

ipse* inter prīmōs correptā dūra bipennī

līmina perrumpit postīsque ā cardine vellit   480

aerātōs; iamque excīsā trabe firma cavāvit

rōbora et ingentem lātō dedit ōre fenestram.

appāret domus intus et ātria longa patēscunt;

appārent Priamī et veterum penetrālia rēgum,

armātōsque vident stantīs in līmine prīmō.   485

at domus interior gemitū miserōque tumultū

miscētur, penitusque cavae plangōribus aedēs

fēmineīs ululant; ferit aurea sīdera clāmor.

tum pavidae tēctīs mātrēs ingentibus errant

amplexaeque tenent postīs atque ōscula fīgunt.   490

*ipse refers to Pyrrhus (= Neoptolemus).

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *in pl.*,
  house, abode
aerātus, -a, -um made of bronze
amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum embrace;
  clasp (for protection)
appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritus be visible,
  be clear; appear, become evident
armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm
at (conj.) but
ātrium, ātriī *n.* atrium, the main room of a
  Roman house
aureus, -a, -um golden
bipennis, bipennis *f.* two-edged axe, bipennī
  = *abl. sing.*
cardō, cardinis *m.* pivot; hinge
cavō (1-tr.) hollow out; cut through
cavus, -a, -um hollow
clāmor, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting; noise
corripiō, corripere, corripuī, correptus snatch up
excīdō, excīdere, excīdī, excīsus cut down, cut out
fēmineus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to a woman,
  feminine
fenestra, fenestrae *f.* window; hole, breach
feriō, ferīre, ——, —— strike, hit
fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus fix, affix; plant
firmus, -a, -um strong, sturdy
gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
interior, interius (comparative adj.) inner;
  interior = *fem. sing. nom.*

intus (adv.) within, inside
lātus, -a, -um broad, wide
līmen, līminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold
longus, -a, -um long
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up;
  throw into confusion
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face; aperture, opening
ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss
patēscō, patēscere, patuī, —— become visible, be
  disclosed
pavidus, -a, -um trembling, frightened
penetrāle, penetrālis, -ium *n.* inner part, inmost
  recess; inner shrine
penitus (adv.) (from) within, deeply
perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus break
  or burst through
plangor, plangōris *m.* beating (of the breast in
  grief); lamentation
postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb
rōbur, rōboris *n.* oak tree; timber
sīdus, sīderis *n.* star; constellation
tēctum, tēctī *n.* roof; house, dwelling
trabs, trabis *f.* tree trunk; beam
tum (adv.) then, at that time
tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar
ululō (1-intr.) howl (in grief or as part of a reli-
  gious ritual), wail
vellō, vellere, vellī or vulsī, vulsus pull (up), tear
  (from)
vetus, veteris old, ancient

2. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.452–62

The poet recounts the tale of Apollo and Daphne.

prīmus amor Phoebī Daphnē Pēnēia, quem nōn

fors ignāra dedit, sed saeva Cupīdinis īra.

Dēlius hunc nūper victā serpente superbus

vīderat adductō flectentem cornua nervō   455

"quid" que "tibī,* lascīve puer, cum fortibus armīs?"

dīxerat: "ista decent umerōs gestāmina nostrōs,

quī† dare certa ferae, dare vulnera possumus hostī,

quī modo pestiferō tot iūgera ventre prementem

strāvimus innumerīs tumidum Pythōna sagittīs.   460

tū face nescio quōs‡ estō contentus amōrēs

inrītāre tuā, nec laudēs adsereˢ nostrās!"

---

*The final -i of tibi here scans *long*.
†quī, antecedent is nōs implied in nostrōs
‡nescio quōs = *masc. pl. acc. of indef. adj.,* I-don't-know-what, some . . . or other; the -ō of nesciō here scans *short*.
ˢnec . . . adsere = *negative imperative*

addūcō (ad- + dūcō) lead toward; draw back, bend

adserō, adserere, adseruī, adsertus grasp, claim as one's own

contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied

cornū, cornūs *n.* horn; *in sing. or pl.,* bow; cornua = *acc. pl.*

Daphnē, Daphnēs *f.* Daphne, a nymph, daughter of the river Peneus; Daphnēs = *gen. sing.*

deceō, decēre, ——, —— fit, befit; add grace to, adorn, become

Dēlius, -a, -um of Delos, Delian; *as masc. subst.,* Delian Apollo

estō = *2nd sing. fut. act. imper., used in formal language or general precepts for orders,* (you will) be

fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch

fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend

fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck

gestāmen, gestāminis *n.* something worn or carried; ornament, weapon

ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, ignorant

innumerus, -a, -um innumerable, countless

inrītō (= irrītō) (1-tr.) provoke, stimulate

iūgerum, iūgerī *n. iugerum,* measure of land (= $\frac{2}{3}$ acre); acre

lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint

laus, laudis *f.* praise

modo (adv.) only, now; just now

nervus, nervī *m.* sinew; (bow-)string

nūper (adv.) recently

Pēnēius, -a, -um of Peneus (a river god)

pestifer, pestifera, pestiferum disease-carrying, deadly

Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)

premō, premere, pressī, pressus press (down), burden; afflict

Pythōn, Pythōnis *m.* Python; Pythōna = *acc. sing.*

saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage

sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow

serpēns, serpentis, -ium *f.* snake, serpent

sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew; lay low, slay, kill

superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

tumidus, -a, -um swollen

umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound

§103. Rhetorical Terms

Writers of Latin prose and poetry regularly employed many modes of expression that are called rhetorical devices. Rhetoric, the principal subject studied in Roman education, may be defined as the art of persuasion in speech or in writing. *How* Roman speakers or writers expressed something was virtually inseparable from *what* they said or wrote. Indeed, the chosen style of any writer is in large part reflected in his distinctive use of the devices of rhetoric. LEARN THE FOLLOWING BASIC RHETORICAL TERMS AND THEIR DEFINITIONS. BE PREPARED TO IDENTIFY THEM IN THE READINGS.

Tricolon	(< Greek *trikōlos*, "three-limbed") three-part structure comprising three words, phrases, or clauses
Anaphora	(< Greek *anaphora*, "rising, repetition") repetition of the same word or words at the beginning of successive phrases or clauses
Asyndeton	(< Greek *asyndetos*, "unconnected") absence of connectives between phrases or clauses
Ellipsis	(< Greek *elleipsis*, "ellipse, omission") omission of one or more grammatical elements that may be supplied from context
Antithesis	(< Greek *antithesis*, "opposition") opposition or contrast of two ideas
Chiasmus	(< Greek *chiasmus*, "placing crosswise") arrangement of pairs, the second element of which is in inverted order (ABBA)
Hyperbaton	(< Greek *hyperbatos*, "going beyond") separation of two words that normally belong together
Hendiadys	(< Greek *hen dia duoin*, "one through two") one idea expressed through two nouns connected by "and" when a closer relation is suggested
Alliteration	repetition of the same sound at the beginning of successive words
Assonance	(< *assono*, "sound in accompaniment") repetition of identical or similar sounds in words

Examples

quis hanc contumēliam, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitūtem ferre potest?
(Cato, quoted in Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* X.3.17)

> (tricolon, anaphora, asyndeton, ellipsis)

Who is able to endure *this abuse, who this authority, who this slavery?*

haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta nīmīrum, in quā *nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās, nūlla stabilis* benivolentiae potest esse *fidūcia* . . . (Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 52–53)

> (tricolon, anaphora, asyndeton, hyperbaton)

This is without doubt the life of tyrants, in which *no faith, no affection, no constant trust* of goodwill is able to exist.

ergō *Hannibal hostis, cīvis Antōnius?* (Cicero, *Philippics* V 24)

> (chiasmus, antithesis, asyndeton, ellipsis)

Therefore *(is) Hannibal an enemy, (but) Antony a citizen?*

omnēs enim in cōnsulis iūre et imperiō dēbent esse *prōvinciae.* (Cicero, *Philippics IV* 9)

    (hyperbaton)

For *all the provinces* ought to be in the right and power of the consul.

neque enim illum, quem facile tulerant, ratiōne aut sapientiā tulerant, sed *studiō*

potius *et glōriā.* (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* II.65)

    (hendiadys)

Nor indeed that (pain), which they had easily endured, had they endured because of reason or wisdom, but rather because of *a zeal for glory.*

tēne, sacer vātēs, flammae *rapuēre rogālēs*

    pectoribus pāscī nec *timuēre tuīs?* (Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.41–42)

    (alliteration)

Sacred poet, have the flames of the funeral pyre consumed you

    and have they not feared to feed on your chest?

. . . hau*d doctīs dictīs* certant*ēs, sed* male*dictīs* . . . (Ennius, Annālēs VIII.250)

    (assonance)

contending not at all by learned words, but by insults . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. Several rhetorical devices may be combined in the same sentence. In the first example the tricolon gains speed through the use of anaphora and asyndeton. The repeated element quis emphasizes the structure of the tricolon and allows the succeeding elements to be highlighted (**contumēliam, imperium, servitūtem**).

2. Although the limbs of a tricolon are often of uniform length, the third limb (nūlla . . . fidūcia) is often expanded, as in the second example.

3. Hyperbaton (**nūlla . . . fidūcia, omnēs . . . prōvinciae**) adds liveliness or surprise to the words that have been separated.

4. The hendiadys **studiō . . . et glōriā** (because of zeal . . . and glory) expresses one idea: because of a zeal for glory.

When one studies a particular writer's use of rhetoric, it is convenient to refer to the unit known as the **period** (< Greek *periodos,* "a going around") or periodic sentence. A **periodic sentence** is a complex sentence arranged in such a way that meaning is not fully grasped until the end. The most important elements of the main clause are often placed at the beginning and the end, enclosing several subordinate structures. Additional elements and subordinate clauses are arranged within the whole for maximum cohesion and clarity. For example:

Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum *contulērunt; ipsī* cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem *successērunt.*

The Helvetians, having followed with all their wagons, *brought together* (their) baggage into one place; *they themselves,* with the battle line being very dense, with our cavalry having been driven back, with a phalanx having been made, *approached* up to our first battle line.

The periodic structure of this sentence may be represented as follows:

> *Helvētiī*
>> cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī
>
> impedīmenta in ūnum locum *contulērunt;*
> *ipsī*
>> cōnfertissimā aciē,
>> reiectō nostrō equitātū,
>> phalange factā,
>
> sub prīmam nostram aciem *successērunt.*

CHAPTER XI

Vocabulary

➤ audācia, audāciae f. boldness; reckless-
ness, audacity

➤ campus, campī m. (flat) plain
➤ castra, castrōrum n. pl. (military) camp
mūrus, mūrī m. wall
➤ paulum, *paulī[1] n. small amount, a little
➤ signum, signī n. sign, signal; standard
➤ tēlum, tēlī n. spear; weapon

➤ ignis, ignis, -ium m. fire
➤ imperātor, imperātōris m. commander,
general
➤ legiō, legiōnis f. legion
➤ lūx, lūcis f. light, daylight
  ➤ prīmā lūce (idiom) at daybreak
➤ maiōrēs, maiōrum m. pl. ancestors

➤ sēnsus, sēnsūs m. perception, feeling;
sense

arbitror (1-tr.) judge, consider, think
putō (1-tr.) think, suppose

➤ soleō, solēre, solitus sum be accustomed

➤ crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus trust, be-
lieve (+ dat.)
➤ iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw; utter; lay,
establish
  ➤ ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out,
  expel

➤ loquor, loquī, locūtus sum speak

➤ inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus find,
discover
➤ sciō, scīre, scīvī or sciī, scītus know
  ➤ nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī or nesciī ,
  nescītus not know

➤ pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus pass away,
be destroyed; perish, die

longus, -a, -um long; far; long-standing;
far-reaching
➤ summus, -a, -um highest; top (of); last,
final

brevis, breve short, brief
humilis, humile humble
sapiēns, sapientis wise
➤ similis, simile similar (+ gen. or dat.)
  ➤ dissimilis, dissimile dissimilar, unlike,
  different (+ gen. or dat.)

➤ diū (adv.) for a long time
fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse (§104)
➤ igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore
longē (adv.) a long way, far; by far
➤ parum (indeclinable subst.) too little, not
enough
    (adv.) too little, inadequately
prīmum (adv.) first; for the first time
  quam prīmum, as soon as possible
quam (adv.) as, how; (conj.) than (§111)

---

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular form of **paulum** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin
that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

audācia, audāciae *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -ia to the stem of an adjective meaning "bold" or "audacious." Audācia may have a positive sense (boldness, confidence), but more often has a negative sense of excessive boldness (recklessness or audacity).

campus, campī *m.* is a flat expanse of land or "plain." The Campus Martius (< Martius, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to Mars) was the plain just outside the sacred boundary of Rome, in which the Roman troops trained, Roman armies mustered before entering the city in triumph, and Roman citizens gathered in assembly in order to elect consuls and other high magistrates. The noun campus without an accompanying adjective may refer to the *Campus Martius*.

Although castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* is plural in form, it has a singular meaning (military encampment). castra appears in two common idioms: castra pōnere, "to pitch *or* make camp" and castra movēre, "to break camp."

paulum, *paulī *n.* appears in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular only. It often functions as an Ablative of Degree of Difference (see §111). It is also commonly found with a Partitive Genitive.

Paulō ante discesserant.	They had departed earlier *by a little* (a little earlier).
Paulum eī erat *pecūniae*.	There was a little *of money* to him. / He had a little *(of) money.*

signum, signī *n.* may mean any sort of "mark" or "sign." It may also mean "signal" or, in military contexts, a "standard" or identifying flag carried by each legion.

tēlum, tēlī *n.* originally referred only to a throwing weapon (spear, javelin, dart), but its use was soon extended to include other weapons. It may also refer to the "shaft" of a throwing weapon as opposed to the point.

The ablative singular of ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* is usually ignī (by analogy with *neuter* third-declension i-stem nouns). In poetry and in post-Augustan Latin, the regular form igne also occurs.

imperātor, imperātōris *m.* is formed by the addition of the suffix -tor to the present stem of the verb imperō. An imperātor is one who gives orders, and it is most often used of a military "commander" or "general." It is also an honorific title granted to a victorious commander either by his troops or by the senate.

legiō, legiōnis *f.* was the largest unit of the Roman army. Its size ranged at various periods of the Roman Republic and Empire from 4,200 to 6,000 men.

lūx, lūcis *f.* may mean "light" generally or "daylight." It may also mean "light" more metaphorically (mental illumination, light [of hope], etc.). Prīmā lūce, literally "at first light," is an Ablative of Time When.

maiōrēs, maiōrum *m. pl.* is a substantive of the comparative adjective maior, maius (see §110).

sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix -tus to a stem of the verb sentiō. The -t- of the suffix assimilated to the -s- of the stem sēns- and was then lost.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum is an intransitive semideponent verb. It regularly takes a Complementary Infinitive.

Bonus sine īrā dīcere *solet*.	A good man *is accustomed* to speak(ing) without anger.

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus may be transitive *or* intransitive. When transitive, it often takes a neuter pronoun as a direct object. When crēdō is intransitive, it may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb. In the *passive*, crēdō may have a personal subject. Crēdō may also introduce an Indirect Statement.

Tē amō, crēde *mihi*.	I love you, believe *me*. (Dative with an Intransitive Verb)
Crēdunt *id* quod vident.	They believe *that thing* that they see. (d.o.)
Crēditur captus esse.	He is believed to have been captured. (passive voice, personal subject)
Crēdisne mē tē amāre?	Do you believe that I love you? (Indirect Statement)

The first letter of the verb iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus is a *consonantal* i and is thus pronounced like English y. Iaciō may mean "throw" or "cast" in a literal sense (rocks, javelins, lightning bolts) or a metaphorical one (injury, abuse, ridicule, remarks, kisses). It may also mean "lay" or "establish" (foundations, walls, ramparts).

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ē- to iaciō. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the first, second, and fourth principal parts. (For the prefix ē- see Appendix P.) In the first two principal parts (and all forms made from them), the first -i- is pronounced as a consonantal -i- followed by the vocalic -i-, as if they were spelled *ēiiciō, *ēiicere. In the third principal part (ēiēcī), the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to -ē-. The -i- in the third and fourth principal parts is consonantal. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF IACIŌ FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ĒICIŌ. WHEN

A COMPOUND OF IACIŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN. When ēiciō takes a reflexive pronoun as a direct object, the combination may mean "rush forth."

Compounds of loquor, loquī, locūtus sum do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF LO-QUOR APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus is a compound verb formed by the addition of in- to veniō and does *not* exhibit vowel weakening. (For the prefix in-[1] see Appendix P.) Unlike veniō, inveniō is a transitive verb.

sciō, scīre, scīvī or sciī, scītus means "know" in the broadest sense of the word. In particular, sciō means "know" facts. Sciō has *two* third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. When sciō takes an infinitive, it means "know how."

| Poēta causās rērum *scit*. | The poet *knows* the causes of things. |
| Caesar vincere *scīvit*. | Caesar *knew* how to conquer. |

The present active imperative forms of sciō almost never appear in the Latin that survives, but this verb uses instead the future active imperative forms scītō (singular) and scītōte (plural) with present meanings. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī or nesciī, nescītus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the negative prefix ne- to sciō. Nesciō has *two* third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. When nesciō takes an infinitive, it means "not know how."

pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix per- to the irregular verb eō. (For the prefix per- see Appendix P.) Pereō conjugates exactly as eō *except* that it has only *one* third principal part. Pereō may be used synonymously for morior and be translated "perish" or "die." When its subject is not human, pereō may mean "pass away" or "be destroyed." It is also used metaphorically to mean "die" or "pine away" for love. The first person singular present active subjunctive may be used as an Optative, future wish capable of fulfillment, to assert something strongly. The first person (singular and plural) perfect active indicative—and occasionally other forms—may be used hyperbolically to express panic (I am/We are destroyed/lost/done for).

Multī mīlitum *periērunt*.	Many of the soldiers *died*.
Magnae urbēs cum moenibus *pereunt*.	Great cities with their (city) walls *pass away*.
Peream nisi ista mē movent verba.	*May I die* if those words do not move me.
Ingeniō meō *periī*!	*I am lost* because of my own talent!

When summus, -a, -um expresses the notion of the "top of" a place by *modifying that place*, it usually appears *before* the noun it modifies.

similis, simile and dissimilis, dissimile may take either a genitive or a dative expressing that which something is "similar" or "dissimilar" *to*.

| *Patris* similis est hic fīlius. | This son *is similar to* (his) father. |
| Quid *illī* simile *bellō* fuit? | What was similar *to that war*? |

The temporal adverb diū often appears in the phrase iam diū, "for a long time now." When this phrase occurs with a verb in the present tense, the present tense reports an action that has been going on for some time and is still going on. This use of the present tense requires a special English translation.

| Hoc iam diū dīcō. | *I have been saying* this thing for a long time now. |
| Hoc iam diū scīmus. | *We have known* this thing for a long time now. |

In classical Latin, igitur is most frequently a postpositive conjunction. (In the historians Sallust and Tacitus, however, igitur is nearly always placed first.) Igitur is used to join a sentence with a preceding one to indicate the consequence or inference of a preceding idea or series of ideas. Occasionally it is used to indicate the resumption of an idea after a digression (well then).

Like satis, parum may be an indeclinable neuter substantive or an adverb. While satis means "enough," parum describes what falls short of enough (too little).

	Derivatives	**Cognates**
audācia	*audacity*	
brevis	brief; abbreviate	*brachium*; *merry*; *pretzel*
campus	campus	
crēdō	*credo*; *credit*; *credible*; *miscreant*	heart; *discord*; *courage*; *cardiac*
iaciō	in*ject*; ad*jec*tive; *jet*	*catheter*
ignis	*ignite*; *igneous*	
longus	*longitude*; lunge; *longevity*; *purloin*	long; *linger*; be*long*; *Lent*
loquor	loquacious; circum*locution*; soli*loquy*	
lūx	*Lucifer*; *luculent*	*light*
mūrus	*mural*	
parum		*poor*; *filly*; *puer*
putō	com*pute*	
sciō	*science*; pre*scient*	*shyster*; *schism*; rescind; *shed*
signum	sign; *signal*; seal	
similis	*similar*; as*simi*late; re*semble*	*simplex*; *simple*; same; *single*; *sandhi*; seem

§104. Infinitives

In addition to the present active infinitive (the second principal part) and present passive infinitive (see §31), there are three other infinitives in regular use in Latin: the perfect active infinitive, perfect passive infinitive, and future active infinitive. The following chart presents these infinitives and their basic translations:

	Active	Passive
Present	2nd Prin. Part vocāre movēre regere to ____ capere audīre	Change final -e of 2nd Prin. Part to -ī (In 3rd conj., change final -ere to -ī) vocārī movērī regī "to be ____ed" capī audīrī
Perfect	Perfect Active Stem from 3rd Prin. Part + -isse vocāvisse mōvisse rexisse "to have ____ed" cepisse audīvisse	Perfect Passive Participle + esse vocātus, -a, -um esse mōtus, -a, -um esse rectus, -a, -um esse "to have been ____ed" captus, -a, -um esse audītus, -a, -um esse
Future	Future Active Participle + esse vocātūrus, -a, -um esse motūrus, -a, -um esse "to be rectūrus, about to/ -a, -um esse going to ____" captūrus, -a, -um esse audītūrus, -a, -um esse	Rare

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect active infinitive of īre may be either īvisse or īsse (< ī- + -isse).

2. Deponent verbs have three infinitives: present passive (second principal part), perfect passive, and future active. All have active meanings. For example: cōnārī, "to attempt," cōnātus, -a, -um esse, "to have attempted," and cōnātūrus, -a, -um esse, "to be going to attempt."

3. Semideponent verbs have three infinitives: present active (second principal part), perfect passive, and future active. All have active meanings. For example: audēre, "to dare," ausus, -a, -um esse, "to have dared," and ausūrus, -a, -um esse, "to be going to dare."

4. A future passive infinitive exists in Latin, but it is rarely used. For its formation see §142, n. 4.

5. The future active infinitive of sum (futūrus, -a, -um esse) has an alternate form: fore. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR INFINITIVE FORM.

Periphrastic Infinitives

The active and passive periphrastics also have infinitive forms. For example:

Active Periphrastic Infinitives		
Present	rēctūrus, -a, -um esse	to be about to rule
Perfect	rēctūrus, -a, -um fuisse	to have been about to rule

Passive Periphrastic Infinitives		
Present	regendus, -a, -um esse	to be having to be ruled
Perfect	regendus, -a, -um fuisse	to have been having to be ruled

OBSERVATION

The present infinitive of the active periphrastic is also used as the future active infinitive of the verb. Thus, for example, rēctūrus, -a, -um esse may be identified as the present infinitive of the active periphrastic of rego or the future active infinitive of rego.

§105. Synopsis VII: Complete

When one generates a synopsis that includes the infinitive, the infinitive follows the participle and precedes the imperative. Here is a model synopsis of **agō** in the third person plural neuter:

Principal Parts:	**agō, agere, ēgī, āctus**			
Person, Number, and Gender:	**3rd pl. n.**			
	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	**agunt**	they are driving	**aguntur**	they are (being) driven
Imperfect	**agēbant**	they were driving	**agēbantur**	they were being driven
Future	**agent**	they will drive	**agentur**	they will be driven
Perfect	**ēgērunt/ ēgēre**	1. they drove 2. they have driven	**ācta sunt**	1. they (n.) were driven 2. they (n.) have been driven
Pluperfect	**ēgerant**	they had driven	**ācta erant**	they (n.) had been driven
Future Perfect	**ēgerint**	they will have driven	**ācta erunt**	they (n.) will have been driven
Subjunctive				
Present	**agant**		**agantur**	
Imperfect	**agerent**		**agerentur**	
Perfect	**ēgerint**		**ācta sint**	
Pluperfect	**ēgissent**		**ācta essent**	
Participle				
Present	**agēns**	driving	—	
Perfect	—		**āctus, -a, -um**	(having been) driven
Future	**āctūrus, -a, -um**	about to drive	**agendus, -a, -um**	having to be driven
Infinitive				
Present	**agere**	to drive	**agī**	to be driven
Perfect	**ēgisse**	to have driven	**āctus, -a, -um esse**	to have been driven
Future	**āctūrus, -a, -um esse**	to be going to drive	RARE	
Imperative				
Singular	**age**	drive	**agere**	be driven
Plural	**agite**	drive	**agiminī**	be driven

OBSERVATIONS

1. This complete synopsis reviews the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods, the participle and the infinitive.

2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for all forms *except* the subjunctive.

3. Since participles and infinitives are not *finite* forms, always give participles (including those in compound infinitives) in the *full nominative singular* form no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms.

4. Imperatives appear in the second person singular and plural only. Always give the second person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms.

☛ Drill 104–105 may now be done.

§106. Indirect Statement and the Subject Accusative

In both English and Latin what someone says may be reported in a *direct quotation*. For example:

> He says, "I understand well the poems of Vergil."
> **Dīcit, "Carmina Vergilī bene intellegō."**

Speech, thoughts, and perceptions may also be reported *indirectly*. In English, no comma and no quotation marks are used, the conjunction "that" is usually added, and changes in pronouns and verb tenses regularly occur. For example:

> He says *that he understands well the poems of Vergil.*
> (Original statement: I understand well the poems of Vergil.)
> We thought *that he understood well the poems of Vergil.*
> (Original thought: He understands well the poems of Vergil.)

Each italicized phrase is a subordinate clause, part of a complex sentence, the main clause of which is the introductory phrase (He says, We thought). Such subordinate clauses are rendered in Latin by a construction called **Indirect Statement**. An Indirect Statement in Latin:

1. *is introduced by* a verb of perception
2. *lacks* a subordinating conjunction equivalent to the English "that"[2]
3. has a *subject* in the *accusative* case (called a **Subject Accusative of an Indirect Statement**)[3]
4. has a *verb* in the *infinitive*[3]

OBSERVATION

> A verb of perception is a verb of speaking, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like. In addition, certain phrases with related meanings—"There is a rumor," "There was a story," etc.—may also introduce Indirect Statement.

THE TENSE AND VOICE OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT CORRESPOND AS CLOSELY AS POSSIBLE TO THE TENSE AND VOICE OF THE VERB IN THE DIRECT STATEMENT, THOUGHT, OR PERCEPTION THAT IS BEING REPORTED INDIRECTLY. In addition, the in-

---

2. It is possible in colloquial English to omit the subordinating conjunction "that." For example: "We thought he understood well the poems of Vergil."

3. Cf. the English "I know *him to be* honorable" (= I know that he is honorable).

finitive in an Indirect Statement shows time relative to the verb of perception that introduces it.

A *present* infinitive represents an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb.

A *perfect* infinitive represents an action that is *prior* to the main verb.

A *future* infinitive represents an action that is *subsequent* to the main verb.[4]

For example:

Latin	English
Carmina Vergili bene intellegit.	He understands well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō eum carmina Vergili	I think that he understands.
Cōgitābam bene intellegere.	I was thinking that he understood.
Cōgitābō	I shall think that he understands.
Carmina Vergili bene intellēxit.	He understood well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō eum carmina Vergili	I think that he understood.
Cōgitābam bene intellēxisse.	I was thinking that he had understood.
Cōgitābō	I shall think that he understood.
Carmina Vergili bene intelleget.	He will understand well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō eum carmina Vergili	I think that he will understand.
Cōgitābam bene intellēctūrum	I was thinking that he would understand.
Cōgitābō esse.	I shall think that he will understand.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Subject Accusative is usually the first word of an Indirect Statement in Latin. THE WORD "THAT" SHOULD BE ADDED AT THE BEGINNING OF AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF AN INDIRECT STATEMENT, AND THE INFINITIVE SHOULD BE TRANSLATED AS A FINITE VERB.

2. In each Indirect Statement the syntax of eum is Subject Accusative of an Indirect Statement.

3. The infinitives intellegere, intellēxisse, and intellēctūrum esse are, respectively, present active, perfect active, and future active. Each is translated into English by a *finite verb* that shows *time relative to the main verb*. CARE MUST BE TAKEN TO INDICATE THE RELATIVE TIME TO THE MAIN VERB OF THE INFINITIVE IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT.

4. Any participle that is part of an infinitive in Indirect Statement agrees with the Subject Accusative in *gender, number, and case*. For example, the future active participle intellēctūrum (part of the future active infinitive) is *masculine singular accusative* to agree with eum.

5. An Indirect Statement is a noun clause. It most often functions as the direct object of the verb of perception that introduces it.

When the infinitive in an Indirect Statement is a linking verb such as **sum**, it is often accompanied by a **Predicate Accusative** or a **Predicate Adjective in the Accusative case**. For example:

Cōgitāsne nostram regīnam esse *fēminam* magnae sapientiae?
Do you think that our queen is *a woman* of great wisdom?
Cōgitāsne nostram regīnam esse *fēlīcem*?
Do you think that our queen is *fortunate*?

4. Cf. the relative time of participles, §96.

The syntax of **fēminam** is Predicate Accusative, and the syntax of fēlīcem is **Predi-cate Adjective** in the Accusative case.

The esse of infinitives that are compound forms may be omitted.[5] For example:

> Dicit sē quattuor diēbus ad prōvinciam *profectūram.* (future active infinitive)
> She says that she within four days to the province *will set forth.*
> She says that she *will set forth* to the province within four days.

In the English sentence "It is said that Marcus will lead the troops into battle," the verb of perception "It is said" is used impersonally. In classical Latin this im-personal use of a verb of perception in the passive voice is avoided in the present system, and the subject of the Indirect Statement becomes the subject of the verb of perception. This is called the **personal construction** of an Indirect Statement. For ex-ample:

> Marcus dīcitur cōpiās in proelium ductūrus esse.
> Marcus is said the troops (d.o.) into battle to be going to lead.
> Marcus is said to be going to lead the troops into battle.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the personal construction the subject of the verb of perception in the passive voice is *nomi-native*, the English word "that" is *not* added, and the infinitive is translated with its basic mean-ing (see §104). If the infinitive is a compound form, as in the sentence above, the participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the nominative subject of the sentence.

2. If the verb of perception is a compound form in the perfect passive system, it may be used impersonally with the entire Indirect Statement functioning as the impersonal subject. For example:

> Dictum est Marcum cōpiās in proelium ductūrum esse.
> It was said that Marcus the troops (d.o.) into battle would lead.
> That Marcus would lead the troops into battle was said.
> It was said that Marcus would lead the troops into battle.

☛ DRILL 106 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§107. A Note on the Subject Accusative

A Subject Accusative may appear as the subject of an infinitive in constructions other than Indirect Statement. For example:

> Optō mē esse bonum.   I desire *myself* to be good.
> Satis est mē servitūte līberārī.   Enough (it) is *for me* from slavery to be freed.
>   It is enough *for me* to be freed from slavery.
>   It is enough *that* I be freed from slavery.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the syntax of esse is **Object Infinitive**, and the syntax of mē is **Subject Accusative**. (Optō is *not* a verb of perception.)

---

5. Cf. the omission of the forms of **sum** in compound forms of the perfect passive system (§51).

2. In the second sentence, the syntax of līberārī is Subject Infinitive, and the syntax of mē is Subject Accusative. It is often convenient to translate such noun clauses with the English words "for . . . to . . . " *or* "that . . . (English present subjunctive) . . . "

§108. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

When a complex sentence is subordinated in Indirect Statement, the main clause appears with a *Subject Accusative* and *verb in the infinitive*. The *subordinate clause* appears with a verb in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.[6] Compare the same sentence presented first as a direct quotation and then in Indirect Statement:

> Dux dīcit/dīcēbat: "Mīles quī fūgit poenās dabit."
> The leader says/was saying: "The soldier who fled will pay the penalty."
> Dux dīcit mīlitem quī fūgerit poenās datūrum esse.
> The leader says that the soldier who fled will pay the penalty.
> Dux dīcēbat mīlitem quī fūgisset poenās datūrum esse.
> The leader was saying that the soldier who had fled would pay the penalty.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect indicative verb (fūgit) in the relative clause of the direct quotation appears as a perfect subjunctive in primary sequence and a pluperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence when the direct quotation is reported indirectly. These tenses reflect the fact that the action of the verb in the relative clause in the direct quotation happened *prior* to the time of the main verb (dīcit/dīcēbat).

2. The syntax, for example, of fūgisset in the third sentence is pluperfect subjunctive, Relative Clause Subordinated in Indirect Statement, secondary sequence, time prior to the main verb.

Although there is no special English translation for the subjunctive verb in a subordinate clause in Indirect Statement, the subjunctive mood indicates that the subordinate clause is to be understood as *part of the original statement or perception* being reported indirectly.

By contrast, the *indicative* mood appears in a subordinate clause in indirect statement when the subordinate clause: 1. is an addition of the writer or speaker of the sentence or 2. contains information vouched for by the writer or speaker. For example:

> Cicerō sēnsit rem pūblicam, quam magnopere amābat, servandam esse.
> Cicero perceived that the republic, which he greatly loved, had to be saved.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the person reporting Cicero's feeling that the republic had to be saved indicates by the use of the indicative mood (amābat) in the relative clause either 1. that the entire subordinate clause is *not* part of what Cicero felt, but is rather an addition of the writer or speaker, *or* 2. that the writer vouches for Cicero's love of the republic.

☛ DRILL 108 MAY NOW BE DONE.

6. When certain types of conditional sentences are subordinated in Indirect Statement, they are treated differently from other complex sentences. The rules for the subordination of conditional sentences are not presented in this book.

§109. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

In both English and Latin, adjectives and adverbs may appear in *three degrees*. For example:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
tall	taller; rather tall	tallest; very tall
quickly	more quickly; rather quickly	most quickly, very quickly

Comparative Degree of Adjectives

All regular first-second- and third-declension adjectives in Latin form the comparative degree in the same way. The comparative degree of every adjective in Latin is a *third*-declension adjective with *two* forms in the nominative singular. The endings **-ior** (m./f.), **-ius** (n.) are added to the stem of the positive degree of the adjective. For example:

Positive degree:	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
Stem for forming the comparative:	pulchr-
Comparative degree:	pulchrior, pulchrius
Stem of the comparative adjective:	pulchrior-

For example, the comparative degree of the adjective **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is declined as follows:

	Singular		*Plural*	
	M/F	N	M/F	N
Nom/Voc	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulchriores	pulchriora
Gen	pulchrioris	pulchrioris	pulchriorum	pulchriorum
Dat	pulchriori	pulchriori	pulchrioribus	pulchrioribus
Acc	pulchriorem	pulchrius	pulchriores/pulchrioris	pulchriora
Abl	pulchriore/ pulchriori	pulchriore/ pulchriori	pulchrioribus	pulchrioribus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The stem of adjectives in the comparative degree is obtained by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. For example: genitive singular = **pulchriōris**; stem = **pulchriōr-**.

2. The declension of the comparative degree of adjectives uses *some but not all i-stem features* of third-declension adjectives:

   a. the ablative singular ending may be either **-e** or **-ī**.
   b. the neuter plural nominative/vocative and accusative is **-a** (*not* -ia).
   c. the genitive plural ending is **-um** (*not* **-ium**).
   d. the masculine/feminine plural accusative ending may be either **-ēs** or **-īs**

3. The comparative degree of an adjective has a variety of translations: _____-er," "more _____," "quite _____," "rather _____," "too _____."

4. Since participles are verbal adjectives, some participles appear in the comparative degree. For example: **amantior, amantius**, "more loving"; **optātior, optātius**, "more (having been) desired."

Comparative Degree of Adverbs

To form the *comparative degree* of an *adverb* in Latin, add the ending **-ius** to a stem found by dropping the ending of the positive degree. For example:

Positive degree	pulchre, fortiter
Stem for forming the comparative	pulchr-, fort-
Comparative degree	pulchrius, fortius

OBSERVATIONS

1. All regular adverbs formed from first-second- and third-declension adjectives form the comparative degree in the same way.

2. The comparative degree of every adverb is identical with the neuter accusative singular form of the comparative adjective.

3. The comparative degree of an adverb has a variety of translations: "more _____-ly," "quite _____-ly," "rather _____-ly," "too _____-ly."

Superlative Degree of Adjectives

To form the superlative degree of an adjective in Latin, add **-issimus, -a, -um** to the stem of the adjective in the positive degree. If the masculine singular nominative form of the positive degree ends in **-r**, add **-rimus, -a, -um** to that form. For example:

Positive degree	fortis, forte	Stem: fort-
Superlative degree	fortissimus, -a, -um	
Positive degree	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	masc. sing. nom. = pulcher
Superlative degree	pulcherrimus, -a, -um	

Five adjectives in Latin form the superlative degree by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the stem.[7] These adjectives are:

facilis, facile	easy
difficilis, difficile	difficult
similis, simile	similar
dissimilis, dissimile	dissimilar
humilis, humile	humble

For example:

| Positive degree | humilis, humile | Stem: humil- |
| Superlative degree | humillimus, -a, -um | |

OBSERVATIONS

1. The superlative degree of an adjective has a variety of translations: "_____-est," "most _____," "very _____."

2. Since participles are verbal adjectives, some participles appear in the superlative degree. For example: **amantissimus, -a, -um,** "most loving," **amātissimus, -a, -um,** "most loved."

---

7. A sixth adjective, **gracilis, gracile,** "slender, fine, graceful," also forms its superlative degree by the addition of **-limus,** but the superlative degree of this adjective is extremely rare.

Superlative Degree of Adverbs

To form the *superlative degree* of an *adverb* in Latin, add the ending -ē to the stem of the superlative degree of the adjective. For example:

Superlative degree of the adjective	fortissimus, -a, -um
Stem of the superlative adjective	fortissim-
Superlative degree of the adverb	fortissimē

OBSERVATION

The superlative degree of an adverb is translated "most _____-ly," "very _____-ly."

When one generates the comparative and superlative forms of an adjective or adverb from the positive form, one is said to **compare** that adjective or adverb. For example:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Adjective		
honestus, -a, -um	honestior, honestius	honestissimus, -a, -um
honorable	more honorable, etc.	most honorable, etc.
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
beautiful	more beautiful, etc.	most beautiful, etc.
fortis, forte	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
brave	braver, rather brave, etc.	bravest, most brave, etc.
Adverb		
honestē	honestius	honestissimē
honorably	more honorably, etc.	most honorably, etc.
pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
beautifully	more beautifully, etc.	most beautifully, etc.
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
bravely	more bravely, etc.	most bravely, etc.

☛ DRILL 109 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§110. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

Certain adjectives and adverbs in Latin have *irregular forms* in the comparative and superlative degrees. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR FORMS:

ADJECTIVES		
Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus, -a, -um	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
good	better	best
malus, -a, -um	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
bad	worse	worst
magnus, -a, -um	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
great	greater	greatest
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
small	smaller	smallest
multus, -a, -um	plūs/plūrēs, plūra	plūrimus, -a, -um
much, many	more	most
	prior, prius	prīmus, -a, -um
	earlier	first

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declensions of all irregular comparative adjectives follow the pattern of **pulchrior, pulchrius.**

2. The comparative degree of the adjective **multus, -a, -um** has regular comparative adjective forms in the *plural*, but the *singular* exists *only as a neuter substantive*, "(the amount) more," which is usually followed by a Partitive Genitive. For example, **plūrēs amīcī** (more friends [subj.]; **plūrēs** is masculine plural nominative to agree with **amīcī**), but **plūs pecūniae** ([the amount] more of money; **plūs** = neuter substantive, singular nominative or accusative, followed by **pecūniae**, Partitive Genitive).

3. The masculine singular comparative forms of **magnus** and **parvus** are used to identify a father and son with the same name. For example: **Dionȳsius Maior,** "Dionysius the Elder," **Dionȳsius Minor,** "Dionysius the Younger."

ADVERBS		
Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bene well	melius better	optimē best
male badly	peius worse	pessimē worst
magnopere greatly	magis more greatly	maximē most greatly, especially
parum too little	minus less	minimē least, not at all
multum much	plūs more	plūrimum most
	prius before, sooner	prīmum first
saepe often	saepius more often	saepissimē most often
diū for a long time	diūtius longer	diūtissimē longest

OBSERVATION

In the comparative degree several irregular adverbs are identical with the neuter singular accusative of the corresponding comparative adjectives: **melius, peius, minus,** and **prius.**

☛ DRILL 110 MAY NOW BE DONE.

8. **Peior, peius** and **maior, maius** are pronounced as if they were spelled *peiior, *peiius and *maiior, *maiius. In each word the first -i- combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, -ei- or -ai-, the latter of which is pronounced exactly the same as -ae-. In each case the second -i- is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English -y-.

9. **Peius** is pronounced as if it were spelled *peiius. The first -i- combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, -ei-. The second -i- is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English -y-.

§111. Constructions with the Comparative and Superlative Degrees

The comparative degree of adjectives and adverbs is regularly used to *make compar-isons* between two persons or things. For example:

> *Altior* est fīlius *quam* pater (est).
> *Taller* is the son *than* (his) father (is).
> The son is *taller than* (his) father.
> Omnēs sentiunt hunc hominem *pulchrius* cecinisse *quam* illum.
> All men feel that this man *more beautifully* sang *than* that (man).
> All men feel that this man sang *more beautifully than* that (man).

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Latin word that corresponds to the English conjunction "than" is **quam**.

2. When comparisons are made with **quam**, the elements being compared *must be in the same case*.

When someone or something is compared to what is viewed as the *absolute stan-dard* of a particular quality, the **Ablative of Comparison** is used instead of **quam** and the same case. For example:

> Patria mihi *vītā* meā est cārior.
> The homeland is dearer to me *than my life*. (Life is viewed as the absolute standard of dearness.)
> Quis est nostrō *rēge* peior?
> Who is worse *than our king*? (Our king is viewed as the absolute standard of badness.)

The syntax of each italicized word (**vītā, rēge**) is **Ablative of Comparison.**

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Comparison arose from the original separative or "from" function of the abla-tive case (e.g., From [the standpoint of] my life the country is dearer).

A noun or, more commonly, a neuter singular substantive in the ablative case is used to indicate *the degree* or *amount* by which persons or things being compared differ. Such an ablative is called the **Ablative of Degree of Difference**. For example:

> *Multō* altior est fīlius quam pater.   By *much* taller is the son than (his) father.
>   The son is *much* taller than (his) father.
> Multīs ante *diēbus* Rōma discessit.   Earlier *by many days* from Rome he departed.
>   He departed from Rome many *days* earlier.

The syntax of each italicized word (**multō, diēbus**) is **Ablative of Degree of Dif-ference.**

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Degree of Difference is a variety of the Ablative of Means.

A Purpose clause that contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree is frequently introduced by quō instead of ut. Such a clause is a type of Relative Clause of Purpose (see §92). For example:

> Clara voce dīcō *quō* melius audiās.
> By means of a clear voice I speak *by which degree* better you may hear.
> I speak by means of a clear voice *in order that by this (degree)* you may hear better.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this construction **quō** is neuter singular ablative of the relative pronoun, and its antecedent is the *entire idea expressed by the main clause*. The syntax of **quō** is Ablative of Degree of Difference (modifying the comparative adverb in the Purpose clause). That is, "I speak by means of a clear voice in order that, *by the degree to which I speak in that way, (by that degree)* you may hear *better*."

2. The second English translation given above (in order that . . . by this [degree] . . . may) is to be preferred. The English phrase "by this (degree)" preserves the close connection between the main clause and the subordinate clause that the relative pronoun in Latin achieves. The words "in order that . . . may" clearly indicate the idea of *purpose* that the clause expresses.

The Partitive Genitive (§34) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference may be found with adjectives and adverbs in the superlative degree. For example:

> Fortissimus *omnium* es.
> The bravest *of all people* you are. (**omnium** = Partitive Genitive)
> You are the bravest *of all people.*
> Gladium *multō* optimum habeō.
> A sword (d.o.) *by much* the best I have. (**multō** = Ablative of Degree of Difference)
> I have *by far* the best sword.

The adverb **quam**, "as," "how," may be added to an adjective or adverb in the superlative degree to express the *highest possible* degree. The resulting phrase is translated "as _____ as possible."

> Quam clārissima est vōx eius.   As clear as possible is her voice.
>   Her voice is *as clear as possible.*
> Pugnāte *quam ācerrimē.*   Fight (pl.) *as fiercely as possible.*

☛ DRILL 111 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. The slave Toxilus explains why he is about to throw a party for all those who helped him overcome his enemy.

   improbus est homō quī beneficium scit accipere et reddere nescit.

   (Plautus, *Persa* 762)

   beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit
   improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless
   reddō (red- + dō) give back, return

2. The character Chremes responds to a suggestion that he mind his own business.

   homō sum: hūmānī nīl ā mē aliēnum putō. (Terence, *Heauton Timoroumenos* 77)

   aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien; estranged
   hūmānus, -a, -um human

3. An example of a proposition based on a false cause

   amor fugiendus nōn est: nam ex eō vērissima nāscitur amīcitia.

   (*Rhētorica ad Herennium* II.35)

4. Cicero sums up a description of a Sicilian house that was plundered by Verres.

   Domus erat nōn dominō magis ornāmentō quam cīvitātī. (Cicero, *In Verrem II* 4.5)

   ornāmentum, ornāmentī *n.* adornment, embellishment

5. Cicero comments on why elections are so unpredictable.

   nihil est incertius vulgō, nihil obscūrius voluntāte hominum, nihil fallācius ratiōne

   tōtā comitiōrum. (Cicero, *Prō Murēnā* 36)

   comitia, comitiōrum *n. pl.* (elective) assembly (of the Roman people)
   fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous
   obscūrus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure; uncertain

   ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning; way, method
   voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice
   vulgus, vulgī *n.* common people, (the) multitude, crowd

6. Cicero tells Catiline clearly that the conspiracy is at an end.

   tenēris undique; lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 6)

   undique (adv.) from all sides, on all sides

7. After Cicero reassures the Senate that all classes of the Roman people will support strong action against Catiline, he summarizes the nature of the plebs.

   multō vērō maxima pars eōrum quī in tabernīs sunt, immō vērō*—id enim

   potius est dīcendum—genus hoc ūniversum amantissimum est ōtī.

   (Cicero, *In Catilīnam IV* 17)

   *immō vērō, *introduces a remark that makes a preceding phrase or comment more precise, rather, more precisely*
   ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure

   potius (comparative adv.) rather
   taberna, tabernae *f.* shop
   ūniversus, -a, -um all together, entire, whole

8. In a speech delivered after Cicero's return from exile, the orator recalls those whom he missed most.

quid dulcius hominum generī ab nātūrā datum est quam suī* cuique† līberī?‡ mihi

vērō et propter indulgentiam meam et propter excellēns eōrum ingenium vītā sunt

meā cāriōrēs. (Cicero, *Post Reditum ad Populum* 2)

*suī refers to cuique, his own.	dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant
†cuique = *masc. sing. dat. of indef. pron.*, each man	excellēns, excellentis outstanding
‡līberī, *here*, children	indulgentia, indulgentiae *f.* leniency, indulgence

9. After Cicero describes the many different areas of expertise required of an orator, he gives the following summary.

quam ob rem nihil in hominum genere rārius perfectō* ōrātōre invenīrī potest.

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* I.127)

*perfectus, -a, -um complete, perfect
rārus, -a, -um rare, uncommon

10. A Ciceronian closing

haec, ut brevissimē dīcī potuērunt, ita ā mē dicta sunt. (Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* II.174)

11. Cicero resumes stating his main point after a short digression.

dictum est igitur ab ērudītissimīs virīs nisi sapientem līberum esse nēminem.

(Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 5.33)

ērudītus, -a, -um learned, accomplished

12. In a rhetorical overstatement Cicero favorably compares Roman writers to their Greek predecessors.

. . . sed meum semper iūdicium fuit omnia nostrōs aut invēnisse per sē sapientius

quam Graecōs aut accepta ab illīs fēcisse meliōra . . .

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.1)

Graecus, -a, -um Greek
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion

13. An opinion about the nature of death

sunt quī discessum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem.

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.18)

discessus, discessūs *m.* departure

14. A remark of Aristotle is recalled in a discussion of the relative longevity of mortal beings.

    apud Hypanim fluvium, quī ab Eurōpae parte in Pontum īnfluit, Aristotelēs

    ait bestiolās quāsdam nāscī quae ūnum diem vīvant.

    (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.94)

aiō (defective verb) say; ait = 3rd sing. pres. act.   fluvius, fluviī *m.* river, stream
    indic.   Hypanis, Hypanis *m.* Hypanis, a river in Asia
Aristotelēs, Aristotelis *m.* Aristotle   Minor; Hypanim = *acc. sing.*
bestiola, bestiolae *f.* little creature   īnfluō, īnfluere, īnfluxī, īnfluxus flow (into)
Eurōpa, Eurōpae *f.* Europe   Pontus, Pontī *m.* Black Sea

15. Cicero suggests avoiding pretense.

    quodsī vultum tibi, sī incessum fingerēs, quō gravior vidērēre, nōn essēs tuī simi-

    lis; verba tū fingās et ea dīcās quae nōn sentiās? (Cicero, *Dē Dīvīnātiōne* II.77)

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make; imagine
incessus, incessūs *m.* walking, gait
quodsī (conj.) but if
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

16. After Cicero recommends that extraordinary powers be granted to the young Octavian, the
    orator explains to the senate why he is sure that Caesar's adopted son will not repeat the
    mistakes of his father.

    nihil est illī* rē pūblicā cārius, nihil vestrā auctōritāte gravius, nihil bonōrum

    virōrum iūdiciō optātius, nihil vērā glōriā dulcius. (Cicero, *Philippics* V 50)

*illī refers to Octavian.
auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority
dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion

17. Cicero speaks affectionately of his best friend Atticus.

    . . . Pompōnium Atticum sīc amō ut alterum frātrem. nihil est illō mihi nec*

    cārius nec* iūcundius. (Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* XIII.1.5)

*These redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
Pompōnius Atticus, Pompōniī Atticī *m.* Pomponius Atticus

18. When Cicero finds his movements carefully monitored and controlled by Caesar's right-
    hand man, Antony, he complains to Atticus.

    quidnam mihi futūrum est aut quis mē nōn sōlum īnfēlīcior sed iam etiam

    turpior? (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* X.12.1)

quisnam, quidnam (interrog. pron.) who, tell me; what, tell me
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

19. Caesar describes a moment of confusion in his camp as the enemy unexpectedly attacks.

   tōtīs trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit.

   (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.37)

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble; panic
tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar

20. Caesar describes rumors flying through the camp.

   alius castra iam capta prōnuntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs

   barbarōs vēnisse contendit. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.37)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus struggle; claim
prōnuntiō (1-tr.) proclaim, pronounce, declare
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

21. The historian describes the character of the early Romans.

   igitur domī mīlitiaeque bonī mōrēs colēbantur; concordia maxuma, minuma avāri-

   tia erat; iūs bonumque apud eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat.

   (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 9)

avāritia, avāritiae *f.* greed, avarice
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate
concordia, concordiae *f.* harmony

maxuma = maxima
mīlitia, mīlitiae *f.* military service; mīlitiae = *loc.*
minuma = minima

22. Catiline exhorts his troops before the final battle against Cicero's forces.

   semper in proeliō eīs maxumum est perīculum quī maxumē timent; audācia prō

   mūrō habētur. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 58)

maxumum = maximum
maxumē = maximē

23. The biographer offers his opinion about the egotism of the Athenian politician and general Alcibiades.

   huic maximē putāmus malō fuisse nimiam opīniōnem ingeniī atque virtūtis.

   (Cornelius Nepos, *Vīta Alcibiadis* 7)

nimius, -a, -um excessive, too great
opīniō, opīniōnis *f.* opinion, judgment

24. The shepherd Mopsus shows deference to his friend Menalcas.

   tū maior: tibi mē est aequum pārēre . . . (Vergil, *Eclogues* V.4)

25. After a storm has torn apart the Trojan fleet, Aeneas tries to revive the spirits of his companions.

   ō sociī, (neque enim ignārī sumus ante malōrum),

   ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque fīnem. (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.198–99)

ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, ignorant, unaware

26. The Trojan Ilioneus, fearing that his friend and leader is dead, describes Aeneas to Dido.

rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō iūstior alter

nec pietāte fuit nec bellō maior et armīs. (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.544–45)

iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right
pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

27. The poet declares a new beginning for the war books that make up the second half of his epic.

. . . maior rērum mihi nāscitur ordō,

maius opus moveō. . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* VII.44–45)

ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank, class

28. The poet advises a friend to take nothing for granted.

inter spem cūramque, timōrēs inter et īrās

omnem crēde diem tibi dīlūxisse suprēmum:

grāta superveniet quae nōn spērābitur hōra. (Horace, *Epistulae* I.4.12–14)

dīlūcēscō, dīlūcēscere, dīlūxī, —— become light, dawn
grātus, -a, -um grateful, pleased; charming, pleasing
hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)
superveniō (super- + veniō) come down from above, arrive (unexpectedly)
suprēmus, -a, -um final, last

29. The elegist makes reference to Vergil's *Aeneid* as it is being written.

cēdite, Rōmānī scrīptōrēs, cēdite, Graī!

nescio quid* maius nāscitur Īliade. (Propertius II.34.65–66)

*nescio quid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,* I-don't-know-what, something; the -ō of nesciō here scans *short.*
Graius, -a, -um Greek; Graī = *voc. pl.*; Graī scans as if it were spelled *Graiī
Īlias, Īliadis *f.* the *Iliad*
scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer

30. Helen addresses Paris in an imaginary letter.

apta magis Venerī quam sunt tua corpora* Martī.

bella gerant fortēs, tū, Pari, semper amā! (Ovid, *Hērōidēs* XVII.253–54)

*corpus, *here, in pl.,* (physical) bearing, physique
aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit
Paris, Paridis *m.* Paris, son of Priam; Pari = *voc. sing.*

31. The poet gives advice on concealing a particular physical flaw.

sī brevis es, sedeās nē stāns videāre sedēre. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* III.263)

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated

32. When Hannibal hesitates to follow up his victory at Cannae by pressing his advantage, his lieutenant Maharbal criticizes him. The historian comments on the benefit to Rome.

"nōn omnia nīmīrum eīdem dī dedēre. vincere scīs, Hannibal, victōriā ūtī nescīs."

mora eius diēī satis crēditur salūtī fuisse urbī atque imperiō.

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.51.4)

nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, evidently
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

33. After a murderous plot is foiled in the Sicilian town of Syracuse, the public's emotions rage back and forth concerning what to do with the conspirators. The historian characterizes the crowd.

ea nātūra multitūdinis est: aut servit humiliter aut superbē dominātur; lībertātem,

quae media est, nec struere modicē nec habēre sciunt.

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXIV.25.8)

dominor (1-intr.) be a master
modicē (adv.) moderately, temperately
multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude

serviō, servīre, servīvī or serviī, servītum be a slave
struō, struere, strūxī, strūctus construct, devise
superbē (adv.) proudly; haughtily, arrogantly

34. The historian describes the valor of C. Popilius Sabellus in a battle against the Histri, a people living along the lower Danube river.

is pede sauciō relictus longē plūrimōs hostium occīdit.

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XLI.4.6)

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
saucius, -a, -um wounded

35. An utterance of a jurist in a rhetorical exercise

quaedam iūra nōn scrīpta, sed omnibus scrīptīs certiōra sunt.

(Seneca the Elder, *Contrōversiae* I.1.14)

36. The philosopher quotes the opinion of the Greek philosopher Epicurus about the nature of poverty and comments upon it.

"honesta," inquit, "rēs est laeta paupertās." Illa vērō nōn est paupertās sī laeta est;

nōn quī parum habet sed quī plūs cupit pauper est.

(Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* II.6)

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
pauper, pauperis poor
paupertās, paupertātis *f.* poverty

37. Phaedra explains her silence.

cūrae levēs locuntur,* ingentēs stupent. (Seneca the Younger, *Phaedra* 607)

*locuntur = loquuntur
stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, —— be stunned (into silence)

38. Age and wisdom are not necessarily linked.

saepe grandis nātū senex nūllum aliud habet argumentum quō sē probet diū

vīxisse praeter aetātem. (Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* IX.3.8)

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life
argumentum, argumentī *n.* proof
grandis, grande great
nātus, nātūs *m.* birth; age

praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except
probō (1-tr.) prove, demonstrate
senex, senis old

39. Pompey the Great rushes to arms without fear.

aut nihil est sēnsūs animīs ā morte relictum

aut mors ipsa nihil. . . . (Lucan, *Bellum Cīvīle* III.39)

40. The writer expresses a preference for depth over breadth.

. . . multā magis quam multōrum lēctiōne formanda mēns et dūcendus* color.

(Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* X.1.59)

*dūcō, *here,* fashion, mold, produce
color, colōris *m.* color; (rhetorical) tone
formō (1-tr.) mold, fashion, shape, form
lēctiō, lēctiōnis *f.* reading

41. Pliny identifies two worthy human endeavors.

equidem beātōs putō quibus deōrum mūnere datum est aut facere scrībenda aut

scrībere legenda. (Pliny the Younger, *Epistulae* VI.16.3)

beātus, -a, -um blessed, happy, fortunate
mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift; favor

42. Aulus Gellius recalls the opinion of an ancient poet.

alius quīdam veterum poētārum, cuius nōmen mihi nunc memoriae nōn est,

vēritātem temporis fīliam esse dīxit. (Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* XII.11)

memoria, memoriae *f.* memory
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth
vetus, veteris old

Longer Readings

1. Plautus, *Captīvī* 461–63

   The hungry parasite Ergasilus laments his fate.

   miser homō est, quī ipse sibi quod edit quaerit et id aegrē invenit,

   sed ille est miserior, quī et aegrē quaerit et nihil invenit;

   ille miserrimust, quī cum* ēsse cupit, tum quod edit nōn habet.

   *cum, *here* (conj.) when
   aegrē (adv.) scarcely, with difficulty
   edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus (irregular 3rd conjugation verb) eat; edit = *3rd sing. pres. act. subj.*
   tum (adv.) then, at that time

   The *Captīvī* (Captives) involves a war, two lost sons, and several cases of switched identity.

2. Plautus, *Casīna* 3–6

   An excerpt from a prologue spoken by an actor to the audience

   sī vērum dīxī, signum clārum date mihi

   ut vōs mī esse aequōs iam inde ā prīncipiō sciam.

   quī ūtuntur vīnō vetere sapientīs putō   5

   et quī libenter veterēs spectant fābulās.

   fābula, fābulae *f.* story, tale; play, drama   prīncipium, prīncipiī *n.* beginning
   inde (adv.) from there   spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe
   libenter (adv.) gladly   vetus, veteris old
   mī = mihi   vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine

   The *Casīna*, produced after 186 B.C.E., revolves around a father's and son's pursuit of the same woman, Casina, who has lived in the father's house since she was found as a baby.

3. Plautus, *Boeotia* frag.1–9

A fragment from a lost play of Plautus, in which a parasite makes a lament

ut* illum dī perdant, prīmus quī hōrās repperit

quīque adeō prīmus statuit hīc sōlārium;

quī mihi comminuit miserō articulātim diem.

nam ūnum mē puerō venter erat sōlārium,

multō omnium istōrum optimum et vērissimum.   5

ubi is tē monēbat, ēssēs, nisi cum† nīl erat;

nunc etiam quod est nōn ēstur nisi sōlī libet.

itaque adeō iam opplētum oppidum est sōlāriīs:

maior pars populī āridī reptant fame.

*ut = utinam	hōra, hōrae *f.* hour
†cum, *here* (conj.) when	itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
adeō (adv.) to that point; to such an extent; in	libet, libēre, libuit or libitum est (impersonal
addition to that, moreover	verb) it is pleasing
āridus, -a, -um dry; parched, shriveled	oppleō, opplēre, opplēvī, opplētus fill completely,
articulātim (adv.) limb by limb, limb from limb	fill up
comminuō, comminuere, comminuī,	perdō (per- + dō) lose; destroy, kill
comminūtus break into pieces, shatter	reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus find, discover
edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus (irregular 3rd conjugation	reptō (1-intr.) crawl about, creep along
verb) eat; ēssēs = *2nd sing. imperf. act. subjunc.,*	sōlārium, sōlāriī *n.* sundial
iterative subjunc., "you used to eat"; ēstur =	sōl, sōlis *m.* Sun
3rd sing. pres. pass. indic.	statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand,
famēs, famis *f.* hunger, starvation	set up, erect, station
hīc (adv.) here	venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

4. Cicero, *Prō Murēnā* 30

Cicero compares two skills of great importance in Roman life.

duae sint artēs igitur quae possint locāre hominēs in amplissimō gradū dignitātis,

ūna imperātōris, altera ōrātōris bonī. ab hōc enim pācis ornāmenta retinentur, ab illō

bellī perīcula repelluntur. cēterae tamen virtūtēs ipsae per sē multum valent, iūstitia,

fidēs, pudor, temperantia; quibus tē, Servī, excellere omnēs intellegunt.

amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished	pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),	repellō (re- + pellō), repellere, reppulī, repulsus
(the) other	push back, repel
dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity, rank, status	retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus
excellō, excellere, ——, —— be superior, be con-	keep hold of, retain, grasp
spicuous, excel	Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (Sulpicius Rufus), the
gradus, gradūs *m.* step, pace; tier, rank	prosecutor in the case
iūstitia, iūstitiae *f.* justice, fairness, equity	temperantia, temperantiae *f.* self-control, moder-
locō (1-tr.) place	ation
ornāmentum, ornāmentī *n.* adornment, embel-	
lishment	

The *Prō Murēnā* is Cicero's speech in defense of L. Licinius Murena (consul 62 B.C.E.), who was charged with corruption after his victory in the consular elections in 63. The trial took place at the time of the exposure of the Catilinarian conspiracy. The prosecution was supported by, among others, Cato the Younger, the staunch moral and political conservative.

5. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 27

In his speech attacking Catiline, Cicero uses the rhetorical device of *prosopopoeia*, a sustained speech in character with words and gestures appropriate to the assumed identity.

etenim sī mēcum patria, quae mihi vītā meā multō est cārior, sī cūncta Italia, sī omnis rēs pūblica loquātur: "M. Tullī, quid agis? tūne eum quem esse hostem comperistī, quem ducem bellī futūrum vidēs, quem exspectārī imperātōrem in castrīs hostium sentīs, auctōrem sceleris, prīncipem coniūrātiōnis, ēvocātōrem servōrum et cīvium perditōrum, exīre patiēre, ut abs tē nōn ēmissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videātur?"

abs = ab
auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author
comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus find
 out, learn
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
cūnctus, -a, -um all
ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out
ēvocātor, ēvocātōris *m.* summoner

exeō (ex- + eō), exīre, exiī or exīvī, exitum go out
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect
immittō (in- + mittō) send in, send against
perditus, -a, -um lost, degenerate, desperate
prīnceps, prīncipis first, foremost, chief; *as
 subst.*, leading man
scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy

6. Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* II.178

Cicero explains why it is important for an orator to appeal to an audience's emotions.

plūra enim multō hominēs iūdicant odiō aut amōre aut cupiditāte aut īrācundiā aut dolōre aut aliquā permōtiōne mentis quam vēritāte aut praescrīptō aut iūris normā aliquā aut iūdicī formulā aut lēgibus.

aliquā = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
formula, formulae *f.* formula, rule, standard
īrācundia, īrācundiae *f.* hot temper, anger
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion; legal pro-
 ceeding

iūdicō (1-tr.) form an opinion, judge, determine
norma, normae *f.* standard
permōtiō, permōtiōnis *f.* strong emotion
praescrīptum, praescrīptī *n.* rule, precept
vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth

The *Dē Ōrātōre* is a dialogue written shortly after Cicero's forced retirement from public life in 55 b.c.e. The dialogue is set in 91, and the chief speakers are the orators L. Licinius Crassus and M. Antonius (the grandfather of Marc Antony). The date places the dialogue immediately before the beginning of the war between Rome and her Italian allies or *sociī*. This Social War marks the beginning of a series of internal conflicts in the Roman Republic. All the characters in this fictional dialogue are historical, and many of them were to die within a few years of the dramatic date of the dialogue. In the first of the three books of the *Dē Ōrātōre*, the speakers discuss the importance of a lib-eral education for an orator. The remaining books are devoted to a closer analysis of the various parts of oratory.

7. Cicero, *Ōrātor* 226–27

Cicero summarizes the advantage to the orator of proper prose rhythm.

et quoniam plūra dē numerōsā ōrātiōne dīximus quam quisquam ante nōs, nunc dē
eius generis ūtilitāte dīcēmus. nihil enim est aliud, Brūte, quod quidem tū minimē
omnium ignōrās, pulchrē et ōrātōriē dīcere nisi optumīs sententiīs verbīsque lēctis-
simīs dīcere: et nec sententia ūlla est, quae frūctum ōrātōrī ferat, nisi aptē exposita
atque absolūtē, nec verbōrum lūmen appāret nisi dīligenter collocātōrum. et hōrum
utrumque* numerus illūstrat, numerus etiam—saepe enim hoc testandum est—
nōn modo† nōn poēticē vīnctus vērum etiam fugiēns illum eīque omnium dissimil-
limus.

*utrumque = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*
  each (of two)
†nōn modo = nōn sōlum
absolūtē (adv.) completely, perfectly
appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritus be visible,
  be clear; appear, become evident
aptē (adv.) properly, fittingly
Brūtus, Brūtī *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus, the ad-
  dressee of the *Ōrātor*
collocō (1-tr.) place, position, arrange
dīligenter (adv.) diligently
expōnō (ex- + pōnō) explain; display
frūctus, frūctūs *m.* profit, benefit, advantage
ignōrō (1-tr.) be unaware of, fail to recognize

illūstrō (1-tr.) illuminate, make clear
lūmen, lūminis *n.* light; illumination; enlighten-
  ment
numerōsus, -a, -um harmonious, rhythmical
numerus, numerī *m.* number; rhythm, cadence
optumīs = optimīs
ōrātōriē (adv.) in the manner of an orator, orator-
  ically
poēticē (adv.) poetically
quisquam = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*,
  anyone
testor (1-tr.) testify to, affirm solemnly
ūtilitās, ūtilitātis *f.* use, advantage
vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, join

The *Ōrātor* is the last of Cicero's treatises on oratory. Written in 46 B.C.E., it is addressed to M. Brutus and suppos-
edly responds to Brutus's request that Cicero describe the "best form and, as it were, figure of speaking." In the
Ōrātor Cicero devotes considerable space to his own views on the history and importance of prose rhythm (**numerus**)
in Greek and Roman oratory.

.

8. Catullus I (hendecasyllable; see §112)

The dedicatory poem of Catullus's published **libellus**

Cui dōnō lepidum novum libellum

āridā modo pūmice expolītum?

Cornēlī, tibi; namque tū solēbās

meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās

iam tum, cum* ausus es ūnus Italōrum   5

omne aevum tribus explicāre cartīs

doctīs, Iuppiter, et labōriōsīs.

quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī

quālecumque; quod, <ō>† patrōna virgō,

plūs ūnō maneat perenne saeclō.   10

*cum, *here* (conj.) when

†Pointed brackets mark an element added by scholars.

aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime; period of time, generation

aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.,* something

āridus, -a, -um dry

c(h)arta, c(h)artae *f.* leaf (of papyrus); book

Cornēlius, Cornēlii *m.* Cornelius (Nepos), addressee of the poem, writer of history and biography

doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite

explicō (1-tr.) unfold, reveal, explain

expoliō, expolīre, expolīvī, expolītus smooth, polish, finish

Italī, Italōrum *m. pl.* Italians

labōriōsus, -a, -um full of labor, elaborate

lepidus, -a, -um pleasant, charming, elegant

libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book

modo (adv.) only, now; just now

nūgae, nūgārum *f. pl.* trifles, nuggets; nonsense

patrōna, patrōnae *f.* patroness, protectress

perennis, perenne everlasting, perpetual, perennial

pūmex, pūmicis *f.* pumice stone

quālecumque = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. adj.,* of whatever sort

quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.,* whatever

saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation

tum (adv.) then, at that time

virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

9. Catullus XIII (hendecasyllable; *see* §112)

The poet issues an unusual invitation.

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē

paucīs, sī tibi dī favent, diēbus,

sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam

cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā

et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs.   5

haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,

cēnābis bene: nam tuī Catullī

plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.

sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs

seu quid* suāvius ēlegantiusve est: 10

nam unguentum dabo,† quod meae puellae

dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;

quod tū cum‡ olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,

tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

*quid, *here, neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,* any-
  thing
†The -ō of dabō here scans *short.*
‡cum, *here* (conj. + indic.) when
afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring to-
  ward, bring along
arānea, arāneae *f.* spider; cobweb
cachinnus, cachinnī *m.* loud laugh
candidus, -a, -um white, clear, bright, radiant
cēna, cēnae *f.* dinner
cēnō (1-intr.) dine
dōnārunt = dōnāvērunt
ēlegāns, ēlegantis select, tasteful, elegant
Fabullus, Fabullī *m.* Fabullus
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum be favorable, favor
  (+ dat.)

inquam (defective verb) say; inquam = *1st sing.*
  pres. act. indic.
merus, -a, -um pure, unmixed
nāsus, nāsī *m.* nose
olfaciō, olfacere, olfēcī, olfactus smell
plēnus, -a, -um full
rogō (1-tr.) ask
sacculus, sacculī *m.* (little) bag, wallet
sal, salis *n.* salt; wit
seu (conj.) or if
suāvis, suāve sweet, pleasant; fragrant
unguentum, unguentī *n.* ointment; perfume
-ve (enclitic conj.) or
venustus, -a, -um charming, pleasing
vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine

10. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 14

Adherbal addresses the Roman senate about his cousin Jugurtha's cruel treatment of
captives.

captī ab Iugurthā pars in crucem āctī, pars bestiīs obiectī sunt, paucī, quibus relicta

est anima, clausī in tenebrīs cum maerōre et lūctū morte graviōrem vītam exigunt.

bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus close, shut; con-
  fine, enclose
crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross
exigō (ex- + agō), exigere, exēgī, exāctus drive
  out; spend, pass
Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha, king of
  Numidia

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning
maeror, maerōris *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning
obiciō (ob- + iaciō) throw in front of, throw to
  (+ dat.)
tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.40–56

As the Trojans debate whether to bring the Greeks' gift of a horse into the city, their priest Laocoön utters a vain warning.

prīmus ibi ante omnīs magnā comitante catervā   40

Lāocoön ardēns summā dēcurrit ab arce,

et procul "ō miserī, quae tanta īnsānia, cīvēs?

crēditis āvectōs hostīs? aut ūlla putātis

dōna carēre dolīs Danaum? sīc nōtus Ulīxēs?

aut hōc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achīvī,   45

aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est māchina mūrōs,

īnspectūra* domōs ventūraque* dēsuper urbī,

aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite,† Teucrī,

quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentīs."

*īnspectūra, ventūra, *fut. act. participles expressing purpose,* in order to . . .

†nē crēdite = negative imper.

Achīvī, Achīvōrum *m. pl.* Achaeans, Greeks

aliquis = *masc. nom. sing. of indef. pron. used as an adjective,* some

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage

arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel

āvehō, āvehere, āvexī, āvectus convey away; *in passive,* go away, depart

caterva, catervae *f.* throng, crowd, troop

comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks; Danaum = Danaōrum

dēcurrō, dēcurrere, dē(cu)currī, dēcursum run down, hurry down

dēsuper (adv.) from above

dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick; cunning

equus, equī *m.* horse

error, errōris *m.* mistake; deceit

fabricō (1-tr.) fashion, construct, devise

ibi (adv.) there; then

inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus enclose

īnsānia, īnsāniae *f.* madness, insanity

īnspiciō, īnspicere, īnspexī, īnspectus examine, inspect, observe

Lāocoön, Lāocoöntis *m.* Laocoön

lateō, latēre, latuī, —— (intr.) hide, lie hidden, be concealed

lignum, lignī *n.* wood

māchina, māchinae *f.* mechanism; structure

occultō (1-tr.) hide, conceal

procul (adv.) at a distance, from a distance

quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.,* whatever

tantus, -a, -um so great

Teucrī, Teucrōrum *m. pl.* descendants of Teucer, Teucrians, Trojans

Ulīxēs, Ulīxis *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)

sīc fātus validīs ingentem vīribus hastam   50

in latus inque ferī curvam compāgibus alvum

contorsit. stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō

īnsonuēre cavae gemitumque dedēre cavernae.

et, sī fāta deum, sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset,

impulerat* ferrō Argolicās foedāre latebrās,   55

Troiaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta, manērēs.

*impulerat, pluperf. indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence

Argolicus, -a, -um of Argos, Argive; Greek

alvus, alvī f. belly

arx, arcis f. tower, citadel

caverna, cavernae f. cavern, cavity, hollow

cavus, -a, -um hollow

compāgēs, compāgis f. joint, seam; fastening

contorqueō, contorquēre, contorsī, contortus twist; hurl

curvus, -a, -um curved

ferus, ferī m. wild beast

foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile; wound savagely, mangle

for (1-tr.) speak, utter

gemitus, gemitūs m. groan(ing), moan(ing)

hasta, hastae f. spear

impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus push on; drive, compel

īnsonō, īnsonāre, īnsonuī, —— make a loud noise, resound

laevus, -a, -um left; unfavorable, adverse; dull

latebra, latebrae f. hiding place, lair, recess

latus, lateris n. side, flank

recutiō, recutere, recussī, recussus strike (back), shake

tremō, tremere, tremuī, —— tremble, quiver, shake

uterus, uterī m. belly, womb

12. Vergil, *Aeneid* III.374–80

Helenus the seer begins his response to Aeneas, who has asked for advice on how to proceed to Italy.

"Nāte deā (nam tē maiōribus īre per altum

auspiciīs manifesta fidēs; sīc fāta deum rēx   375

sortītur volvitque vicēs, is vertitur ordō)

pauca tibi ē multīs, quō tūtior hospita lūstrēs

aequora et Ausoniō possīs cōnsīdere portū,

expediam dictīs; prohibent nam cētera Parcae

scīre Helenum fārīque vetat Sāturnia Iūnō . . .   380

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water

Ausonius, -a, -um of Ausonia, Ausonian, Italian

auspicium, auspiciī *n.* augury, omen

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other

cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, —— sit; settle, make one's home

expediō, expedīre, expedīvī, expedītus unravel, explain

for (1-tr.) speak, utter

Helenus, Helenī *m.* Helenus, son of Priam and seer

hospitus, -a, -um hospitable

lūstrō (1-tr.) roam through, traverse; survey, look upon

manifestus, -a, -um revealed by clear signs, plain, obvious

ordō, ordinis *m.* order; series, sequence

Parcae, Parcārum *f. pl.* Parcae, goddesses of fate

portus, portūs *m.* harbor; refuge, haven

prohibeō (prō- + habeō), prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid

Sāturnius, -a, -um of Saturn, king of the Titans and father of Juno; Saturnian

sortior, sortīrī, sortītus sum assign by lot, determine

tūtus, -a, -um safe

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn; spin

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid

——, vicis *f.* turning, turn; succession; situation, lot

volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over, roll; unroll; bring round

13. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.653–57

The wounded Rutulian Saces implores Turnus to enter the battle.

Turne, in tē suprēma salūs, miserēre tuōrum.

fulminat Aenēās armīs summāsque minātur

dēiectūrum* arcēs Italum excidiōque datūrum,*   655

iamque facēs ad tēcta volant. in† tē ōra Latīnī,

in† tē oculōs referunt;‡ . . .

*dēiectūrum, datūrum, subject is sē

†in, *here,* toward

‡referō, *here,* direct

arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel

dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, topple, overthrow

excidium, excidiī *n.* (military) destruction

fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch

fulminō (1-intr.) strike (like lightning), flash fiercely

Italī, Italōrum *m. pl.* Italians; Italum = Italōrum

Latīnī, Latīnōrum *m. pl.* (the) Latins, the peoples of Latium

minor (1-intr.) threaten

misereor, miserērī, miseritus sum pity, take pity on (+ gen.)

ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face

suprēmus, -a, -um final, last

tēctum, tēctī *n.* roof; house

volō (1-intr.) fly

14. Horace, *Carmina* I.5 (Asclepiadean; see §112)

The poet addresses an old and dangerous flame.

> Quis* multā gracilis tē puer in rosā
> perfūsus liquidīs urget odōribus
>   grātō, Pyrrha, sub antrō?
>   cui flāvam religās comam
>
> simplex munditiīs? heu quotiēns fidem   5
> mūtātōsque deōs flēbit et aspera
>   nigrīs aequora ventīs
>   ēmīrābitur īnsolēns,
>
> quī nunc tē fruitur crēdulus aureā,
> quī semper vacuam, semper amābilem   10
>   spērat, nescius aurae
>   fallācis. miserī, quibus
>
> intemptāta nitēs: mē tabulā sacer
> vōtīvā pariēs indicat ūvida
>   suspendisse potentī   15
>   vestīmenta maris deō.

*quis, *here, interrog. pron. used adjectivally*, what, which

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water

amābilis, amābile lovable

antrum, antrī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless; severe

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

aureus, -a, -um golden

coma, comae *f.* hair

crēdulus, -a, -um trusting, credulous

ēmīror (1-tr.) (thoroughly) admire, marvel at, be astonished at

fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous

flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

gracilis, gracile slender, thin, fine

grātus, -a, -um grateful, pleased; charming, pleasing

indicō (1-tr.) declare, indicate

īnsolēns, īnsolentis unaccustomed, unfamiliar

intemptātus, -a, -um untried

liquidus, -a, -um liquid, clear

munditia, munditiae *f.* elegance, neatness

mūtō (1-tr.) change

nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ gen.)

niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black

niteō, nitēre, nituī, —— be radiant, shine

odor, odōris *m.* odor, scent

pariēs, parietis *m.* wall (of a building)

perfundō, perfundere, perfūdī, perfūsus pour over, spray, drench

potēns, potentis powerful, having power over (+ gen.)

Pyrrha, Pyrrhae *f.* Pyrrha, addressee of the poem

quotiēns (adv.) how many times

religō (1-tr.) bind back, bind up; unbind

rosa, rosae *f.* rose

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

simplex, simplicis simple, plain

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)

suspendō, suspendere, suspendī, suspēnsus hang, suspend, hang up

tabula, tabulae *f.* plank, tablet; plaque, picture

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —— weigh down; press hard; urge, pursue

ūvidus, -a, -um moist, wet, damp

vacuus, -a, -um empty; idle; free, available; carefree, disengaged

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

vestīmentum, vestīmentī *n.* garment, clothing

vōtīvus, -a, -um votive, offered in fulfillment of a vow

15. Horace, *Carmina* II.9 (Alcaic strophe; see §112)

The poet advises a lugubrious friend, Valgius.

> Nōn semper imbrēs nūbibus hispidōs
> mānant in agrōs aut mare Caspium
>   vexant inaequālēs procellae
>   ūsque nec Armeniīs in ōrīs,
>
> amīce Valgī, stat glaciēs iners   5
> mēnsīs per omnīs aut Aquilōnibus
>   querquēta Gargānī labōrant
>   et foliīs viduantur ornī:
>
> tū semper urgēs flēbilibus modīs
> Mystēn adēmptum nec tibi vesperō   10
>   surgente dēcēdunt amōrēs
>   nec rapidum fugiente sōlem.

adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptus remove, take away
Aquilō, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo, the north wind
Armenius, -a, -um Armenian
Caspius, -a, -um Caspian
dēcēdō (dē- + cēdō) go down, depart
flēbilis, flēbile plaintive; *tearful*
folium, foliī *n.* leaf
Gargānus, Gargānī *m.* Garganus, a mountain in Horace's home district of Apulia
glaciēs, glaciēī *f.* ice
hispidus, -a, -um hairy; rough, bristly
imber, imbris, -ium *m.* rain, shower
inaequālis, inaequāle uneven, unlike; that roughens the sea
iners, inertis inactive, idle, inert
mānō (1-intr.) trickle, drip, stream, flow
mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium *m.* month
Mystēs, Mystae *m.* Mystes; Mystēn = *acc. sing.*

nūbēs, nūbis, -ium *f.* cloud
ōra, ōrae *f.* shore
ornus, ornī *f.* ash tree
procella, procellae *f.* blast (of wind), windstorm
querquētum, querquētī *n.* oak forest, oak grove
rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming; rushing, rapid
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun
surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise, rise up
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —— weigh down; press hard
ūsque (adv.) continuously
Valgius, Valgiī *m.* (C.) Valgius (Rufus), an Augustan elegiac poet and addressee of the poem
vesper, vesperī *m.* Vesper, the evening star; evening
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass
viduō (1-intr.) deprive of (+ abl.)

at nōn ter aevō fūnctus amābilem

plōrāvit omnīs Antilochum senex

    annōs nec inpūbem parentēs   15

        Trōilon aut Phrygiae sorōrēs

flēvēre semper. dēsine mollium

tandem querellārum et potius nova

    cantēmus Augustī tropaea

        Caesaris et rigidum Niphātēn,   20

Mēdumque flūmen gentibus additum

victīs minōrēs volvere verticēs

    intrāque praescrīptum Gelōnōs

        exiguīs equitāre campīs.

addō (ad- + dō) add

aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime; period of time, generation

amābilis, amābile lovable

Antilochus, Antilochī *m.* Antilochus, son of Nestor, slain by Memnon

at (conj.) but

Augustus, Augustī *m.* Augustus

cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī or **dēsīvī, dēsitum** stop, cease; cease (from) (+ gen.)

equitō (1-intr.) ride (on horseback)

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum perform, execute; complete (+ abl.)

Gelōnī, Gelōnōrum *m. pl.* the Geloni, a nomadic tribe of Scythians who often made raids on horseback into Roman territory

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family

inpūbēs, inpūbis underage, youthful, beardless

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

Mēdus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the Medes, Median, Persian; **Mēdum flūmen** = the Euphrates, by which dwelled the Parthians

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

Niphātēs, Niphātae *m.* the Niphates, a mountain range in Armenia; **Niphātēn** = *acc. sing.*

parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

Phrygius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan

plōrō (1-tr.) weep for, mourn

potius (adv.) rather

praescrīptum, praescrīptī *n.* boundary line, limit

querella, querellae *f.* complaint, lament

rigidus, -a, -um rigid, stiff; inflexible; frozen

senex, senis old; *as masc. subst.,* old man

ter (adv.) three times, thrice

Trōilus, Trōilī *m.* Troilus, youngest son of Priam and Hecuba, killed by Achilles; **Trōilon** = *acc. sing.*

tropaeum, tropaeī *n.* trophy; victory

vertex, verticis *m.* swirling water, whirlpool, eddy

volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over, roll

16. Horace, *Ars Poëtica* 323–26

The poet compares Greeks and Romans.

Graīs ingenium, Graīs dedit ōre rotundō

Mūsa loquī, praeter laudem nūllīus avārīs.

Rōmānī puerī longīs ratiōnibus assem   325

discunt in partīs centum dīdūcere . . .

as, assis, -ium *m. as* (a small denomination of
   Roman money)
avārus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious; hungry (for)
   (+ gen.)
dīdūcō (dis- + dūcō) divide, split
discō, discere, didicī, —— learn (how) (+ inf.)
Graius, -a, -um Greek; Graīs = *dat. pl.;*
   Graīs scans as if it were spelled *Graiīs.

laus, laudis *f.* praise
Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; calculation
rotundus, -a, -um rounded

The *Ars Poëtica* is one of Horace's *Epistulae,* a collection of long hexameter didactic poems on a variety of subjects. The poet of the *Ars Poëtica* offers observations and guidance on poetry generally and drama in particular. This playful, imaginative, and insightful 476-line poem speaks with authority on both style and content, but its overall structure and prescription for poetry are elusive.

17. Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.61–66

The poet reassures a whole variety of future lovers.

seu caperis prīmīs et adhūc crēscentibus annīs,

    ante oculōs veniet vēra puella tuōs:

sīve cupis iuvenem, iuvenēs tibi mīlle placēbunt.

    cōgēris vōtī nescius esse tuī:

seu tē forte* iuvat sēra et sapientior aetās,   65

    hoc quoque, crēde mihī,† plēnius agmen erit.

*fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck
†The final -i of mihi here scans *long.*
adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still
aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life
agmen, agminis *n.* (battle) line; throng; train
cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive to-
   gether, force, compel
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase
iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* or *f.* young man, young
   woman

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist, aid; give
   pleasure, delight
nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ gen.)
plēnus, -a -um full
sērus, -a, -um late; advanced
sīve or seu (conj.) or if; sīve (seu) . . . sīve
   (seu) . . . whether . . . or if . . .
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer; desire

18. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* VII.17–23

After the Colchian king Aeetes explains the impossible labors that Jason and the Argonauts must perform in order to win the Golden Fleece, the king's daughter Medea scolds herself for the feelings aroused in her by the handsome stranger Jason.

excute virgineō conceptās pectore flammās,

sī potes, īnfēlīx! sī possem, sānior essem!

sed trahit invītam nova vīs, aliudque cupīdō,

mēns aliud suādet: videō meliōra probōque,   20

dēteriōra sequor! quid* in† hospite, rēgia virgō,

ūreris et thalamōs aliēnī concipis orbis?

haec quoque terra potest quod amēs dare...

*quid, *here* (adv.), why
†in, *here*, in the case of
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien, strange; foreign
concipiō (con- + capiō) conceive, produce; imagine
cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire
dēterior, dēterius worse
excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussus throw out, shake off, drive away
flamma, flammae *f.* flame
hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger; host
invītus, -a, -um unwilling
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world, region

probō (1-tr.) approve of
rēgius, -a, -um royal
sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend, urge, advise
thalamus, thalamī *m. in sing. or pl.* inner room, wedding chamber; marriage
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag
ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn, scorch, inflame, consume
virgineus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to a maiden, maidenly
virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

19. Ovid, *Tristia* II.421–30

After defending his poetic license by reference to Greek writers, the poet turns to Roman writers for support as well.

nēve peregrīnīs tantum dēfendar ab armīs,

    et Rōmānus habet multa iocōsa liber.

utque suō Martem cecinit gravis Ennius ōre—

    Ennius ingeniō maximus, arte rudis—

explicat ut causās rapidī Lucrētius ignis,   425

    cāsūrumque triplex vāticinātur opus,*

sīc sua† lascīvō cantāta est saepe Catullō‡

    fēmina, cui falsum Lesbia nōmen erat;

nec contentus eā, multōs vulgāvit amōrēs,

    in quibus ipse suum fassus adulterium est.   430

*cāsūrum . . . triplex . . . opus refers to Lucretius's prediction about the future of the universe, which he divides into the sea, land, and sky.
†sua, refers to Catullō, his own
‡Catullō, Dative of Agent
adulterium, adulteriī *n.* adultery
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied; contained
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend
Ennius, Enniī *m.* Ennius
explicō (1-tr.) unfold, reveal, explain
iocōsus, -a, -um full of jokes; laughable, funny
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint

Lucrētius, Lucrētiī *m.* Lucretius
nēve (conj.) = nē + -ve (enclitic conj.) or
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; voice; eloquence
peregrīnus, -a, -um foreign
rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming; rushing, rapid
rudis, rude unformed, rough; crude, unrefined, unfinished
tantum (adv.) only
triplex, triplicis threefold; tripartite
vāticinor (1-tr.) warn of, predict, prophesy
vulgō (1-tr.) make (something) public; make famous

The *Tristia* is one of two works composed by Ovid after he was forced to leave Rome by Augustus in 8 C.E. In five books of elegiac verse the poet interweaves appeals to Augustus for his recall with accounts of life and weather in an uncivilized land far from Rome.

20. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* V.49.6

> After the long, painful siege of Rome by the Gauls that nearly ends in surrender, the Romans, led by the dictator Camillus, rout the Gauls first in Rome and then outside it. The historian describes the second battle.

ibi caedēs omnia obtinuit; castra capiuntur et nē nuntius quidem clādis relictus. dictātor reciperātā ex hostibus patriā triumphāns in urbem redit, interque iocōs mīlitārēs quōs inconditōs iaciunt, Rōmulus ac parēns patriae conditorque alter urbis haud vānīs laudibus appellābātur.

appellō (1-tr.) name, call
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
clādēs, clādis *f.* slaughter, destruction
conditor, conditōris *m.* founder
dictātor, dictātōris *m.* dictator, an emergency
  officer with unlimited powers
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
ibi (adv.) there; then
inconditus, -a, -um unpolished, rough, crude
iocus, iocī *m.* joke, jest

laus, laudis *f.* praise
mīlitāris, mīlitāre military
nuntius, nuntiī *m.* messenger
obtineō (ob- + teneō), obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus
  persist in; extend over, have a hold on
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
reciperō (1-tr.) get back, recover, regain
triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph, triumph
vānus, -a, -um empty, illusory; groundless, false

21. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.49.10

Aemilius Paulus responds to Cn. Lentulus's request that he, Paulus, save himself and leave the ravaged battlefield.

"abī, nuntiā pūblicē patribus: urbem Rōmānam mūniant ac priusquam victor hostis adveniat praesidiīs firment; prīvātim Q. Fabiō L. Aemilium praeceptōrum eius memorem et vīxisse adhūc et morī. mē in hāc strāge mīlitum meōrum patere exspīrāre, nē aut reus iterum ē cōnsulātū sim <aut>* accūsātor collēgae exsistam ut aliēnō crīmine innocentiam meam prōtegam." haec eōs agentēs† prius turba fugientium cīvium, deinde hostēs oppressēre.

*Pointed brackets mark an element added by scholars.

†agō, *here,* speak about, discuss

accūsātor, accūsātōris *m.* accuser, prosecutor

adhūc (adv.) up to this time

adveniō (ad- + veniō) arrive; adveniat, *subjunc. expressing anticipation,* can arrive

L. Aemilius, L. Aemiliī *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 B.C.E.), one of the Roman leaders at the disastrous battle of Cannae

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; done by another

collēga, collēgae *m.* colleague (in office)

crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime

deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next

ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)titī, —— stand out, appear; prove to be

ex(s)pīrō (1-intr.) breathe out, expire; die

Q. Fabius, Q. Fabiī *m.* Q. Fabius (Maximus) (consul 233, 228, 215, 214, 209 B.C.E.; censor 230, dictator 217), one of the heroes of the second Punic war

firmō (1-tr.) strengthen

innocentia, innocentiae *f.* innocence

iterum (adv.) again, a second time

memor, memoris mindful, remembering (+ gen.)

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī or mūniī, mūnītus fortify

nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress; overwhelm, crush

praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* (piece of) advice, instruction

praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison

priusquam (conj. + indic. *or* subjunc.) before

prīvātim (adv.) in private, privately

prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus protect, defend

reus, reī *m.* defendant; *when Paulus was first consul in 219, he was accused of embezzlement*

strāgēs, strāgis *f.* destruction, slaughter

turba, turbae *f.* crowd

victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

22. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXX.30.18

In 202 B.C.E. a besieged Hannibal attempted to negotiate terms of peace with his respected Roman counterpart, the great Roman general Scipio Africanus. Scipio rejected Hannibal's pleas and then decisively defeated the Carthaginians in the last battle of the second Punic war. The following passage is a portion of Hannibal's speech to Scipio, as reported by the historian. Hannibal tries to convince Scipio to avoid a pitched battle.

maximae cuique* fortūnae minimē crēdendum est. in bonīs tuīs rēbus, nostrīs

dubiīs, tibi ampla ac speciōsa dantī est pāx, nōbīs petentibus magis necessāria quam

honesta. melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria; haec in tuā, illa in

deōrum manū est. nē tot annōrum fēlīcitātem in† ūnīus hōrae dederis† discrīmen.

*cuique = *fem. sing. dat. of indef. adj.*, each
†dare . . . in . . . to consign . . . to . . .
amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished
discrīmen, discrīminis *n.* dividing line, difference; decision; critical point
dubius, -a, -um uncertain, doubtful
fēlīcitās, fēlīcitātis *f.* good fortune, luck; prosperity

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour
necessārius, -a, -um necessary
speciōsus, -a, -um attractive, splendid
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for), expect
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
tūtus, -a, -um safe
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

23. Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* IV.31.4

The philosopher advises Novatus on what kind of behavior he may expect from human beings.

quid enim mīrum est malōs mala facinora ēdere? quid novī est sī inimīcus nocet, amīcus offendit, fīlius lābitur, servus peccat? turpissimam aiēbat Fabius imperātōrī excūsātiōnem esse "nōn putāvī." ego turpissimam hominī putō. omnia putā, ex-pectā: etiam in bonīs mōribus aliquid existet asperius. fert* hūmāna nātūra īn-sidiōsōs animōs, fert ingrātōs, fert cupidōs, fert impiōs. cum⁺ dē ūnīus mōribus iūdicābis, dē pūblicīs cōgitā. ubi maximē gaudēbis, maximē metuēs; ubi tranquilla tibi omnia videntur, ibi nocitūra nōn dēsunt sed quiēscunt. semper futūrum aliquid quod tē offendat exīstimā.

*ferō, *here,* produce
⁺cum, *here* (conj.) when
aiō (defective verb) say; aiēbat = *3rd sing. imperf. act. indic.*
aliquid = *neut. sing. nom. or acc. of indef. pron.,* something
asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless; severe
dēsum (dē- + sum), dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus be absent, be lacking
ēdō (ē- + dō) emit; produce, perform; commit
excūsātiō, excūsātiōnis *f.* excuse
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)titī, —— stand out, appear.
exīstimō (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, think
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect
Fabius, Fabiī *m.* (Q.) Fabius (Maximus), hero of the second Punic war
facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased

hūmānus, -a, -um human
ibi (adv.) there; then
ingrātus, -a, -um ungrateful; unpleasant, displeasing
īnsidiōsus, -a, -um treacherous, deceitful
iūdicō (1-tr.) form an opinion, judge, determine
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum slip, glide; fall, fall into error
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread
mīrus, -a, -um marvelous, astonishing
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus be harmful, do harm
offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus trouble, upset, give offense to, annoy
peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum be asleep, be dormant, lie quiet
tranquillus, -a, -um calm, quiet, still
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

In twelve books together given the title *Dialogī* (Dialogues), although they are not written in dialogue form, Seneca discusses a number of moral and philosophical ideas. For the most part each book is addressed to a different person and treats a single question. Three books of the *Dialogī* (III–V) discuss fully the question of how anger may be restrained. Taken together they are often entitled *Dē Irā*.

24. Florus, *Epitoma Bellōrum Omnium* I.31

Florus summarizes the opinions of two famous Romans about how best to deal with
Carthage after that city had rearmed itself for the first time in fifty years (ca. 152 B.C.E.).

Catō inexpiābilī odiō dēlendam esse Carthāginem, et cum* dē aliō cōnsulerētur,
prōnuntiābat, Scīpiō Nāsīca servandam, nē metū ablātō aemulae luxuriārī fēlīcitās
urbis inciperet; medium senātus ēlēgit ut urbs tantum locō movērētur. nihil enim
speciōsius vidēbātur quam esse Carthāginem quae nōn timērētur.

*cum, *here* (conj. + subjunc.), (under the circum-
  stances) when
aemulus, -a, -um emulous, rival
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus take
  counsel, consult, consider
ēligō (ē- + legō), ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus select,
  choose
fēlīcitās, fēlīcitātis *f.* good fortune, luck; prosperity
incipiō (in- + capiō) take on, begin
inexpiābilis, inexpiābile implacable

luxurior (1-tr.) revel, luxuriate, become intoxi-
  cated
prōnuntiō (1-tr.) proclaim, pronounce, declare
Scīpiō Nāsīca, Scīpiōnis Nāsīcae *m.*
  (P. Cornelius) Scipio Nasica (consul
  162 B.C.E., censor 159), political opponent of
  Cato the Elder
speciōsus, -a, -um attractive, splendid
tantum (adv.) only

Nothing certain is known about the writer Florus—not even his first name. One of the works that is attributed to a
writer named Florus is entitled *Epitoma dē Titō Līviō Bellōrum Omnium Annōrum DCC* (An Abridgement from Titus
Livius of All the Wars of Seven Hundred Years). The work is a concise summary and reconstruction of the history
of Roman military encounters and the rise of the Roman people to prominence in the Mediterranean. Although the
title suggests that the author is summarizing the historian Livy, Florus's *Epitoma* makes reference to that historian
among many other historians and writers. Internal evidence, as well as the association of the Florus of the *Epitoma*
with other writers of the same name, suggests that the work was written in the second century C.E.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 11

Having revealed Catiline's dangerous plans, Cicero boasts of his own survival.

magna dīs immortālibus habenda est atque huic ipsī Iovī Statōrī, antīquissimō custōdī huius urbis, grātia, quod* hanc tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque īnfestam reī pūblicae pestem totiēns iam effūgimus. nōn est saepius in† ūnō homine summa salūs perīclitanda reī pūblicae. quam diū‡ mihi cōnsulī dēsignātō, Catilīna, īnsidiātus es, nōn pūblicō mē praesidiō, sed prīvātā dīligentiā dēfendī. cum proximīs comitiīs cōnsulāribus mē cōnsulem in campō et competītōrēs tuōs interficere voluistī, compressī cōnātūs tuōs nefāriōs amīcōrum praesidiō et cōpiīs nūllō tumultū pūblicē concitātō; dēnique, quotiēnscumque mē petīstī, per mē tibi obstitī, quamquam vidēbam perniciem meam cum magnā calamitāte reī pūblicae esse coniūnctam.

*quod, *here* (conj.), because
†in, *here,* in the case of
‡quam diū, *here,* as long as
calamitās, calamitātis *f.* disaster, misfortune, injury
comitia cōnsulāria, comitiōrum cōnsulārium *n. pl.* election of consuls
competītor, competītōris *m.* competitor, rival
comprimō, comprimere, compressī, compressus crush; subdue, suppress
cōnātus, cōnātūs *m.* attempt
concitō (1-tr.) stir up, rouse
coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus join together
custōs, custōdis *m.* or *f.* guardian, protector, sentry
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
dēsignātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet installed)
effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape
grātia, grātiae *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks

horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful
immortālis, immortāle immortal
īnfestus, -a, -um hostile, harmful
īnsidior (1-intr.) lie in wait for; plot against (+ dat.)
nefārius, -a, -um unspeakable, wicked
obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstitī, obstātum stand in the way; hinder, block (+ dat.)
perīclitor (1-tr.) put in peril, endanger
perniciēs, perniciēī *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster
pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison
prīvātus, -a, -um private
proximus, -a, -um nearest; most recent, last
quotiēnscumque (conj.) however often, as often as
Stator, Statōris *m.* (the) Stayer or Protector
taeter, taetra, taetrum repulsive, foul
tam (adv.) so
totiēns (adv.) so many times
tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar
volō, velle, voluī, —— be willing, want, wish

Cicero's first speech, *In Catilīnam I,* was delivered before the members of the senate (including Catiline himself) in 63 B.C.E. Having learned that Catiline had recruited an army and was planning the murders of all the leading men of the state, the consul Cicero sought to inform the senate and win their approval for action against the conspirators. Despite some strong support, even among the senators, Catiline and his forces were ultimately defeated, and Catiline was killed in a battle north of Rome.

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 1

Sallust begins his account of the Catilinarian conspiracy with a broad discussion of the human condition.

Omnīs hominēs quī sēsē student praestāre cēterīs animālibus summā ope nītī decet
nē vītam silentiō trānseant, velutī pecora quae nātūra prōna atque ventrī oboedientia
fīnxit. sed nostra omnis vīs in animō et corpore sita est: animī imperiō, corporis servi-
tiō magis ūtimur; alterum nōbīs cum dīs, alterum cum bēluīs commūne est. quō
mihi rēctius vidētur ingenī quam vīrium opibus glōriam quaerere, et, quoniam vīta
ipsa quā fruimur brevis est, memoriam nostrī quam maxumē longam* efficere; nam
dīvitiārum et formae glōria fluxa atque fragilis est, virtūs clāra aeternaque habētur.

*quam maxumē longam = quam longissimam
aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting
bēlua, bēluae *f.* wild beast
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other
commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in common
decet, decēre, decuit, —— (impersonal verb) it is becoming, it is proper (+ acc. + inf.)
dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* wealth, riches
efficiō (ex- + faciō) bring about
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make; imagine
fluxus, -a, -um flowing, loose; weak, fleeting, perishable
forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty
fragilis, fragile easily broken, frail
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
maxumē = maximē
memoria, memoriae *f.* memory, remembrance
nītor, nītī, nīxus or nīsus sum rest upon, rely on (+ abl.); make an effort, strive

oboediēns, oboedientis obedient, compliant, subject
ops, opis *f.* power, ability, might, effort; *in pl.*, power, resources, wealth
pecus, pecoris *n.* (herd) animal, livestock; *in pl.*, farm animals
praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitum stand before, be superior, excel (+ dat.)
prōnus, -a, -um leaning *or* bending forward
rēctus, -a, -um straight; right, correct
servitium, servitiī *n.* slavery
silentium, silentiī *n.* silence; silentiō, *Ablative of Manner,* in silence
situs, -a, -um placed, set, situated
studeō, studēre, studuī, —— be eager, desire
trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsiī or trānsīvī, trānsitus go across, pass through
velutī (conj.) even as, just as
venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.491–505

> īnstat vī patriā* Pyrrhus; nec claustra nec ipsī
> custōdēs sufferre valent; labat ariete crēbrō
> iānua, et ēmōtī prōcumbunt cardine postēs.
> fit via vī; rumpunt aditūs prīmōsque trucīdant
> immissī Danaī et lātē loca mīlite complent.　　　　　495
> nōn sīc, aggeribus ruptīs cum† spūmeus amnis
> exiit oppositāsque ēvīcit gurgite mōlēs,
> fertur in arva furēns cumulō campōsque per omnīs
> cum stabulīs armenta trahit. vīdī ipse furentem
> caede Neoptolemum geminōsque in līmine Atrīdās,　　　　　500
> vīdī Hecubam centumque nurūs Priamumque per ārās
> sanguine foedantem quōs ipse sacrāverat ignīs.

*patrius, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to a father, paternal; ancestral

†cum, *here* (conj. + perf. indic.), whenever; translate exiit and ēvīcit as pres. indic.

aditus, aditūs *m.* approach, entrance, doorway

agger, aggeris *m.* mound; bank (of a river)

amnis, amnis, -ium *m.* stream, torrent

ariēs, arietis *m.* (battering) ram; the -i- of ariete is here consonantal for purposes of scansion

armentum, armentī *n.* herd; bull, head of cattle; *in pl.*, cattle

arvum, arvī *n.* (ploughed) field

Atrīdēs, Atrīdae *m.* son of Atreus (either Agamemnon or Menelaus)

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

cardō, cardinis *m.* pivot; hinge

claustrum, claustrī *n.* bolt, bar

compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus fill completely

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum frequent, repeated

cumulus, cumulī *m.* heap, pile; mass, wave

custōs, custōdis *m.* or *f.* guard(ian), protector, sentry

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks

ēmoveō (ē- + moveō) remove, dislodge

ēvincō (ē- + vincō) defeat utterly, overcome

exeō (ex- + eō), exīre, exiī *or* exīvī, exitum go out

fīō, fierī, factus sum be made; fit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile

furō, furere, ——, —— be crazy; rage, rave

geminus, -a, -um twin-born, twin

gurges, gurgitis *m.* swirling water, eddy, whirlpool

Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba, wife of Priam

iānua, iānuae *f.* door

immittō (in- + mittō) send in, send against

īnstō (in- + stō), īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātūrus press (hostilely), press on

labō, labāre, labāvī, —— be shaky, totter, give way

lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide

līmen, līminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass; dam

Neoptolemus, Neoptolemī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles (= Pyrrhus)

nurus, nurūs *f.* daughter-in-law

oppōnō (ob- + pōnō) place in the way, place against

postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

prōcumbō, prōcumbere, prōcubuī, prōcubitum bend forward; fall down, crash

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles (= Neoptolemus)

rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus split, burst, break

sacrō (1-tr.) make sacred, consecrate

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

spūmeus, -a, -um foamy, frothy

stabulum, stabulī *n.* stable, shed, stall

sufferō (sub- + ferō), sufferre, sustulī, sublātus endure, withstand

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag

trucīdō (1-tr.) slaughter, butcher

quīnquāgintā illī thalamī, spēs tanta nepōtum,

barbaricō postēs aurō spoliīsque superbī

prōcubuēre; tenent Danaī quā* dēficit ignis.   505

*quā, *here* (adv.), where
barharicus, -a, -um barbarian
Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail
nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson
postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

prōcumbō, prōcumbere, prōcubuī, prōcubitum
   bend forward; fall down, crash
spolium, spoliī *n.* booty, spoil
superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty
tantus, -a, -um so great
thalamus, thalamī *m. in sing. or pl.* inner room,
   wedding chamber; marriage

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.463–77

fīlius huic Veneris "fīgat tuus omnia, Phoebe,

tē meus arcus," ait: "quantōque animālia cēdunt

cūncta deō, tantō minor est tua glōria nostrā." 465

dīxit et ēlīsō percussīs āere pennīs

inpiger umbrōsā Parnāsī cōnstitit arce

ēque sagittiferā prōmpsit duo tēla pharetrā

dīversōrum operum: fugat hoc, facit illud amōrem.

quod facit, aurātum est et cuspide fulget acūtā: 470

quod fugat, obtūsum est et habet sub harundine plumbum.

hoc deus in nymphā Pēnēide fīxit, at illō

laesit Apollineās trāiecta per ossa medullās.

prōtinus alter amat, fugit altera nōmen amantis

silvārum latebrīs captīvārumque ferārum 475

exuviīs gaudēns innuptaeque aemula Phoebēs.

vitta coërcēbat positōs sine lēge capillōs.

acūtus, -a, -um sharp, pointed

aemulus, -a, -um emulous, rivaling (+ gen.)

āēr, āeris *m.* air

aiō (defective verb) say; ait = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

Apollineus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Apollo

arcus, arcūs *m.* bow (for shooting arrows)

arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel; height, peak

at (conj.) but

aurātus, -a, -um made of gold, golden

capillus, capillī *m. in sing. or pl.* hair

captīvus, -a, -um captive, captured (in hunting or fishing)

coërceō, coërcēre, coërcuī, coërcitus restrain, keep back

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, —— make a stand, halt

cūnctus, -a, -um all

cuspis, cuspidis *f.* sharp point, tip

dīversus, -a, -um different

ēlīdō, ēlīdere, ēlīsī, ēlīsus break thoroughly, batter, cut

exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor; skin(s)

fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast

fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus fix, pierce

fugō (1-tr.) cause *to flee, put to flight*

fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, —— shine, gleam

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased

harundō, harundinis *f.* reed; (arrow) shaft

innuptus, -a, -um unmarried, maiden

inpiger, inpigra, inpigrum not slow, energetic, brisk

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm, wound

latebra, latebrae *f.* hiding place, lair, recess

medulla, medullae *f.* marrow; *in pl.*, vitals, innards

nōmen, nōminis *n.* name

nympha, nymphae *f.* nymph, a semidivine spirit

obtūsus, -a, -um blunt, dull

os, ossis *n.* bone

Parnāsus, Parnāsī *m.* Parnassus, a mountain in Greece

Pēnēis, Pēnēidos descended from the river god Peneus; Pēnēide = *abl. sing.*

penna, pennae *f.* wing

percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus strike, beat; percussīs . . . pennīs, by the beating of wings

pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver

Phoebē, Phoebēs *f.* Phoebe (Diana); Phoebēs = *gen. sing.*

Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)

plumbum, plumbī *n.* lead

prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsī, prōmptus bring forth, draw

prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway

quantus, -a, -um how much

sagittifer, sagittifera, sagittiferum arrow-bearing

silva, silvae *f.* forest

tantus, -a, -um so much

trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce, transfix

umbrōsus, -a, -um shady

vitta, vittae *f.* headband

§112. About Meter II

The Roman poets learned from Greek models the dactylic hexameter, the meter of epic, and the elegiac couplet, the meter of love poetry (see §82). Some also chose to imitate meters of such Greek lyric poets as Archilochus, Sappho, and Alcaeus.[1]

Lyric poetry (originally so called because it was recited with the accompaniment of music played on a lyre) most often found its subject matter in the events and concerns of personal, private life: friendship, humor, love, wine, mortality. Both Catullus and Horace brought lyric meters into Latin poetry, but in his four books of *Odes*, Horace demonstrated mastery of a far greater variety of these meters.

Since *all* Latin poetry is quantitative, the basic rules for scanning lyric meters (for determining long and short syllables and marking elisions) are the same as those used for scanning dactylic hexameters and elegiac couplets. Some lyric poems use dactylic lines or sequences of dactylic feet, but many lyric meters have lines that are *not* divided into feet.

Certain lyric units may be learned and identified, but one generally learns the metrical scheme for each complete lyric line. Some lyric poems have only one metrical scheme that is repeated in every line (**stichic verse**), some have two metrical schemes in alternation (**couplets**), and others have four lines that repeat (**strophic or stanzaic verse**).

Stichic verse is indicated when each line begins at the left-hand margin. (For example, dactylic hexameter is stichic verse.) Each *indented* line indicates a metrically different line.

Common Terms and Metrical Units of Latin Lyric Poetry

acephalous (< Greek *akephalos*, headless) missing the first element
metron (< Greek *metron*, measure) the smallest metrical unit allowed in a given scheme

dimeter consisting of two metra
trimeter consisting of three metra
tetrameter consisting of four metra
pentameter consisting of five metra
hexameter consisting of six metra

> NOTE: FOR DACTYLS *ONE* DACTYLIC FOOT = *ONE* METRON
>
> FOR IAMBS, TROCHEES, AND ANAPESTS *TWO* FEET = *ONE* METRON

iamb ⌣ –
iambic metron x – ⌣ –
bacchiac ⌣ – –
dactyl – ⌣ ⌣

---

1. Other Roman poets wrote tragedies and imitated the meters found in Greek tragic poetry. The Roman adaptations of these meters are not presented in this book.

spondee – –
adonic – ˇ ˇ – x
hemiepes – ˇ ˇ – ˇ ˇ x
anapest ˇ ˇ –
trochee – ˇ
trochaic metron – ˇ – x
cretic – ˇ –
choriamb – ˇ ˇ –
glyconic x x – ˇ ˇ – ˇ x
hipponactean x x – ˇ ˇ – ˇ – x
pherecratean x x – ˇ ˇ – x

Hendecasyllable

Many of the short poems of Catullus employ a repeating eleven-syllable line with this scheme:

x x – ˇ ˇ – ˇ – ˇ – x

–   – – ˇ ˇ   –   ˇ   –   ˇ – –
Iam vēr ēgelıdōs refert tepōrēs

–   – – ˇ   –   ˇ   – ˇ ˇ
iam caelī furor aequinoctiālis

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first two syllables and the last syllable are anceps (see §82).

2. The hendecasyllabic line is basically *iambic* in rhythm. An iamb is a metrical unit composed of one short syllable followed by one long syllable (ˇ –). The unit – ˇ ˇ –, called a choriamb, is characteristic of this meter and several other lyric meters. Meters constructed around the choriamb are called **Aeolic** meters.

3. A word usually ends after the fifth or sixth syllable, and this word end may be considered the line's caesural pause.

Choliambic (Limping Iambic)

Several of Catullus's short poems employ a repeating iambic line with this scheme:

x – ˇ – | x – ˇ – | x – – x

ˇ   – ˇ – / ˇ   – ˇ   – / ˇ   – – ˇ
Miser Catul/le, dēsinās / ineptīre

ˇ   –   ˇ – / ˇ – ˇ   – / ˇ   –   – –
et quod vidēs / perīsse per/ditum dūcās.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The sequence x – ˇ – is called an iambic metron (< Greek *metron*, measure) and is composed of two iambs (ˇ – ˇ –), although the first syllable is *anceps*. When scanning, one regularly marks off each iambic metron.

2. Because a long is substituted for a short in the second iamb of the last metron of the line, this meter is said to "limp" or slow down.

3. A word usually ends after the fifth syllable, and this word end may be considered the line's caesural pause.

Sapphic Strophe

Two of Catullus's and many of Horace's poems employ a stanzaic form possibly created by the Greek poet Sappho and bearing her name:

$- \smile - x -||\smile\smile-\smile- x$ (cretic and acephalous hipponactean)

$- \smile - x -||\smile\smile-\smile- x$

$- \smile - x -||\smile\smile-\smile- x$

$\quad - \smile\smile- x$ (adonic)

Integer vītae // scelerisque pūrus

nōn eget Mauris // iaculis neque_arcū

nec venēnātīs // gravidā sagittīs

   Fusce, pharetrā . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first three lines of the Sapphic strophe have the same metrical scheme, a line composed of two lyric units, the cretic ($-\smile-$) and the **hipponactean** ($x\,x - \smile\smile-\smile- x$). Because the hipponactean is *missing the first element*, it is called "headless" or acephalous. Note that the choriamb ($-\smile\smile-$) is present in the hipponactean. There is a regular caesura after the fifth syllable.

2. The last line of the Sapphic strophe resembles the last two feet of a dactylic hexameter line. This short line is called an adonic.

Asclepiadean Meters

Lyric meters that feature a unit known as a **glyconic** ($x\,x - \smile\smile-\smile x$) are called **Asclepiadean** meters after an Alexandrian love poet, Asclepiades, who lived in the third century B.C.E. Horace employs several Asclepiadean meters, some of which are presented below.

One Asclepiadean meter employs a repeating glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is doubled:

$x\,x - \smile\smile-||-\smile\smile-\smile x$

Exēgī monumentum_aere perennius

rēgālīque sitū// pȳramidum_altius

Another Asclepiadean meter employs a repeating glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is tripled:

x x – ˘ ˘ – // – ˘ ˘ – // – ˘ ˘ – ˘ x

Tū nĕ quaesierīs–//–scīre nefās–//–quem mihi, quem tibi

fīnem dī dederint, // Leuconoē, // nec Babylōniōs

A third Asclepiadean meter employs a glyconic line alternating with a glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is doubled:

x x – ˘ ˘ – ˘ x //
  x x – ˘ ˘ – // – ˘ ˘ – ˘ x

Dōnec grātus eram tibi

  nec quīsquam potior bracchia candidae

A stanzaic meter features the glyconic and variations:

x x – ˘ ˘ – // – ˘ ˘ – ˘ x   (glyconic with doubled choriamb)

x x – ˘ ˘ – // – ˘ ˘ – ˘ x

  x x – ˘ ˘ – x   (pherecratean)

    x x – ˘ ˘ – ˘ x   (glyconic)

Quis multā gracilis // tē puer in rosā

perfūsus liquidīs // urget odōribus

  grātō, Pyrrha, sub antrō?

    cuī flāvam religās comam

Archilochian Meter

Horace borrowed several meters from the Greek poet Archilochus. One of them employs a couplet form, the first line of which is dactylic hexameter, the second line of which is a hemiepes.

– ˘˘ | – ˘˘ | – ˘˘ | – ˘˘ | – ˘˘ | – x

  – ˘˘ | – ˘˘ | x

Diffū/gēre ni/vēs, // rede/unt iam /grāmina /campīs

  arbori/busque co/mae

Alcaic Strophe

Horace's most intricate metrical form was borrowed from the Greek poet Alcaeus:

$$x - - - \mid x \parallel - - \smile - \smile x \qquad \text{(iambic metron and acephalous glyconic)}$$

$$x - \smile - \mid x \parallel - - \smile - \smile x$$

$$x - \smile - \mid x - \smile - \mid - \qquad \text{(iambic dimeter and one syllable)}$$

$$- \smile \smile - \smile \smile - \mid \smile - x \qquad \text{(hemiepes and bacchiac)}$$

$$\overline{\text{N}}\text{ōn } \overline{\text{sem}}\text{per } \breve{\text{im}}\mid\overline{\text{brēs}} \parallel \overline{\text{nū}}\text{bibus } \overline{\text{hispid}}\overline{\text{ōs}}$$

$$\overline{\text{mā}}\text{nant } \overline{\text{in}} \text{ a}\mid\overline{\text{grōs}} \parallel \overline{\text{aut}} \text{ mare } \overline{\text{Caspium}}$$

$$\text{vexant inae}\mid\text{quālēs procel}\mid\text{lae}$$

$$\text{ūsque nec Armeniīs in ōrīs}$$

CHAPTER XII

Vocabulary

➤ **grātia, grātiae** *f.* favor, kindness; grati-
tude, thanks

➤ **littera, litterae** *f.* letter (of the alphabet);
in pl., letter, epistle
memoria, memoriae *f.* memory

➤ **dubium, dubiī** *n.* doubt, hesitation (§116)

➤ **gēns, gentis, -ium** *f.* nation, people; clan,
family
fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck
mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain

➤ **rūmor, rūmōris** *m.* rumor

➤ **fās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is
divinely) right; (what is) permitted
   ➤ **nefās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is
   divinely) forbidden; sacrilege

➤ **dubitō** (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (§116)
➤ **ōrō** (1-tr.) pray (for), beg (for)
➤ **rogō** (1-tr.) ask (for)
➤ **spērō** (1-tr.) hope (for)

➤ **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus**
accomplish, complete
➤ **oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum** forget
(+ gen.)

➤ **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus**
put in charge (of)

➤ **īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus** carry (into);
inflict (on)
➤ **praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus**
prefer
➤ **praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus**
be in charge (of), be in command (of)
➤ **volō, velle, voluī,** —— be willing, want,
wish (§118)
   ➤ **mālō, mālle, māluī,** —— want more,
   prefer (§118)
   ➤ **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** —— be unwilling,
   not want, not wish (§118)

➤ **dignus, -a, -um** worthy (of) (+ abl.)
   ➤ **indignus, -a, -um** unworthy (of) (+ abl.)
➤ **dubius, -a, -um** doubtful (§116)

an (conj.) *introduces an alternative ques-
tion,* or (§113); *introduces an Indirect Ques-
tion,* whether (§115)
➤ **cum** (conj.) when; since; although (§117)
➤ **modo** (adv.) only, just; now, just now
necne (conj.) *in Indirect Question,* or not
(§115)

nōnne (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer "yes"* (§113)

num (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer "no"* (§113); *introduces an Indirect Question, whether* (§115)

➤ praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond; except

quīn (conj.) *introduces Doubting clause, that* (§116)

quō (interrog. adv.) to where, whither

➤ tum or tunc (adv.) then, at that time

unde (interrog. adv.) from where, whence

utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question of a double direct question or Indirect Question* (§113, §115)

utrum . . . an . . .	whether . . .
-ne . . . an . . .	or . . .
—— . . . an . . .	(§113, §115)

Vocabulary Notes

grātia, grātiae *f.* may mean the "favor" or "kindness" that one shows to another or the "gratitude" one feels in return for a favor or kindness. Both the singular and the plural may be used in a variety of idioms: grātiās agere, "to give thanks"; grātiam or grātiās habēre, "to feel grateful"; grātiam or grātiās referre, "to render thanks," "to return a favor."

In the singular littera, litterae *f.* refers to a "letter" of the alphabet. In the plural it most often means a single "epistle" or "letter." An adjective of quantity or number may be added to indicate more than one letter.

| Fīliō litterās mīsī. | I sent a letter to (my) son. |
| Fīliō multās litterās mīsī. | I sent many letters to (my) son. |

The plural of littera may also mean, more abstractly, "(humane) letters," "literature."

dubium, dubiī *n.* is a substantive of the adjective dubius, -a, -um. It regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (see §116).

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* may refer to a collective "people" or "nation." Among Roman citizens, a gēns was a group of families (clan) that shared the same nōmen (name) (see §16). Gēns may also refer to an individual family. In the plural, gentēs may mean "nations of the world" or "the human race" as a whole.

rūmor, rūmōris *m.* may mean "rumor" or "gossip," or it may refer more generally to "noise" made by many voices. The phrase rūmor est introduces an Indirect Statement (see §106).

| Rūmor est Caesarem venīre. | There is a rumor that Caesar is coming. |

fās is an indeclinable neuter noun. Its strict meaning is what is "right" according to divine law, as opposed to iūs, which indicates "right" according to human law. It may also be used of "(what is) permitted" or "(what is) lawful" in a more general sense. It commonly occurs in parenthetical remarks, such as sī fās (est) (if it is right). It is also often used as a predicate noun.

| Fās est hoc facere. | To do this thing is right. |

nefās is an indeclinable neuter noun formed by the addition of the negative prefix ne- to fās. Thus its strict meaning is what is an "offense" according to divine law (sacrilege).

When the verb dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus means "hesitate," it is often followed by a Complementary Infinitive. When it means "doubt," it regularly introduces an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (see §116).

ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus takes a double accusative; that is, it may have *two* Accusative, Direct Objects, the *person begged* or *prayed to* and *the thing begged* or *prayed for*. It may also introduce an Indirect Command.

| Cīvēs deōs pācem ōrant. | The citizens pray to the gods for peace. |
| Mīlitēs ōrēmus nē discēdant. | Let us beg the soldiers that they not depart. |

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus may introduce an Indirect Question (see §115) or an Indirect Command. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object expressing the *person asked* or *the thing asked for*. Like ōrō, rogō may take a double accusative.

| Mīlitēs auxilium rogēmus. | Let us ask the soldiers for aid. |

spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus is a *denominative* verb formed from the noun spēs. Spērō may be followed by an Accusative, Direct Object, or it may introduce an Indirect Statement.

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix con- to faciō. (For the prefix con- see Appendix P.) It may mean "accomplish" or "complete" (tasks, duties, written works, periods of time). It is a synonym of perficiō. Cōnficiō may also mean "wear out" or "kill."

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum may introduce an Indirect Statement. It often takes a Genitive with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting (Objective Genitive) (cf. meminī). Oblīvīscor may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. When it takes an Object Infinitive, oblīvīscor may mean "forget" or "forget how."

Numquam oblivīscar *illīus noctis*.   I shall never forget *that night*. (Objective Genitive)
Omnia oblivīscēbar.   I was forgetting *all things*. (Accusative, Direct Object)
Miser poēta *scribere* oblitus est.   The wretched poet forgot *how to write*. (Object Infinitive)

praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix prae- to faciō. (For the prefix prae- see Appendix P.) Praeficiō is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (see §120).

Senātus Caesarem *copiis* in Italiā praeficiet.   The senate will put Caesar *in charge of the troops* in Italy.

Inferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix in-[1] to ferō. (For the prefix in-[1] see Appendix P.) Inferō is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (see §120). It may mean "carry in" or "inflict" (war, injury, disgrace).

Bellum *incolīs* intulimus.   We inflicted war *on the inhabitants*.

praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix prae- to ferō. (For the prefix prae- see Appendix P.) Praeferō is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (see §120).

Mortemne *servitūtī* praefers?   Do you prefer death *to slavery*?

praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix prae- to sum. (For the prefix prae- see Appendix P.) Praesum is an intransitive verb that takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (see §120).

Copiīs praeerat.   He was in command *of the troops*.

volō, velle, voluī, —— is an irregular verb. For its forms see §118. Volō may be transitive (want, wish) or may be used absolutely (be willing). While optō, cupiō, and volō all express desire, volō suggests a stronger sense of will or purpose on the part of the subject and may thus mean "intend" or "be about to." Volō appears in two common idioms: bene velle, "to wish well," and male velle, "to wish ill." Both are followed by a Dative of Reference.

Quid facere *vīs*?   What do you *intend* to do?
Is tibi nōn *bene vult*.   He does not *wish well* for you.

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the comparative adverb magis to volō. For its forms and the constructions that accompany it, see §118.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the adverb nōn to volō. For its forms see §118. It has meanings that are parallel to volō (not want, not wish, be unwilling), and it may mean "refuse."

Mīlitēs iussī īre *nōluērunt*.   Although the soldiers had been ordered, *they refused* to go.

dignus, -a, -um is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is worthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition "of." Dignus may also be used absolutely (deserving, worthwhile).

Hoc opus *vestrā cūrā dignum* est.   This work is *worthy of your (pl.) concern*.
Dignum est multa scīre.   To know many things is *worthwhile*.

indignus, -a, -um is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is unworthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition "of."

dubius, -a, -um regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (see §116).

The conjunction cum was developed from an old accusative form of the relative pronoun quī, quae, quod, and the archaic form quom is common in Roman writers prior to Cicero. This conjunction is *not* linguistically related to the preposition that is spelled identically. For its use see §117.

modo is an adverb that was in origin the ablative singular of modus, but note that the final -o is short. Modo is often used to strengthen an imperative. It may be used as a temporal adverb (now, just now) and may appear in place of sōlum in the expression nōn modo ... sed/vērum etiam ...

Tu *modo* omnia ad me scribe.   You *just* write all things to me.

The preposition praeter takes the accusative case. It may mean "beyond" or "exceeding," or it may mean "except" or "other than."

tum (adv.) and tunc (adv.) are synonymous. tunc is formed by the addition of the emphatic suffix -ce to tum. In early Latin tunc was more emphatic than tum. By the Augustan period this emphasis was less pronounced. Tum may be used *correlatively* with cum with a variety of emphases. The correlatives cum ... tum ... may be translated "when ... then/at the same time ...," "both ... and (especially) ...," or "not only ... but also ... "

Cum illud faciebat, *tum* discedebam.
When he was doing that thing, *then/at the same time* I was departing.
Consilium *cum* patriae *tum* sibi inimicum capiebat.
He was forming a plan hostile *both* to his country *and (especially)* to himself.
Dicere visa est *cum* honestam sententiam, *tum* veram.
She seemed to speak *not only* an honorable opinion, *but also* a true (one).

	Derivatives	**Cognates**
dignus	*dignity*; in*dign*ant; *disdain*; *dainty*	*decent*; *doctor*; *dogma*
gēns	*gentle*; *gentile*	kin; *king*; *gender*; *genealogy*; *gene*
memoria	*memo*rable	*mourn*
mōns	*mountain*; a*mount*	*mouth*; im*minent*; *menace*
oblīvīscor	*oblivious*; *oubliette*	*slime*; *slip*
rogō	inter*rogate*; ab*rogate*	*regō*; rich; *reckless*
volō	*voluntary*; *velleity*; *volition*; malevolence	*voluptuous*; will; *wealth*; well

§113. Direct Questions

A **direct question** is a question written or uttered directly. In Latin a direct question may be introduced by the enclitic **-ne** attached to the first word of the question or by nothing at all. For example:

Lēgistīne illud carmen?	Did you read that poem?
Illud carmen lēgistī?	Did you read that poem?

Direct questions may also be introduced by the interrogative particles **nōnne** and **num**. **Nōnne** introduces a question to which the expected answer is *yes*. **Num** introduces a question to which the expected answer is *no*. For example:

Nōnne illud carmen lēgistī?	You read that poem, didn't you? (Yes)
Num illud carmen lēgistī?	You didn't read that poem, did you? (No)

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Nōnne** is formed from the combination of **nōn** and **-ne**. In translating Latin direct questions introduced by **nōnne**, a phrase such as "didn't you?" is added to make clear that the expected answer is *yes*.

2. In translating Latin direct questions introduced by **num**, a negative adverb *and* a phrase such as "did you?" are added to make clear that the expected answer is *no*.

Direct questions may also be introduced by a variety of interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs. The following is a list of all the words presented in Chapters I–XII that may introduce questions.

quis, quid	who, what
quī, quae, quod	what _____ which
cūr	
quam ob rem	why
quārē	
ubi	when
ubi	where
unde	from where, whence
quō	to where, whither
quō modo	in what way, how
uter, utra, utrum	which one (of two)

A question such as "Will you come to Rome or will you stay in the country?" is called a **double direct question**. A double direct question in Latin may be introduced by the interrogative particle **utrum**, by **-ne**, or by nothing at all. The conjunction an (or) introduces the second question. For example:

> *Utrum* Romam venies *an* rūrī manēbis?
> Romam*ne* venies *an* rūrī manēbis?
> Romam venies *an* rūrī manēbis?
> To Rome will you come *or* in the country will you stay?
> Will you come to Rome *or* will you stay in the country?
> *Utrum* Romam venies *an* nōn?
> Will you come to Rome *or* (will you) not (come to Rome)?

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are no differences in meaning among the first three double direct questions. Double direct questions introduced by utrum or -ne are more common in classical Latin than those introduced by nothing at all.

2. Utrum is in origin the neuter singular accusative of the interrogative adjective uter, utra, utrum used adverbially (whether). In double direct questions it may introduce the first question, but it should not be translated.

3. The ellipsis of certain words from one or both questions is a regular feature of double direct questions. Although in the last sentence only nōn appears after an, the rest of the second question may easily be supplied from the first question.

4. Additional alternate questions may be added to double direct questions using the conjunction an.

§114. Deliberative Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* subjunctive in a direct question may be used to indicate that the subject is *deliberating about or weighing courses of action for the present or the future*. A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive in a direct question may be used to indicate that the subject is *deliberating about an action in the past*. The adverb nōn is used for negation. This *independent* use of the subjunctive is called **Deliberative** (< dēlīberō, "weigh"). For example:

> *Quid nunc agam?*   What *should* I do now?
>   What *am* I *to do* now?
> *Quid illō tempore agerem?*   What *should I have done* at that time?
>   What *was* I *to do* at that time?
> *Non venīrem Romam?*   *Should* I *not have come* to Rome?
>   *Was* I *not to have come* to Rome?

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Deliberative subjunctive is a variety of the Hortatory subjunctive. Unlike the Hortatory subjunctive, which expresses the will of the subject, the Deliberative subjunctive *asks* about the will of the person addressed. The Deliberative subjunctive most commonly occurs in the first person.

2. The English words "am/are/is ... to" or "should" are regularly used to translate the Deliberative subjunctive in present or future time.

3. The English words "was/were ... to" or "should have" are regularly used to translate the Deliberative subjunctive in past time.

4. The syntax of, for example, agerem is imperfect subjunctive, Deliberative, past time.

5. Sometimes an independent subjunctive appearing in a question is *Potential* rather than *Deliberative*. For example:

Quis rem pūblicam perīre *cupiat*?   Who *would desire* the republic to perish?

☛ DRILL 113–114 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§115. Indirect Questions

When a question is *reported indirectly* as part of a complex sentence, the question is subordinated to a main verb, and the resulting subordinate clause is called an **Indirect Question**. For example:

What do those poets think about the nature of the gods? (Direct Question)
I do not know *what those poets think about the nature of the gods.* (Indirect Question)

When a direct question is reported indirectly in English, the subject and the verb of the direct question may have to be changed (for example, "do . . . think" becomes "think"). In Latin, *the verb of the indirect question is in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence.* For example:

Nescio quid illī poëtae dē nātūrā deōrum *cōgitent.*
I do not know what those poets about the nature of the gods *think.*
I do not know what those poets *think* about the nature of the gods.
Nescio quid illī poëtae dē nātūrā deōrum *cōgitāverint.*
I do not know what those poets *thought* about the nature of the gods.
Nescio quid dē nātūrā deōrum *dictūrus sīs.*
I do not know what you *will* (are going to) say about the nature of the gods.

OBSERVATIONS

1. An Indirect Question is a *noun* clause. It functions as either the direct object or (less frequently) the *subject* of the verb that introduces it.

2. Many Indirect Questions in early Latin appear with their verbs in the indicative. The use of the subjunctive mood in Indirect Questions may have its origin in Deliberative subjunctives that were then made indirect. Regardless of the origin, the use of the subjunctive mood in Indirect Questions reflects the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.

3. Future time in Indirect Questions is frequently indicated by the active periphrastic.

4. The syntax of, for example, cōgitāverint is perfect subjunctive, **Indirect Question, primary sequence, prior time.**

5. Most often the subjunctive verb in an Indirect Question should be translated into English as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

An Indirect Question may be introduced by any of the interrogative words used to introduce direct questions. When an original direct question has no interrogative

word or is introduced by the enclitic **-ne**, the indirect form may be introduced by the interrogative particle **num** or **an**, "whether." For example:

> Rōmam īre optat?   Is she desiring to go to Rome?
> Quaesīvērunt *num* Rōmam īre optāret.   They asked *whether* she was desiring to go to Rome.

Double Indirect Questions may be introduced by **utrum**, **-ne**, or by nothing at all. The conjunction **an** (or) introduces the second question. Double Indirect Questions use the negative conjunction necne, "or not," instead of **an nōn** (as in double direct questions). For example:

> Utrum Rōmam īre optat an rūrī manēre?
> Is she desiring to go to Rome or to remain in the country?
> Quaesīī *utrum* Rōmam īre optāret *an* rūrī manēre.
> I asked *whether* she was desiring to go to Rome or to stay in the country.
>
> Utrum Rōmam īre optat an nōn?
> Is she desiring to go to Rome or not?
> Quaesīī *utrum* Rōmam īre optāret *necne*.
> I asked *whether* she was desiring to go to Rome or not.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Double Indirect Questions introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** are more common in classical Latin than those introduced by nothing at all.

2. In double Indirect Questions, the English word "whether" is used to translate **utrum** or **-ne**. "Whether" must be *added* to the English translation when the beginning of a double Indirect Question is not indicated in Latin.

Occasionally the verb in the subjunctive mood in an Indirect Question represents an *original* independent use of the subjunctive. For example:

> Nescio *quid faciam.*   I do not know *what I should do.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this sentence, although faciam could represent a direct question with a verb in the indicative mood **(quid faciō?** What am I doing?), the translation indicates that the original question had a verb in the subjunctive mood **(quid faciam?** What should I do? [Deliberative subjunctive]).

2. The Deliberative subjunctive is the most common kind of independent subjunctive to appear in an Indirect Question. Occasionally a Potential subjunctive may also appear in an Indirect Question.

§116. Doubting Clauses

When an Indirect Question introduced by **num**, **an** (whether), or another interrogative word is preceded by a *verb or other expression of doubting*, the Indirect Question is sometimes called a **Doubting clause**. For example:

> Omnēs dubitābant *num* Cicerō locūtūrus esset. (dubitō, *-āre*, doubt)
> All men were doubting *whether* Cicero was going to speak.
> Dubium est *an* nostrī vincant. (dubium, dubiī, *n.*, doubt)
> There is a doubt *whether* our men are conquering.

When the expression of doubting is *negated*, or when *negation is implied*, the Doubting clause is introduced by the conjunction **quīn** (that). For example:

> Nōn dubitāvī *quīn* Cicerō locūtūrus esset.
> I did not doubt *that* Cicero was going to speak.
> Nūllum dubium est *quīn* nostrī vincant.
> There is no doubt *that* our men are conquering.
> Quis dubitet *quīn* nostrī vincant?
> Who would doubt *that* our men are conquering?

OBSERVATIONS

1. Because they are essentially Indirect Questions, Doubting clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

2. In the third sentence negation is implied because the answer to this rhetorical question would be "no one."

☛ DRILL 115–116 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§117. Subordinate Clauses II: The Conjunction *cum*

The *subordinating conjunction* **cum** has a variety of meanings. The verb in a **cum** clause may be in the indicative or the subjunctive mood, depending on what particular type of clause **cum** introduces.

Type of Clause	Mood of Verb	Translation of *cum*
Temporal	Indicative	"(at the time) when" [1]
Circumstantial	Indicative (present or future time)	"(under the circumstances) when"
	Subjunctive (past time)	
Causal	Subjunctive	"since/because"
Concessive	Subjunctive	"although"

---

1. When **cum** is followed by a *perfect* indicative and the verb in the main clause is *present* indicative, **cum** should be translated "whenever," and the perfect indicative should be translated as a *present*. When **cum** is followed by the *pluperfect* indicative and the verb in the main clause is *imperfect* indicative, **cum** should be translated "whenever," and the *pluperfect* indicative should be translated as an *imperfect*.

Like other subordinate clauses, **cum** clauses may *precede or follow* main clauses. When the subjunctive mood is used for the verb in a **cum** clause, the rules of sequence are followed. For example:

Temporal
Mīlitēs ad campum accessērunt *cum signum datum est.*
The soldiers toward the plain approached *(at the time) when the signal was given.*
The soldiers approached the plain *when the signal was given.*
Cum mīlitēs in campō vīdī, magnopere timeō.
Whenever soldiers (d.o.) on the plain I see, greatly I am afraid.
Whenever I see soldiers on the plain, I am greatly afraid.
Cum mīlitēs in campō vīderam, magnopere timēbam.
Whenever I saw (repeatedly) soldiers on the plain, I used to be greatly afraid.
Circumstantial
Caesar, *cum loquerētur,* ab inimīcīs interfectus est.
Caesar *(under the circumstances) when he was speaking,* by (his) enemies was killed.
When Caesar was speaking, he was killed by (his) enemies.
Causal
Pugnāre nōn possum *cum gladiō caream.*
To fight I am not able *because a sword I am lacking.*
I am not able to fight *because I am lacking a sword.*
Concessive
Cicerō, *cum in oppidō parvō nātus esset,* Rōmae tamen vīvēbat.
Cicero, *although in a small town he had been born,* in Rome nevertheless he used to live.
Although Cicero had been born in a small town, nevertheless he used to live in Rome.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The use of the subjunctive mood in circumstantial, causal, and concessive cum clauses reflects the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.

2. A cum clause followed by a verb in the subjunctive mood may introduce a circumstantial, causal, or concessive clause. Context helps to determine which sense is appropriate. For example, in the last sentence above the presence of tamen in the main clause indicates that the preceding subordinate clause is *concessive*.

3. The subjunctive verb in a cum clause should be translated into English as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

☞ DRILL 117 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§118. The Irregular Verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*

The irregular verbs **volō, velle, voluī,** ——, "be willing, want, wish"; **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** ——, "be unwilling, not want, not wish"; and **mālō, mālle, māluī,** ——, "want more, prefer" have *active forms only*. They have a number of irregular forms in the present system. All the forms of the perfect active system are regular. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND FORMS:

	Present Active Indicative				Present Active Subjunctive	
Singular						
1	volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
2	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3	vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
Plural						
1	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint

Present Active Infinitive: velle   Present Active Participle: volēns, volentis
nōlle   nolēns, nolentis
mālle

Present Active Imperative: nōlī (singular), nōlīte (plural)

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are two common, older forms of **vult** and **vultis**: **volt** and **voltis**. The forms given above replaced these older forms during the first century B.C.E., but the older forms occur frequently in many classical authors, including Cicero. BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE ARCHAIC FORMS.

2. Nōlō was formed by the addition of **nōn** to **volō**. In the present active indicative conjugation of nōlō, three forms (the second and third person singular and the second person plural) are simply nōn and the corresponding form of volō.

3. Mālō was formed by the addition of **magis** to **volō**, and it therefore may take structures that regularly accompany the comparative degree. For example:

> **Sapiēns amīcitiam omnibus rēbus mālit.** (Ablative of Comparison)
> A wise man friendship (d.o.) than all things would want more.
> A wise man would want friendship more than all things.
> **Nostrī pugnāre quam fugere māluērunt.** (Comparison with quam)
> Our men to fight than to flee preferred.
> Our men preferred to fight rather than to flee.

4. In the imperfect and future active indicative, volō, nōlō, and mālō are conjugated as if they were regular third-conjugation verbs with the stems vole-, nōle-, and māle-, respectively. The first person singular future active indicative forms of nōlō (*nōlam) and mālō (*mālam) do not occur in the Latin literature that survives.

5. The present active subjunctive of volō, nōlō, and mālō may be compared to the present active subjunctive of sum (sim, sīs, sit, etc.). The imperfect active subjunctive is formed *regularly* from the *irregular* present active infinitives velle, nōlle, and mālle.

6. Mālō does not have a present active participle.

7. Volō and mālō do *not* have imperative forms. For the use of the imperative forms of nōlō (nōlī and nōlīte) see §119.

§119. Negative Commands with *nōlī* or *nōlīte* and an Infinitive

Nōlī and nōlīte are used *with infinitives to express negative commands*. For example:

Nōlī, amīce, mē *ōdisse*.	Be *unwilling*, friend, me (d.o.) *to hate*.
	Do *not hate* me, friend.
Nōlīte ex prōvinciā *discēdere*.	Be *unwilling* (pl.) from the province *to depart*.
	Do *not* (pl.) *depart* from the province.

1. Although a Jussive subjunctive may be used to express a negative command, nōlī or nōlīte is a more common way of expressing this idea in classical Latin prose.

2. The second translations given above are to be preferred.

☛ DRILL 118–119 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§120. Dative with a Compound Verb

Many compound verbs, which have been formed by the addition of certain prepositions as prefixes to simple verbs, regularly appear with a dative that is connected in sense with the meaning of the preposition. Such a dative is called the **Dative with a Compound Verb**. For example:

Ille *cōpiīs* praeest. (praesum [prae- + sum] be in charge [of])
That man (with reference) to the troops is in charge.
That man is in charge of the troops.
Iste *patriae* bellum īnferet. (īnferō [in- + ferō] carry [in], inflict [on])
That (contemptible) man (with reference) to the country war (d.o.) will inflict.
That contemptible man will inflict war on the country.

The syntax of each italicized word (**cōpiīs, patriae**) is **Dative with a Compound Verb.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a preposition is compounded with a transitive verb, the resulting compound verb may take *both* an Accusative, Direct Object *and* a Dative with a Compound Verb.

2. A Dative with a Compound Verb replaces a prepositional phrase that has an equivalent meaning. For example, the idea expressed by the dative **patriae** in the second sentence above might also have been conveyed by **in patriam**, "against the country." Many compound verbs that take a Dative with a Compound Verb are also found with corresponding prepositional phrases.

3. When prefixes related to the following prepositions are used to form compound verbs, the resulting compound verbs *may* take a Dative with a Compound Verb:

ad	ob (prep. + acc.) in front of²
ante	post
circum (prep. + acc.) around	prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before
cum	sub
in	super (prep. + acc. or abl.) above
inter	

4. A Dative with a Compound Verb is seldom translated with the English prepositions "to" or "for." The second English translations of the two sentences above are to be preferred because they best represent the meanings of the compounds that result from the addition of the prepositions to the simple verbs.

2. Although the preposition **ob** regularly means "on account of," "because of," its original meaning was spatial (in front of, in the way of).

Short Readings

1. A frustrated wife responds to her husband.

   vēra dīcō, sed nēquīquam, quoniam nōn vīs crēdere. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUŌ* 835)

nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

2. A truism from Plautus

   tum dēnique hominēs nostra intellegimus bona,

   quom, quae in potestāte habuimus, ea āmīsimus. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTĪVĪ* 142–43)

āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power; possession
quom = cum

3. A comic character states his dilemma.

   nunc ego inter sacrum saxumque stō, nec quid faciam sciō. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTĪVĪ* 617)

sacrum, sacrī *n.* sacred place
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone

4. The slave Tranio responds understandingly to an obnoxious remark of his friend Grumio.

   quasi invidēre mī hōc vidēre, Grumiō,

   quia mihi bene est et tibi male est; dignissumumst. (PLAUTUS, *MOSTELLĀRIA* 51–52)

Grumiō, *Grumiōnis m.* Grumio
invideō (in- + videō) envy, be jealous of
mī = mihi
quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
quia (conj.) because

5. A slave answers a question about his future.

   ūnum hoc sciō: quod fors feret, ferēmus aequō animō. (TERENCE, *PHORMIŌ* 138)

6. A definition of a rhetorical term

   frequentātiō est, cum rēs tōtā causā dispersae cōguntur in ūnum locum quō gravior

   aut ācrior aut crīminōsior ōrātiō sit. (*RHĒTORICA AD HERENNIUM* IV.52)

cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive together; bring together, collect
crīminōsus, -a, -um accusatory, damning
dispergō, dispergere, dispersī, dispersus spread about, scatter, disperse
frequentātiō, frequentātiōnis *f.* concentration; assembling

7. Cicero gives this as an example of a rhetorical statement that is obviously false.

   nēmō est quīn pecūniam quam sapientiam mālit. (CICERO, *DĒ INVENTIŌNE* I.80)

8. The orator exhorts Catiline directly.

mūtā iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, oblīvīscere caedis atque incendiōrum.

(CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM I* 6)

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
incendium, incendiī *n.* fire; arson
mūtō (1-tr.) change

9. The orator utters some dramatic rhetorical questions.

ō dī immortālēs! ubinam gentium sumus? in quā urbe vīvimus? quam rem pūbli-

cam habēmus? (CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM I* 9)

immortālis, immortāle immortal
ubinam (interrog. adv.) where ever, where indeed

10. After yet another attack on Catiline, Cicero asks a rhetorical question.

sed cūr iam diū dē ūnō hoste loquimur et dē eō hoste quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem,

et quem, quia, quod semper voluī, mūrus interest, nōn timeō; dē hīs quī dissimu-

lant, quī Rōmae remanent, quī nōbīscum sunt nihil dīcimus?

(CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM II* 17)

dissimulō (1-tr.) conceal, pretend
intersum (inter- + sum), interesse, interfuī, —— be between
quia (conj. + indic.) because
remaneō (re- + maneō) remain

11. While speaking about fellow citizens who have joined Catiline's conspiracy, Cicero sums
up his patriotic feelings.

. . . iam nōn possum oblīvīscī meam hanc esse patriam, mē hōrum esse cōnsulem,

mihi aut cum hīs vivendum aut prō hīs esse moriendum.

(CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM II* 27)

12. Cicero recounts what a leading man said about Cicero's exile.

. . . L. Cotta dīxit id quod dignissimum rē pūblicā fuit, nihil dē mē āctum esse

iūre, nihil mōre maiōrum, nihil lēgibus; . . . (CICERO, *PRŌ SESTIŌ* 73)

L. Cotta, L. Cottae *m.* L. (Aurelius) Cotta (consul 65 B.C.E.)

13. Cicero discusses the competing loyalties affecting many Romans.

ego mehercule et illī* et omnibus mūnicipibus duās esse cēnseō patriās, ūnam nā-
tūrae, alteram cīvitātis: ut ille Catō, quom esset Tusculī nātus, in populī Rōmānī cīvi-
tātem susceptus est, ita, quom ortū Tusculānus esset, cīvitāte Rōmānus, habuit al-
teram locī patriam, alteram iūris; ... (CICERO, *DĒ LĒGIBUS* II.5)

*illī refers to Cato.
cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus hold as one's
  opinion, think
mūniceps, mūnicipis *m.* citizen *or* native of a
  mūnicipium, a self-governing community in
  Italy

ortus, ortūs *m.* origin, birth, ancestry
quom = cum
suscipiō (sub- + capiō) receive, adopt
Tusculānus, -a, -um Tusculan
Tusculum, Tusculī *n.* Tusculum, a town in
  Latium

14. Cicero explains why he attaches such importance to officeholders.

ut enim magistrātibus lēgēs, sīc populō praesunt magistrātūs vērēque dīcī potest

magistrātum lēgem esse loquentem, lēgem autem mūtum magistrātum.

(CICERO, *DĒ LĒGIBUS* III.2)

magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* officeholder, magistrate
mūtus, -a, -um mute, incapable of speaking; silent

15. Cicero gives his opinion about the destiny of the Roman people.

populum Rōmānum servīre fās nōn est, quem dī immortālēs omnibus gentibus

imperāre voluērunt. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS VI* 19)

immortālis, immortāle immortal
serviō, servīre, servīvī or serviī, servītūrus be a slave; serve

16. An excerpt from Cicero's translation of Plato's *Timaeus*

deus autem et ortū et virtūte antīquiōrem genuit animum eumque ut dominum

atque imperantem oboedientī praefēcit corporī ... (CICERO, *TIMAEUS* 21)

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus create, beget (of a father)
oboediēns, oboedientis obedient, compliant, subject
ortus, ortūs *m.* rising; origin, ancestry

17. Cicero explains to his friend Atticus why he is determined to erect a shrine in honor of his
   recently deceased daughter, Tullia.

sed iam quasi vōtō quōdam et prōmissō mē tenērī putō, longumque illud tempus

cum nōn erō magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum, quod mihi tamen nimium

longum vidētur. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XII.18.1)

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
prōmissum, prōmissī *n.* promise
quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer

18. Cicero describes the effects of receiving his friend Atticus's letters.

tamen adlevor cum loquor tēcum absēns, multō etiam magis cum tuās litterās

legō. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XII.39.2)

absēns, absentis *not present, absent*
adlevō (1-tr.) *lift up, raise; comfort, console*

19. Caesar finds a convenient point in his narrative to begin a digression.

quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Ger-

māniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnes inter sēsē prōpōnere.

(CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.11)

aliēnus, -a, -um *belonging to another; alien,*
  strange; out of place
Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
Germānia, Germāniae *f.* Germany

nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation
perveniō (per- + veniō) *arrive at* (+ ad + acc.)
prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) *put forward; state*

20. Roman veterans, cornered and faced with difficult odds, refuse to panic.

itaque inter sē cohortātī duce C. Trebōniō equite Rōmānō, quī iīs erat praepositus,

per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveni-

unt. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.40)

cohortor (1-tr.) *exhort, encourage*
eques, equitis *m.* *horseman, cavalryman*
incolumis, incolume *unharmed, safe*
itaque (conj.) *and so, accordingly*
perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus *burst*
  through

perveniō (per- + veniō) *arrive at; get through* (to)
praepōnō (prae- + pōnō) *put in front (of), put in*
  charge (of)
C. Trebōnius, C. Trebōniī *m.* C. Trebonius

21. Caesar recalls the endurance of his men when faced with starvation.

nūlla tamen ex iīs vōx est audīta populī Rōmānī maiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs

indigna. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VII.17)

maiestās, maiestātis *f.* *dignity, majesty*
superior, superius *upper, higher; earlier, previous*
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

22. Caesar explains why a certain Varus may have believed a false report.

... nam quae volumus, ea crēdimus libenter, et quae sentīmus ipsī, reliquōs sen-

tīre spērāmus ... (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ CĪVĪLĪ* II.27)

libenter (adv.) *gladly, willingly*
reliquus, -a, -um *remaining, rest (of)*

23. Catiline speaks of the strong bond between him and his fellow conspirators.

idem velle atque idem nōlle, ea dēmum firma amīcitia est.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 20)

dēmum (adv.) *precisely, only*
firmus, -a, -um *strong, durable, steadfast*

24. An observation about Cicero's closest friend, T. Pomponius Atticus

honōrēs nōn petiit, cum eī patērent propter vel grātiam vel dignitātem.

(CORNELIUS NEPOS, *VĪTA ATTICĪ* 6)

dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity, rank, status
honor, honōris *m.* public *or* political office
pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
vel (adv.) or; vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .

25. A Roman proverb

Malus bonum ubi sē simulat tunc est pessimus. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* M9)

simulō (1-tr.) pretend, simulate

26. A Roman proverb

Male facere quī vult numquam nōn causam invenit.

(PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* M28)

27. A Roman proverb

Peccāre paucī nōlunt, nūllī nesciunt. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* P35)

peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong

28. A Roman proverb

Stultum facit Fortūna quem vult perdere. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* S29)

perdō (per- + dō) lose; destroy
stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish

29. The shepherd Tityrus describes the signs of evening's approach.

et iam summa procul vīllārum culmina fūmant

maiōrēsque cadunt altīs dē montibus umbrae. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* I.83)

culmen, culminis *n.* summit, roof
fūmō, fūmāre, fūmāvī, —— emit smoke, smoke
procul (adv.) at a distance
vīlla, vīllae *f.* country house, farmhouse

30. Charon objects to ferrying Aeneas to the underworld.

corpora vīva nefās Stygiā vectāre carīnā. (VERGIL, *AENEID* VI.391)

carīna, carīnae *f.* keel; ship
Stygius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the river Styx, Stygian
vectō (1-tr.) carry, convey
vīvus, -a, -um living

31. Horace describes the influence of Greek culture on the Romans.

   Graecia capta ferum victōrem cēpit et artīs

   intulit agrestī Latiō . . . (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* II.1.156–57)

agrestis, agreste of *or* living in the fields, rustic; uncivilized
ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce, ferocious
Latium, Latiī *n.* Latium, an area in central Italy
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

32. The poet explains his poetic mission.

   mē Venus artificem tenerō praefēcit amōrī . . . (OVID, *ARS AMĀTŌRIA* I.7)

artifex, artificis skilled, artistic
tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate, young

33. Juno reflects on her rivalry with Bacchus.

   ipse* docet quid agam (fās est ab hoste docērī) . . . (OVID, *METAMORPHŌSĒS* IV.428)

*ipse refers to Bacchus.
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach

34. The philosopher gives his opinion about how the performance of good deeds is repaid by good men.

   aequissima vōx est et iūs gentium prae sē ferēns: "redde quod dēbēs."

   (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DĒ BENEFICIĪS* III.14.3)

prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before; prae sē ferre, to exhibit in one's demeanor, display; declare
reddō (red- + dō) give back, return

35. A quotation from the Greek philosopher Hekaton

   sī vīs amārī, amā. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MORĀLĒS* IX.6.6)

36. Clytaemnestra describes her emotional state.

   . . . flūctibus variīs agor,

   ut cum hinc profundum ventus, hinc aestus rapit,

   incerta dubitat unda cui cēdat malō. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 138–40)

aestus, aestūs *m.* heat; surge, swell
flūctus, flūctūs *m.* wave, billow
hinc (adv.) from this place, from here;
   hinc . . . hinc . . . from *or* on this side . . .
   from *or* on that side . . .
profundum, profundī *n.* (the) deep, depths, deep
   sea, ocean

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off
unda, undae *f.* wave
varius, -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting
ventus, ventī *m.* wind

37. A comparison of the workings of reason and anger

ratiō id iūdicāre vult quod aequum est: īra id aequum vidērī vult quod iūdicāvit.

(Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* III.18.1)

iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason

38. Quintilian assesses the Roman elegists.

elegīā quoque Graecōs prōvocāmus, cuius mihi tersus atque ēlegāns maximē vidē-

tur auctor Tibullus. sunt quī Propertium mālint. Ovidius utrōque* lascīvior, sīcut

dūrior Gallus. (Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* X.1.93)

*utrōque = *masc. sing. abl. of indef. adj.,* each
auctor, auctōris *m.* source; author
ēlegāns, ēlegantis refined, cultivated; graceful;
  apt (in choosing words)
elegīa, elegīae *f.* elegiac poetry, elegy
Gallus, Gallī *m.* (C. Cornelius) Gallus, elegiac
  poet (69?–26 B.C.E.)
Graecī, Graecōrum *m.* (the) Greeks

lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from re-
  straint
prōvocō (prō- + vocō) (1-tr.) challenge, rival
sīcut (conj.) just as
tersus, -a, -um polished, refined, neat
Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* (Albius) Tibullus, elegiac
  poet (55?–19 B.C.E.)

39. A piece of Quintilian's wit

. . . quī stultīs vidērī ērudītī volunt stultī ērudītīs videntur. (Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō*

Ōrātōria X.7.21)

ērudītus, -a, -um learned, accomplished
stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish

40. The satirist derides life in Rome.

quid Rōmae faciam? mentīrī nesciō. (Juvenal, *Saturae* III.41)

mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum tell a falsehood, lie

41. The satirist advocates telling the truth in court.

summum crēde nefās animam praeferre pudōrī . . . (Juvenal *Saturae* VIII.83)

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

42. What should men ask from the gods?

ōrandum est ut sit mēns sāna in corpore sānō. (Juvenal, *Saturae* X.356)

sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane

43. After a catalogue of men's crimes the satirist appends a tart remark.

hūmānī generis mōrēs tibi nōsse volentī

sufficit ūna domus;* . . . (Juvenal, *Saturae* XIII.159–60)

*domus, *here,* courthouse
hūmānus, -a, -um human
nōsse = nōvisse
sufficiō (sub- + faciō) be sufficient, be adequate

44. The historian comments on the superstitious responses of Roman soldiers to a strange drought.

quod in pāce fors seu nātūra, tunc fātum et īra deī vocābātur. (TACITUS, *HISTORIAE*

IV.26)

seu (conj.) or if; or

45. Gellius comments on the importance of usage to common speech.

sed nīmīrum cōnsuētūdō vīcit, quae cum omnium domina rērum, tum maximē

verbōrum est. (AULUS GELLIUS, *NOCTĒS ATTICAE* XII.13.16)

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage
domina, dominae *f.* mistress, ruler
nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, of course

Longer Readings

1. Naevius, *alia carmina epica* frag. 64.1-4

   The epitaph of the early Roman poet Naevius

   Inmortālēs mortālēs sī foret fās flēre,

   flērent dīvae Camēnae Naevium poētam.

   itaque postquam est Orchī trāditus thēsaurō,

   oblītī sunt Rōmae loquier linguā Latīnā.

Camēna, Camēnae *f.* Camena, any one of the Italic divinities connected with springs and waters and identified with the (Greek) Muses

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)

foret = esset

inmortālis (= immortālis), inmortāle immortal

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

Latīnus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Latium (an area in central Italy), Latin

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language

loquier = loquī

mortālis, mortāle mortal

Naevius, Naeviī *m.* Naevius

Orchus (= Orcus), Orchī *m.* Orcus, god of the underworld (= Dis)

thēsaurus, thēsaurī *m.* treasure-chamber, vault; storehouse

Gnaeus Naevius (270–201 B.C.E.) wrote tragedies, comedies, and an epic poem about the first war with Carthage entitled *Bellum Pūnicum*, approximately eighty lines of which survive. Naevius wrote in the accentual Saturnian rhythm native to Italy rather than in the quantitative dactylic hexameter adapted from Greek models by later Latin epic poets.

2. Cicero, *In Verrem II* 2.162

Cicero paints a dramatic portrait of one of Verres' victims, who was barbarously and illegally punished.

caedēbātur virgīs in mediō forō Messānae cīvis Rōmānus, iūdicēs, cum intereā nūllus gemitus, nūlla vōx alia illīus miserī inter dolōrem crepitumque plāgārum audiēbātur nisi haec: "Cīvis Rōmānus sum." hāc sē commemorātiōne cīvitātis omnia verbera dēpulsūrum cruciātumque ā corpore dēiectūrum arbitrābātur; is nōn modo hoc nōn perfēcit, ut virgārum vim dēprecārētur, sed cum implōrāret saepius ūsurpāretque nōmen cīvitātis, crux—crux, inquam—īnfēlīcī et aerumnōsō, quī numquam istam pestem vīderat, comparābātur.

aerumnōsus, -a, -um wretched, suffering
caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus beat, strike
commemorātiō, commemorātiōnis *f.* memory; reminder
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; set up
crepitus, crepitūs *m.* sharp sound, crashing, cracking
cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment
crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross
dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, topple over; avert, divert
dēpellō (dē- + pellō), dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus drive away
dēprecor (1-tr.) ward off by prayer
dolōr, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
implōrō (1-tr.) ask for; implore, appeal to
inquam (defective verb) say; inquam = *1st sing. pres. act. indic.*
intereā (adv.) meanwhile
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
Messāna, Messānae *f.* Messana, a town in Italy
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
plāga, plāgae *f.* blow, stroke
ūsurpō (1-tr.) take possession of; utter *or* invoke (repeatedly)
verbera, verberum *n. pl.* instrument for flogging, switch; blows, floggings, lashes
virga, virgae *f.* twig, shoot; rod, stick

In 70 B.C.E. Cicero had his first great legal success with his prosecution of C. Verres, who was found guilty of governing Sicily badly and corruptly. Cicero had been quaestor in Sicily some years earlier, and clientēs (dependents) acquired at the time asked Cicero to take the case. Cicero's preparation was so thorough and the evidence against Verres so damning that Cicero had delivered only the first of several speeches (*Āctiō Prīma in Verrem*, First Action Against Verres) when Verres admitted defeat. Cicero later published his remaining argument, the *Āctiō Secunda in Verrem*, which is divided into five books. The refined style of these speeches is evidence of the great rhetorical skill that Cicero had already achieved by the age of thirty-six.

3. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 19

Cicero concludes his account of the special position and value of poets.

sit igitur, iūdicēs, sānctum apud vōs, hūmānissimōs hominēs, hoc poētae nōmen
quod nūlla umquam barbaria violāvit. saxa atque sōlitūdinēs vōcī respondent, bestiae
saepe immānēs cantū flectuntur atque cōnsistunt; nōs īnstitūtī rēbus optimīs nōn
poētārum vōce moveāmur?

barbaria, barbariae *f.* foreign or barbarian world;
barbarity, barbarousness
bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal, creature
cantus, cantūs *m.* singing, song
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, —— halt, stop,
stand (still)
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influ-
ence
hūmānus, -a, -um human; humane, cultured
immānis, immāne savage, brutal; tremendous,
immense

īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus set up,
establish; train, instruct
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* judge, juror
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis *f.* solitude, wasteland,
uninhabited country
violō (1-tr.) treat without respect, dishonor,
outrage, violate

4. Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* II.24

L. Licinius Crassus, a famous orator of his day, speaks to his friend Catulus in defense of re-
laxation. He recalls an earlier conversation with the orator and lawyer Scaevola.

itaque illud ego, quod in causā Curiānā Scaevolae dīxī, nōn dīxī secus ac sentiēbam:
nam "sī," inquam, "Scaevola, nūllum erit testāmentum rēctē factum, nisi quod tū
scrīpseris, omnēs ad tē cīvēs cum tabulīs veniēmus, omnium testāmenta tū scrībēs
ūnus. quid igitur?" inquam "quandō agēs negōtium pūblicum? quandō amīcōrum?
quandō tuum? quandō dēnique nihil agēs?" tum illud addidī: "mihi enim līber esse
nōn vidētur, quī nōn aliquandō nihil agit." in quā permaneō, Catule, sententiā mēque,
cum hūc vēnī, hoc ipsum, nihil agere et plānē cessāre, dēlectat.

addō (ad- + dō) add
aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally
Catulus, Catulī *m.* (Q. Lutatius) Catulus (consul
102 B.C.E.)
cessō (1-intr.) stop, desist; do nothing, rest
Curiānus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Curius
dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up
hūc (adv.) to this place, hither
inquam (defective verb) say; inquam = *1st sing.
pres. act. indic.*
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business

permaneō (per- + maneō) remain; persist (in),
remain steady
plānē (adv.) plainly, clearly; utterly, absolutely
quandō (interrog. adv.) when
rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly
Scaevola, Scaevolae *m.* (Q. Mucius) Scaevola
(consul 117 B.C.E.)
secus (adv.) otherwise, differently; secus ac,
other(wise) than
tabula, tabulae *f.* (writing) tablet; *in pl.,* docu-
ment, deed, record
testāmentum, testāmentī *n.* will, testament

5. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 5.34

Cicero reflects on the qualities of a truly free person.

quis igitur vīvit ut volt nisi quī rēctē vīvit? quī gaudet officiō, cui vīvendī* via cōn-
sīderāta atque prōvīsa est, quī nē lēgibus quidem propter metum pāret, sed eās se-
quitur et colit, quia id salūtāre esse maximē iūdicat, quī nihil dīcit, nihil facit, nihil
cōgitat dēnique nisi libenter ac līberē, cuius omnia cōnsilia rēsque omnēs, quās gerit,
ab ipsō proficīscuntur eōdemque† referuntur, nec est ūlla rēs quae plūs apud eum
polleat quam ipsīus voluntās atque iūdicium; cui quidem etiam, quae vim habēre
maximam dīcitur, Fortūna ipsa cēdit, sī, ut sapiēns poēta dīxit, "suīs‡ ea cuique§ fin-
gitur mōribus."

*vīvendī = *gen. sing. of verbal noun*, of living
†eōdem, *here* (adv.), to the same place
‡suīs refers to cuique, his/her own.
§cuique = *masc. or fem. sing. dat. of indef. pron.*, for
    each person
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend, cherish
cōnsīderō (1-tr.) examine, contemplate
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in),
    be glad, be pleased

iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment
iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine
libenter (adv.) willingly, with pleasure
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, service
polleō, pollēre, ——, —— exert power, have
    importance
prōvideō (prō- + videō) foresee; provide for
rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly
salūtāris, salūtāre that promotes health, salutary
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, choice

6. Catullus XLV (hendecasyllable)

The poet paints a picture of mutual love.

Acmēn Septimius, suōs amōrēs,

tenēns in gremiō "mea" inquit "Acmē,

nī tē perditē amō atque amāre porrō

omnēs sum assiduē parātus annōs,

quantum quī pote plūrimum perīre,   5

sōlus in Libyā Indiāque tostā

caesiō veniam obvius leōnī."

hoc ut dīxit, Amor, sinistrā ut ante,

dextrā sternuit approbātiōnem.

at Acmē leviter caput reflectēns   10

et dulcis puerī ēbriōs ocellōs

illō purpureō ōre suāviāta,

"sīc," inquit "mea vīta, Septimille,

huic ūnī dominō ūsque serviāmus,

ut multō mihi maior ācriorque   15

ignis mollibus ardet in medullīs."

hoc ut dīxit, Amor, sinistrā ut ante,

dextrā sternuit approbātiōnem.

Acmē, Acmēs *f.* Acme; Acmēn = *acc. sing.*
approbātiō, approbātiōnis *f.* approval
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire (with passion)
assiduē (adv.) continually, constantly
at (conj.) but
caesius, -a, -um (of eyes only) cutting, sharp; cat-eyed, gray-eyed
caput, capitis *n.* head
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.*, right side
dulcis, dulce sweet; pleasant
ēbrius, -a, -um drunk, intoxicated
gremium, gremiī *n.* bosom, lap
India, Indiae *f.* India, the Far East
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
leō, leōnis *m.* lion
Libya, Libyae *f.* Libya, a province in north Africa
medulla, medullae *f.* marrow; *in pl.*, vitals, innards
mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft
nī = nisi

obvius, -a, -um in the way, so as to meet, face to face with (+ dat.)
ocellus, ocellī *m.* (little) eye
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth
parō (1-tr.) prepare
perditē (adv.) ruinously, recklessly, desperately
porrō (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn, furthermore
pote (indeclinable adj.) having the power, able; quī pote = is quī potest
purpureus, -a, -um dark red, crimson, purple
quantum (adv.) as much as
reflectō, reflectere, reflexī, reflexus bend back
Septimillus, Septimillī *m.* (little) Septimius
Septimius, Septimiī *m.* Septimius
serviō, servīre, servīvī or serviī, servītūrus be a slave; serve (+ dat.)
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left; *as fem. subst.*, left side
sternuō, sternuere, sternuī, —— sneeze
suāvior (1-tr.) kiss
torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus parch, roast, scorch, burn
ūsque (adv.) continuously

nunc ab auspiciō bonō profectī

mūtuīs animīs amant amantur: 20

ūnam Septimius misellus Acmēn

māvult quam Syriās Britanniāsque;

ūnō in Septimiō fidēlis Acmē

facit dēliciās libīdinēsque.

quis ūllōs hominēs beātiōrēs   25

vīdit, quis Venerem auspicātiōrem?

Acmē, Acmēs f. Acme; **Acmēn** = *acc. sing.*
auspicātus, -a, -um favorable, auspicious
auspicium, auspiciī n. augury, omen, divine sign
beātus, -a, -um happy, blessed, fortunate
Britannia, Britanniae f. Britain
dēliciae, dēliciārum f. pl. delight

fidēlis, fidēle faithful
libīdō, libīdinis f. desire, pleasure, passion, lust
misellus, -a, -um poor (little), wretched, pitiable
mūtuus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual
Septimius, Septimiī m. Septimius
Syria, Syriae f. Syria

7. Catullus LXIX

Why does Rufus repel women?

Nōlī admīrārī quārē tibi fēmina nūlla,

 Rūfe, velit tenerum supposuisse femur,

nōn sī illam rārae labefactēs mūnere vestis

 aut perlūcidulī dēliciīs lapidis.

laedit tē quaedam mala fābula, quā tibi fertur   5

 valle sub ālārum trux habitāre caper.

hunc metuunt omnēs; neque mīrum: nam mala valdē est

 bestia, nec quīcum bella* puella cubet.

quārē aut crūdēlem nāsōrum interfice pestem,

 aut admīrārī dēsine cūr fugiunt.   10

*bellus, -a, -m pretty, charming, lovely
admīror (1-tr.) be astonished (at), wonder (at)
āla, ālae f. wing; *here,* armpit
bestia, bestiae f. beast, animal, creature
caper, caprī m. billy goat
crūdēlis, crūdēle cruel
cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum lie down, sleep
dēliciae, dēliciārum f. pl. delight
dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī or **dēsīvī, dēsitum** stop, cease (+ inf.)
fābula, fābulae f. story, tale
femur, femoris n. thigh
habitō (1-intr.) live
labefactō (1-tr.) cause to totter, weaken
laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm
lapis, lapidis m. stone

metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread
mīrus, -a, -um marvelous, astonishing
mūnus, mūneris n. present, gift
nāsus, nāsī m. nose
perlūcidulus, -a, -um transparent, translucent
pestis, pestis, -ium f. plague, destruction, ruin
quīcum = **quācum**
rārus, -a, -um loose-knit; exquisite, rare
Rūfus, Rūfī m. Rufus, the addressee of the poem
suppōnō (sub- + **pōnō**) put under; join
tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate, young
trux, trucis wild, rough, fierce, ferocious
vallēs, vallis, -ium f. valley, vale
vestis, vestis, -ium f. clothing, garment

8. Catullus LXXII

The poet explains to Lesbia his conflicting feelings.

Dīcēbās quondam sōlum tē nōsse Catullum,

    Lesbia, nec prae mē velle tenēre Iovem.

dīlēxī tum tē nōn tantum ut vulgus amīcam,

    sed pater ut nātōs dīligit et generōs.

nunc tē cognōvī: quārē etsī impēnsius ūror,   5

    multō mī tamen es vīlior et levior.

"quī* potis est?" inquis. quod† amantem iniūria tālis

    cōgit amāre magis, sed bene velle minus.

*quī, *here* (adv.), how

†quod, *here* (conj.), because

amīca, amīcae *f.* (female) friend; mistress, courtesan

cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive together; force, compel

dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus value, esteem, love

gener, generī *m.* son-in-law

impēnsus, -a, -um heavy; costly

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice

inquam (defective verb) say; inquis = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*

mī = mihi

nōsse = nōvisse

potis (indeclinable adj.) having the power, able; possible

prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly

tālis, tāle such, of such a sort

tantum (adv.) so much; only

ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn, scorch, inflame, consume; sting

vīlis, vīle worthless, cheap

vulgus, vulgī *n.* common people, (the) multitude, crowd

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.15

Caesar describes the end of a battle against a German tribe.

Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs
signīsque mīlitāribus relictīs, sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae
et Rhēnī pervēnissent, relicuā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, relicuī sē in
flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt.
nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum
hostium numerus capitum quadrīngentōrum trīgintā mīlium fuisset, sē in castra
recēpērunt.

abiciō (ab- + iaciō) throw away
caput, capitis *n.* head
clāmor, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting
cōnfluēns, cōnfluentis, -ium *m.* meeting place
  (of rivers), confluence
dēspērō (1-tr.) give up as hopeless, despair of
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
ibi (adv.) there
incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe
lassitūdō, lassitūdinis *f.* weariness, fatigue
mīlitāris, mīlitāre military
Mosa, Mosae *f.* (the) Meuse, a river in northern
  Gaul

numerus, numerī *m.* number
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press
  down; suppress, overwhelm, crush
perpaucī, perpaucae, perpauca very few
perveniō (per- + veniō) arrive at (+ ad + acc.)
praecipitō (1-tr.) throw *or* hurl headlong
recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; sē recipere,
  to withdraw
relicuus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)
Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine, a river in north-
  eastern Gaul
tantus, -a, -um so great
tergum, tergī *n.* back
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.25

From their ships anchored a short distance away in sufficiently deep water, Caesar's men
attempt to come ashore in Britain. Frightened by the Celts on shore and by the deep water,
they hesitate.

quod* ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs in-
ūsitātior et mōtus ad† ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et
remīs incitārī et ad‡ latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tor-
mentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit. quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. nam et
nāvium figūrā et remōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī
cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt. at nostrīs mīlitibus cūnctantibus
maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestā-
tus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vul-
tis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī offi-
cium praestiterō." hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs
aquilam ferre coepit. tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur,
ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.

*quod refers to the hesitation of Caesar's men.
†ad, *here,* for (the purpose of)
‡ad, *here,* at, near
admittō (ad- + mittō) allow, permit
altitūdō, altitūdinis *f.* height; depth
animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī,
    animadversus turn (one's) attention to,
    notice
apertus, -a, -um open; exposed
aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle; standard (of a legion)
at (conj.) but
barbarus, barbarī, *m.* foreigner
——, ——, coepī, coeptus (defective verb) began,
    have begun
cohortor (co- + hortor) exhort, encourage; speak
    encouragingly
commīlitō, commīlitōnis *m.* fellow soldier
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, —— stop, stand
    still, halt
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus set
    up, establish; draw up, station
cūnctor (1-intr.) delay, hesitate
dēdecus, dēdecoris *n.* disgrace, dishonor
dēsiliō, dēsilīre, dēsiluī, dēsultus jump *or* leap
    down
ēveniō (ē- + veniō) come out, turn out
expedītus, -a, -um unimpeded, light-armed, free
figūra, figūrae *f.* shape
funda, fundae *f.* sling

incitō (1-tr.) rouse, excite
inde (adv.) from there, thence
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing.
    pres. act. indic.*
inūsitātus, -a, -um unusual, extraordinary
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship; nāvī = *abl. sing.*
obtestor (1-tr.) call to witness; swear by; beseech,
    implore
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty
onerārius, -a, -um for transport, cargo-
paulum (adv.) a little
permoveō (per- + moveō) disturb; frighten
pēs, pēdis *m.* foot; pedem referre, to retreat
praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus perform,
    carry out
prōdō (prō- + dō) hand over
prōiciō (prō- + iaciō) hurl forward *or* forth
prōpellō (prō- + pellō), prōpellere, prōpulī,
    prōpulsus push forward; repel
removeō (re- + moveō) remove; move back
remus, remī *m.* oar
sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
submoveō (sub- + moveō) dislodge, ward off
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great
tormentum, tormentī *n.* engine of war, missile-
    shooting machine, catapult
ūniversus, -a, -um all together
ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use; benefit, advantage

11. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 110

Bocchus, the king of Mauretania (in northern Africa) and the former ally of Jugurtha in his war against the Romans, speaks to Sulla, a lieutenant of the Roman general Marius. Bocchus informs Sulla about his own future plans.

cēterum dē rē pūblicā vostrā, quoius cūrātor hūc missus es, paucīs* accipe. bellum

ego populō Rōmānō neque fēcī neque factum umquam voluī; at fīnīs meōs advor-

sum armātōs armīs tūtātus sum. id omittō, quandō vōbīs ita placet. gerite quod voltis

cum Iugurthā bellum.

*paucīs, *sc.* verbīs
advorsum (= adversum) (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of
armātus, armātī *m.* armed man, soldier
at (conj.) but
cēterum (adv.) moreover; however that may be, but
cūrātor, cūrātōris *m.* curator; guardian
hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha, a Numidian king
omittō (ob- + mittō) disregard, pass over; discontinue, leave off
quandō (conj.) since, as
quoius = cuius
tūtor (1-tr.) protect, guard
vostrā = vestrā

12. Vergil, *Eclogues* IX.32–36

A young shepherd makes a modest boast.

                         . . . et mē fēcēre poētam

Pīerides, sunt et mihi carmina, mē quoque dīcunt

vātem pāstōrēs; sed nōn ego crēdulus illīs.

nam neque adhūc Variō videor nec dīcere Cinnā   35

digna, sed argūtōs inter strepere ānser olōrēs.

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time
ānser, ānseris *m.* goose
argūtus, -a, -um sharp; clear-voiced; melodious, tuneful
Cinna, Cinnae *m.* (Helvius) Cinna, poet and friend of Catullus
crēdulus, -a, -um trusting (in) (+ dat.)
olor, olōris *m.* swan

pāstor, pāstōris *m.* herdsman, shepherd
Pīeris, Pīeridos *f.* daughter of Pierus, Muse; Pīerides = *nom. pl.*
strepō, strepere, strepuī, strepitum make a loud noise, screech
Varius, Variī *m.* (L.) Varius (Rufus), poet and friend of Horace and Vergil
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet

13. Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.847–53

In the underworld Aeneas learns of the Roman mission from the soul of his father, Anchises.

excūdent aliī spīrantia mollius aera

(crēdō equidem), vīvōs dūcent dē marmore vultūs,

ōrābunt* causās melius, caelīque meātūs

dēscrībent radiō et surgentia sīdera dīcent: 850

tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō

(hae tibi erunt artēs), pācīque impōnere mōrem,

parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.

*ōrō, *here*, plead
aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze
dēbellō (1-tr.) fight (someone) to the finish, subdue
dēscrībō (dē- + scrībō) draw, mark out
excūdō, excūdere, excūdī, excūsus hammer out, forge, fashion
impōnō (in- + pōnō) place on, impose on
marmor, marmoris *n.* marble
meātus, meātūs *m.* movement, progress
mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)
radius, radiī *m.* ray; rod; compass
sīdus, sīderis *n.* star
spīrō (1-intr.) breathe; live
subiectus, -a, -um subordinate, subject
superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty
surgō, surgere, surrexī, surrēctus rise
vīvus, -a, -um living
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

14. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.657–71

As Aeneas and the Trojans make a strong attack, a comrade of Turnus describes the perilous situation.

" . . . mussat rēx ipse Latīnus

quōs generōs vocet aut quae sēsē ad foedera flectat.

praetereā rēgīna, tuī fīdissima, dextrā

occidit ipsa suā lūcemque exterrita fūgit.   660

sōlī prō portīs Messāpus et ācer Atīnās

sustentant aciēs. circum hōs utrimque phalangēs

stant dēnsae strictīsque seges mucrōnibus horret

ferrea; tū currum dēsertō in grāmine versās."

Atīnās (nom. only) Atinas, an Italian warrior
circum (prep. + acc.) around
currus, currūs *m.* chariot
dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense; crowded together
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus forsake, abandon, desert
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.* (*sc.* manus), right hand
exterreō (ex- + terreō) scare, terrify
ferreus, -a, -um made of iron
fīdus, -a, -um faithful, loyal, devoted; trusting
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend
foedus, foederis *n.* agreement, treaty, pact
gener, generī *m.* son-in-law
grāmen, grāminis *n.* grass; pasture
horreō, horrēre, horruī, —— stand up, bristle; tremble, shudder
Latīnus, Latīnī *m.* Latinus, king of Latium

Messāpus, Messāpī *m.* Messapus, an Italian leader and ally of Latinus and Turnus
mucrō, mucrōnis *m.* point (of a sword); sword
mussō (1-intr.) mutter (in uncertainty)
occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidī, occāsūrus fall; perish, die
phalanx, phalangis *f.* phalanx, a close formation of troops
porta, portae *f.* gate
praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition
seges, segetis *f.* field *or* crop of standing corn
stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus bare, unsheathe
sustentō (1-tr.) support, uphold, sustain
utrimque (adv.) on both sides
versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning around

obstipuit variā cōnfūsus imāgine rērum   665

Turnus et obtūtū tacitō stetit; aestuat ingēns

ūnō in corde pudor mixtōque īnsānia lūctū

et furiīs agitātus amor et cōnscia virtūs.

ut prīmum discussae umbrae et lūx reddita mentī,

ardentīs oculōrum orbīs ad moenia torsit   670

turbidus ēque rotīs magnam respexit ad urbem.

aestuō (1-intr.) burn, blaze, seethe

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire

cōnfundō, cōnfundere, cōnfūdī, cōnfūsus pour together; confuse, trouble

cōnscius, -a, -um conscious, aware

cor, cordis n. heart

discutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus shatter; scatter, disperse, break up

furiae, furiārum f. pl. madness, mad desire, frenzy

imāgō, imāginis n. image, likeness; appearance

īnsānia, īnsāniae f. madness, insanity

lūctus, lūctūs m. mourning

misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up, produce

obstipēscō, obstipēscere, obstipuī, —— be dumbstruck, be stunned, be dazed

obtūtus, obtūtūs m. gaze, stare

orbis, orbis, -ium m. ring, circle, orb

pudor, pudōris m. shame, decency, modesty

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return; restore

respiciō, respicere, respexī, respectus look back at

rota, rotae f. wheel; in pl., chariot

tacitus, -a, -um silent

torqueō, torquēre, torsī, tortus twist, turn

turbidus, -a, -um agitated, wild, frantic

varius, -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting

15. Horace, *Carmina* I.11 (Asclepiadean)

Leuconoë longs to know the future.

Tū nē quaesieris, scīre nefās, quem mihi, quem tibi

fīnem dī dederint, Leuconoē, nec Babylōniōs

temptāris numerōs. ut* melius, quidquid erit, patī.

seu plūrīs hiemēs seu tribuit Iuppiter ultimam,

quae nunc oppositīs dēbilitat pūmicibus mare   5

Tyrrhēnum: sapiās, vīna liquēs, et spatiō brevī

spem longam resecēs. dum loquimur, fūgerit invida

aetās: carpe diem quam minimum† crēdula posterō.

*ut, *here* (adv.) how
†minimum = minimē
aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time
Babylōnius, -a, -um of Babylonia, Babylonian
carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptus pluck, gather;
 seize; criticize, carp at
crēdulus, -a, -um trusting (in) (+ dat.)
dēbilitō (1-tr.) weaken
dum (conj. + indic.) while
hiem(p)s, hiemis *f.* winter; storm
invidus, -a, -um envious, bearing ill-will
Leuconoē, Leuconoēs *f.* Leuconoë, addressee of
 the poem
liquō (1-tr.) make liquid; strain, purify
numerus, numerī *m.* number; numerical symbol
oppōnō (ob- + pōnō) place in the way, expose
posterus, -a, -um next, following
pūmex, pūmicis *f.* pumice stone
quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.,*
 whatever

resecō, resecāre, ——, resectum cut short,
 restrain, cut back
sapiō, sapere, sapiī or sapīvī, —— be intelligent,
 show good sense
seu (conj.) or if; seu . . . seu . . . whether . . .
 or if . . .
spatium, spatiī *n.* course, track; space, (interval
 of) time
temptō (1-tr.) test, try; make (experimental) use
 of; temptāris = temptāveris
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow,
 assign
Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um Tyrrhenian, Tuscan,
 Etruscan; mare Tyrrhēnum, Tyrrhenian Sea,
 the sea along the west coast of Italy
ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final
vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine

16. Horace, *Carmina* IV.7 (Archilochean)

Spring brings thoughts of death for mortals.

Diffūgēre nivēs, redeunt iam grāmina campīs
    arboribusque comae;
mūtat terra vicēs, et dēcrēscentia rīpās
    flūmina praetereunt.
Grātia* cum nymphīs geminīsque sorōribus audet   5
    dūcere nūda chorōs.
inmortālia nē spērēs, monet annus et almum
    quae rapit hōra diem.
frīgora mītēscunt Zephyrīs, vēr prōterit aestās,
    interitūra, simul   10
pōmifer autumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox
    brūma recurrit iners.
damna tamen celerēs reparant caelestia lūnae:
    nōs ubi dēcidimus
quō pater Aenēās, quō dīves Tullus et Ancus,   15
    pulvis et umbra sumus.

*Grātia, *here,* a Grace, goddess of charm and beauty, attendant of Venus

aestās, aestātis *f.* summer

almus, -a, -um nourishing; gracious, kindly

Ancus, Ancī *m.* Ancus (Martius), fourth of the legendary kings of Rome

arbor, arboris *f.* tree

autumnus, autumnī *m.* autumn, fall

brūma, brūmae *f.* winter

caelestis, caeleste heavenly, celestial

celer, celeris, celere swift, fast

chorus, chorī *m.* dance, chorus, troop of dancers

coma, comae *f.* hair

damnum, damnī *n.* loss; waning

dēcidō (dē- + cadō), dēcidere, dēcidī, —— fall down

dēcrēscō, dēcrēscere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus diminish, decrease

diffugiō (dis- + fugiō) *scatter*

dīves, dīvitis rich, wealthy

effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus pour out; send forth

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

frīgus, frīgoris *n.* cold; *in pl.,* cold weather

frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit

geminus, -a, -um twin-born, twin

grāmen, grāminis *n.* grass; pasture

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

iners, inertis inactive, idle, inert; motionless

inmortālis (= immortālis), inmortāle immortal

intereō (inter- + eō), interīre, interiī, interitūrus perish, be destroyed, disappear

lūna, lūnae *f.* moon

mītēscō, mītēscere, ——, —— grow mild, become gentle

mūtō (1-tr.) change

nix, nivis *f.* snow

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude

nympha, nymphae *f.* nymph, a semidivine spirit

pōmifer, pōmifera, pōmiferum fruit-bearing

praetereō (praeter- + eō), praeterīre, praeteriī or praeterīvī, praeteritus go by, pass by; pass over

prōterō, prōterere, prōtrīvī, prōtrītus tread under foot, tramp down

pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off; consume

recurrō, recurrere, recurrī, recursum run *or* hurry back

reparō (1-tr.) recover, restore, repair

rīpa, rīpae *f.* (river) bank

simul (conj.) at the same time as, as soon as

Tullus, Tullī *m.* Tullus (Hostilius), third of the legendary kings of Rome

vēr, vēris *n.* spring

——, vicis *f.* turning, turn; succession, alternation

Zephyrus, Zephyrī *m.* Zephyr, the west wind

quis scit an adiciant* hodiernae crāstina summae[†]

    tempora dī superī?

cūncta manūs avidās fugient hērēdis, amīcō

    quae dederis animō.   20

cum semel occideris et dē tē splendida Mīnōs

    fēcerit arbitria,

nōn, Torquāte, genus, nōn tē fācundia, nōn tē

    restituet pietās.

īnfernīs neque enim tenebrīs Diāna[‡] pudīcum   25

    līberat Hippolytum

nec Lēthaea valet Thēseus abrumpere cārō

    vincula Pīrithoō.

---

[*]**adiciant** scans as *adiiciant with the first -i- being consonantal

[†]**summa, summae** *f.* sum, whole, total

[‡]The **-i-** of **Diāna** here scans *long*.

abrumpō, abrumpere, abrūpī, abruptus break off, sever

adiciō (ad- + iaciō) add to

arbitrium, arbitriī *n.* judgment

avidus, -a, -um desirous, eager, greedy

crāstinus, -a, -um of tomorrow

cūnctus, -a, -um all

fācundia, fācundiae *f.* eloquence

hērēs, hērēdis *m.* or *f.* heir; heiress

Hippolytus, Hippolytī *m.* Hippolytus, son of Theseus

hodiernus, -a, -um of today

īnfernus, -a, -um lower, infernal

Lēthaeus, -a, -um of Lethe, the river of forgetfulness in the underworld

Mīnōs, Mīnōis *m.* Minos, judge (with Aeacus and Rhadamanthys) in the underworld

occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidī, occāsūrus fall, perish, die

pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

Pīrithoüs, Pīrithoī *m.* Pirithoüs, friend of Theseus

pudīcus, -a, -um chaste, pure, honorable

restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus set up again, restore, revive

semel (adv.) once; once and for all

splendidus, -a, -um brilliant, glittering; magnificent

superus, -a, -um upper; **dī superī, deōrum superōrum** *m. pl.* gods above

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

Thēseus, Thēseī *m.* Theseus, hero from Athenian myth and close friend of Pirithoüs

Torquātus, Torquātī *m.* Torquatus, addressee of the poem

vinculum, vinculī *n.* bond, chain

17. Horace, *Ars Poētica* 361–65

The poet compares poetry to painting.

ut pictūra poēsis: erit quae, sī propius stēs,

tē capiat magis, et quaedam, sī longius abstēs;

haec amat obscūrum, volet haec sub lūce vidērī,

iūdicis argūtum quae nōn formīdat acūmen;

haec placuit semel, haec deciēns repetīta placēbit.   365

abstō (ab- + stō), abstāre, ——, —— stand away,
  stand at a distance
acūmen, acūminis *n.* sharpness; mental acute-
  ness, judgment
argūtus, -a, -um sharp; shrewd, clever
deciē(n)s (adv.) ten times
formīdō (1-tr.) fear, dread

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
obscūrus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure
pictūra, pictūrae *f.* picture, painting
poēsis, poēsis *f.* poetry; poem
propius (adv.) nearer, more closely
repetō (re- + petō) seek again; return to
semel (adv.) once, one time

18. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* V.190–94

Just as the hero Perseus resolves to use the Gorgon's head to rout his enemies, one of them,
Nileus—who falsely claims to be descended from the river Nile—begins to taunt Perseus.

"adspice" ait "Perseu, nostrae prīmordia gentis: 190

magna ferēs tacitās sōlācia mortis ad umbrās,

ā tantō cecidisse* virō;" pars ultima vōcis

in mediō suppressa sonō est, adapertaque velle

ōra loquī crēdās, nec sunt ea pervia verbīs.

*cecidisse, supply tē as subject accusative
adaperiō, adaperīre, adaperīvī, adapertus
  open wide
adspiciō (= aspiciō), adspicere, adspexī,
  adspectus look toward, look at; behold
aiō (defective verb) say; ait = *3rd sing. pres.*
  act. indic.
ōs, ōris *n. in sing. or pl.* mouth
Perseus, Perseī *m.* Perseus, son of Zeus and
  Danae, who killed the Gorgon and rescued
  Andromeda; Perseu = *voc. sing.*

pervius, -a, -um that makes a passage for, passable
prīmordia, *prīmordiōrum *n. pl.* beginnings,
  origin; source
sōlācium, sōlāciī *n.* comfort, solace, relief
sonus, sonī *m.* sound, noise; utterance
supprimō, supprimere, suppressī, suppressus
  press down, crush; check, block
tacitus, -a, -um silent
tantus, -a, -um so great
ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.50.6

After the disastrous battle of Cannae, the remaining Roman soldiers were divided into two camps. In the smaller camp, the tribune urges his men to action.

P. Semprōnius Tuditānus tribūnus mīlitum "capī ergō māvoltis," inquit, "ab avāris-simō et crūdēlissimō hoste aestimārīque capita vestra et exquīrī pretia ab interro-gantibus Rōmānus cīvis sīs an Latīnus socius, ut ex tuā contumēliā et miseriā alterī honōs quaerātur? nōn tū,* sī quidem L. Aemilī cōnsulis, quī sē bene morī quam turpiter vīvere māluit, et tot fortissimōrum virōrum quī circā eum cumulātī iacent cīvēs estis. sed antequam opprimit lūx maiōraque hostium agmina obsaepiunt iter, per hōs, quī inordinātī atque incompositī obstrepunt portīs, ērumpāmus. ferrō atque audāciā via fit quamvīs per cōnfertōs hostēs . . . "

*nōn tū, *sc.* capī mālēs; tū refers to each individ-ual soldier in the group being addressed.
L. Aemilius, L. Aemiliī *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 b.c.e.), one of the Roman leaders at the disastrous battle of Cannae
aestimō (1-tr.) price, value, assess
agmen, agminis *n.* (battle) line; throng
antequam (conj.) before
avārus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious
caput, capitis *n.* head
circā (prep. + acc.) around, near
cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together
contumēlia, contumēliae *f.* abuse
crūdēlis, crūdēle cruel
cumulō (1-tr.) pile up, heap
ergō (adv.) therefore
ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth
exquīrō (ex- + quaerō), exquīrere, exquīsīvī, exquīsītus ask (about), inquire
fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made; fit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
honōs, honōris *m.* office; honor, respect
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie dead
incompositus, -a, -um not in proper formation, disorganized

inordinātus, -a, -um not regularly arranged, disordered
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
interrogō (1-tr.) ask, examine, interrogate
iter, itineris *n.* passage; road, route
Latīnus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Latium, an area in central Italy; Latin
miseria, miseriae *f.* misery
obsaepiō, obsaepīre, obsaepsī, obsaeptus block, obstruct, shut off
obstrepō, obstrepere, obstrepuī, obstrepitum make a loud noise in front of (+ dat.)
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress, overwhelm
porta, portae *f.* gate
pretium, pretiī *n.* price
quamvīs (adv.) even though
P. Semprōnius Tuditānus, P. Semprōniī Tuditānī *m.* P. Sempronius Tuditanus (consul 204 b.c.e.), a military tribune at the battle of Cannae
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
tribūnus, tribūnī *m.* tribune, military commander
turpiter (adv.) foully; basely, shamefully

20. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CVII.8

The philosopher muses on man's response to the ever-changing nature of things.

hanc rērum condiciōnem mūtāre nōn possumus; illud possumus, magnum sūmere animum et virō bonō dignum, quō fortiter fortuīta patiāmur et nātūrae cōnsentiā-mus. nātūra autem hoc, quod vidēs, rēgnum mūtātiōnibus temperat; turbantur maria cum quiēvērunt; flant in vicem ventī; noctem diēs sequitur; pars caelī cōn-surgit, pars mergitur. contrāriīs rērum aeternitās cōnstat.

aeternitās, aeternitātis *f.* eternity
condiciō, condiciōnis *f.* contract, agreement; condition
cōnsentiō (con- + sentiō) be in harmony (with); assent (to)
cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōnstitī, cōnstātūrus stand still; be composed (of); depend (upon), consist (in) (+ abl.)
cōnsurgō, cōnsurgere, cōnsurrexī, cōnsurrēctus stand up, rise
contrārius, -a, -um opposite, contrary
flō (1-intr.) blow
fortuītus, -a, -um determined by chance, acciden-tal, fortuitous
mergō, mergere, mersī, mersus plunge, dip; sink (below the horizon), go down

mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis *f.* change, alteration
mūtō (1-tr.) change
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus fall asleep; be at rest; subside
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; take on, assume
temperō (1-tr.) restrain; moderate, temper
turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
——, vicis *f.* turn; succession; in vicem, in turn; against one another

Seneca's *Epistulae Mōrālēs* (*Letters Concerned with Ethics*) is a collection of 124 letters in which he attempts to answer questions concerning moral conduct and moral improvement. Written in a plain style, the *Epistulae* often end with pointed, epigrammatic *sententiae*.

21. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CVII.11–12

The philosopher concludes a letter to his friend Lucilius, in which he encourages Lucilius to learn to accept life's unpredictability. The first line of the passage is a translation of a line from the Greek philosopher Cleanthes.

dūcunt volentem fāta, nōlentem trahunt.

sīc vīvāmus, sīc loquāmur; parātōs nōs inveniat atque inpigrōs fātum. hic est mag-nus animus quī sē eī trādidit; at contrā ille pusillus et dēgener quī obluctātur et dē ordine mundī male exīstimat et ēmendāre māvult deōs quam sē. Valē.

at (conj.) but
dēgener, dēgeneris lowborn; degenerate, ignoble
ēmendō (1-tr.) correct, reform
exīstimō (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, think
inpiger (= impiger), inpigra, inpigrum active, energetic

mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
obluctor (1-intr.) struggle, resist
ordō, ordinis *m.* order
parō (1-tr.) prepare, make ready
pusillus, -a, -um very small, petty, mean
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; pull

22. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 466–76

Eurybates describes the beginning of a storm that overwhelms the Greek fleet as it returns from Troy.

nox prīma caelum sparserat stellīs, iacent

dēserta ventō vēla. tum murmur grave,

maiōra minitāns, collibus summīs cadit

tractūque longō lītus ac petrae gemunt;

agitāta ventīs unda ventūrīs tumet: 470

cum subitō lūna conditur, stellae latent;

nec ūna nox est: dēnsa tenebrās obruit

calīgō et omnī lūce subductā fretum

caelumque miscet. undique incumbunt simul

rapiuntque pelagus īnfimō ēversum solō   475

adversus Eurō Zephyrus et Boreae Notus.

adversus, -a, -um turned toward; opposite, hos-
tile, adverse (+ dat.)

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass

Boreās, Boreae *m.* Boreas, the north wind

calīgō, calīginis *f.* dimness; fog, mist; darkness

collis, collis, -ium *m.* hill

condō, condere, condidī, conditus found, build;
conceal; bury

dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus forsake,
abandon, desert

Eurus, Eurī *m.* Eurus, the east wind

ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī, ēversus turn upside
down, churn up

fretum, fretī *n.* strait; sea, (the) deep

gemō, gemere, gemuī, gemitum groan, moan

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest, lie still

incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, —— fall (on),
throw oneself (on), bear down (on)

īnfimus, -a, -um lowest, bottom (of), depths (of)

lateō, latēre, latuī, —— (intr.) hide, lie hidden,
be concealed

lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach

lūna, lūnae *f.* moon

minitor (1-tr.) threaten

misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up

murmur, murmuris *n.* rumble, roar

Notus, Notī *m.* Notus, the south wind

obruō, obruere, obruī, obrutus cover up, over-
whelm

pelagus, pelagī *n.* (deep) sea

petra, petrae *f.* rock, boulder

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off;
consume

simul (adv.) at the same time; together

solum, solī *n.* soil; base, foundation

spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus scatter,
distribute

stella, stellae *f.* star

subdūcō (sub- + dūcō) lead up (from below);
remove, take away

subitō (adv.) suddenly

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

tractus, tractūs *m.* dragging; trail; extent,
expanse

tumeō, tumēre, tumuī, —— swell

unda, undae *f.* wave, water

undique (adv.) from all sides, on all sides

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

Zephyrus, Zephyrī *m.* Zephyrus, the west wind

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 12–13

> nunc iam* apertē rem pūblicam ūniversam petis, templa deōrum immortālium,
> tēcta urbis, vītam omnium cīvium, Italiam tōtam ad exitium et vāstitātem vocās. quā
> rē, quoniam id quod est prīmum, et quod huius imperī disciplīnaeque maiōrum pro-
> prium est, facere nōndum audeō, faciam id quod est ad† sevēritātem lēnius, ad† com-
> mūnem salūtem ūtilius. nam sī tē interficī iusserō, residēbit in rē pūblicā reliqua
> coniūrātōrum manus; sīn tū, quod tē iam dūdum hortor, exieris, exhauriētur ex urbe
> tuōrum comitum magna et perniciōsa sentīna reī pūblicae. quid est, Catilīna? num
> dubitās id mē imperante facere quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās? exīre ex urbe iubet cōn-
> sul hostem. interrogās mē num in exsilium? nōn iubeō, sed sī mē cōnsulis, suādeō.

*nunc iam, now at last
†ad, *here*, with regard to, with a view to
apertē (adv.) openly
comes, comitis *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
commūnis, commūne common
coniūrātor, coniūrātōris *m.* conspirator
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus take
  counsel, consult
disciplīna, disciplīnae *f.* training
dūdum (adv.) some time ago, before; iam
  dūdum, for a long time now, long since
exhauriō, exhaurīre, exhausī, exhaustus drain dry
exeō (ex- + eō), exīre, exiī or exīvī, exitum go out,
  depart
exitium, exitiī *n.* destruction, ruin
immortālis, immortāle immortal
interrogō (inter- + rogō) (1-tr.) ask, examine,
  interrogate
lēnis, lēne mild, gentle

nōndum (adv.) not yet
perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive, ruinous
proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), charac-
  teristic (of) (+ gen.)
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)
resideō, residēre, resēdī, —— be left, remain
sentīna, sentīnae *f.* bilgewater; cesspool; dregs,
  scum
sevēritās, sevēritātis *f.* gravity, seriousness,
  severity
sīn (conj.) but if
*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend,
  urge, advise
tēctum, tēctī *n.* roof; house
ūniversus, -a, -um all together, entire, whole
ūtilis, ūtile useful
vāstitās, vāstitātis *f.* devastation

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 1 – 2

sed diū magnum inter mortālīs certāmen fuit vīne corporis an virtūte animī rēs mīl-

itāris magis prōcēderet. nam et priusquam incipiās, cōnsultō et, ubi cōnsulueris,

mātūrē factō opus est. ita utrumque* per sē indigēns; alterum alterīus auxiliō eget.

2. Igitur initiō rēgēs—nam in terrīs nōmen imperī id prīmum fuit—dīvorsī pars

ingenium, aliī corpus exercēbant: etiam tum vīta hominum sine cupiditāte agitābā-

tur; sua† quoique satis placēbant. posteā vērō quam in Asiā Cȳrus, in Graeciā Lace-

daemoniī et Athēniēnsēs coepēre urbīs atque nātiōnēs subigere, lubīdinem domi-

nandī‡ causam bellī habēre, maxumam glōriam in maxumō imperiō putāre, tum

dēmum perīculō atque negōtiīs conpertum est in bellō plūrumum ingenium posse.

quod sī§ rēgum atque imperātōrum animī virtūs in pāce ita ut in bellō valēret, aequā-

bilius atque cōnstantius sēsē rēs hūmānae habērent,¶ neque aliud aliō# ferrī neque

mūtārī ac miscērī omnia cernerēs. nam imperium facile iīs artibus

*utrumque = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*,
  each thing (of two)
†sua refers to quoique, his/her own things.
‡dominandī = *neut. sing. gen. of verbal noun of*
  dominor (1-intr.) of being master, of ruling
§quod sī (conj.) but if
¶aequābilius . . . sēsē habērent . . . would be
  more equable . . .
#aliō, *here* (adv.), to another place
aequābilis, aequābile consistent, equable
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; spend, pass
Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia (modern Asia Minor)
Athēniēnsis, Athēniēnse Athenian; *as subst.*,
  (an) Athenian
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, deter-
  mine, perceive
certāmen, certāminis *n.* competition; dispute,
  quarrel
——, ——, coepī, coeptus (defective verb) began,
  have begun
conperiō (= comperiō), conperīre, conperī,
  conpertus find out, learn
cōnstāns, cōnstantis firm, steady, invariable,
  constant
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus take
  counsel, consult, consider, plan
cōnsultum, cōnsultī *n.* resolution, plan
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
Cȳrus, Cȳrī *m.* Cyrus, a Persian king
dēmum (adv.) at length, at last; precisely, only;
  tum dēmum, only then
dīvorsus (= dīversus), -a, -um opposite, separate,
  different

egeō, egēre, eguī, —— lack, want, need (+ abl.)
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy,
  occupy; train, exercise
hūmānus, -a, -um human
incipiō (in- + capiō) take on, begin; incipiās,
  subjunc. expressing anticipation, you can
  begin
indigēns, indigentis needy, not self-sufficient
initium, initiī *n.* beginning
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um Lacedaemonian,
  Spartan; *as subst.*, (a) Spartan
lubīdō (= libīdō), lubīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure,
  passion, lust
mātūrē (adv.) quickly, in good time
maxumam = maximam
maxumō = maximō
mīlitāris, mīlitāre military
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up
mortālīs, mortāle mortal
mūtō (1-tr.) change
nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation
negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business, (business)
  activity
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
plūrumum = plūrimum
posteā . . . quam = postquam
priusquam (conj. + subjunc.) before
prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, progress,
  succeed
quoique = *masc./fem. sing. dat. of indef. pron.*,
  each *or* every man *or* woman
subigō (sub- + agō), subigere, subēgī, subāctus
  drive under, force; subdue, conquer

retinētur, quibus initiō partum est. vērum ubi prō labōre dēsidia, prō continentiā et aequitāte lubīdō atque superbia invāsēre, fortūna simul cum mōribus inmūtātur. ita imperium semper ad optumum quemque* ā minus bonō trānsfertur. Quae hominēs arant, nāvigant, aedificant, virtūtī omnia pārent. sed multī mortālēs, dēditī ventrī atque somnō, indoctī incultīque vītam sīcutī peregrīnantēs trānsiēre; quibus profectō contrā nātūram corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit. eōrum ego vītam mortemque iuxtā aestumō, quoniam dē utrāque† silētur. vērum enim vērō‡ is dēmum mihi vīvere atque fruī animā vidētur, quī aliquō negōtiō intentus praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmam quaerit. sed in magnā cōpiā rērum aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit.

*quemque = *masc. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, each man

†utrāque = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. pron.*, each (of two)

‡vērum enim vērō but at the same time

aedificō (1-tr.) build

aequitās, aequitātis *f.* evenness, calmness; equity, fairness

aestumō (= aestimō) (1-tr.) estimate, value, reckon

aliquō = *neut. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any

arō (1-tr.) plough, till, cultivate

continentia, continentiae *f.* restraint, temperance, moderation

dēdō (dē- + dō) give up, surrender, deliver; dedicate

dēmum (adv.) at length, at last; precisely, only

dēsidia, dēsidiae *f.* idleness, inactivity, sloth

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

incultus, -a, -um uncouth, rough, uncultivated

indoctus, -a, -um not learned, ignorant

initium, initiī *n.* beginning

inmūtō (= immūtō) (1-tr.) alter, change

intentus, -a, -um stretched, attentive, intent, occupied

invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus enter (hostilely), invade, attack

iter, itineris *n.* passage; road, route

iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally

lubīdō (= libīdō), lubīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust

mortālis, mortāle mortal

nāvigō (1-tr.) sail

negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business

onus, oneris *n.* load, burden; trouble, difficulty

optumum = optimum

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus or ostēnsus present, show; offer

pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear (of a mother); create

peregrīnor (1-intr.) dwell abroad; be an alien; travel abroad

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous

profectō (adv.) in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly

retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp

sīcutī (conj.) just as

sileō, silēre, siluī, —— be silent; pass over in silence

simul (adv.) at the same time

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

superbia, superbiae *f.* pride; arrogance, haughtiness

trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsiī or trānsīvī, trānsitus go across, pass through

trānsferō (trāns- + ferō), trānsferre, trānstulī, trānslātus carry across, shift

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.506–17

    forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requīrās.

    urbis utī captae cāsum convulsaque vīdit

    līmina tēctōrum et medium in penetrālibus hostem,

    arma diū senior dēsuēta trementibus aevō

    circumdat nēquīquam umerīs et inūtile ferrum   510

    cingitur, ac dēnsōs fertur moritūrus in hostīs.

    aedibus in mediīs nūdōque sub aetheris axe

    ingēns āra fuit iuxtāque veterrima laurus

    incumbēns ārae atque umbrā complexa penātīs.

    hīc Hecuba et nātae nēquīquam altāria circum,*   515

    praecipitēs ātrā ceu tempestāte columbae,

    condēnsae et dīvum† amplexae simulācra sedēbant.

*altāria circum = circum altāria by anastrophe, the reversal in order of a preposition and its object

†dīvum = dīvōrum

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *in pl.*, house, abode

aethēr, aetheris *m.* ether, the upper region of the sky, heaven

aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime

altāria, altārium *n. pl.* (high) altar (for sacrifice)

amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum embrace; clasp (for protection)

āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark

axis, axis *m.* axis

ceu (conj.) (in the same way) as, like

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird, equip, put on; cingitur, translate with active meaning

circum (prep. + acc.) around

circumdō (circum- + dō) place (something) around, put (something) on

columba, columbae *f.* dove

complector, complectī, complexus sum embrace; encircle, enclose

condēnsus, -a, -um close together, tightly packed

convellō, convellere, convellī, convulsus pull up (violently), tear up, wrench

dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense; crowded together, closely packed

dēsuētus, -a, -um unfamiliar (from lack of use)

forsitan (adv.) perhaps

Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba, wife of Priam

hīc (adv.) here

incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, —— fall (on), throw oneself (on); lean (on)

inūtilis, inūtile unfit for use; useless

iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally

laurus, laurī *f.* laurel tree

līmen, līminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold

nāta, nātae *f.* daughter

nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted

penātēs, penātium *m. pl.* penates, guardian deities of a household or country

penetrāle, penetrālis, -ium *n.* inner part, inmost recess

praeceps, praecipitis rushing forward, headlong

requīrō (re- + quaerō), requīrere, requīsiī or requīsīvī, requīsītus seek again; ask *or* inquire about

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated

senex, senis old

simulācrum, simulācrī *n.* image, statue

tēctum, tēctī *n.* roof; house

tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm

tremō, tremere, tremuī, —— tremble, quiver, quake

umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder

utī = ut

vetus, veteris old, ancient; veterrima = *fem. sing. nom. of superlative adj.*

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.478–89

multī illam petiēre, illa āversāta petentēs

inpatiēns expersque virī nemora āvia lūstrat

nec quid Hymēn, quid Amor, quid sint cōnūbia cūrat.   480

saepe pater dīxit: "generum mihi, fīlia, dēbēs,"

saepe pater dīxit: "dēbēs mihi, nāta, nepōtēs";

illa velut crīmen taedās exōsa iugālēs

pulchra verēcundō suffūderat ōra rubōre

inque patris blandīs haerēns cervīce lacertīs   485

"dā mihi perpetuā, genitor cārissime," dīxit

"virginitāte fruī! dedit hoc pater ante Diānae."

ille quidem obsequitur, sed tē decor iste quod optās

esse vetat, vōtōque tuō tua forma repugnat:

āversor (1-tr.) turn away from; reject
āvius, -a, -um pathless, trackless
blandus, -a, -um *charming, ingratiating,*
    seductive
cervīx, cervīcis *f.* neck
cōnūbium, cōnūbiī *n. in sing. or pl.* marriage,
    marriage rites
crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime
cūrō (1-tr.) watch over; care
decor, decōris *m.* good looks, beauty, grace
exōsus, -a, -um hating, detesting (+ acc.)
expers, expertis having no part, lacking
    experience
forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
gener, generī *m.* son-in-law
genitor, genitōris *m.* father
haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesūrus cling, stick
Hymēn (nom. only) Hymen, god of marriage;
    marriage
inpatiēns, inpatientis not enduring, intolerant

iugālis, iugāle of *or* belonging to marriage,
    matrimonial, nuptial
lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm
lūstrō (1-tr.) move through, roam
nemus, nemoris *n.* wood, forest
nepōs, nepōtis *m.* or *f.* grandchild
obsequor (ob- + sequor) comply (with),
    submit
ōs, ōris *n. in sing. or pl.* mouth; face
perpetuus, -a, -um continual, without inter-
    ruption; perpetual, everlasting
repugnō (1-intr.) fight against, resist (+ dat.)
rubor, rubōris *m.* redness; blush
suffundō, suffundere, suffūdī, suffūsus
    cover, fill, suffuse
taeda, taedae *f.* torch
velut (conj.) even as, just as
verēcundus, -a, -um modest, restrained
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid
virginitās, virginitātis *f.* virginity; celibate life
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer

§121. Unassimilated Forms, Archaic Spellings, and Syncopation

Unassimilated Forms and Archaic Spellings

Although classical Latin writers established strict rules of spelling and morphology for Latin words, many works that have survived indicate that these writers also allowed certain exceptions to the rules. Writers of both prose and poetry sometimes sought special effects of style by including certain words with **archaic spellings**. These forms had existed in the Latin of an earlier time, but they had gradually fallen out of use and been replaced by later spellings. In epic poetry these archaisms were felt to contribute to an appropriately august and elevated diction. In the works of the historian Sallust archaisms represented a deliberate rebellion against the Ciceronian standard and became a hallmark of his unique style. Even Cicero made use of such forms when their archaic feeling contributed to a desired stylistic effect.

One common type of archaism is the *unassimilated form* of a compound word.[1] An **unassimilated form** is a form in which the ordinary assimilation of two consonants does not occur or is not written.[2] For example:

> adcēdō = accēdō   inpius = impius

Other archaic spellings give evidence of how the pronunciation of *vowels* changed as Latin developed.

> maxumus = maximus (-u- > -i-)   antiquos = antiquus (-os > -us)
> vostra = vestra (-o- > -e-)   suom = suum (-om > -um)

BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE UNASSIMILATED FORMS AND OTHER ARCHAIC SPELLINGS. IN ADDITION, LEARN TO RECOGNIZE THE FOLLOWING FORMS:

> quoius = cuius   olli = illi (dative singular)
> quoi = cui   āī = ae (genitive singular)
> quom = cum (conjunction)[3]

Syncopation of Forms in the Perfect Active System

Forms of the perfect active system of first- and second-conjugation verbs may be shortened by removing *the -v- and the following vowel from the regular forms*. This shortening is sometimes called **syncopation** (< Greek *synkopē*, "cutting short"), and forms that have been shortened are called **syncopated forms**. For example:

---

1. For an explanation of assimilation see the vocabulary notes of Chapter V.

2. With few exceptions, the earliest surviving copies of ancient works were written at least eight hundred years after they were originally produced. Therefore, while the existence of both unassimilated and assimilated forms suggests that words continued to be pronounced in *both* ways, nothing can be said with complete certainty.

3. Cf. the vocabulary note on the conjunction cum, p. 322.

amasti (< amavisti)   optarim (< optaverim)
delerunt (< deleverunt)
cogitaram (< cogitaveram)   imperassemus (< imperavissemus)
laudaro (< laudavero)   delesse (< delevisse)

OBSERVATION

Any form of the perfect active system may be syncopated *except* the *first person singular, third person singular,* and the *first person plural perfect active indicative.* Third person plural perfect active indicative forms made with the ending -ēre *also* cannot be syncopated.

Verbs of the third and fourth conjugations may also appear in shortened forms in the perfect active system, but these shortened forms do not always result from syncopation. For example:

audisti (< audivisti)   audieris (= audiveris)
audissem (< audivissem)   audiit (= audivit)
audisse (< audivisse)   audierant (= audiverant)
noras (< noveras)   audierit (= audiverit)
norint (< noverint)

OBSERVATION

Some shortened perfect active system forms of the third and fourth conjugations are generally believed to be the result of syncopation (e.g., audisti, audissem, audisse, noras, norint). Others are thought to be formed from alternate (and earlier) third principal parts (e.g., audieris < audii). In such cases the short -i- that appears is part of the perfect active stem (e.g., audi- < audii).[4]

BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE SHORTENED AND SYNCOPATED FORMS.

---

4. In third-conjugation verbs, the familiar third principal parts with a -v- are thought to have developed *by analogy* with the principal parts of other verbs. (Cf., for example, petii *or* petivi; quaesii *or* quaesivi). By the classical period forms derived from either principal part are common.

CHAPTER XIII

Vocabulary

➤ **nihilum, nihilī** or *****nīlum, nīlī** *n.* nothing
➤ **pretium, pretiī** *n.* price, value

➤ **honor, honōris** *m.* honor, respect; (political) office
➤ **lūmen, lūminis** *n.* light, radiance; *in pl.*, eyes
➤ **scelus, sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy
vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound

➤ **aestimō** (1-tr.) estimate, value
➤ **ex(s)pectō** (1-tr.) wait (for), await, expect
➤ **moror** (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait
➤ **mūtō** (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus buy
➤ **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus** reckon (§128)
gradior, gradī, gressus sum proceed, walk, step
➤ **ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum** go *or* come out
➤ **incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus** take on, begin
➤ **perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus** destroy; lose
vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus sell

➤ **——, ——, coepī, coeptus** (defective verb) began, have begun
fīō, fierī, factus sum become, happen; be made, be done (§125)

➤ **cēterus, -a, -um** rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other

➤ **grātus, -a, -um** charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased
➤ **ingrātus, -a, -um** unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great (§124)
quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; as much, as great (§124)

tālis, tāle such, of such a sort (§124)
quālis, quāle what sort of; of which sort, as (§124)

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many (§124)
quot (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many (§124)

➤ **ad** (prep. + acc.) for the purpose of (§122)
antequam (conj.) before (§123)
➤ **causā** (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§122)
dōnec (conj.) while, as long as; until (§123)
dum (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (§123)
➤ **dummodo** (conj.) provided that (§123)
➤ **grātiā** (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§122)
modo (conj.) provided that (§123)
priusquam (conj.) before (§123)
quia (conj.) because (§123)
quod (conj.) because (§123)
tam (adv.) so (§124)

Vocabulary Notes

*nīlum, nīlī *n.* is a contracted form of nihilum, nihilī *n.* Both words are commonly used as Genitives of Indefinite Value (see §128), Ablatives of Price (see §129), and Ablatives of Degree of Difference (see §111).

pretium, pretiī *n.* is often used as a Genitive of Indefinite Value (see §128) or an Ablative of Price (see §129).

honor, honōris *m.* may indicate the general notion of "respect" or "honor" or a more concrete mark of respect given to someone. It commonly refers to a political "office." The archaic nominative singular form honōs remains common throughout the classical period.

lūmen, lūminis *n.* is formed by the addition of the suffix -men to a stem of the verb lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī, —— (shine, emit light). In addition to the meaning "light" or "radiance" lūmen is often used metaphorically to mean the "light" of life or the "enlightenment" of literature, the arts, etc. It is also used in the plural, particularly in poetry, to mean "eyes," either because the eye is an opening that admits light or from the idea that glancing at something casts light upon the object.

scelus, sceleris *n.* is used to refer to a specific "wicked deed" or "crime," or it may refer more generally to the abstract idea of "villainy" or "wickedness."

aestimō, aestimāre, aestimāvī, aestimātus often appears with either a Genitive of Indefinite Value (see §128) or an Ablative of Price (see §129).

ex(s)pectō, ex(s)pectāre, ex(s)pectāvī, ex(s)pectātus is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely with the meaning "wait." It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by dum or dōnec (see §123). The s placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an s.

moror, morārī, morātus sum may be used transitively (hinder, delay) or intransitively (delay, wait). It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by dum or dōnec (see §123).

mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus may mean "take in exchange" or "give in exchange" with an Ablative of Price (see §129). When it is used absolutely, mūtō means "change" in the sense of "undergo a change" or "become different."

> Quis servitūtem libertāte mūtet?   Who would take slavery in exchange for freedom?
> Quis libertātem servitūte mūtet?   Who would give freedom in exchange for slavery?

When the verb faciō is used with a Genitive of Indefinite Value (see §128), it is best translated as "reckon."

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ē- to gradior. (For the prefix ē- see Appendix P.) THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF GRADIOR FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ĒGREDIOR. WHEN A COMPOUND OF GRADIOR APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix in-[1] to capiō. (For the prefix in-[1] see Appendix P.) Incipiō is a transitive verb that most frequently appears with an Object Infinitive. In classical Latin the perfect active and perfect passive forms of incipiō are very rare. The forms of the defective verb ——, ——, coepī, coeptus are used instead. However, the perfect passive participle inceptus, -a, -um is commonly used, as is the noun derived from it: inceptum, inceptī *n.*, "beginning," "undertaking."

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix per- to dō. (For the prefix per- see Appendix P.) Perdō may mean "destroy" or "cause ruin to" (people, things) or "lose" (people, troops, citizenship, beauty). It may also mean "waste" (resources, opportunities). The perfect passive participle perditus, -a, -um is frequently used as an adjective meaning "(morally) lost," "ruined," or "depraved." The adverb perditē means "recklessly," "desperately," or "ruinously."

——, ——, coepī, coeptus is a defective verb. It has forms in the perfect active and perfect passive systems only. In classical Latin forms of coepī are regularly used instead of the perfect active and passive forms of incipiō.

cēterus, -a, -um is often used substantively to refer to the remaining part of a group or thing. The neuter singular (cēterum) of cēterus, -a, -um may be used as an Adverbial Accusative (see §126) to mean "for the rest," "moreover," or "in addition." In the historians it commonly has some adversative force (however that may be, but).

grātus, -a, -um and the compound adjective ingrātus, -a, -um (< in-[2] + grātus, -a, -um) have both active and passive senses. (For the prefix in-[2] see Appendix P.) The meanings given for these words in the vocabulary list reflect first their active senses and then their passive ones.

The preposition **ad** is regularly used with gerunds and gerundives to mean "for (the purpose of)" (see §122), but it may also have this sense with nouns or pronouns standing alone, particularly demonstratives.

Dux multa ad hoc fēcerat.   The leader had done many things for this purpose.

The words **causā** and **grātiā** are Ablatives of Cause used as prepositions that take the *genitive* case. The word in the genitive case *precedes* either **causā** or **grātiā**. These words most commonly appear with gerunds or gerundives (see §122), but they may also appear with nouns standing alone, particularly abstract nouns.

dummodo is a conjunction formed by the addition of the adverb **modo** to the conjunction dum and may be written as one or two words (dummodo or dum modo). It may introduce a Proviso clause (see §123), and, because of this combination, **modo** *alone* may also introduce a Proviso clause.

	Derivatives	Cognates
cēterus	etc. (et cetera)	he, him, her, it
gradior	digress, progress, congress	grade; degree
grātus	grace; grateful; gratify; gratis; ingrate; agree; congratulate	bard(?)
mūtō	mutate; commute; permutation	immune; mistake
pretium	praise; price; precious	interpret
vulnus	vulnerable	Valhalla; Valkyrie

§122. Gerunds and Gerundives

In English there are two verbal nouns, the infinitive (to _____) and the **gerund** (_____ing). For example:

> I like *to read*. (infinitive functioning as d.o. of the verb "like")
> *Reading* is enjoyable. (gerund functioning as subject of the verb "is")
> I exercise my mind by *reading*. (gerund functioning as object of the preposition "by")

In Latin there are the same two verbal nouns, the *infinitive* and the *gerund*. There is in addition a verbal adjective, the **gerundive**, which has no exact counterpart in English. The features of the gerund and the gerundive are listed and compared below.

GERUND (Verbal *Noun*)	GERUNDIVE (Verbal *Adjective*)
1. is a **neuter singular** noun appearing in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. (The nominative is supplied by the *Subject Infinitive*.)	1. is never a substantive but *must* agree with a noun in gender, number, and case.
2. is formed with the present stem + **-ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō** (*3rd-i stems and 4th conjugation verbs change stem vowel to -ie-*). [Nom. **vidēre** to see/seeing] Gen. **videndī** of seeing Dat. **videndō** to/for seeing Acc. **videndum** seeing (d.o.) Abl. **videndō** by (etc.) seeing	2. is identical in all forms with the *future passive participle* (e.g. **amandus, -a, -um; audiendus, -a, -um**).
3. represents the uncompleted action of a verb that *usually* has no direct object but *sometimes* appears with neuter pronouns, neuter plural substantives, and other direct objects.	3. represents the uncompleted action of a transitive verb onto a direct object which it modifies in gender, number, and case.
4. can have any noun syntax (Objective Genitive, Ablative of Means, etc.) and is translated accordingly by the English gerund. **cupidus regendī** desirous of ruling (Objective Gen.)	4. is lacking in English and so must be changed into a *gerund with a direct object* when translating into English. **dōnīs mittendīs** by sending gifts (*not* by gifts to be sent)
5. is used to express *purpose* in the *genitive* with **causā** or **grātiā** (placed after) and in the *accusative* with **ad**. **videndī causā** for the sake of seeing **ad videndum** for the purpose of seeing	5. is used to express *purpose* in the *genitive* with **causā** or **grātiā** (placed after) and in the *accusative* with **ad**. **rēgis videndī causā** for the sake of seeing the king **ad rēgem videndum** for the purpose of seeing the king

The following sentences illustrate the uses of the gerund and the gerundive.

Mihi est amor *scribendī*. (gerund, Objective Gen.)
I have a love *of writing.*
Mihi est amor *carminum scribendōrum.* (gerundive, modifies *carminum,*
I have a love of *writing poems.*   Objective Gen.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a gerund would take a direct object, the gerundive construction is usually preferred, as in the second sentence.

2. The Latin gerundive, an *adjective* modifying a noun, is translated into English as a gerund, a verbal *noun,* with a direct object.

Arma cēpit *ad pugnandum.* (gerund expressing purpose with *ad,* for the purpose of)
He took up arms *for the purpose of fighting.*
Rōmam vēnī *ad mātrem videndam.* (gerundive expressing purpose with *ad*)
I came to Rome *for the purpose of seeing (my) mother.*
Rōmam vēnī multa *videndī causā.* (gerund expressing purpose with *causā,* for the sake of)
I came to Rome *for the sake of seeing many things.*

OBSERVATION

In the third sentence a *gerund with a neuter plural substantive as direct object* is preferred to the gerundive construction to avoid ambiguity:

multōrum videndōrum causā   "for the sake of seeing many *things*"
                                         or "for the sake of seeing many *men*"

Occasionally the gerundive construction is used to express purpose in the accusative case *without* **ad**. For example:

Caesar Quīntō lēgātō *sociōs dūcendōs* trādidit.
Caesar to Quintus (his) lieutenant *the allies to be led* handed over.
Caesar handed over to (his) lieutenant Quintus *the allies to be led.*
Caesar handed over *the allies* to (his) lieutenant Quintus *for leading.*

OBSERVATION

In such a construction the gerundive still expresses purpose, but it must be translated differently: "to be _____ed" *or* "for _____ing."

☛DRILL 122 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§123. Subordinate Clauses III

Certain subordinating conjunctions are followed by verbs *sometimes in the indicative and sometimes in the subjunctive* with a difference in meaning.[1] When any of these conjunctions is followed by an indicative verb, the action of the verb is represented by the writer or speaker as actual or factual. When the same conjunction is followed by a subjunctive verb, the verbal action is represented as alleged, apparent, or anticipated—that is, *nonfactual*.

Conjunction	With Indicative	With Subjunctive
dum/donec	while/as long as/until (action accomplished)	until (should) (action anticipated)
antequam/ priusquam	before (action accomplished)	before (can/could) (action anticipated)
quod/quia	because (cause represented as true)	allegedly or apparently because

Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Indicative Mood

Dum/Donec me *amabas, felix eram.*
While (As long as) me (d.o.) *you were loving,* happy I was.
As long as you were loving me, I was happy.
In illo loco manebant *dum/donec* verba Ciceronis *audiverunt.*
In that place they were remaining *until* the words (d.o.) of Cicero *they heard.*
They were remaining in that place *until they heard* the words of Cicero.
Discessimus e foro *antequam/priusquam* Cicero orationem *confecit.*
We departed from the forum *before* Cicero (his) speech (d.o.) *completed.*
We departed from the forum *before* Cicero *completed* his speech.
Caesar suos laudabit *quod/quia* fortiter *pugnaverunt.*
Caesar his own men (d.o.) will praise *because* bravely *they fought.*
Caesar will praise his own men *because they fought* bravely.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first three sentences the actions in the subordinate clauses are presented as actually having occurred: you *did* use to love me, they *did* hear Cicero's words, and Cicero *did* complete his speech.

2. In the last sentence the reason given for Caesar's praise of his men *is vouched for* (by the writer of the sentence) as the *true* reason: his men *did* fight bravely, *and this is why* Caesar will praise them.

Dum haec a militibus *geruntur,* legati ab hostibus venerunt.
While these things by the soldiers *were being managed,* legates from the enemies came.
While these things *were being managed* by the soldiers, legates came from the enemies.

---

1. For subordinating conjunctions followed by verbs in the indicative mood, see §48. For cum clauses see §117.

When the verb in the main clause is a past tense, the *present indicative*, the so-called "historical present," is regularly used with the conjunction **dum**, "while." This special use of the present indicative should be translated as an imperfect indicative.

Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood

When verbs in such subordinate clauses appear in the *subjunctive* mood, the writers or speakers represent the verbal actions as *nonfactual*.

In illō locō manēbant *dum/dōnec* verba Cicerōnis *audīrent*.
They were remaining in that place *until they should hear* the words of Cicero.
Discessimus ē forō *antequam/priusquam* Cicerō ōrātiōnem *cōnficeret*.
We departed from the forum *before* Cicero *could complete* (his) speech.
Caesar suōs laudābit *quod/quia* fortiter *pugnāverint*.
Caesar will praise his own men *apparently because they fought* bravely.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The tenses of the subjunctive verbs in these subordinate clauses follow the rules of sequence.

2. In the first two sentences the actions of the verbs in the subordinate clauses are presented as merely *anticipated* and *not* as having actually occurred. In a temporal clause expressing anticipation with **dum** or **dōnec**, the English word "should" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in either primary or secondary sequence. In a temporal clause expressing anticipation with **antequam** or priusquam, the English word "can" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in primary sequence, and "could" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in secondary sequence.

3. In the last sentence the reason given *is not vouched for* but is merely surmised by the writer or speaker *or* alleged by someone else. In such a causal clause, the English adverb "apparently" or "allegedly" is added to the translation.

4. The syntax, for example, of **audīrent** in the first sentence is imperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, temporal clause expressing anticipation, subsequent time. The syntax of **pugnāverint** in the third sentence is **perfect subjunctive, primary sequence, clause of apparent or alleged cause, prior time.**

Sometimes **antequam** and **priusquam** are *divided*. For example:

Multa *ante/prius* experiēns *quam* tuum inimicum *vincās*.
Many things (d.o.) *sooner* you will try *than* your enemy (d.o.) *you can overcome*.
Sooner will you try many things *than you can overcome* your enemy.
You will try many things *before you can overcome* your enemy.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The conjunctions **antequam** and **priusquam** are made of the comparative adverbs **ante** and **prius** (sooner) and the conjunction quam (than). When **antequam** or **priusquam** is divided, each element *may* be translated separately, but the last translation given above, in which the conjunction is translated "before" where the **quam** appears, is to be preferred.

2. **antequam** and **priusquam** may be split when followed by either the indicative or subjunctive mood.

Proviso Clauses

The conjunction **dum**, sometimes strengthened by the adverb **modo**, "only," may introduce a subordinate clause stating a *provision under which* the event of the main clause can occur. Such a clause is called a **Proviso clause**. **Modo** *alone* may also introduce such a clause. The verb in a Proviso clause is always in the *subjunctive* mood. The particle **nē** is used for negation. For example:

> Magnō mē metū līberābis *dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus sit*.
> From great fear me (d.o.) you will free *provided that between me and you a wall be*.
> You will free me from great fear *provided that a wall be between me and you*.
> Iūlia poētās canentēs audiat *dum verbum nē dīcat*.
> Let Iūlia poets (d.o.) singing listen to *provided that a word (d.o.) she not say*.
> Let Iūlia listen to the poets singing *provided that she not say a word*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Subjunctive verbs in Proviso clauses follow the rules of sequence. The syntax, for example, of *sit* in the first sentence is **present subjunctive, primary sequence, Proviso clause**.

2. A Proviso clause is regularly translated with an English present subjunctive (e.g., "be" and "say" in the sentences above).[2]

☞ DRILL 123 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§124. Correlatives

Certain Latin adverbs and adjectives appear in two closely related forms.

Demonstrative	Exclamatory/Interrogative/Relative
tam (adv.) so	**quam** (adv.) how, as
tālis, tāle such, of such a sort	**quālis, quāle** what sort of, of which sort, as
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great	**quantus, -a, -um** how much, how great, as much, as great
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many	**quot** (indeclinable adj.) how many, as many

The words in the column on the left are demonstrative because they *point out* a certain degree, amount, or quality, often in the answer to a question. The words in the column on the right function in three distinct ways. They may be used to make exclamations (exclamatory), to ask questions (interrogative), and to correlate with corresponding demonstrative words (relative). The following sentences illustrate these various functions.

Quam altus est!	*How* tall he is! (exclamatory)
Quam altus est?	*How* tall is he? (interrogative)
Tam altus est.	He is *so* tall (i.e., this tall). (demonstrative)
Tam altus est *quam* pater.	He is *so* tall *as* (his) father. (demonstrative/relative)

---

2. The English present subjunctive is the infinitive form of the verb with the word "to" omitted (e.g., "work," "complete," "do," etc.).

1. The only difference in Latin between the exclamatory and interrogative sentences is the punctuation.

2. In the last sentence quam is *correlative* with tam. A correlative is an adjective, adverb, or pronoun that *corresponds with* a parallel adjective, adverb, or pronoun in the same sentence. In this sentence tam, a *demonstrative* adverb, and quam, a *relative* adverb, are correlatives, and the whole complex sentence is a correlative sentence. Quam introduces a *relative clause* in which certain grammatical elements are elided. With no ellipsis the last example above would be written as follows:

> Tam altus est quam *altus est* pater.   He is so tall as tall (his) father is.

3. When quam is correlative with tam, an idiomatic English translation uses "as" to translate *both* quam and tam: He is *as* tall *as* (his) father.

> Quantam pecūniam habuit!   How *much* money he had! (exclamatory)
> Quantam pecūniam habuit?   How *much* money did he have? (interrogative)
> Tantam pecūniam habuit.
> He had so *much* money (i.e., this much money). (demonstrative)
> Tantam pecūniam habuit *quanta* erat satis.
> He had so *much* money *as* (*much*) was enough. (demonstrative/relative)
> He had *as much* money *as* was enough.

In correlative sentences such as the last sentence, the relative adjective must agree in *gender* and *number* with its antecedent, but its *case* is determined by its syntax *within* the relative clause. Thus, quanta is *feminine* and *singular* to agree with pecūniam, but it is *nominative* because it is the subject (*sc.* pecūnia) of erat.

With adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree,[3] a correlative sentence may appear, usually with the relative clause preceding the main clause. For example:

> Quō maius est perīculum, eō magis timēmus.
> By (the degree to) *which* greater is the danger, *by this* (degree) more greatly we fear.
> *The greater* the danger is, *the* more greatly we fear.
> Quantō fortius pugnābis, *tantō* plūs glōriae capiēs.
> By *how much* more bravely you will fight, *by so much* more of glory you will win.
> *The* more bravely you will fight, *the* more (of) glory you will win.

1. In the first example above quō, a *relative* pronoun, and eō, a *demonstrative* pronoun, are correlatives. The demonstrative eō is commonly used in this construction, but occasionally hōc appears instead.

2. The syntax of each italicized word (quō, eō, quantō, tantō) in the sentences above is Ablative of Degree of Difference.

3. The second translations given above are to be preferred.

Correlatives in correlative sentences are often best translated idiomatically. Here is a list of the correlatives included in this chapter and their respective idiomatic translations:

---

3. This construction also appears (less frequently) with superlative adjectives or adverbs.

		as ... as		
tam ... quam ...		as ... as		
tālis ... quālis ...		such ... as, or of such a sort ... as		
tantus ... quantus ...		as great ... as, or as much ... as		
tot ... quot ...		as many ... as		
quō ... eō (hōc) ...		the (more) ... the (more)		

☞DRILL 124 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§125. The Irregular Verb *fīō*

Fīō, fierī, factus sum "become, happen; be made, be done" is an irregular verb. The present system of **fīō** has *active forms with passive meanings*, and these forms supply the passive of the present system of **faciō**. The perfect system of **fīō** is supplied by the perfect passive system of **faciō**. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS:

		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present	Imperfect	Future	Present	Imperfect
Sing.					
1	fīō	fiēbam	fīam	fīam	fierem
2	fīs	fiēbās	fīēs	fīas	fierēs
3	fit	fiēbat	fīet	fīat	fieret
Pl.					
1	fīmus	fiēbāmus	fīēmus	fīāmus	fierēmus
2	fītis	fiēbātis	fīētis	fīātis	fierētis
3	fīunt	fiēbant	fīent	fīant	fierent
Imperative	Sing. fī	Pl. fīte			

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present, imperfect, and future indicative and present subjunctive conjugations of **fīō** are all formed with the stem **fi-**. By contrast, the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive have a *short -i-*. The imperfect subjunctive is formed with an imaginary present active infinitive form (*fiere), the final -e of which is lengthened to form the stem (**fierē-**).

2. The imperative forms **fī** and **fīte** are exceedingly rare in the Latin literature that survives.

3. **Fīō** has no participles.

4. When **fīō** means "become" or "be made," it may be accompanied by a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Adjective in the Nominative case. For example:

Rēx fīat.	Let him become/Let him be made *king*. (predicate nom.)
Misera puella fīet.	The girl will become *miserable*. (predicate adj.)

☞ DRILL 125 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§126. Adverbial Accusative

When a noun, pronoun, or adjective in the accusative case is used adverbially to express the *extent* to which the action of a verb is performed, it is called an **Adverbial Accusative**. For example:

> *Nihil* hās litterās intellegimus.
> *To the extent (of) nothing* this letter (d.o.) we understand.
> *Not at all* do we understand this letter.
> *Tantum* mē nōn amās *quantum* tē amō.
> *For so great an extent* me (d.o.) you do not love *as great an extent* you (d.o.) I love.
> You do not love me *as much as* I love you.

The syntax of each italicized word (**nihil**, **tantum**, **quantum**) is **Adverbial Accusative**.

Several nouns, pronouns, and adjectives in the singular accusative form are commonly used as Adverbial Accusatives. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVES:

> magnam partem "for a great part"
> maximam partem "for the greatest part," "for the most part"
> multum "much," "a lot"
> nihil "not at all"
> plurimum "very much"
> quantum "how much," "as much"
> quid "to what extent," "why"
> sōlum "only"
> tantum "so much," "only (so much)"

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a substantive adjective is used as an Adverbial Accusative, it is always neuter singular.

2. In PIE and in early Latin the accusative case originally expressed an idea of *extent* that *limited* the action of the verb. The Adverbial Accusative is developed from this original idea of the accusative (cf. the Accusative of Duration of Time).

§127. Accusative of Exclamation

When a noun in the accusative case is used to express an exclamation, it is called an **Accusative of Exclamation**. Such an accusative is often accompanied by an exclamatory adjective or adverb or by an interjection. For example:

> Quem *virum*!   What a man!
> *Mē* miserum!   Miserable me!

The syntax of each italicized word (**virum**, **mē**) is **Accusative of Exclamation**.

OBSERVATION

The Accusative of Exclamation developed from the Accusative, Direct Object. It is understood as the direct object of an unexpressed thought or perception (e.g., What a man [I am thinking of]!).

§128. Genitive of Indefinite Value

With verbs of *considering, reckoning,* and *valuing,* certain words in the genitive case may express the *approximate worth or value* of something. This use of the genitive case is called the **Genitive of Indefinite Value.** For example:

> Tuum consilium *magnī (pretiī)* habeō. (pretium, pretiī n. price, value)
> Your advice (d.o.) *of great (value)* I consider.
> I consider your advice *of great value.*
> Quis pecūniam *plūris* quam amōrem faciat? (faciō, reckon)
> Who money (d.o.) *of more (value)* than love would reckon?
> Who would reckon money *of more value* than love?

The syntax of each italicized word (**magnī, plūris**) is **Genitive of Indefinite Value.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each adjective in the sentences above is neuter singular genitive, either functioning as a substantive or modifying a usually unexpressed neuter singular noun meaning "value," pretiī. The Genitive of Indefinite Value is closely related to the Genitive of Description (see §100).

2. Although the Latin word for "value" may be unexpressed, such a word should be added to the English translation of the Genitive of Indefinite Value.

3. Certain nouns appear as Genitives of Indefinite Value to express ideas of *worthlessness.* For example:

> Eum *nihilī* dūcō. I consider him of *no value.* (nihilum, nihilī *n.* nothing)

§129. Ablative of Price

With verbs of *buying, selling, valuing,* and *exchanging,* certain words in the ablative case may express *the price at which* something is bought or sold. This use of the ablative case is called the **Ablative of Price.** For example:

> Ista fēmina virī vītam *aurō* vendidit. (vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus sell)
> That contemptible woman of (her) husband the life (d.o.) *for gold* sold.
> That contemptible woman sold the life of her husband *for gold.*
> *Magnō (pretiō)* ab omnibus virtūs aestimātur. (aestimō [1 tr.] estimate, value)
> *At a great (price)* by all (people) excellence is valued.
> Excellence is valued *at a great price* by all people.

The syntax of each italicized word (**aurō, magnō**) is **Ablative of Price.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Ablative of Price was originally used instead of the Genitive of Indefinite Value to express the *exact amount of money* for which something was bought or sold. Its uses were later extended to less precise ideas of cost or value.

2. Although the Ablative of Price is essentially an Ablative of Means, it is often better translated with the English prepositions "for" or "at (the price of)."

3. A wide variety of words may be conceived as the price or cost of something (e.g., **vītā, patriā**). An adjective (e.g., **magnō, parvō**) used as an Ablative of Price either functions as a substantive or modifies a usually unexpressed neuter singular noun meaning "price," **pretiō**. However, four adjectives always appear in the Genitive of Indefinite Value rather than the expected Ablative of Price: **tantī, quantī, plūris,** and **minōris**.

☛ DRILL 126–129 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A fragment from the tragic poet Naevius

    . . . ego semper plūris fēcī

    potiōremque habuī lībertātem multō quam pecūniam.

    (NAEVIUS, *PALLIĀTAE* FRAG. 9–10)

    potior, potius more powerful; more desirable, more precious

2. Amphitruo and his slave Sosia enter the stage, and Amphitruo accuses Sosia of lying.

    Amphitruō. Age ī tū secundum. *Sōsia.* Sequor, subsequor tē.

    Amph. Scelestissimum tē arbitror. *Sōs.* Nam quam ob rem?

    Amph. Quia id quod neque est neque fuit neque futūrum est

    mihi praedicās. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUŌ* 551–54)

    praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare
    scelestus, -a, -um wicked
    secundum (adv.) following, behind
    subsequor (sub- + sequor) follow close behind

3. A slave recalls a Greek proverb.

    . . . quem dī dīligunt

    adulēscēns moritur, dum valet, sentit, sapit. (PLAUTUS, *BACCHIDĒS* 816–17)

    adulēscēns, adulēscentis young, youthful
    dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus value, esteem, love
    sapiō, sapere, sapiī or **sapīvī, —— be** intelligent, show good sense

4. Mistaken for his twin brother, Menaechmus is reviled by his brother's parasite, Peniculus.

    Menaechmus. Quis hic est, quī adversus it mihī?* *Pēniculus.* Quid ais, homō

    levior quam plūma, pessime et nēquissime,

    flāgitium hominis, subdole ac minimī pretī? (PLAUTUS, *MENAECHMĪ* 487–89)

    *The final -i of mihi here scans *long*.
    adversus (adv.) opposite, **adversus īre,** to go to meet (+ dat.)
    aiō (defective verb) say; **ais** = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*

    flāgitium, flāgitiī *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace
    nēquissimus, -a, -um most worthless, worst
    plūma, plūmae *f.* feather
    subdolus, -a, -um deceitful, treacherous, sly

5. In explaining why he will not boast of his victories, Stratophanes, a soldier and buffoon, speaks about the trustworthiness of different kinds of witnesses.

    plūris est oculātus testis ūnus quam aurītī decem;

    quī audiunt audīta dīcunt, quī vident plānē sciunt. (PLAUTUS, *TRUCULENTUS* 489–90)

    aurītus, -a, -um having ears
    oculātus, -a, -um having eyes
    plānē (adv.) plainly, clearly; obviously
    testis, testis, -ium *m.* witness

6. The character Geta despairs.

hoccin saeclum! ō scelera, ō genera sacrilega, ō hominem inpium!

(TERENCE, *ADELPHOE* 304)

hoccin = hocne; -ne, *here*, indicates an indignant statement
sacrilegus, -a, -um temple-robbing; sacrilegious
saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n*. age, generation

7. Chaerea concludes an account of a conversation with the long-winded Archimedes.

dum haec dīcit, abiit hōra. (TERENCE, *EUNUCHUS* 341)

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

8. A fragment from the satirist Lucilius

"ō cūrās hominum! ō quantum est in rēbus ināne!" (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE FRAG.* 9)

ināne, inānis, -ium *n*. empty space, void

9. Cicero comments on Athens and its great lawgiver, Solon.

prūdentissima cīvitās Athēniēnsium, dum ea rērum potīta est, fuisse trāditur; eius porrō cīvitātis sapientissimum Solōnem dīcunt fuisse, eum quī lēgēs quibus hodiē quoque ūtuntur scrīpserit. (CICERO, *PRŌ S. ROSCIŌ AMERĪNŌ* 70)

Athēniēnsis, Athēniēnse Athenian
hodiē (adv.) today
porrō (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn, further-more
potior, potīrī, potītus sum be master (of), control (+ gen.)

prūdēns, prūdentis showing foresight, prudent, sagacious
Solō(n), Solōnis *m*. Solon, sixth-century B.C.E. lawgiver

10. Cicero describes his reception when he arrived in Sicily to collect evidence against Verres.

nēminī meus adventus labōrī aut sūmptuī neque pūblicē neque privātim fuit: vim in inquīrendō tantam habuī quantam mihi lēx dabat, nōn quantam habēre poteram istōrum studiō quōs iste* vexārat. (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 1.16)

*iste refers to Verres.
adventus, adventūs *m*. arrival
inquīrō (in- + quaerō), inquīrere, inquīsiī or inquīsīvī, inquīsītus inquire into, investigate

privātim (adv.) in private, privately
sūmptus, sūmptūs *m*. expense, cost
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

11. Cicero attacks Verres for one of his many illegal acts.

ēripis hērēditātem quae vēnerat ā propinquō, vēnerat testāmentō, vēnerat lēgibus; quae bona is quī testāmentum fēcerat huic Hēracliō, aliquantō antequam est mortuus, omnia ūtenda ac possidenda trādiderat . . . (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 2.46)

aliquantum, aliquantī *n*. a little, a small amount
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away
Hēraclius, Hēracliī *m*. Heraclius
hērēditās, hērēditātis *f.* inheritance

possideō, possidēre, possēdī, possessus occupy; take control of, possess
propinquus, -a, -um near, close; *as subst.*, relative
testāmentum, testāmentī *n*. will

12. Cicero expresses his willingness to endure unpopularity now that Catiline has left the city.

est mihi tantī, Quirītēs, huius invidiae falsae atque inīquae tempestātem subīre,

dum modo ā vōbīs huius horribilis bellī ac nefāriī perīculum dēpellātur. dīcātur

sānē ēiectus esse ā mē, dum modo eat in exsilium. sed mihi crēdite, nōn est

itūrus. (CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM II* 15)

dēpellō (dē- + pellō), dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus
  drive away
horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful
nefārius, -a, -um unspeakable, wicked
Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for
  Roman citizens in their public capacity

sānē (adv.) by all means
subeō (sub- + eō), subīre, subiī or subīvī,
  subitūrus undergo, endure
tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm

13. After his return from exile Cicero describes the debt he owes to Pompey the Great.

huic ego hominī, Quirītēs, tantum dēbeō quantum hominem hominī dēbēre vix

fās est. (CICERO, *POST REDITUM AD POPULUM* 17)

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

14. Cicero asks a rhetorical question.

quid est ōrātōrī tam necessārium quam vōx?* (CICERO, *DĒ ŌRĀTŌRE* I.251)

*vōx, *here,* quality *or* tone of voice
necessārius, -a, -um necessary

15. A character in Cicero's dialogue about law explains the importance of **imperium.**

nihil porrō tam aptum est ad iūs condiciōnemque nātūrae—quod quom dīcō,

lēgem ā mē dīcī intellegī volō—quam imperium, sine quō nec domus ūlla nec

cīvitās nec gēns nec hominum ūniversum genus stāre, nec rērum nātūra omnis

nec ipse mundus potest. (CICERO, *DĒ LĒGIBUS* III.2)

aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit
condiciō, condiciōnis *f.* contract; condition, situation
mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
porrō (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn, furthermore
ūniversus, -a, -um entire, (taken as a) whole

.

16. Pleading before Caesar on behalf of one of Pompey's followers, Cicero appeals to Caesar's
merciful side.

nihil est tam populāre quam bonitās, nūlla dē virtūtibus tuīs plūrimīs nec* ad-

mīrābilior nec* grātior misericordiā est. hominēs enim ad deōs nūllā rē propius

accēdunt quam salūtem hominibus dandō. (CICERO, *PRŌ LIGĀRIŌ* 37–38)

*These redundant negatives strengthen the
  negative idea.
admīrābilis, admīrābile astonishing; admirable,
  wonderful
bonitās, bonitātis *f.* (moral) goodness; kindness,
  generosity

misericordia, misericordiae *f.* pity
populāris, populāre of the populus; popular,
  admired
propius (adv.) nearer

17. Cicero explains the importance of knowing Latin.

    nōn enim tam praeclārum est scīre Latīnē quam turpe nescīre, neque tam* id

    mihi ōrātōris bonī quam* cīvis Rōmānī proprium vidētur. (Cicero, *Brūtus* 140)

*tam . . . quam . . . *here,* so much . . . as . . .
Latīnē (adv.) (in) Latin
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; radiant, beautiful
proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (+ gen.)
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

18. One of the participants in a discussion about the soul's immortality makes his extreme position clear.

    errāre mehercule mālō cum Platōne, quem tū quantī faciās sciō et quem ex tuō ōre

    admīror, quam cum istīs* vēra sentīre. (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.39)

*istīs refers to philosophers who disagree with Plato and deny the immortality of the soul.
admīror (1-tr.) be astonished (at), wonder (at)
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth
Platō(n), Platōnis *m.* Plato

19. Cicero's translation of Simonides' epitaph for the Spartan dead at Thermopylae

    Dīc, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdisse iacentēs,

      dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.

    (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.101)

hīc (adv.) here   obsequor (ob- + sequor) comply with, submit to
hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger   sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie dead   Sparta, Spartae *f.* Sparta

20. After one character states that even wise men are affected by passionate emotions, another character indicates his disagreement with the following surprising statement.

    Nē* ista glōriōsa sapientia nōn magnō aestimanda est, sī quidem nōn multum dif-

    fert ab īnsāniā. (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* III.8)

*nē, *here* (particle) *always followed by a demonstrative,* truly, assuredly
glōriōsus, -a, -um boastful; glorious, illustrious
īnsānia, īnsāniae *f.* madness, insanity

21. A suggestion worthy of Plato

    dēmus igitur nōs huic* excolendōs patiāmurque nōs sānārī.

    (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* IV.38)

*huic refers to philosophy.
excolō, excolere, excoluī, excultus cultivate, develop, improve
sānō (1-tr.) heal, cure

22. A famous anecdote about the Athenian statesman Themistocles

noctū ambulābat in pūblicō* Themistoclēs, quod somnum capere nōn posset,

quaerentibusque respondēbat Miltiadis tropaeīs sē ē somnō suscitārī.

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNĒS* IV.44)

*in pūblicō, in (a) public (place)
Miltiadēs, Miltiadis *m.* Miltiades, an Athenian
   commander at Marathon
noctū = nocte
somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

suscitō (1-tr.) cause to rise, rouse
Themistoclēs, Themistoclis *m.* Themistocles
tropaeum, tropaeī *n.* trophy (set up to mark the
   defeat of an enemy)

23. Meditating on how often philosophers have easily endured exile from their homelands, a character suggests a reevaluation of the importance of the state.

quantī vērō ista cīvitās aestimanda est, ex quā bonī sapientēsque pelluntur?

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNĒS* V.109)

24. The character Cotta utters a wish while speaking against the tenets of Epicureanism.

utinam tam facile vēra invenīre possem quam falsa convincere!

(CICERO, *DĒ NĀTŪRĀ DEŌRUM* I.91)

convincō (con- + vincō) overcome; prove wrong, refute

25. The character Balbus closes his presentation of the Stoic view of the gods.

mala enim et impia cōnsuētūdō est contrā deōs disputandī, sīve ex animō id fit

sīve simulātē. (CICERO, *DĒ NĀTŪRĀ DEŌRUM* II.168)

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* practice, custom, habit
disputō (dis- + putō) (1-tr.) argue one's case, debate
simulātē (adv.) in pretence
sīve (conj.) or if, whether; sīve ... sīve ... whether ... or (if) ...

26. Although Cicero has been sleeping more since retiring from politics, he claims that his own dreams have remained pretty much the same.

... nec tam multum dormiēns ūllō somniō sum admonitus, tantīs praesertim dē

rēbus, nec mihi magis umquam videor quam cum aut in forō magistrātūs aut in

cūriā senātum videō, somniāre. (CICERO, *DĒ DĪVINĀTIŌNE* II.142)

admoneō (ad- + moneō) remind, advise
cūria, cūriae *f.* (the) Curia, (the) senate house
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī or dormiī, dormītum
   sleep, be asleep
magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* office holder,
   magistrate

praesertim (adv.) especially, above all
somniō (1-intr.) dream
somnium, somniī *n.* dream

27. Cicero adduces a famous Roman family as an example of how real glory endures.

   Tiberius enim Gracchus, P. f.,* tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum

   Rōmānārum manēbit . . . (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* II.43)

*P. f. = Publiī fīlius

28. Cicero claims that Caesar often cited two lines of a Greek tragedy, which Cicero here
   translates.

   nam sī violandum est iūs, rēgnandī grātiā

   violandum est; aliīs rēbus pietātem colās. (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* III.12)

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate
pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety
rēgnō (1-tr.) rule as king, reign
violō (1-tr.) violate, transgress against

29. Cicero pays his friend Atticus a compliment.

   Rōmae enim videor esse cum tuās litterās legō et, ut fit in tantīs rēbus, modo hoc

   modo illud audīre. (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* II.15.1)

30. Cicero writes to Brutus about his opinion of the consuls for 43 b.c.e. and the young Octa-
   vian Caesar.

   quālīs tibi saepe scrīpsī cōnsulēs, tālēs exstitērunt. Caesaris vērō puerī mīrifica in-

   dolēs virtūtis. utinam tam facile eum flōrentem et honōribus et grātiā regere ac

   tenēre possīmus quam facile adhūc tenuimus! (Cicero, *Ad Brūtum* 9.1)

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)titī, —— stand out, appear; prove to be
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —— blossom; prosper; be at the height of one's power
indolēs, indolis *f.* innate quality, nature; (natural) tendency (for) (+ gen.)
mīrificus, -a, -um causing wonder, amazing

31. While writing his autobiography, Cicero contemplates insulting two consuls, A. Gabinius
   and L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, both of whom supported Clodius's prosecution of Ci-
   cero, which led to the latter's exile.

   itaque mīrificum embolium cōgitō* in secundum librum meōrum temporum in-

   clūdere dīcentem Apollinem in conciliō deōrum quālis reditus duōrum im-

   perātōrum futūrus esset, quōrum alter exercitum perdidisset, alter vendidisset.

   (Cicero, *Ad Quintum frātrem* III.1.24)

*cōgitō, *here,* have in mind, plan (+ inf.)
concilium, conciliī *n.* (popular) assembly, council
embolium, emboliī *n.* interlude; insertion
inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus enclose,
   include

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
mīrificus, -a, -um causing wonder, amazing
reditus, reditūs *m.* return

32. The poet laments man's irrational fear of death.

    ō miserās hominum mentēs, ō pectora caeca!

    quālibus in tenebrīs vītae quantīsque perīclīs

    dēgitur hoc aevī quodcumquest! . . . (LUCRETIUS, *DĒ RĒRUM NĀTŪRĀ* I.14–16)

aevum, aevī *n.* age, life(time)
dēgō (dē- + agō), dēgere, ——, —— spend, pass
perīclīs = perīculīs
quodcumque = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. adj.,* whatever
tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

33. Imitation is the sincerest form of flattery. (hendecasyllable)

    Disertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,

    quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,

    quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,

    grātiās tibi maximās Catullus

    agit pessimus omnium poēta,

    tantō pessimus omnium poēta,

    quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus. (CATULLUS XLIX)

disertus, -a, -um well-spoken, eloquent
nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson; descendant
patrōnus, patrōnī *m.* patron; defender

34. The poet states a paradox.

    Ōdī et amō. quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.

      nescio,* sed fierī sentiō et excrucior. (CATULLUS LXXXV)

*The final -ō of nesciō here scans *short.*
excruciō (1-tr.) torture
fortasse (adv.) perhaps
requīrō (re- + quaerō), requīrere, requīsiī or requīsīvī, requīsītus seek again, ask, inquire

35. The poet strives to express how much he loved Lesbia.

    Nūlla potest mulier tantum sē dīcere amātam

      vērē, quantum ā mē Lesbia amāta mea est.

    nūlla fidēs ūllō fuit umquam foedere tanta,

      quanta in amōre tuō ex parte reperta meā est. (CATULLUS LXXXVII)

foedus, foederis *n.* agreement, treaty, pact
mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus find, discover

36. The soldiers of the enemy break ranks to the benefit of Caesar's men.

    ita sine üllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum

    fuit diēī spatium, . . . (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* II.11)

multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude
spatium, spatiī *n.* course, track; space, interval

37. Caesar explains why he thinks certain Gallic tribes surrendered so quickly.

    nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac

    minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.

    (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* III.19)

alacer, alacris, alacre quick, swift; keen, eager
calamitās, calamitātis *f.* disaster, misfortune,
  injury
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
mollis, molle gentle, soft, mild

prōmptus, -a, -um quick to respond, ready
resistō, resistere, restitī, —— halt; make a stand,
  resist
suscipiō (sub- + capiō) undertake, venture upon

38. In the territory of the Morini, Caesar—referring to himself in the third person—is about to
    launch an expedition to Britain.

    dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte

    Morīnōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō ex-

    cūsārent quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō

    Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. (CAESAR, *DĒ*

    BELLŌ GALLICŌ IV.22)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign; barbarous, uncivilized
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage
excūsō (1-tr.) excuse
imperītus, -a, -um inexperienced (in),
  unacquainted (with) (+ gen.)
Morīnī, Morīnōrum *m. pl.* (the) Morini, a Belgic
  tribe

nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
parō (1-tr.) prepare, make ready; get, obtain
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum promise
superior, superius upper, higher; earlier

39. Several of Caesar's soldiers, against orders, leave their positions in the middle of a battle on
    land and sea and attempt to reach land on their own.

    pars eōrum studiō spectandī ferēbātur, pars etiam cupiditāte pugnandī.

    ([CAESAR], *BELLUM ALEXANDRĪNUM* 20)

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe

40. When he is recommending a harsh penalty against Catiline, Cato recalls an outstanding example of Roman austerity.

apud maiōrēs nostrōs T. Manlius Torquātus bellō Gallicō filium suom, quod is

contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverat, necārī iussit atque ille ēgregius

adulēscēns inmoderātae fortitūdinis* morte poenās dedit.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 52)

*inmoderātae fortitūdinis, *genitive expresses the charge*, for (his) unrestrained bravery
adulēscēns, adulēscentis, -ium *m.* young man
ēgregius, -a, -um outstanding, extraordinary
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude

Gallicus, -a, -um Gallic
immoderātus, -a, -um unrestrained, immoderate
T. Manlius Torquātus, T. Manlii Torquātī *m.*
T. Manlius Torquatus (dictator 353 B.C.E.)
necō (1-tr.) put to death, kill

41. The historian summarizes Cato's character.

esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat: ita, quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illum

adsequēbātur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 54)

assequor (ad- + sequor) go after, pursue

42. The historian compares Caesar and Cato.

Caesar dandō, sublevandō, ignōscundō, Catō nihil largiundō glōriam adeptus est.

in alterō miserīs perfugium erat, in alterō malīs perniciēs. illīus facilitās, huius

cōnstantia laudābātur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 54)

adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum reach, obtain, gain, get
cōnstantia, cōnstantiae *f.* firmness, steadfastness, resolution
facilitās, facilitātis *f.* facility, ease; indulgence
ignōscō (in- + nōscō), ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus forgive, pardon; ignōscundō = archaic form of ignōscendō

largior, largīrī, largītus sum give (generously), bestow; largiundō = archaic form of largiendō
perfugium, perfugiī *n.* place of refuge, shelter, sanctuary
perniciēs, perniciēī *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster
sublevō (1-tr.) raise; assist; make easier

43. A writer expresses indignation at a line in Cicero's poem about his consulship.

tamen audet dīcere: "Ō fortūnātam nātam, mē cōnsule, Rōmam!" tē cōnsule

fortūnātam, Cicerō? immō vērō īnfēlīcem et miseram . . .

([SALLUST], *IN M. TULLIUM CICERŌNEM* 5)

fortūnātus, -a, -um fortunate
immō vērō (adv.) no, even

44. A Roman proverb

Beneficium accipere lībertātem est vendere. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* B5)

beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

45. A Roman proverb

Brevis ipsa vīta est, sed malīs fit longior. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* B36)

46. After a refrain in a funeral song for the shepherd Daphnis, the poet gives evidence for the power of poetry.

dūcite ab urbe domum, mea carmina, dūcite Daphnin.

carmina vel caelō possunt dēdūcere lūnam,

carminibus Circē sociōs mūtāvit Ulīxī, . . . (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* VIII.68–70)

Circē, Circēs *f.* Circe, a witch from Colchis who detained Odysseus and his men
Daphnis, Daphnidis *f.* Daphnis; Daphnin = *acc. sing.*

dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; bring down
lūna, lūnae *f.* moon
Ulīxēs, Ulīxis or Ulīxī *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)
vel (adv.) even

47. The poet concludes an enumeration of Aeneas's many trials.

tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.33)

condō, condere, condidī, conditus found
mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, weight, burden; enterprise, responsibility

48. Aeneas describes a grim scene in a wall painting he discovers in Carthage.

ter circum Īliacōs raptāverat Hectora mūrōs

exanimumque aurō corpus vendēbat Achillēs. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.483–84)

Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles
circum (prep. + acc.) around
exanimus, -a, -um lifeless
Hector, Hectoris *m.* Hector; Hectora = *acc. sing.*

Īliacus, -a, -um Ilian, Trojan
raptō (1-tr.) carry away by force; seize; drag
ter (adv.) three times

49. Angry Dido feels that further appeals to Aeneas will be useless.

nam quid dissimulō aut quae mē ad maiōra reservō?

num flētū ingemuit nostrō? num lūmina flexit?

num lacrimās victus dedit aut miserātus amantem est? (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.368–70)

dissimulō (1-tr.) conceal, pretend, dissemble
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend, turn
flētus, flētūs *m.* weeping, tears
ingemō, ingemere, ingemuī, —— groan, lament

lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear
miseror (1-tr.) pity
reservō (1-tr.) save, hold back

50. The poet comments on the lives of words.

multa renāscentur quae iam cecidēre cadentque

quae nunc sunt in honōre vocābula, sī volet ūsus,

quem penes* arbitrium est et iūs et norma loquendī. (HORACE, *ARS POĒTICA* 70–72)

*quem penes = penes quem by anastrophe, the reversal in order of a preposition and its object
arbitrium, arbitriī *n.* power of decision, determination; supervision, control
norma, normae *f.* standard

penes (prep. + acc.) in the power of
renāscor (re- + nāscor) be reborn; be revived
ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use; usage
vocābulum, vocābulī *n.* word; term

51. The poet has been away from Rome and away from Cynthia.

    nōn sum ego quī fueram: mūtat via longa puellās.

        quantus in exiguō tempore fūgit amor!

    nunc prīmum longās sōlus cognōscere noctēs

        cōgor et ipse meīs auribus esse gravis. (Propertius I.12.11–14)

auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear
cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive together, force, compel
exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

52. Addressing his beloved Cynthia, the poet links love and mortality.

    dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre:

        nox tibi longa venit, nec reditūra diēs. (Propertius II.15.23–24)

satiō (1-tr.) sate, satisfy
sinō, sinere, siī or sīvī, situm allow, permit

53. The poet looks at the darker side of love.

    lītore quot conchae, tot sunt in amōre dolōrēs;

        quae patimur, multō spīcula felle madent. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* II.519–20)

concha, conchae *f.* shellfish; seashell
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
fel, fellis *n.* liver, (black) bile (the source of rage); venom; bitterness
lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach
madeō, madēre, ——, —— be wet, drip
spīculum, spīculī *n.* sharp point (of a weapon), arrow; sting

54. The poet in exile comments with emotion on the death of his parents.

    fēlīcēs ambō tempestīvēque sepultī,

        ante diem poenae quod periēre meae!

    mē quoque fēlīcem, quod nōn vīventibus illīs

        sum miser, et dē mē quod doluēre nihil! (Ovid, *Trīstia* IV.10.81–84)

ambō, ambae, ambō (*pl. adj. and pron.*) both; ambō = *masc. nom. pl.*
doleō, dolēre, doluī, —— suffer, grieve, feel pain
sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī or sepeliī, sepultus bury
tempestīvē (adv.) opportunely, at the right time

55. A tribune of the people, A. Verginius, concludes a speech intended to warn the people about Caeso Quinctius, a champion of the patricians.

    exspectāte dum cōnsul aut dictātor fiat quem prīvātum vīribus et audāciā rēgnan-

    tem vidētis. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* III.11.13)

dictātor, dictātōris *m.* dictator, an emergency officer with unlimited powers
prīvātus, -a, -um private; *as subst.*, private citizen
rēgnō (1-tr.) rule; act in a kingly way, tyrannize

56. Clytaemnestra laments both the horrors of the house of Atreus and the beginning of the Trojan war.

ō scelera semper sceleribus vincēns domus:

cruōre ventōs ēmimus, bellum nece! (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 169–70)

cruor, cruōris *m.* (fresh) blood, gore
nex, necis *f.* murder
ventus, ventī *m.* wind

57. While plotting revenge against his brother, Thyestes, Atreus speaks to himself.

haec ipsa pollēns inclitī Pelopis domus

ruat vel in mē, dummodo in frātrem ruat. (Seneca the Younger, *Thyestēs* 190–91)

inclitus, -a, -um famous, renowned
Pelops, Pelopis *m.* Pelops, son of Tantalus and father of Atreus and Thyestes
polleō, pollēre, ——, —— be powerful
ruō, ruere, ruī, rutūrus rush; fall (with violence)
vel (adv.) even

58. The poet remarks on the curious fate of one of his little books.

Quem recitās meus est, ō Fīdentīne, libellus;

     sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus. (Martial I.38)

Fīdentīnus, Fīdentīnī *m.* Fidentinus, the addressee of the poem
libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book
recitō (1-tr.) read aloud (in public), recite

59. Unlike Romans of old, who were able to exercise the rights of free citizens all their lives, those of Pliny's generation have had this experience for a short time only.

breve tempus (nam tantō brevius omne quantō fēlīcius tempus) quō libet scīre

quid sīmus, libet exercēre quod scīmus. (Pliny the Younger, *Epistulae* VIII.14.10)

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy; exercise, perform
libet, libēre, libuit or libitum est it is pleasing, there is a desire

60. Pliny suggests to the new emperor Trajan a means of evaluating the character of the senators.

tālēsque nōs crēde, quālis fāma cuiusque est.

(Pliny the Younger, *Panēgyricus* 62.9)

cuiusque = *masc. sing. gen. of indef. pron.*, each man

61. The historian describes the experience of repression under Domitian.

memoriam quoque ipsam cum vōce perdidissēmus sī tam* in nostrā potestāte

esset oblīvīscī quam* tacēre. (Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 2)

*tam . . . quam . . . *here*, as much . . . as . . .
potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep silent

62. The historian quotes this tortured sentence from a letter written by Tiberius to the senate as proof of the emperor's inner torment.

quid scrībam vōbīs, patrēs cōnscrīptī, aut quō modō scrībam, aut quid omnīnō

nōn scrībam hōc tempore, dī mē deaeque peius perdant quam perīre mē cōtīdiē

sentiō sī sciō. (Tacitus, *Annālēs* VI.6)

cōtīdiē (adv.) daily, every day

63. The historian comments on Tiberius's habit of consulting an astrologer.

sed mihi haec ac tālia audientī in incertō iūdicium est fātōne rēs mortālium et ne-

cessitāte immūtābilī an forte volvantur. (Tacitus, *Annālēs* VI.22) ·

immūtābilis, immūtābile unchangeable, unalterable
iūdicium, iūdiciū *n.* judgment, opinion
mortālis, mortāle mortal
necessitās, necessitātis *f.* necessity
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn; determine

64. The historian reports one way Caesar found to keep up the population of the city.

omnīsque medicīnam Rōmae professōs et līberālium artium doctōrēs, quō liben-

tius et ipsī urbem incolerent et cēterī adpeterent, cīvitāte dōnāvit.

(Suetonius, *Vīta Iūliī* 42)

adpetō (ad- + petō) strive after, seek; make for
doctor, doctōris *m.* teacher
incolō, incolere, incoluī, —— inhabit
libenter (adv.) gladly
līberālis, līberāle characteristic of a free man, liberal

medicīna, medicīnae *f.* medicine
profiteor, profitērī, professus sum profess; follow as a pursuit, practice

65. The historian quotes from a letter of Augustus to Tiberius.

attenuātum tē esse continuātiōne labōrum cum audiō et legō, dī mē perdant nisi

cohorrēscit corpus meum; tēque ōrō ut parcās tibi, ... (Suetonius, *Vīta Tiberiī* 21)

attenuō (1-tr.) make thin, impair, weaken
cohorrēscō, cohorrēscere, cohorruī, —— shudder, shiver
continuātiō, continuātiōnis *f.* continuance, prolongation
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

66. According to the historian, these were Nero's last words.

quālis artifex pereō! (Suetonius, *Vīta Nerōnis* 49)

artifex, artificis *m.* artist

67. A young man's epitaph

Decem et octō annōrum nātus vīxī ut potuī bene, grātus parentī atque amīcīs om-

nibus. iocēris, lūdās, hortor: hīc summa est sevēritās. (*CIL* VI.16169)

hīc (adv.) here, in this place
iocor (1-intr.) joke, jest
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus play
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
sevēritās, sevēritātis *f.* gravity, seriousness, severity

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 13

Cicero concludes his defense of the time he has spent on literary pursuits.

quā rē quis tandem mē reprehendat, aut quis mihi iūre suscēnseat, sī, quantum cēterīs ad suās rēs obeundās, quantum ad fēstōs diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs, quantum ad aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem animī et corporis concēditur temporum, quantum aliī tribuunt tempestīvīs convīviīs, quantum dēnique alveolō, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda sūmpserō?

alveolus, alveolī *m.* gaming board

celebrō (1-tr.) celebrate

concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant

convīvium, convīviī *n.* dinner party, banquet, feast

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up

egomet = intensive form of ego

fēstus, -a, -um festal; fēstus diēs, festival day, holiday

lūdus, lūdī *m.* game, play, sport; *in pl.,* (public) games

obeō (ob- + eō), obīre, obiī or obīvī, obitus go to meet; enter into, take on

pila, pilae *f.* ball

recolō, recolere, recoluī, recultus cultivate again; resume, practice again

reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus seize, catch; blame, censure

requiēs, requiētis *f.* rest, relaxation; requiem = *acc. sing.*

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; take (and use)

suscēnseō, suscēnsēre, suscēnsuī, —— be angry with (+ dat.)

tempestīvus, -a, -um timely, ripe, ready; tempestīvum convīvium, sumptuous *or* elaborate dinner party (that starts early)

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow, assign

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

2. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 14

The study of literature stands in an important relation to public and political life.

nam nisi multōrum praeceptīs multīsque litterīs mihi ab adulēscentiā suāsissem
nihil esse in vītā magnō opere* expetendum nisi laudem atque honestātem, in eā
autem persequendā omnīs cruciātūs corporis, omnia perīcula mortis atque exsilī
parvī esse dūcenda, numquam mē prō salūte vestrā in tot ac tantās dīmicātiōnēs
atque in hōs prōflīgātōrum hominum cōtīdiānōs impetūs obiēcissem. sed plēnī
omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās; quae
iacērent in tenebrīs omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen accēderet.† quam multās nōbīs
imāginēs nōn sōlum ad intuendum vērum etiam ad imitandum fortissimōrum
virōrum expressās scrīptōrēs et Graecī et Latīnī relīquērunt! quās ego mihi semper in
administrandā rē pūblicā prōpōnēns animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōne
hominum excellentium cōnformābam.

*magnō opere = magnopere
†accēdō, *here*, be added
administrō (1-tr.) assist; manage, administer
adulēscentia, adulēscentiae *f.* youth, adolescence
cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis *f.* thinking, reflection, thought
cōnformō (1-tr.) shape, fashion
cōtīdiānus, -a, -um daily
cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment
dīmicātiō, dīmicātiōnis *f.* battle, fight, struggle
excellēns, excellentis outstanding
exemplum, exemplī *n.* example
expetō (ex- + petō) ask for, seek (after)
exprimō, exprimere, expressī, expressus squeeze out; stamp, portray, depict
Graecus, -a, -um Greek
honestās, honestātis *f.* honor, integrity
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie dead
imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness
imitor (1-tr.) practice, copy, imitate

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault
intueor, intuērī, intuitus sum look upon, gaze at; reflect upon, consider
Latīnus, -a, -um Latin
laus, laudis *f.* praise
obiciō (ob- + iaciō) throw (in front of), throw (in the way of), interpose
persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly, pursue
plēnus, -a, -um full
praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* advice, instruction, precept
prōflīgātus, -a, -um dissolute, depraved
prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) exhibit; keep (before one), bear in mind, hold up (as an example)
scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum recommend, urge, advise; persuade (+ dat.)
tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
vetustās, vetustātis *f.* (old) age, antiquity

3. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 18–19

Cicero muses on the divine endowment of all poets.

atque sīc ā summīs hominibus ērudītissimīsque accēpimus cēterārum rērum studia
ex doctrīnā et praeceptīs et arte cōnstāre, poētam nātūrā ipsā valēre et mentis vīribus
excitārī et quasi dīvīnō quōdam spīritū īnflārī. quā rē suō iūre noster ille Ennius sānc-
tōs appellat poētās, quod quasi deōrum aliquō dōnō atque mūnere commendātī nōbīs
esse videantur.

aliquō = *neut. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
commendō (1-tr.) entrust
cōnstō (con- + stō), cōnstāre, cōnstitī, cōn-
    stātūrus stand, be established; (+ ex + abl.)
    consist in, rest on, be composed of
doctrīna, doctrīnae *f.* teaching, instruction
Ennius, Enniī *m.* Ennius
ērudītus, -a, -um learned, accomplished

excitō (1-tr.) arouse
īnflō (1-tr.) blow on, inspire
mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift; tribute
praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* advice, instruction,
    precept
quasi (adv.) as if, as it were
sānctus, -a, -um sacred, holy
spīritus, spīritūs *m.* spirit

4. Cicero, *Post Reditum ad Populum* 16

Cicero describes to the people the groundswell of support for him while he was in exile. He
singles out one man's aid in particular.

ita mē nūdum ā propinquīs, nūllā cognātiōne mūnītum, cōnsulēs, praetōrēs, tribūnī
plēbis, senātus, Italia cūncta semper ā vōbīs dēprecāta est, dēnique omnēs quī vestrīs
maximīs beneficiīs honōribusque sunt ornātī, prōductī ad vōs ab eōdem, nōn sōlum
ad mē cōnservandum vōs cohortātī sunt, sed etiam rērum meārum gestārum auc-
tōrēs, testēs, laudātōrēs fuērunt. quōrum prīnceps ad cohortandōs vōs et ad rogandōs
fuit Cn. Pompeius, vir omnium quī sunt, fuērunt, erunt, virtūte, sapientiā, glōriā
prīnceps: quī mihi ūnus ūnī prīvātō amīcō eadem omnia dedit quae ūniversae reī
pūblicae, salūtem, ōtium, dignitātem.

auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author
beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor,
    benefit
cognātiō, cognātiōnis *f.* kinship
cohortor (co- + hortor) (1-tr.) exhort, encourage
cōnservō (con- + servō) (1-tr.) keep from danger,
    save, preserve
cūnctus, -a, -um all
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up
dēprecor (1-tr.) beg mercy for, intercede for
dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity, rank, status
laudātor, laudātōris *m.* praiser; character witness
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī or mūniī, mūnītus for-
    tify; defend, protect
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted
ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate; show respect (to)

ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure
plēbs, plēbis *f.* (the) plebs, the general body of
    (nonpatrician) Roman citizens
praetor, praetōris *m.* praetor, a judicial official
    both in and outside of Rome
prīnceps, prīncipis first, foremost, chief; *as*
    subst., leading man
prīvātus, -a, -um private
prōdūcō (prō- + dūcō) bring forth, present
propinquus, -a, -um near, close; *as subst.*, relative
testis, testis, -ium *m.* or *f.* witness
tribūnus, tribūnī *m.* tribune, military com-
    mander; (plebeian) magistrate
ūniversus, -a, -um all together, entire, whole

The *Post Reditum ad Populum* was delivered by Cicero after his return from exile in 57. Cicero gives thanks to the
people for their part in his recall, while at the same time recounting his role in important events of the past (notably,
of course, the suppression of the Catilinarian conspiracy).

5. Catullus VIII (choliambic)

The poet has a heart-to-heart talk with himself.

Miser Catulle, dēsinās ineptīre,

et quod vidēs perīsse perditum dūcās.

fulsēre quondam candidī tibī* sōlēs

cum ventitābās quō puella dūcēbat

amāta nōbīs† quantum amābitur nūlla.   5

ibi illa multa cum iocōsa fīēbant,

quae tū volēbās nec puella nōlēbat,

fulsēre vērē candidī tibī* sōlēs.

nunc iam illa nōn volt: tū quoque inpotēns nōlī,

nec quae fugit sectāre, nec miser vīve,   10

sed obstinātā mente perfer, obdūrā.

valē, puella. iam Catullus obdūrat,

nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam.

at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.

scelesta, vae tē, quae tibi manet vīta?   15

quis nunc tē adībit? cui vidēberis bella?

quem nunc amābis? cuius esse dīcēris?

quem bāsiābis? cui labella mordēbis?

at tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

*The final -i of tibi here scans *long*.
†nōbīs, Dative of Agent
adeō (ad- + eō), adīre, adiī, aditum approach
at (conj.) but
bāsiō (1-tr.) kiss
bellus, -a, -um pretty, charming, lovely
candidus, -a, -um white, clear, bright, radiant
dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī or dēsīvī, dēsitum stop, cease (+ inf.)
dēstinō (1-tr.) determine, resolve
doleō, dolēre, doluī, —— suffer, grieve, feel pain
fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, —— shine, gleam
ibi (adv.) there; then
ineptiō, ineptīre, ——, —— be silly, play the fool
impotēns, impotentis powerless
invītus, -a, -um unwilling

iocōsus, -a, -um full of jokes; laughable, funny
labellum, labellī n. (little) lip
mordeō, mordēre, momordī, morsus bite, nibble
obdūrō (1-tr.) be hardened, hold out, persist, endure
obstinātus, -a, -um firmly set, determined, resolute
quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly
requīrō (re- + quaerō), requīrere, requīsiī or requīsīvī, requīsītus seek again
scelestus, -a, -um criminal, wicked, accursed
sector (1-tr.) keep following, chase
sōl, sōlis m. sun
vae (interj.) alas! woe!
ventitō (1-intr.) come often, keep coming

6. Catullus LXXXIV

The poet comments on the pronunciation of a certain Arrius.

"Chommoda" dīcēbat, sī quandō "commoda" vellet*

 dīcere, et "īnsidiās" Arrius "hīnsidiās."

et tum mīrificē spērābat sē esse locūtum,

 cum quantum poterat dīxerat "hīnsidiās."

crēdō, sīc māter, sīc līber avunculus eius,   5

 sīc māternus avus dīxerat atque avia.

hōc missō in Syriam requiērant omnibus aurēs:

 audībant† eadem haec lēniter et leviter,

nec sibi postillā metuēbant tālia verba,

 cum subitō affertur nuntius horribilis: 10

Īoniōs flūctūs, postquam illūc Arrius īsset,

 iam nōn Īoniōs esse sed Hīoniōs.

*vellet, *iterative subjunctive (indicating repeated action)*, used to want
†audībant = audiēbant
afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring toward, bring forth; report
Arrius, Arriī *m.* Arrius
auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear
avia, aviae *f.* grandmother
avunculus, avunculī *m.* (maternal) uncle
avus, avī *m.* grandfather
commodum, commodī *n.* convenience, advantage
flūctus, flūctūs *m.* wave, billow
horribilis, horribile horrible, terrible

illūc (adv.) to that place, thither
Īonius, -a, -um Ionian
lēniter (adv.) gently, kindly
māternus, -a, -um maternal
metuō, metuere, metuī, ——— fear, dread
mīrificē (adv.) wonderfully
nuntius, nuntiī *m.* messenger; message
postillā (adv.) afterward
quandō (adv.) at any time, ever
requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvī, requiētum rest, find relief
subitō (adv.) suddenly
Syria, Syriae *f.* Syria

7. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.1

Caesar begins his commentary on the Gallic war.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī,
tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īn-
stitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Ma-
trona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā
cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs
saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; prox-
imīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum
gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē
cōtīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent,
aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

absum (ab- + sum), abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus be
   away from
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
Aquītānī, Aquītānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aquitani
Belgae, Belgārum *m. pl.* (the) Belgae
Celtae, Celtārum *m. pl.* (the) Celts
commeō (1-intr.) go back and forth, travel
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum
   struggle, strive
continenter (adv.) continuously
cōtīdiānus, -a, -um daily
cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation; sophistication;
   luxury
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus separate, divide
effēminō (1-tr.) emasculate, weaken
ferē (adv.) almost, nearly
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
Garumna, Garumnae *f.* (the) Garonne, a river in
   southwestern Gaul
Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
Helvētiī, Helvētiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Helvetii

hūmānitās, hūmānitātis *f.* (civilized) humanity;
   humaneness, kindness
importō (1-tr.) carry in, import
incolō, incolere, incoluī, —— inhabit; dwell, live
īnstitūtum, īnstitūtī *n.* custom, institution
lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language
Matrona, Matronae *f.* (the) Marne, a river in
   north-central Gaul
mercātor, mercātōris *m.* trader, merchant
pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinuī,
   pertentus be aimed at, pertain
praecēdō (prae- + cēdō) (tr.) excel, surpass
prohibeō (prō- + habeō), prohibēre, prohibuī,
   prohibitus prevent, keep off, exclude
proptereā (adv.) because of this; proptereā quod,
   because
proximus, -a, -um nearest
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)
Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine, a river in north-
   eastern Gaul
Sēquana, Sēquanae *f.* (the) Seine, a river in
   northern Gaul
trāns (prep. + acc.) across

8. Vergil, *Aeneid* I.1-11

The proem of the *Aeneid*

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs
Ītaliam, fātō profugus, Lāvīnaque vēnit
lītora, multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō
vī superum, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob īram.
multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem   5
īnferretque deōs Latiō; genus unde Latīnum
Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.
Mūsa, mihī* causās memorā, quō nūmine laesō
quidve dolēns rēgīna deum tot volvere cāsūs
īnsignem pietāte virum, tot adīre labōrēs   10
impulerit. tantaene animīs caelestibus īrae?

*The final -i of mihi here scans *long*.

adeō (ad- + eō), adīre, adiī, aditum approach;
    encounter; undertake
Albānus, -a, -um Alban, of Alba Longa, a town in
    central Italy
caelestis, caeleste, heavenly, divine
condō, condere, condidī, conditus found
doleō, dolēre, doluī, —— suffer; grieve (over),
    feel pain (at)
iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment
impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
    strike against, beat; impel, drive
īnsignis, īnsigne distinguished, remarkable
laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm; offend
Latīnus, -a, -um Latin, of Latium, an area in
    central Italy
Latium, Latiī *n.* Latium, an area in central Italy
Lāvīnus, -a, -um Lavinian, of Lavinium, a town in
    central Italy

lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach
memor, memoris mindful, remembering
memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell
Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse
nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine
    spirit, numen
ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast
pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness,
    piety
profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *as subst.*, exile;
    refugee
superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above; superum
    = superōrum
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over, roll;
    undergo
-ve (enclitic conj.) or

9. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.3–13

Addressing Dido, queen of Carthage, Aeneas begins his narrative of the fall of Troy.

īnfandum, rēgīna, iubēs renovāre dolōrem,

Troiānās ut* opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum

ēruerint Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī   5

et quōrum pars magna fuī. quis tālia fandō

Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut dūrī mīles Ulīxī

temperet ā lacrimīs? et iam nox ūmida caelō

praecipitat suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs.

sed sī tantus amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs   10

et breviter Troiae suprēmum audīre labōrem,

quamquam animus meminisse horret lūctūque refūgit,

incipiam. . . .

*ul, *here* (interrog adv.), how

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks

Dolopes, Dolopum *m. pl.* (the) Dolopes, a Greek
people from Thessaly

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

ēruō, ēruere, ēruī, ērutus uproot; destroy utterly

for (1-tr.) speak, utter

horreō, horrēre, horruī, —— stand up, bristle;
tremble, shudder

īnfandus, -a, -um unspeakable

lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

lāmentābilis, lāmentābile lamentable, arousing
lamentation

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning

Myrmidones, Mymidonum *m. pl.* (the) Myrmi-
dons, a people of Thessaly, followers of
Achilles

ops, opis *f.* power; *in pl.*, power, resources,
wealth

praecipitō (1-tr.) throw *or* hurl headlong; *intr.*,
fall headlong, plunge

refugiō (re- + fugiō), (turn and) flee, run away;
recoil

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

renovō (1-tr.) restore, renew, refresh, revive

sīdus, sīderis *n.* star

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend,
urge, advise

suprēmus, -a, -um final, last

temperō (1-tr.) restrain, hold back, refrain

Troiānus, -a, -um Trojan

Ulīxēs, Ulīxī *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)

ūmidus, -a, -um wet, moist; rainy

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

10. Horace, *Carmina* I.22 (Sapphic strophe)

The poet has special protection from dangers.

Integer vītae scelerisque pūrus
nōn eget Maurīs iaculīs neque arcū
nec venēnātīs gravidā sagittīs,
    Fusce, pharetrā,

sīve per Syrtīs iter aestuōsās   5
sīve factūrus per inhospitālem
Caucasum vel quae loca fābulōsus
    lambit Hydaspēs.

namque mē silvā lupus in Sabīnā,
dum meam cantō Lalagēn et ultrā   10
terminum cūrīs vagor expedītīs,
    fūgit inermem,

aestuōsus, -a, -um full of heat, burning,
    very hot
arcus, arcūs *m.* bow
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
Caucasus, Caucasī *m.* (the) Caucasus mountains
egeō, egēre, eguī, —— lack, want, need (+ abl.)
expediō, expedīre, expedīvī or expediī, expedītus
    let loose, set free; fetch out, unpack
fābulōsus, -a, -um full of fables; celebrated in
    fable
Fuscus, Fuscī *m.* Fuscus, addressee of the poem
gravidus, -a, -um heavy, laden
Hydaspēs, Hydaspis *m.* (the) Hydaspes, a tribu-
    tary of the Indus River
iaculum, iaculī *n.* javelin
inermis, inerme unarmed, defenseless
inhospitālis, inhospitāle inhospitable
integer, integra, integrum untouched, whole;
    sound; blameless, virtuous
iter, itineris *n.* journey
Lalagē, Lalagēs *f.* Lalage; Lalagēn = *acc. sing.*

lambō, lambere, ——, —— lick, lap
lupus, lupī *m.* wolf
Maurus, -a, -um Moorish, Moroccan
pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver
pūrus, -a, -um clean, pure, unstained
Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine (of a territory and people
    northeast of Rome)
sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
silva, silvae *f.* forest
sīve (conj.) or if; sīve . . . sīve . . . whether . . .
    or if . . .
Syrtis, Syrtis, -ium *f. in sing. or pl.,* Syrtis, the
    name of a sandbar on the coast between
    Carthage and Cyrene
terminus, terminī *m.* boundary line, boundary,
    limit
ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond, past, over, across
vagor (1-intr.) wander
vel (conj.) or
venēnātus, -a, -um filled with poison, poisonous

quāle portentum neque mīlitāris
Dauniās lātīs alit aesculētīs
nec Iubae tellūs generat, leōnum   15
    ārida nūtrīx.

pōne mē pigrīs ubi nūlla campīs
arbor aestīvā recreātur aurā,
quod latus mundī nebulae malusque
    Iuppiter urget,   20

pōne sub currū nimium propinquī
sōlis, in terrā domibus negātā:
dulce rīdentem Lalagēn amābō,
    dulce loquentem.

aesculētum, aesculētī *n.* oak forest
aestīvus, -a, -um of summer
alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed, nourish, support
arbor, arboris *f.* tree
āridus, -a, -um dry; parched
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
currus, currūs *m.* chariot
Dauniās *fem. sing. nom. of adj. used substantively,*
   Daunia, Apulia, a province of southeast Italy
dulce (adv.) sweetly, pleasantly
generō (1-tr.) beget, create, produce
Iuba, Iubae *m.* Juba, a Numidian king
Lalagē, Lalagēs *f.* Lalage; Lalagēn = *acc. sing.*
lātus, -a, -um broad, wide
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
leō, leōnis *m.* lion

mīlitāris, mīlitāre military; warlike
mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
nebula, nebulae *f.* mist, fog, cloud
negō (1-tr.) deny
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
nūtrīx, nūtrīcis *f.* nurse
piger, pigra, pigrum sluggish, inactive;
   unfruitful
portentum, portentī *n.* sign, omen, portent
propinquus, -a, -um near, close
recreō (1-tr.) revive, refresh
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus smile, laugh
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —— weigh down; press
   hard; threaten

11. Horace, *Ars Poëtica* 136–55

The poet gives advice about poetic beginnings to the potential writer.

nec sīc incipiēs, ut scrīptor cyclicus ōlim:

"Fortūnam Priamī cantābō et nōbile bellum."

quid dignum tantō feret hic prōmissor hiātū?

parturient montēs, nāscētur rīdiculus mūs.

quantō rēctius hic, quī nīl mōlītur ineptē: 140

"Dīc mihi, Mūsa, virum, captae post tempora Troiae

quī mōrēs hominum multōrum vīdit et urbēs."

nōn fūmum ex fulgōre, sed ex fūmō dare* lūcem

cōgitat† ut speciōsa dehinc mīrācula prōmat,

Antiphatēn Scyllamque et cum Cyclōpe Charybdim;   145

nec reditum Diomēdis ab interitū Meleagrī

nec geminō bellum Troiānum ordītur ab ōvō:

semper ad ēventum festīnat et in mediās rēs

nōn secus ac nōtās‡ audītōrem rapit et quae

*dō, *here,* bring forward, produce
†cōgitō, *here,* have in mind, plan (+ inf.)
‡nōtus, -a, -um well-known, famous, familiar
Antiphatēs, Antiphatae *m.* Antiphates, king of the Laestrygones, who tried to kill Odysseus
audītor, audītōris *m.* hearer, listener
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
Charybdis, Charybdis *m.* Charybdis, a whirlpool; Charybdim = *acc. sing.*
cyclicus, -a, -um of the epic cycle of poems, cyclic
Cyclōps, Cyclōpos or Cyclōpis *m.* (the) Cyclops (Polyphemus)
dehinc (adv.) after this, later, at a later stage
Diomēdēs, Diomēdis *m.* Diomedes, one of the Greek heroes at Troy
ēventus, ēventūs *m.* outcome, denouement
festīnō (1-intr.) hasten, proceed swiftly
fulgor, fulgōris *m.* brightness, radiance, splendor
fūmus, fūmī *m.* smoke, fumes
geminus, -a, -um twin-born, twin
hiātus, hiātūs *m.* gaping, (wide) opening, chasm
ineptē (adv.) improperly, inappropriately
interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise
Meleager, Meleagrī *m.* Meleager, whose story is told by Phoenix in the *Iliad*
mīrāculum, mīrāculī *n.* amazing object, marvel, wonder

mōlior, mōlīrī, mōlītus sum plan, set in motion, begin
mūs, mūris *m.* mouse
Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse
nōbilis, nōbile noble; remarkable; well known, famous
ōlim (adv.) once, formerly
ordior, ordīrī, orsus sum embark on, begin (to speak or write of)
ōvum, ōvī *n.* egg
parturiō, parturīre, parturīvī, —— be pregnant with, be in labor
Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam, king of Troy
prōmissor, prōmissōris *m.* promiser, guarantor
prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsī, prōmptus bring forth, bring into view
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off; snatch up
rēctē rightly, correctly
reditus, reditūs *m.* return; homecoming
rīdiculus, -a, -um laughable, silly, ridiculous
scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer
Scylla, Scyllae *f.* Scylla, a sea monster
secus (adv.) otherwise, differently; nōn secus ac not differently than, exactly as if
speciōsus, -a, -um attractive; spectacular, splendid
Troiānus, -a, -um Trojan

dēspērat tractāta nitēscere posse relinquit   150

atque ita mentītur, sīc vērīs falsa remiscet,

prīmō nē medium, mediō nē discrepet īmum.

tū, quid ego et populus mēcum dēsīderet audī,

sī plausōris egēs aulaea manentis et ūsque

sessūrī dōnec cantor "vōs plaudite" dīcat.   155

aulaeum, aulaeī *n.* curtain (of a theater)
cantor, cantōris *m.* singer (the person playing
  and singing the musical parts of a play)
dēsīderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
dēspērō (dē- + spērō) (1-tr.) despair (of)
discrepō, discrepāre, discrepuī or discrepāvī,
  —— be out of harmony (with)
egeō, egēre, eguī, —— be needy, lack, need
  (+ gen.)
īmus, -a, -um lowest, bottom (of); last, final
mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum lie, tell a lie

nitēscō, nitēscere, ——, —— begin to shine,
  become bright
plaudō, plaudere, plausī, plausus clap the hands,
  applaud
plausor, plausōris *m.* one who applauds
remisceō, remiscēre, ——, remixtus mix
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated
tractō (1-tr.) keep on dragging; deal with, discuss,
  treat
ūsque (adv.) continuously

12. Propertius I.1–8

The poet describes how he came to be in love with Cynthia.

Cynthia prīma suīs miserum mē cēpit ocellīs,

  contāctum nūllīs ante cupīdinibus.

tum mihi cōnstantis dēiēcit lūmina fastūs

  et caput impositīs pressit Amor pedibus,

dōnec mē docuit castās ōdisse puellās   5

  improbus et nūllō vīvere cōnsiliō.

ei mihi, iam tōtō furor hic nōn dēficit annō,

  cum tamen adversōs cōgor habēre deōs.

adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse
caput, capitis *n.* head
castus, -a, -um chaste
cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive to-
  gether, force, compel
cōnstāns, cōnstantis firm, constant
contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus touch
cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire
dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail; subside
dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, cast down

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach
ei (interj.) alas!
fastus, fastūs *m.* pride, haughtiness, arrogance
furor, furōris *m.* madness; passion
impōnō (in- + pōnō) place *or* impose (on)
improbus, -a, -um wicked, shameless; relentless
ocellus, ocellī *m.* (little) eye
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
premō, premere, pressī, pressus press (hard);
  overpower

13. Propertius II.12

The poet ponders the artistic depiction of Love.

Quīcumque ille fuit, puerum quī pīnxit Amōrem,

nōnne putās mīrās hunc habuisse manūs?

is prīmum vīdit sine sēnsū vīvere amantēs,

et levibus cūrīs magna perīre bona.

īdem nōn frūstrā ventōsās addidit ālās, 5

fēcit et* hūmānō corde volāre deum:

scīlicet alternā quoniam iactāmur in undā,

nostraque nōn ūllīs permanet aura locīs.

et meritō hāmātīs manus est armāta sagittīs,

et pharetra ex umerō Cnōsia utrōque† iacet: 10

ante ferit quoniam tūtī quam cernimus hostem,

nec quisquam ex illō vulnere sānus abit.

in mē tēla manent, manet et puerīlis imāgō:

sed certē pennās perdidit ille suās;

ēvolat heu nostrō quoniam dē pectore nusquam, 15

assiduusque meō sanguine bella gerit.

*et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of -que.

†utrōque = *masc. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, each (of two)

addō (ad- + dō) add

āla, ālae *f.* wing

alternus, -a, -um alternating

armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm

assiduus, -a, -um continually present, busy; diligent, persistent

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish; perceive

Cnōsius, -a, -um of Cnossos, the ancient capital of Crete; Cretan

cor, cordis *n.* heart

ēvolō (1-intr.) fly out

feriō, ferīre, ——, —— strike, hit

frūstrā (adv.) in vain

hāmātus, -a, -um hooked, barbed

hūmānus, -a, -um human

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; hang

iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness

meritō (adv.) deservedly, with good reason

mīrus, -a, -um marvelous

nusquam (adv.) nowhere; on no occasion

penna, pennae *f.* wing

permaneō (per- + maneō) stay, remain; last long, endure

pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver

pingō, pingere, pīnxī, pictus paint, represent, depict

puerīlis, puerīle boyish, youthful

quīcumque = *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, whoever

quisquam = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anyone

sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane

scīlicet (adv.) of course, no doubt, obviously

tūtus, -a, -um safe

umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder

unda, undae *f.* wave

ventōsus, -a, -um windy, full of wind; light, nimble

volō (1-intr.) fly

quid tibi iūcundumst siccīs habitāre medullīs?

sī pudor est, aliō* trāice tēla, puer!

intāctōs istō satius temptāre venēnō:

nōn ego, sed tenuis vapulat umbra mea.   20

quam sī perdideris, quis erit quī tālia cantet,

(haec mea Mūsa levis glōria magna tuast),

quī caput et digitōs et lūmina nigra puellae

et canat ut† soleant molliter īre pedēs?

*aliō, *here* (adv.) to another place, elsewhere
†ut, *here* (interrog. adv.) how
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
caput, capitis *n.* head
digitus, digitī *m.* finger
habitō (1-intr.) dwell, live; stay, remain
intāctus, -a, -um untouched, uninjured; untried
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
medulla, medullae *f.* bone marrow; *in pl.*, vitals, innards
molliter (adv.) gently, softly, mildly
Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse
niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black

pēs, pedis *m.* foot
pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty
satius more satisfying, better; satius = *neut. sing. nom.*
siccus, -a, -um dry
temptō (1-tr.) touch; try, test; attack, assail
tenuis, tenue thin, meager, slight; poor, insignificant
trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce; shoot
vapulō, vapulāre, vapulāvī, —— be beaten, be flogged
venēnum, venēnī *n.* poison

14. Propertius II.15.31–40

After a night of passion, the poet declares that he will love Cynthia come what may.

terra prius falsō partū dēlūdet arantīs,

  et citius nigrōs Sōl agitābit equōs,

flūminaque ad caput incipient revocāre liquōrēs,

  āridus et* siccō gurgite piscis erit,

quam possim nostrōs aliō† trānsferre dolōrēs: 35

  huius erō vīvus, mortuus huius erō.

quod‡ mihi sī‡ interdum tālīs concēdere noctēs

  illa velit, vītae longus et annus erit.

sī dabit et multās, fīam immortālis in illīs:

  nocte ūnā quīvīs vel deus esse potest.   40

*et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of -que.

†aliō, *here* (adv.) to another place, elsewhere

‡quod . . . sī but if

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; drive

āridus, -a, -um dry; parched

arō (1-tr.) plough, till

caput, capitis *n.* head; source

citius (adv.) more quickly

concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant

dēlūdō, dēlūdere, dēlūsī, dēlūsus play false, mock, deceive

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

equus, equī *m.* horse

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

gurges, gurgitis *m.* swirling water, eddy, whirlpool

immortālis, immortāle immortal

interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally

liquor, liquōris *m.* fluid, liquid; water

niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black

partus, partūs *m.* birth; offspring; crop

piscis, piscis, -ium *m.* fish

quīvīs = *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,* anyone you wish, anyone at all

revocō (1-tr.) call back

siccus, -a, -um dry

Sōl, Sōlis *m.* Sun

trānsferō (trāns- + ferō), trānsferre, trānstulī, trānslātus carry across, transfer

vel (adv.) even

vīvus, -a, -um living, alive

15. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XIII.361–69

Odysseus boasts to Ajax, his rival for Achilles' armor, about the differences between them.

> . . . tibi dextera bellō
>
> ūtilis, ingenium est quod eget moderāmine nostrō;
>
> tū vīrēs sine mente geris, mihi cūra futūrī;
>
> tū pugnāre potes, pugnandī tempora mēcum
>
> ēligit Atrīdēs; tū tantum corpore prōdes,   365
>
> nōs animō; quantōque ratem quī temperat anteit[4]
>
> rēmigis officium, quantō dux mīlite maior,
>
> tantum ego tē superō. nec nōn* in corpore nostrō
>
> pectora† sunt potiōra manū: vigor omnis in illīs.

*nec nōn, *here*, likewise
†pectora, *here*, intellectual faculties
anteeō (ante- + eō), anteīre, anteiī or anteīvī,
—— go before; be better than, surpass
Atrīdēs, Atrīdae *m.* son of Atreus (either
Agamemnon or Menelaus)
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.*
(*sc.* manus) right hand; dextera = dextra
egeō, egēre, eguī, —— need, lack (+ abl.)
ēligō (ē- + legō), ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus select,
choose

moderāmen, moderāminis *n.* control, guidance
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, task
potior, potius more powerful; more precious
prōsum (prō- + sum), prōdesse, prōfuī,
prōfutūrus be helpful, be of use, be good (for);
prōdes = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*
ratis, ratis, -ium *f.* boat, ship
rēmex, rēmigis *m.* oarsman, rower
temperō (1-tr.) restrain, hold back; control
ūtilis, ūtile useful
vigor, vigōris *m.* liveliness, activity, vigor

4. The short vowels -e- and -i- of **anteit** are pronounced as the diphthong -ei-.

16. Ovid, *Tristia* III.7.45–52

The poet in exile predicts his own fate.

ēn ego, cum patriā caream vōbīsque* domōque,   45

    raptaque sint adimī quae potuēre mihi,

ingeniō tamen ipse meō comitorque fruorque:

    Caesar in† hoc potuit iūris habēre nihil.

quīlibet hanc saevō vītam mihi fīniat ēnse,

    mē tamen extīnctō fāma superstes erit,   50

dumque suīs victrīx septem dē montibus orbem

    prōspiciet domitum Martia Rōma, legar.

*vōbīs refers to all Ovid's friends and acquaintances in Rome.

†in, *here*, over

adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptus remove, take away

comitō (1-tr.) accompany, attend

domō, domāre, domuī, domitus subdue, tame

ēn (interj.) behold! look!

ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword

ex(s)tinguō, ex(s)tinguere, ex(s)tīnxī, ex(s)tīnctus extinguish; annihilate, kill

fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī or fīniī, fīnītus define; end, finish

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

Martius, -a, -am of *or* belonging to Mars, Martial

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world

prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexī, prōspectus survey, watch over, look out over

quīlibet = *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,* anyone (it pleases)

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off

superstes, superstitis remaining alive, surviving

victrīx, victrīcis *f.* conqueror, victor

17. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* I.56.9

The last princes of the Tarquins went to Delphi, the seat of Apollo's oracle, in order to ask a question on behalf of their father. They took with them a lowly Roman, M. Brutus. The historian describes a surprising turn of events.

is* tum ab Tarquiniīs ductus Delphōs, lūdibrium vērius quam comes, aureum baculum inclūsum corneō cavātō ad id baculō tulisse dōnum Apollinī dīcitur, per ambāgēs effigiem ingeniī suī. quō postquam ventum est, perfectīs patris mandātīs cupīdō incessit animōs iuvenum scīscitandī ad quem eōrum rēgnum Rōmānum esset ventūrum. ex īnfimō specū vōcem redditam ferunt: imperium summum Rōmae habēbit quī vestrum prīmus, ō iuvenēs, ōsculum mātrī tulerit. Tarquiniī, ut Sextus, quī Rōmae relictus fuerat,[†] ignārus respōnsī[‡] expersque imperiī esset, rem summā ope tacērī iubent;[§] ipsī inter sē uter prior, cum Rōmam redīsset, mātrī ōsculum daret, sortī permittunt.[§] Brūtus aliō[¶] ratus spectāre Pȳthicam vōcem, velut sī prōlāpsus cecidisset, terram ōsculō contigit, scīlicet quod ea commūnis māter omnium mortālium esset.

---

*is refers to M. Brutus
†relictus fuerat = relictus erat
‡respōnsum, respōnsī *n.* answer, response
§iubent, permittunt, historical use of present tense; translate as perfect
¶aliō, *here* (adv.), elsewhere, to another place, in another direction

ambāgēs, ambāgum *f. pl.* roundabout path
aureus, -a, -um golden, made of gold
baculum, baculī *n.* staff, walking stick
Brūtus, Brūtī *m.* (M.) Brutus, legendary hero of early Rome
cavō (1-tr.) hollow out, make hollow
comes, comitis *m. or f.* companion, comrade
commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in common
contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus touch
corneus, -a, -um made of cornel wood
cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire
Delphī, Delphōrum *m. pl.* Delphi
effigiēs, effigiēī *f.* representation, statue; symbol
expers, expertis having no part (of)
ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, unaware
incēdō (in- + cēdō) (tr.) go in, enter; arise, come over
inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus enclose, seal
īnfimus, -a, -um lowest, deepest, lowest part (of), depths (of)
iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* young man

lūdibrium, lūdibriī *n.* plaything, toy; laughingstock
mandātum, mandātī *n.* order, instruction
mortālis, mortāle mortal
ops, opis *f.* power, ability, might, effort
ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss
permittō (per- + mittō) entrust, commit
prōlābor, prōlābī, prōlāpsus sum slide or slip forward, slip down
Pȳthicus, -a, -um of Pytho (the oracle at Delphi), Pythian, Delphic
reor, rērī, ratus sum believe, think, imagine
reddō (red- + dō) give back, return
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule
scīlicet (adv.) of course, no doubt, obviously
scīscitor (1-tr.) try to get to know by asking, inquire
Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (Tarquinius), one of the sons of Tarquinius Superbus, last king of Rome
sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; destiny
spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe; face, point
specus, specūs *m.* cave, grotto, abyss, hollow
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep silent; leave unmentioned
Tarquinius, Tarquiniī *m.* Tarquinius, any male member of the Tarquin family
velut (conj.) even as, just as

18. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.49.5

In 216 B.C.E. at Cannae in southern Italy, the Romans suffered one of their greatest military defeats in a battle against Hannibal and his Carthaginian army. In a single day most of the fifty thousand Romans who fought were killed. In the following passage Livy describes a meeting between L. Aemilius Paulus, one of the consuls in charge, and Cn. Lentulus, a military tribune. The final vestiges of the Roman army are being routed.

pepulērunt* tamen iam paucōs superantēs† et labōre ac volneribus fessōs. inde

dissipātī omnēs sunt, equōsque ad fugam quī poterant repetēbant. Cn. Lentulus

tribūnus mīlitum cum praetervehēns equō sedentem in saxō, cruōre opplētum, cōn-

sulem vīdisset, "L. Aemilī," inquit, "quem ūnum īnsontem culpae clādis hodiernae

deī respicere dēbent, cape hunc equum, dum et tibi vīrium aliquid superest et comes

ego tē tollere possum ac prōtegere. nē fūnestam hanc pugnam morte cōnsulis

fēceris; etiam sine hōc lacrimārum satis lūctūsque est."

*pepulērunt, *subject is the Carthaginians*
†superō, *here,* survive; superantēs, *sc.* Rōmānōs
L. Aemilius, L. Aemilī *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 B.C.E.), one of the Roman leaders at the disastrous battle of Cannae
aliquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,* something
clādēs, clādis, -ium *f.* slaughter, destruction
comes, comitis *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
cruor, cruōris *m.* (fresh) blood, gore
culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame
dissipō (1-tr.) disperse, scatter
equus, equī *m.* horse
fessus, -a, -um weary, exhausted, worn out
fūnestus, -a, -um lamentable, grievous; polluted
hodiernus, -a, -um of this day, today's
inde (adv.) from there; thereupon, then
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
īnsōns, īnsontis innocent, not guilty
lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

Cn. Lentulus, Cn. Lentulī *m.* Cn. (Cornelius) Lentulus
lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning
oppleō, opplēre, opplēvī, opplētus fill completely, fill up; cover completely
praetervehō, praetervehere, praetervexī, praetervectus travel past, pass by
prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus cover, protect
pugna, pugnae *f.* fight, battle
repetō (re- + petō) seek again, get back
respiciō, respicere, respexī, respectus look back at; show concern for; regard
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated
supersum (super- + sum), superesse, superfuī,
—— remain, be left, survive
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take away, carry off
tribūnus, tribūnī *m.* tribune, military commander

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXXVIII.23.1

In 278 B.C.E. many Gauls had migrated to Asia Minor. Livy reports the terror of the Gauls after the Romans break into their camp during the Macedonian wars in 189.

patentibus iam portīs, priusquam irrumperent victōrēs, fuga ē castrīs Gallōrum in omnēs partēs facta est. ruunt caecī per viās, per invia; nūlla praecipitia saxa, nūllae rūpēs obstant; nihil praeter hostem metuunt; itaque plērīque praecipitēs per vāstam altitūdinem prōlāpsī aut dēbilitātī exanimantur. cōnsul captīs castrīs dīreptiōne praedāque abstinet mīlitem; . . .

abstineō (abs- + teneō), abstinēre, abstinuī, abstentus hold back, restrain
altitūdō, altitūdinis *f.* height
dēbilitō (1-tr.) weaken
dīreptiō, dīreptiōnis *f.* plundering, pillaging
exanimō (1-tr.) deprive of life, kill
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
invius, -a, -um impassable; invia, *sc.* loca
irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptus break in, burst in
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread
obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstitī, obstātum stand in the way

pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
porta, portae *f.* gate
praeceps, praecipitis precipitous, steep; rushing forward, headlong
praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder
prōlābor, prōlābī, prōlāpsus sum fall forward
ruō, ruere, ruī, ruitūrus rush
rūpēs, rūpis, -ium *f.* cliff, crag
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
vāstus, -a, -um immense, vast
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

20. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CVII.9

After stating that the law of nature is a continuous alternation of good and bad things, the philosopher suggests the proper human response.

ad hanc lēgem animus noster aptandus est; hanc sequātur. huic pāreat. et quae-cumque fiunt, dēbuisse fierī putet nec velit obiurgāre nātūram. optimum est patī quod ēmendāre nōn possīs, et deum, quō auctōre cūncta prōveniunt, sine mur-murātiōne comitārī; malus mīles est quī imperātōrem gemēns sequitur.

aptō (1-tr.) fit, adapt, attune
auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author
comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend
cūnctus, -a, -um all
ēmendō (1-tr.) correct; remedy, cure
gemō, gemere, gemuī, gemitum groan, moan

murmurātiō, murmurātiōnis *f.* grumbling, muttering
obiurgō (1-tr.) find fault with, reprimand
prōveniō (prō- + veniō) come forth, emerge, arise
quaecumque = *neut. pl. nom. of indef. pron.,* what-ever things

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 13–14

quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit? in quā nēmō est,
extrā istam coniūrātiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn
ōderit. quae nota domesticae turpitūdinis nōn inusta vītae tuae est? quod prīvātārum
rērum dēdecus nōn haeret in fāmā? quae libīdō ab oculīs, quod facinus ā manibus
umquam tuīs, quod flāgitium ā tōtō corpore āfuit? cui tū adulēscentulō quem cor-
ruptēlārum inlecebrīs inrētissēs nōn aut ad audāciam ferrum aut ad libīdinem facem
praetulistī?* quid vērō? nūper cum morte superiōris uxōris novīs nuptiīs locum va-
cuēfēcissēs, nōnne etiam aliō incrēdibilī scelere hoc scelus cumulāvistī? quod ego
praetermittō et facile patior silērī nē in hāc cīvitāte tantī facinoris immānitās aut
exstitisse aut nōn vindicāta esse videātur. praetermittō ruīnās fortūnārum tuārum
quās omnīs proximīs Idibus tibi impendēre sentiēs: ad illa veniō quae nōn ad prīvā-
tam ignominiam vitiōrum tuōrum, nōn ad domesticam tuam difficultātem ac turpi-
tūdinem, sed ad summam rem pūblicam atque ad omnium nostrum vītam salū-
temque pertinent.

*praeferō, *here,* means both offer (ferrum) and
  carry in front (facem)
absum (ab- + sum), abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus be
  absent, be distant
adulēscentulus, adulēscentulī *m.* (little) young
  man
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
corruptēla, corruptēlae *f.* corruption, seduction
cumulō (1-tr.) pile up, heap
dēdecus, dēdecoris *n.* shame, disgrace
dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
difficultās, difficultātis *f.* difficulty
domesticus, -a, -um personal, domestic
exsistō, existere, exstitī, —— exist, arise, appear
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch
facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime
flāgitium, flāgitiī *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace
haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesūrus cling, stick
Īdūs, Īduum *m. pl.* (the) Ides, fifteenth day of
  March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth
  of every other month
ignominia, ignominiae *f.* dishonor, disgrace
illecebra, illecebrae *f.* attraction, allurement
immānitās, immānitātis *f.* enormity
impendeō, impendēre, ——, —— hang over,
  threaten (+ dat.)

incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable
inūrō, inūrere, inussī, inustus burn upon, brand
  upon (+ dat.)
irrētiō, irrētīre, irrētīvī or irrētiī, irrētītus trap
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread
nota, notae *f.* mark, sign
nūper (adv.) recently
nuptiae, nuptiārum *f. pl.* marriage, wedding
pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinuī,
  pertentus be aimed at, pertain
praetermittō (praeter- + mittō) pass over, omit
prīvātus, -a, -um private
proximus, -a, -um nearest; most recent, last
ruīna, ruīnae *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction
sileō, silēre, siluī, —— be silent; pass over in
  silence, leave unmentioned
superior, superius upper, higher; previous
turpitūdō, turpitūdinis *f.* ugliness; shamefulness,
  baseness
uxor, uxōris *f.* wife
vacuēfaciō, vacuēfacere, vacuēfēcī, vacuēfactus
  make empty
vindicō (1-tr.) avenge, punish
vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 3

pulchrum est bene facere reī pūblicae, etiam bene dīcere haud absurdum est; vel pāce
vel bellō clārum fierī licet; et quī fēcēre et quī facta aliōrum scrīpsēre, multī laudan-
tur. ac mihi quidem, tametsī haudquāquam pār glōria sequitur scrīptōrem et auc-
tōrem rērum, tamen in prīmīs* arduom vidētur rēs gestās scrībere: prīmum quod
facta dictīs exaequanda sunt; dein quia plērīque quae dēlicta reprehenderis malevo-
lentiā et invidiā dicta putant, ubi dē magnā virtūte atque glōriā bonōrum memorēs,
quae sibi quisque† facilia factū‡ putat, aequō animō accipit, suprā ea velutī ficta prō
falsīs dūcit. Sed ego adulēscentulus initiō, sīcutī plērīque, studiō ad rem pūblicam
lātus sum, ibique mihi multa advorsa fuēre. nam prō pudōre, prō abstinentiā, prō
virtūte audācia, largītiō, avāritia vigēbant. quae tametsī animus aspernābātur īn-
solēns malārum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia inbēcilla aetās ambitiōne conrupta
tenēbātur; ac mē, quom ab relicuōrum malīs mōribus dissentīrem, nihilō minus§
honōris cupīdō eadem quae cēterōs fāmā atque invidiā vexābat.

*in prīmīs, especially, above all; first

†quisque = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*,
    each person

‡factū = *neut. sing. abl. of verbal noun of* faciō,
    in (respect to) the doing, to do

§nihilō minus or nihilōminus (adv.) no less, just
    as much

abstinentia, abstinentiae *f.* abstinence; self-
    restraint, integrity

absurdus, -a, -um discordant; inappropriate

adulēscentulus, adulēscentulī *m.* (little) young
    man

adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life

ambitiō, ambitiōnis *f.* flattery, adulation; desire
    for power, ambition

arduus, -a, -um steep; difficult, arduous

aspernor (1-tr.) disdain, reject, despise

auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author, producer

avāritia, avāritiae *f.* greed, avarice

corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī, corruptus
    corrupt, bribe

cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire

dein (adv.) thereupon, then, next

dēlictum, dēlictī *n.* offense, crime

dissentiō (dis- + sentiō) differ, disagree

exaequō (1-tr.) make equal, equal

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictus form, fashion, make;
    imagine

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

haudquāquam (adv.) by no means whatever,
    not at all

ibi (adv.) there; then

inbēcillus, -a, -um weak, feeble

initium, initiī *n.* beginning

īnsolēns, īnsolentis unaccustomed, unfamiliar

largītiō, largītiōnis *f.* generosity, largess; bribery

licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est (impersonal verb)
    it is permitted

malevolentia, malevolentiae *f.* ill will, dislike,
    malevolence

memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell; memorēs,
    Potential subjunctive with a generalized sec-
    ond person

pār, paris equal

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

relicuus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendī,
    reprehēnsus seize, catch; blame, censure;
    reprehenderis, Potential subjunctive with a
    generalized second person

scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer

sīcutī (conj.) just as

suprā (prep. + acc.) over, above, beyond

tametsī (conj.) notwithstanding that, although

vel (conj.) or; vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .

velutī (conj.) even as, just as

vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

vigeō, vigēre, viguī, —— be vigorous, thrive,
    flourish

vitium, vitiī *n.* fault, vice

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.518–32

ipsum autem sūmptīs Priamum iuvenālibus armīs

ut vīdit, "quae mēns tam dīra, miserrime coniūnx,

impulit hīs cingī tēlīs? aut quō ruis?" inquit.   520

"nōn tālī auxiliō nec dēfēnsōribus istīs

tempus eget; nōn, sī ipse meus nunc adforet Hectōr.

hūc tandem concēde; haec āra tuēbitur omnīs,

aut moriēre simul." sīc ōre effāta recēpit

ad sēsē et sacrā longaevum in sēde locāvit.   525

ecce autem ēlāpsus Pyrrhī dē caede Polītēs,

ūnus nātōrum Priamī, per tēla, per hostīs

porticibus longīs fugit et vacua ātria lūstrat

saucius. illum ardēns īnfestō vulnere Pyrrhus

īnsequitur, iam iamque* manū tenet et premit hastā.   530

ut tandem ante oculōs ēvāsit et ōra parentum,

concidit ac multō vītam cum sanguine fūdit.

*iam iamque now all but . . .

adforet = adesset

adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus
be present

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire

ātrium, ātriī *n.* atrium, the main room of a
Roman house; *in sing. or pl.*, house, palace

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird, equip; **cingī**,
to gird oneself

concēdō (con- + cēdō) concede, grant; withdraw

concidō (con- + cadō), concidere, concidī, ——
fall down (in dying), fall dead

coniūnx, coniugis *m. or f.* spouse; husband; wife

dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris *m.* defender, protector

dīrus, -a, -um dire, dreadful, frightful

*effor (1-tr.) utter, say

egeō, egēre, eguī, —— lack, want, need (+ abl.)

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum slip out, steal away,
escape

ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus go out; emerge

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth,
shed

hasta, hastae *f.* spear

Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector, son of Priam

hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
drive, impel

īnfestus, -a, -um hostile

inquam (defective verb) say; **inquit** = *3rd sing.
pres. act. indic.*

īnsequor (in- + sequor) follow closely, pursue,
chase

iuvenālis, iuvenāle youthful

locō (1-tr.) place

longaevus, -a, -um of great age, ancient

lūstrō (1-tr.) roam through, traverse

ōs, ōris *n. in sing. or pl.*, mouth; face

parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent; **parentum**
= parentium

Polītēs, Polītis *m.* Polites, a son of Priam

porticus, porticūs *m.* covered walk, colonnade

premō, premere, pressī, pressus press hard,
overpower

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back, receive

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutūrus rush

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

saucius, -a, -um wounded

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat

simul (adv.) at the same time

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize;
take on, assume

tueor, tuērī, tuitus or tūtus sum look at; protect

vacuus, -a, -um empty

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.490–503

> Phoebus amat vīsaeque cupìt cōnūbia Daphnēs,   490
>
> quodque cupit, spērat, suaque illum ōrācula fallunt,
>
> utque levēs stipulae dēmptīs adolentur aristīs,
>
> ut facibus saepēs ardent, quās forte viātor
>
> vel nimis admōvit* vel iam sub lūce† relīquit,*
>
> sīc deus in flammās abiit, sīc pectore tōtō   495
>
> ūritur et sterilem spērandō nūtrit amōrem.
>
> spectat inornātōs collō pendēre capillōs
>
> et "quid sī cōmantur?" ait. videt igne micantēs
>
> sīderibus similēs oculōs, videt ōscula, quae nōn
>
> est vīdisse satis; laudat digitōsque manūsque   500
>
> bracchiaque et nūdōs mediā plūs parte lacertōs;
>
> sī quaǂ latent, meliōra putat. fugit ōcior aurā
>
> illa levī neque ad§ haec revocantis verba resistit:

*admōvit, relīquit, translate as present
†sub lūce near daylight, near dawn
ǂqua = *neut. nom. pl. of indef. pron.*, any things
§ad, *here,* at
admoveō (ad- + moveō) move near
adoleō, adolēre, ——, adultus burn (ritually); destroy by fire, burn
aiō (defective verb) say; ait = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage
arista, aristae *f.* beard of barley or corn; ear or spike (of a plant)
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
bracchium, bracchiī *n.* (lower) arm
capillus, capillī *m. in sing. or pl.* hair
collum, collī *n.* neck
cōmō, cōmere, cōmpsī, cōmptus make beautiful, adorn; do (hair)
cōnūbium, cōnūbiī *n. in sing. or pl.* marriage, marriage rites
Daphnē, Daphnēs *f.* Daphne; Daphnēs = *gen. sing.*
dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus remove, take way; cut off
digitus, digitī *m.* finger
fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus deceive, trick; fail
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch

flamma, flammae *f.* flame
inornātus, -a, -um unadorned, plain
lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm
lateō, latēre, latuī, —— hide, lie hidden, be concealed
micō (1-tr.) dart, flicker, flash
nimis (adv.) excessively, too
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude
nūtriō, nūtrīre, nūtrīvī or nūtriī, nūtrītus feed, nourish; encourage, foster
ōcior, ōcius more swift
ōrāculum, ōrāculī *n.* divine utterance, oracle
ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss; *in pl.,* lips
pendeō, pendēre, pependī, —— hang, be suspended
Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
resistō, resistere, restitī, —— halt, stop
revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, call back
saepēs, saepis *f.* (planted) hedge
sīdus, sīderis *n.* star
spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe
sterilis, sterile producing nothing; futile
stipula, stipulae *f.* stalk (of a plant)
ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn, scorch, inflame, consume
vel (conj.) or; vel ... vel ... either ... or ...
viātor, viātōris *m.* traveler

§130. Adverbs of Place

Vocabulary

eō (adv.) to that place, thither
eōdem (adv.) to the same place
hīc (adv.) here, in this place; at this time
hinc (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth
    hinc . . . hinc . . . on this side . . .
      on that side . . .
hūc (adv.) to here, hither
ibi (adv.) in that place, there; then,
    thereupon

illīc (adv.) there, in that place
illinc (adv.) from there, thence
    hinc . . . illinc . . . on this side . . .
      on that side . . .
illūc (adv.) to there, thither
inde (adv.) from that place, from there,
    thence; from that time, thereupon

MEMORIZE THESE VOCABULARY WORDS. Their meanings will not be given when they appear in the remainder of this book.

Certain common adverbs of place appear in these closely related forms:

Demonstrative	Interrogative/Relative
ibi there	
hīc here, in this place	ubi where
illīc there, in that place	
inde from there	
hinc from here, hence	unde from where, whence
illinc from there, thence	
eo to there	
eōdem to the same place	quo to where, whither
hūc to here, hither	
illūc to there, thither	

The adverbs in the column on the left are demonstrative because they point out a place *where, from where,* or *to where,* often in the answer to a question. The adverbs in the column on the right may be used either to ask questions (interrogative) or to correlate with corresponding demonstratives (relative) (cf. §124). For example:

Unde vēnistī?
Whence (From where) have you come? (interrogative)
Illinc vēnī unde pater quoque vēnit. (demonstrative/relative)
From there I have come *from where* my father also came.
I have come *from where* my father also came.
Ubi me stāre iubēbis, *ibi* manēbō. (relative/demonstrative)
Where me to stand you will order *there* I shall remain.
I shall remain *where* you will order me to stand.

OBSERVATION

An idiomatic English translation of a sentence containing both a demonstrative and relative adverb of place often omits the translation of the demonstrative adverb, as in the second translation above.

Short Readings

1. A freed prisoner of war agrees to help his present and former masters.

<div style="text-align:center">prō rotā mē ūtī licet:</div>

vel egō hūc vel illūc vortor quō imperābitis. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTĪVĪ* 369–70)

licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est it is permitted
rota, rotae *f.* wheel
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn

2. After revealing that Catiline's conspiracy is known to all, Cicero bids him depart.

quae* cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge quō coepistī: ēgredere aliquandō ex urbe;
patent portae: proficīscere. (CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM I* 10)

*quae, *connective relative*, and . . . these things
aliquandō (adv.) at long last
pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed
porta, portae *f.* gate

3. The poet addresses a collection of bad poetry that he is about to discard.

vōs hinc intereā valēte abīte
illūc, unde malum pedem attulistis. (CATULLUS XIV.21–22)

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring, convey
intereā (adv.) meanwhile
pēs, pedis *m.* foot

4. After a detour to tend to ships damaged in a storm, Caesar resumes his pursuit of the Britons.

ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* V.11)

CHAPTER XIV

Vocabulary

lūna, lūnae *f.* moon

➤ aetās, aetātis *f.* age; lifetime; time
➤ agmen, agminis *n.* line (of march), column; army; multitude, throng
auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority; influence
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
ōs, ōris *n. in sing. or pl.* mouth; face
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun

➤ aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything
➤ aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) some, any
➤ quis, quid (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything
➤ quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) some, any
➤ quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything
➤ quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) each *or* every man *or* woman, each *or* every thing
➤ quīque, quaeque, quodque (indef. adj.) each, every

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe

➤ accidō, accidere, accidī, —— happen
➤ efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus make; bring about
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread
➤ occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus fall, set; die
➤ premō, premere, pressī, pressus press (hard); overpower; check

➤ opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press on; close; overwhelm, oppress

➤ orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise, arise

➤ absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus be absent, be distant
➤ adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present, be near
➤ cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus bring together, collect; compare; direct; confer (on)
➤ licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est it is permitted (§135)
➤ oportet, oportēre, oportuit it is proper, it is right (§135)

➤ cūnctus, -a, -um all
➤ reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

absēns, absentis absent
➤ vetus, veteris old

➤ necesse (indecl. adj.) necessary (§135)

adeō (adv.) to such *or* so great an extent, (so) very
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
➤ quodsī (conj.) but if
➤ vel (conj.) or;
(adv.) even
vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

Vocabulary Notes

aetās, aetātis *f.* may mean "age" in the sense of the number of years one has lived or in the sense of the "age" or "period" in which one lives. It may also refer to: 1. the "lifetime" of a human being; 2. a particular "time of life" (old age, youth); or 3. "time."

agmen, agminis *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix -men to a stem of the verb agō, and its most general meaning is "a thing being driven." Agmen may be used of any "mass" of things (water, clouds, etc.) or of a "throng" or "body" of people moving or acting together. It may also carry a more specifically military sense, "(battle-)line" or "column" of troops, both on the march and drawn up for battle.

aliquis, aliquid is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite prefix ali- to quis, quid. Its declension is identical with that of quis, quid. Its corresponding adjective is aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, whose declension is identical with that of quī, quae, quod *except* for the feminine singular nominative (aliqua). MEM-ORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM AS PART OF THE VOCABULARY ENTRY.

> *Aliquem* in forō vidī.   I saw *someone* in the forum. (indef. pron.)
> Dōnō *aliquō* dōnāberis.   You will be presented with *some* gift. (indef. adj.)

The use of the indefinite pronoun quis, quid is *limited to subordinate clauses* in which this pronoun follows such conjunctions as sī, nisi, num, nē, ut, and cum. Its corresponding adjective is quī, qua, quod, whose declension is identical with that of quī, quae, quod *except* for the feminine singular nominative (qua) and the neuter plural nominative or accusative (qua or, less commonly, quae). MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

> Sī *quis* mē vocet, veniam.   If *anyone* should call me, I would come. (indef. pron.)
> Sī virum *quem* amās, dīc mihī.   If you love *any* man, tell me. (indef. adj.)

quisquam, quicquam is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite suffix -quam to quis, quid. Its declension is identical with that of quis, quid *except* for the *assimilated* neuter singular nominative or accusative (quicquam). The unassimilated form quidquam appears rarely. The corresponding indefinite adjective for quisquam, quicquam is supplied by ūllus, -a, -um.

quisquam, quicquam is used primarily in sentences *containing or implying negation*.

> Nōn *quicquam* tam miserum audīvī.   I have not heard *anything* so wretched. (indef. pron.)
> Estne *quisquam* quī Catilīnae crēdat? Is there *anyone* of the sort who trusts Catiline? (indef. pron.)

In the second sentence the use of quisquam implies that *no one* trusts Catiline.

quisque, quidque (quicque) is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite suffix -que to quis, quid. Its declension is identical with that of quis, quid *except* for the alternate *assimilated* neuter singular nominative or accusative, quicque. Its corresponding adjective is quīque, quaeque, quodque, whose declension is identical with quī, quae, quod.

quisque is often used with and placed immediately after the third-person reflexive pronoun ——, suī or the reflexive-possessive adjective suus, -a, -um.

> Sua cuique satis placēbant.   His *own things* were pleasing enough *to each man*.

When quisque appears in such sentences, the reflexive pronoun or reflexive-possessive adjective refers to the indefinite pronoun.

When quisque appears in the singular or plural with a superlative adjective, the resulting phrase may be translated into English with the plural and the English word "all."

> optimus quisque   each best man *or all the best men*
> antiquissima quaeque   all the oldest things

accidō, accidere, accidī, —— is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ad- to cadō, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix ad- see Appendix P.) Accidō is often used impersonally and may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference. For its use with Substantive Ut clauses see §133.

efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ex- to faciō. (For the prefix ex- see Appendix P.) For its use with Substantive Ut clauses see §133.

occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ob- to cadō, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix ob- see Appendix P.) While occidō may be used of any person or thing that falls, it is commonly used to mean "fall (into grief)," "be ruined," "die" (when the subject is a person), or "set" or "sink" (when the subject is a heavenly body). The present active participle of occidō—occidēns, occidentis, "setting"—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the "west" as a direction or as a part of the known world.

premō, premere, pressī, pressus is used in a wide variety of contexts and may be translated by a number of English equivalents. Premō may mean "press" in the sense of "exert pressure on" (inanimate objects, parts of the body). It may mean "press (hard)" in the sense of "propel," "drive," or "attack" (spears, people). It may also mean "overpower, overwhelm" (enemies, ships) or "overshadow," "cover" (often used of the sun or moon covered over by clouds or shadows). Finally, it may mean "check," "suppress," or "stop" (bodies of water, actions, voices).

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ob- to premō, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix ob- see Appendix P.) Its meanings and uses are similar to those of the simple verb **premō**. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **PREMŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **OPPRIMŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **PREMŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum is a fourth-conjugation, intransitive deponent verb. It may be used of heavenly bodies and mean "rise," or it may mean more generally "arise" or "come into being." In the present indicative it is usually conjugated as a *third*-conjugation i-stem verb (e.g., oritur, *not* orītur). Orior has an irregular future active participle: oritūrus, -a, -um (cf. moritūrus, -a, -um). MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM. The present active participle of orior—oriēns, orientis, "rising"—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the "east" as a direction or as a part of the known world. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM ORIOR DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ab- to sum. (For the prefix ab- see Appendix P.)

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ad- to sum. (For the prefix ad- see Appendix P.) Adsum often appears with a Dative with a Compound Verb. In legal contexts adsum may mean "be present as an advocate (for)." When the subject is a divinity, it may mean "be favorable (to)."

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix con- to ferō. (For the prefix con- see Appendix P.) The idiom sē cōnferre means "betake oneself," "go."

For the third person singular forms that appear in the principal parts of impersonal verbs, such as *licet*, licēre, *licuit* or *licitum est* and *oportet*, oportēre, *oportuit* see §135. Many impersonal verbs have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives (see §59).

The verb licet indicates what is legal or permitted. The verb oportet indicates what is proper or necessary in accordance with one's duty. necesse est means "it is necessary" in the sense of "it is compulsory."

cūnctus, -a, -um is a synonym of omnis, omne, but contains more of an idea of "all (joined) together." Cūnctus, -a, -um is more commonly found in the plural.

The adjective reliquus, -a, -um is related to the verb relinquō. It often refers to the remaining portion of things or people left over after certain things or people have been mentioned. It may often be translated "rest of."

Rēgīna *reliquam vītam* bene aget.   The queen will conduct *the rest of (her) life* well.

vetus, veteris means "old" as opposed to "young," and "old" or "experienced" as opposed to "new." Less commonly, vetus is synonymous with antīquus, -a, -um and means "old" in the sense of "of an earlier or ancient time." The ablative singular form is *usually* vetere. Vetus has an irregular superlative form: veterrimus, -a, -um. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS. The comparative forms of vetus are extremely rare.

The conjunction quodsī (sometimes written as two words, quod sī) is formed from the Adverbial Accusative of the relative pronoun quod (to the extent of which, as to which) and the conjunction sī. It nearly always has adversative force and is best translated "but if."

The conjunction vel is used to mark an indifferent choice and thus should be distinguished from aut, which indicates mutually exclusive propositions.

Vel telō *vel* ferrō pugnābō.   I shall fight *either* with a spear or with a sword.

	Derivatives	**Cognates**
accidō	accident	
aetās	age; coetaneous	eternal; aught; ever; aye; longevity; medieval; eon
licet	illicit	
necesse	necessary	cēdō
nōmen	nominate; noun; nomenclature	pseudonym; onomatopoeia; patronymic; synonymous
occidō	occident; occasion	
orior	orient; origin; abort	hormone; are; earnest
ōs	oral; oscillate; ostiary; orifice	
premō	reprimand; pressure; print	
sōl	solar; solarium; parasol; solstice	sun; south
spectō	aspect; speculum; spectrum	spy; espionage; telescope; episcopal
vetus	veteran; inveterate; veterinary	etesian

§131. Result Clauses

In both English and Latin, the result of an action is reported in a subordinate clause called a **Result clause**. A result may be understood as an event *likely* to follow upon the action of the main verb *or* as an event *actually occurring* or *actually having occurred*. In English, a result clause is introduced by the conjunction "that." In Latin, Result clauses are introduced by the conjunction **ut** and have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence. For example:

> Tam honestus est *ut eī crēdās.* (likely result)
> So honorable is he *(with the result) that him you would trust.*
> He is so honorable *(with the result) that you would trust him.*
> Ita dīxerat *ut sententiam intellegerem.* (actual result)
> In such a way she had spoken *that (her) opinion (I do) I understood.*
> She had spoken in such a way *(with the result) that I understood her opinion.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. Result clauses began as independent sentences whose verbs were Potential subjunctives. For example:

> Eī crēdās. Tam honestus est.   You would trust him. He is so honorable.

Such a paratactic arrangement of two thoughts easily became one sentence: Tam honestus est ut eī crēdās (He is so honorable that you would trust him.). By the classical period, *both likely and actual* Result clauses had their verbs in the subjunctive mood, a reflection of the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.

2. Result clauses are negated by ut . . . nōn . . ., ut . . . nēmō . . ., ut . . . numquam . . ., etc. They are *not* negated by nē.

3. The syntax of, for example, **intellegerem**, is **imperfect subjunctive, Result clause, secondary sequence.**

4. For a Result clause that reports a *likely* result, as in the first sentence above, the subjunctive verb is translated with the English word "would." For a Result clause that reports an *actual* result, as in the second sentence, the subjunctive verb is translated as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

Result clauses are usually *signaled* by an *adverb or adjective of degree* in the main clause. Such words include:

> adeō (adv.) to such an extent
> ita   tālis, tāle
> sīc   tantus, -a, -um
> tam   tot

OBSERVATION

Occasionally a demonstrative such as hic, iste, ille, or is signals a Result clause and should be translated "such (a)."

When an actual result is reported in past time, a *perfect subjunctive that breaks the rules of sequence* may be used, perhaps to emphasize the actual completion of the action. For example:

> Ita dīxerat *ut sententiam intellēxerim.*
> She had spoken in such a way *that I actually understood her opinion.*

§132. Relative Clauses of Result

A blend of the idea of a Result clause with the idea of a Relative Clause of Characteristic (see §93) is called a **Relative Clause of Result**, in which *both* ideas are present. For example:

> Quis est tam fortis *quī sine armīs pugnet?*
> Who is of so brave a sort *who without arms fights?*
> Who is so brave *that he would fight without arms?*
> Nihil est tam difficile *quīn intellegī possit.*
> Nothing is of so difficult a sort *that to be understood it is not able.*
> Nothing is so difficult *that it is not able to be understood.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. In each sentence the word **tam** signals a Result clause, but the word **quī/quīn** instead of ut introduces a *Relative* Clause of Result. Each relative clause expresses an event that would *potentially or characteristically result* from the main clause.

2. In the second sentence, **quīn** is used to introduce a negative Relative Clause of Result. Compare this use of **quīn** to its use in Relative Clauses of Characteristic (§93).

3. The syntax of, for example, **pugnet**, is present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Result, primary sequence.

4. The second translations given above, in which the relative pronoun is replaced in English by "that . . . he/it . . .," are to be preferred for clarity and simplicity. In addition, the English word "would" may be used in translating the subjunctive verb in a Relative Clause of Result, or the subjunctive verb may be translated as an indicative.

§133. Substantive *Ut* Clauses

A Result clause is an *adverbial clause* that modifies the action of the main verb as a whole (cf. Purpose clauses). Certain verbs and verb phrases appear with *noun clauses* called **Substantive Ut clauses**, which function as either subjects or direct objects (cf. Indirect Commands).[1] Some common expressions that introduce Substantive Ut clauses are:

accidit	it happens	(accidō, accidere, accidī, ——— happen)
fit	it happens	
fierī potest	it is able to happen	it is possible
efficere	to bring it about	(efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus bring about)
facere	to bring it about	to see to it

OBSERVATION

The first three verbal expressions introduce subject clauses. The latter two introduce object clauses.

---

1. These noun clauses are sometimes known as **Substantive Clauses of Result**.

Substantive Ut clauses are negated by **ut . . . nōn, ut . . . nēmō**, etc. **Nē** *may* be used when a command or exhortation is being expressed. For example:

> Accidit *ut* Caesar cōpiās per prōvinciam *dūceret.*
> It happened *that* Caesar (his) troops (d.o.) through the province *was leading.*
> It happened *that* Caesar *was leading* his troops through the province.
> Efficiam *ut* cīvēs inter sē *nōn pugnent.*
> I shall bring it about *that* the citizens among themselves *not fight.*
> I shall bring it about *that* the citizens *not fight* among themselves.
> Facite *ne* sociōs *relinquātis,* ō mīlitēs.
> See to it *that* the allies (d.o.) *you not abandon,* o soldiers.
> See to it *that you not abandon* the allies, o soldiers.

<u>OBSERVATIONS</u>

1. Substantive Ut clauses always have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

2. In the first sentence the clause ut . . . dūceret functions as the *subject* of the verb accidit. The entire subject clause is *what* "happened." The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this subject clause.

3. In the second sentence the clause ut . . . pugnent functions as the *direct object* of the verb efficiam. The entire object clause is *what* "I shall bring about." The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this object clause.

4. In the third sentence the Substantive Ut clause is introduced by nē because the equivalent of a negative Indirect Command is being expressed.

5. The syntax of, for example, dūceret, is imperfect subjunctive, Substantive Ut clause, secondary sequence.

☛ DRILL 131–133 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§134. *Fore ut* Construction

When a future passive verb is to be expressed in Indirect Statement, a periphrasis[2] is commonly used instead of the rare future passive infinitive.[3] This periphrasis employs the future active infinitive of the verb **sum (fore, futūrum esse)** and a Substantive Ut clause with a verb in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence. The same construction is used when a future active verb that lacks a fourth principal part is expressed in Indirect Statement. For example:

> Caesar dīcit *fore ut* bellum mox *cōnficiātur.*
> Caesar says *that it will be that* the war *be completed* soon.
> Caesar says *that the war will be completed* soon.
> Spērābāmus *futūrum esse ut* Caesar bellum mox *cōnficere posset.*
> We were hoping *that it would be that* Caesar the war (d.o.) soon to complete *be able.*
> We were hoping *that Caesar would be able* to complete the war soon.

---

2. A **periphrasis** (< Greek *periphrazō*, speak around) is a roundabout way of saying something, a circumlocution (< circumlocūtiō, speaking around).

3. For the formation of the future passive infinitive see §142, n. 4.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The noun clause introduced by ut in each sentence functions as the *subject* of the infinitive fore or futūrum esse in Indirect Statement. The -um ending on futūrum is neuter singular accusative to agree with the subject clause. The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this subject clause.

2. Substantive Ut clauses following fore and futūrum esse are negated by ut . . . nōn, ut . . . nēmō, etc.

3. The syntax of, for example, posset is imperfect subjunctive, Substantive Ut clause in a fore ut construction, secondary sequence.

4. The second translations given above are to be preferred because they combine the future tense expressed in the infinitives with the actions expressed in the subjunctive verbs. In primary sequence the word "will" and in secondary sequence the word "would" are used.

☛ DRILL 134 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§135. Impersonal Constructions I: *licet, necesse est*, and *oportet*

An **impersonal verb** is a verb that does not have a personal subject (cf. §59). Certain impersonal verbs that express ideas of *permission, necessity,* or *propriety* have forms in the third person singular, the infinitive, and (less commonly) the perfect passive participle. Three such verbs are:

> licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est it is allowed, it is permitted
> necesse est it is necessary
> oportet, oportēre, oportuit it is proper, it is right

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first and third principal parts of licet and oportet are given in the *third person singular* because impersonal verbs appear in that person and number *only*. Licet has an alternate third principal part, licitum est, formed as an impersonal passive.

2. Necesse est is actually a compound of the indeclinable neuter singular adjective necesse (functioning as a predicate adjective) and a form of the verb sum. The form of sum may be any third person singular form (necesse erat, necesse sit, etc.) or an infinitive (necesse esse).

These three impersonal verbs frequently appear with a Subject Infinitive (see §27), which may have an expressed Subject Accusative (see §107). For example:

> Licet in urbe manēre. (Subject Infinitive)
> It is permitted to remain in the city.
> Necesse est eōs in urbe manēre. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
> It is necessary for them to remain in the city.
> It is necessary that they remain in the city.
> Oportēbat eōs in urbe manēre. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
> It was proper for them to remain in the city.
> It was proper that they remain in the city.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences the syntax of **manēre** is Subject Infinitive. In the second and third sentences the syntax of **eōs** is Subject Accusative.

2. In each translation given above the English word "it" merely anticipates and refers to the Subject Infinitive. The first sentence, for example, may also be translated "To remain in the city is permitted."

Licet and **necesse est** may also appear with a Dative of Reference and a Subject Infinitive. For example:

> Liceat *eis* in urbe *manēre*.   Let it be permitted *for them to remain* in the city.
> *Eis* necesse erat in urbe *manēre*.   It was necessary *for them to remain* in the city.

OBSERVATION

The Dative of Reference that may appear with **licet** or **necesse est** expresses the *person to whom* an action is permitted or *for whom* an action is necessary. When a Subject Accusative—rather than a Dative of Reference—appears with **licet** and **necesse est**, it expresses the *subject* of the infinitive.

Licet, necesse est, and **oportet** also frequently appear with a Jussive subjunctive in parataxis.[4] For example:

> Iūs *valeat* necesse est.   *Let* right *be strong* it is necessary.
>   It is necessary *that right be strong.*
> Nōlī fugere: mēcum *moriāris* oportet.   Do not flee: with me *die* it is proper.
>   Do not flee: it is proper *that you die* with me.

OBSERVATION

In these sentences two verbs stand paratactically with no subordination. The second English translations, which include the addition of the English conjunction "that" and make use of the English present subjunctive, are to be preferred for clarity.

☛ DRILL 135 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§136. Genitive of Characteristic

The Genitive of Possession is sometimes extended to express the person to whom a certain *characteristic* belongs. When this occurs, the genitive is called the **Genitive of Characteristic.**[5] For example:

> Sapientis est pācem petere.   *Of a wise person* it is peace (d.o.) to seek.
>   To seek peace is *characteristic of a wise person.*

The syntax of the italicized word (**sapientis**) is **Genitive of Characteristic.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Genitive of Characteristic is often well translated with the addition of the word "characteristic" before the "of."

2. Subject Infinitives frequently appear in combination with Genitives of Characteristic.

3. Because the genitives of personal pronouns can be Partitive or Objective Genitive *only*, the possessive adjectives are often used to express an idea similar to the Genitive of Characteristic. For example:

> Nōn est fugere meum.   To flee is not *my thing.*
>   To flee is not *characteristic of me.*

---

4. Very rarely a Substantive Ut clause may appear as the subject of these impersonal verbs.

5. The Genitive of Characteristic is also known as the Predicate Genitive.

Short Readings

1. A fragment from the poet Naevius

    patī necesse est multa mortālēs mala. (NAEVIUS, *PALLIĀTAE* FRAG. 106)

mortālis, mortāle mortal

2. Pseudolus, a crafty slave, criticizes Ballio, a pimp who worships only money.

    deōs quidem, quōs maxumē aequom est metuere, eōs minimī facit.*

    (PLAUTUS, *PSEUDOLUS* 269)

*facit, subject is Ballio

3. A fragment from the poet Ennius

    quem metuunt ōdērunt; quem quisque ōdit periisse expetit.

    (ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 348)

expetō (ex- + petō) ask for; desire

4. The character Hegio utters a truism.

    quot hominēs tot sententiae: suos quoique mōs. (TERENCE, *PHORMIŌ* 454)

5. Later writers often cite this fragment spoken by Atreus in a tragedy of the poet Accius. Sue-
    tonius reports that Caligula said it about his subjects.

    ōderint dum metuant. (ACCIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 204)

6. A fragment from the satirist

    hominī amīcō et familiārī nōn est mentīrī meum. (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE* FRAG. 953)

familiāris, familiāre of one's household; of one's family
mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum lie, tell a lie

7. The twenty-five-year-old Cicero explains why he believes he will win his case.

    nōn enim, quem ad modum* putātis, omnia sunt in ēloquentiā; est quaedam tamen

    ita perspicua vēritās ut eam īnfirmāre nūlla rēs possit. (CICERO, *PRŌ QUĪNCTIŌ* 80)

*quem ad modum (rel. adv.) in what way, as
ēloquentia, ēloquentiae f. eloquence; rhetoric
īnfirmō (1-tr.) weaken; lessen; refute
perspicuus, -a, -um clearly visible, plain, self-evident
vēritās, vēritātis f. truth

8. Cicero reflects on why men turn to crime.

L. Cassius ille, quem populus Rōmānus vērissimum et sapientissimum iūdicem putābat, identidem in causīs quaerere solēbat cui bonō fuisset.* sīc vīta hominum est ut ad maleficium nēmō cōnētur sine spē atque ēmolumentō accēdere.

(CICERO, *PRŌ S. ROSCIŌ AMERĪNŌ* 84)

*fuisset, subject is any particular crime
L. Cassius, L. Cassiī *m*. L. Cassius
ēmolumentum, ēmolumentī *n*. benefit,
   advantage

identidem (adv.) again and again, repeatedly
iūdex, iūdicis *m*. juror, judge
maleficium, maleficiī *n*. misdeed, crime

9. Cicero reproaches Verres directly for having attempted to deprive an upstanding Roman citizen in Sicily of his rights.

homō āmentissime, quid putāstī? impetrātūrum tē? quantī is ā cīvibus suīs fieret,

quantī auctōritās eius habērētur ignōrābās? (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 4.19)

āmēns, āmentis demented, insane
ignōrō (1-tr.) be ignorant, be unaware (of)
impetrō (1-tr.) obtain; succeed

10. After describing another incident in which Verres degraded the local nobility of Sicily, Cicero asks Verres a rhetorical question.

quis tam fuit illō tempore ferreus, quis tam inhūmānus praeter ūnum tē, quī nōn

illōrum aetāte, nōbilitāte, miseriā commovērētur? (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 5.121)

commoveō (con- + moveō) move
ferreus, -a, -um made of iron; hard-hearted, unfeeling
inhūmānus, -a, -um inhumane
miseria, miseriae *f*. misery
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis *f*. renown, nobility, excellence

11. Addressing the Roman people, Cicero summarizes the effects of the *Lēx Gabīnia* (67 B.C.E.), which gave Pompey plenary powers to wipe out piracy in the Mediterranean sea.

itaque ūna lēx, ūnus vir, ūnus annus nōn modo vōs illā miseriā ac turpitūdine līber-

āvit sed etiam effēcit ut aliquandō vērē vidērēminī omnibus gentibus ac nātiōnibus

terrā marīque imperāre. (CICERO, *DĒ LĒGE MĀNĪLIĀ* 56)

aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally; at long last
miseria, miseriae *f*. misery
nātiō, nātiōnis *f*. nation
turpitūdō, turpitūdinis *f*. ugliness; shamefulness, baseness

12. Cicero pays Q. Catulus a great compliment—before proceeding to disagree with him strongly.

etenim tālis est vir ut nūlla res tanta sit ac tam difficilis quam ille nōn et cōnsiliō

regere et integritāte tuērī et virtūte cōnficere possit. (CICERO, *DĒ LĒGE MĀNĪLIĀ* 59)

integritās, integritātis *f*. moral uprightness, integrity
tueor, tuērī, tuitus or tūtus sum look at; protect, attend to

13. Cicero recalls an older, sterner morality.

> fuit, fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs ut virī fortēs ācriōribus suppliciīs
>
> cīvem perniciōsum quam acerbissimum hostem coërcērent.

(CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM I* 3)

coërceō, coërcēre, coërcuī, coërcitus restrain, check, suppress
perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive
quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly
supplicium, suppliciī *n.* punishment

14. Cicero characterizes Catiline derisively.

> neque enim is es, Catilīna, ut tē aut pudor umquam ā turpitūdine aut metus ā
>
> perīculō aut ratiō ā furōre revocārit. (CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM I* 22)

furor, furōris *m.* madness
pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; rationality
revocō (1-tr.) call back
turpitūdō, turpitūdinis *f.* ugliness; shamefulness, baseness

15. At the very time of the Catilinarian conspiracy, Cicero pleads directly to Cato, one of the
    most important men behind the accusation of election fraud against Murena.

> hīs tantīs in rēbus tantīsque in perīculīs est tuum, M. Catō, quī mihi nōn tibi, sed
>
> patriae nātus esse vidēris, vidēre quid agātur, retinēre adiūtōrem, dēfēnsōrem, so-
>
> cium in rē pūblicā, cōnsulem nōn cupidum, cōnsulem—quod maximē tempus hoc
>
> postulat—fortūnā cōnstitūtum ad amplexandum ōtium, scientiā ad bellum geren-
>
> dum, animō et ūsū ad quod velīs negōtium sustinendum. (CICERO, *PRŌ MURĒNĀ* 83)

adiūtor, adiūtōris *m.* helper, supporter
amplexor (1-tr.) embrace; value, esteem
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus set
  up, establish; prepare
dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris *m.* protector, defender
negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business
ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure; peace

postulō (1-tr.) demand
retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus
  keep hold of, retain; uphold, preserve
scientia, scientiae *f.* knowledge
sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinuī,
  —— withstand; support, sustain
ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience

16. Cicero makes a clever observation to bolster his point about the importance of praise.

> trahimur omnēs studiō laudis, et optimus quisque maximē glōriā dūcitur. ipsī illī
>
> philosophī etiam in eīs libellīs quōs dē contemnendā glōriā scrībunt nōmen suum
>
> īnscrībunt . . . (CICERO, *PRŌ ARCHIĀ* 26)

contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus
  regard with contempt, scorn, disregard
īnscrībō (in- + scrībō) inscribe
laus, laudis *f.* praise

libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book
philosophus, philosophī *m.* philosopher
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag

17. In the opening of his defense of Sestius, Cicero expresses to the jury his outrage at his opponents' strategy.

... per vōs nōbīs, per optimōs virōs optimīs cīvibus perīculum īnferre cōnantur, et quōs lapidibus, quōs ferrō, quōs facibus, quōs vī, manū, cōpiīs dēlēre nōn potuērunt, hōs vestrā auctōritāte, vestrā religiōne, vestrīs sententiīs sē oppressūrōs arbitrantur. (CICERO, *PRŌ SESTIŌ* 2)

fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch
lapis, lapidis *m.* stone
religiō, religiōnis *f.* religious constraint *or* fear; religious observance; sanctity, scruple

18. Cicero praises Milo's belief that life and freedom must be defended—even with arms.

hoc* sentīre prūdentiae est, facere fortitūdinis; et sentīre vērō et facere perfectae† cumulātaeque virtūtis. (CICERO, *PRŌ SESTIŌ* 86)

*hoc, refers to Milo's belief
†perfectus, -a, -um perfect
cumulātus, -a, -um heaped up; vast, abundant
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude
prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence

19. Cicero distinguishes between what is proper and what is permitted.

est enim aliquid quod nōn oporteat etiam sī licet; quicquid vērō nōn licet, certē nōn oportet. (CICERO, *PRŌ BALBŌ* 8)

quisquis, quidquid or quicquid (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

20. Marcus and Quintus conclude an exchange about the importance of law.

Marcus. Lēge autem carēns cīvitās estne ob id ipsum habenda nūllō locō?

Quintus. Dīcī aliter nōn potest.

Marcus. Necesse est igitur lēgem habērī in rēbus optimīs.

Quintus. Prorsus adsentior. (CICERO, *DĒ LĒGIBUS* II.12)

adsentior, adsentīrī, adsēnsus sum agree
aliter (adv.) in another way, differently, otherwise
prorsus (adv.) thoroughly, in every respect, altogether

21. Cicero singles out Ser. Sulpicius Galba among a group of orators better at public speaking than at recording and refining their speeches in writing. He explains why this may be so.

quem* fortasse vīs nōn ingenī sōlum sed etiam animī et nātūrālis quīdam dolor dīcentem incendēbat efficiēbatque ut et incitāta et gravis et vehemēns esset ōrātiō.

(CICERO, *BRŪTUS* 93)

*quem, connective relative; antecedent is Galba
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain; indignation
fortasse (adv.) perhaps
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus set on fire; inflame, provoke

incitātus, -a, -um rushing; excited, intense
nātūrālis, nātūrāle natural
vehemēns, vehementis energetic, vigorous, powerful

22. Cicero praises the power of rhetoric.

sed nihil est tam incrēdibile quod nōn dīcendō fīat probābile, nihil tam horridum,

tam incultum, quod nōn splendēscat ōrātiōne et tamquam excolātur.

(CICERO, *PARADOXA STŌICŌRUM* PREFACE 3)

excolō, excolere, excoluī, excultus cultivate,
   improve, develop, decorate
horridus, -a, -um rough; rude, uncouth
incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable
incultus, -a, -um not cultivated, unadorned,
   lacking in refinement

probābilis, probābile acceptable, plausible,
   credible
splendēscō, splendēscere, ——, —— become
   bright, begin to shine
tamquam (conj.) as it were, so to speak

23. Cicero defines some important moral terms.

quicquid nōn oportet, scelus esse, quicquid nōn licet, nefās putāre dēbēmus.

(CICERO, *PARADOXA STŌICŌRUM* 3.25)

quisquis, quidquid or quicquid (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

24. An opinion about love

tōtus vērō iste quī volgō appellātur amor—nec hercule inveniō quō nōmine aliō

possit appellārī—tantae levitātis est ut nihil videam quod putem cōnferendum.

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNĒS* IV.38)

appellō (1-tr.) name, call
levitās, levitātis *f.* lack of weight, lightness; unreliability, shallowness
volgō (adv.) publicly; commonly

25. What makes a man great?

nēmō igitur vir magnus sine aliquō adflātū dīvīnō umquam fuit.

(CICERO, *DĒ NĀTŪRĀ DEŌRUM* II.167)

adflātus, adflātūs *m.* breath; inspiration

26. Having observed the nearly universal belief in the art of divination, Cicero's brother asks
whether there will ever be an end to doubt on the subject.

an* dum bestiae loquantur exspectāmus, hominum cōnsentiente auctōritāte

contentī nōn sumus? (CICERO, *DĒ DĪVINĀTIŌNE* I.84)

*an, *here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer,* can it really be
   that . . .
bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal
cōnsentiō (con- + sentiō) be in agreement, concur
contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied

27. The character Cato insists that the length of life is unimportant.

breve enim tempus aetātis satis longum est ad bene honestēque vīvendum.

(CICERO, *DĒ SENECTŪTE* 70)

28. A reflection on the human soul

atque etiam cum hominis nātūra morte dissolvitur, cēterārum rērum perspicuum

est quō quaeque discēdat; abeunt enim illūc omnia unde orta sunt, animus autem

sōlus nec cum adest nec cum discessit, appāret. iam vērō vidētis nihil esse mortī tam

simile quam somnum. (Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 80)

appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritus be visible, be clear; appear, become evident
dissolvō, dissolvere, dissolvī, dissolūtus undo, dissolve; set free
perspicuus, -a, -um clearly visible, plain, self-evident
somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

29. What value does Cicero place on farming?

omnium autem rērum ex quibus aliquid adquīritur nihil est agrī cultūrā melius,

nihil ūberius, nihil dulcius, nihil homine, nihil līberō dignius.

(Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* I.151)

adquīrō (ad- + quaerō), adquīrere, adquīsiī or adquīsīvī, adquīsītus add to one's possessions, acquire
cultūra, cultūrae *f.* cultivation
dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant
ūber, ūberis rich, fertile

30. A rhetorical question about the limits to profit seeking

est ergō ūlla rēs tantī aut commodum ūllum tam expetendum ut virī bonī et

splendōrem et nōmen āmittās? (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* III.82)

āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose, let go
commodum, commodī *n.* advantage, benefit
ergō (adv.) therefore
expetō (ex- + petō) ask for, seek; desire
splendor, splendōris *m.* brightness, radiance, glory

31. In the first of his *Philippics* Cicero declares his resolve to speak his mind no matter the danger.

quid? dē reliquīs reī pūblicae malīs licetne dīcere? mihi vērō licet et semper licēbit

dignitātem tuērī, mortem contemnere. potestās modo veniendī in hunc locum* sit,

dīcendī perīculum nōn recūsō. (Cicero, *Philippics I* 14)

*hunc locum, *i.e.*, the senate house
contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus
  regard with contempt; pay no heed to,
  disregard

dignitās, dignitātis *f.* rank, status, dignity
potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power
recūsō (1-tr.) decline, reject, refuse to accept
tueor, tuērī, tuitus or tūtus sum look at; protect

32. Cicero speaks after a scheduled embassy to Antony has been canceled. In an imagined debate, Cicero explains why he approves of the decision to cancel it.

cuiusvīs hominis est errāre; nūllīus nisi īnsipientis persevērāre in errōre; posteriōrēs enim cōgitātiōnēs, ut aiunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse. (Cicero, *Philippics XII* 5)

aiō (defective verb) say; aiunt = *3rd pl. pres. act. indic.*
cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis *f.* thought
error, errōris *m.* mistake, error
īnsipiēns, īnsipientis unwise, foolish

persevērō (1-intr.) persist, persevere
posterior, posterius later
quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs (indef. adj.) any . . . you wish, any . . . at all

33. In the context of thinking about pernicious citizens and civil war, Cicero poses a theoretical question.

sed hoc prīmum videndum est, patrēs cōnscrīptī, cum omnibusne pāx esse possit an sit aliquod bellum inexpiābile, in quō pactiō pācis lēx sit servitūtis.

(Cicero, *Philippics XIII* 2)

inexpiābilis, inexpiābile that cannot be atoned for, that cannot be appeased
pactiō, pactiōnis *f.* agreement, arrangement

34. Immediately after his recall from exile Cicero asks Atticus to come to Rome to visit and advise him. The orator expresses concern about his own future.

tē exspectō et ōrō ut mātūrēs venīre eōque animō veniās ut mē tuō cōnsiliō egēre nōn sinās. alterīus vītae quoddam initium ordīmur. iam quīdam quī nōs* absentīs dēfendērunt incipiunt praesentibus occultē īrāscī, apertē invidēre.

(Cicero, *Ad Atticum* IV.1.8)

*nōs refers to Cicero.
apertē (adv.) openly
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus defend
egeō, egēre, eguī, —— need, lack; be without (+ abl.)
initium, initiī *n.* beginning
invideō (in- + videō) envy; regard with ill will (+ dat.)

īrāscor, īrāscī, ——, —— become angry
mātūrō (1-intr.) make haste, hurry (+ inf.)
occultē (adv.) secretly
ordior, ordīrī, orsus sum embark on, commence
praesēns, praesentis present
sinō, sinere, siī or sīvī, situs allow, permit

35. Cicero describes to Atticus his sense of alienation and despair once Pompey has fled to the East.

alia rēs nunc tōta est, alia mēns mea. sōl, ut est in tuā quādam epistulā, excidisse mihi ē mundō vidētur. ut aegrōtō, dum anima est, spēs esse dīcitur, sīc ego, quoad Pompeius in Italiā fuit, spērare nōn dēstitī. (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* IX.10.3)

aegrōtus, -a, -um ill, sick
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, —— cease
epistula, epistulae *f.* letter

excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidī, —— fall (out)
mundus, mundī *m.* world; sky
quoad (conj.) as long as, while

36. The beginning of a letter of Caesar to Cicero, quoted in a letter of Cicero to Atticus

rēctē augurāris dē mē (bene enim tibi* cognitus sum) nihil ā mē abesse longius

crūdēlitāte. atque ego cum ex ipsā rē magnam capiō voluptātem tum meum factum

probārī abs tē triumphō gaudiō. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* IX.16.1)

*tibi Dative of Agent	probō (1-tr.) approve of
abs = ab	rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly
auguror (1-tr.) foretell, predict; surmise	triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph; (tr.) exult
crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis *f.* cruelty	(+ Indirect Statement)
gaudium, gaudiī *n.* joy	voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

37. Cicero informs his friend M. Marcellus about the limits on speech and action in the present state of the republic.

at tibi ipsī dīcendum erit aliquid quod nōn sentiās aut faciendum quod nōn probēs.

prīmum temporī* cēdere, id est necessitātī pārēre, semper sapientis est habitum.

(CICERO, *AD FAMILIĀRĒS* IV.9.2)

*tempus, *here,* occasion, circumstance
at (conj.) but
necessitās, necessitātis *f.* necessity
probō (1-tr.) approve of

38. A witticism from Varro

postrēmō nēmō aegrōtus quicquam somniat tam īnfandum quod nōn aliquis* dīcat

philosophus. (VARRO, *MENIPPEAE* FRAG. 122)

*aliquis, *here, indef. pron. used adjectivally,* some	philosophus, philosophī *m.* philosopher
aegrōtus, -a, -um sick, diseased	postrēmō (adv.) finally
īnfandus, -a, -um unspeakable	somniō (1-tr.) dream (of)

39. The poet begins a reflection on the purpose and power of philosophy.

Suāve marī magnō turbantibus aequora ventīs

ē terrā magnum alterius* spectāre labōrem;

nōn quia vexārī quemquamst iūcunda voluptās,

sed quibus ipse malīs careās quia cernere suāvest.

(LUCRETIUS, *DĒ RĒRUM NĀTŪRĀ* II.1–4)

*The -i- of alterīus here scans *short.*	turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into
aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water	confusion
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish,	ventus, ventī *m.* wind
determine; perceive, observe	vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable	voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy
suāvis, suāve sweet, pleasant	

40. The poet describes man's superstitious fear and its only medicine.

nam vel utī puerī trepidant atque omnia caecīs

in tenebrīs metuunt, sīc nōs in lūce timēmus

interdum nihilō quae sunt metuenda magis quam

quae puerī in tenebrīs pavitant finguntque futūra.

hunc igitur terrōrem animī tenebrāsque necessest

nōn radiī sōlis neque lūcida tēla diēī

discutiant, sed nātūrae speciēs ratiōque. (LUCRETIUS, *DĒ RĒRUM NĀTŪRĀ* II.55–61)

discutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus shatter; dissipate, dispel
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make; imagine
interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally
lūcidus, -a, -um shining, bright, clear
pavitō (1-tr.) be in dread of, tremble at

radius, radiī *m.* ray (of light)
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning; rationale
tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
terror, terrōris *m.* (extreme) fear, terror
trepidō (1-intr.) tremble; panic
utī = **ut**

41. The poet describes how the earth, like all living things, is subject to decay and diminution of her powers.

iamque adeō frācta est aetās effētaque tellūs

vix animālia parva creat, quae cūncta creāvit

saecla deditque ferārum ingentia corpora partū.

(LUCRETIUS, *DĒ RĒRUM NĀTŪRĀ* II.1150–52)

creō (1-tr.) create
effētus, -a, -um worn out
fera, ferae *f.* wild animal
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus break

partus, partūs *m.* birth
saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth

42. The poet reports an inner conflict.

Hūc est mēns dēducta tuā mea, Lesbia, culpā,

atque ita sē officiō perdidit ipsa suō,

ut iam nec bene velle queat tibi, sī optima fīās,

nec dēsistere amāre, omnia sī faciās. (CATULLUS LXXV)

culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault
dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; bring down
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, —— cease, stop
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; sense of duty
queō, quīre, quiī or **quīvī, ——** be able

43. The poet responds to his beloved's declaration.

> Iūcundum, mea vīta, mihi prōpōnis amōrem
>> hunc nostrum inter nōs perpetuumque fore.
> dī magnī, facite ut vērē prōmittere possit,
>> atque id sincērē dīcat et ex animō,
> ut liceat nōbīs tōtā perdūcere vītā
>> aeternum hoc sānctae foedus amīcitiae. (Catullus CIX)

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting
foedus, foederis n. agreement, treaty, pact
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
perdūcō (per- + dūcō) extend, prolong
perpetuus, -a, -um continuous; everlasting

prōmittō (prō- + mittō) promise
prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) put forward; declare
sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless
sincērē (adv.) faithfully, truly

44. Having just described various geographical constraints (mountains, lakes, rivers), Caesar reports their effects on the actions and feelings of the Helvetians.

> hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre
>
> possent; quā ex parte* hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur.
>
> (Caesar, Dē Bellō Gallicō I.2)

*quā ex parte and on this account
adficiō (ad- + faciō) affect, stir, move strongly
bellō (1-intr.) wage war, fight
dolor, dolōris m. grief, sorrow, pain

fīnitimus, -a, -um neighboring, nearby; as subst.,
    neighbor
lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
vagor (1-intr.) wander

45. Caesar explains his decision to cross the Rhine.

> Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānse-
>
> undum. quārum illa fuit iūstissima: quod cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī
>
> ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et
>
> posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre.
>
> (Caesar, Dē Bellō Gallicō IV.16)

Gallia, Galliae f. Gaul
Germānī, Germānōrum m. pl. (the) Germans
Germānicus, -a, -um German
impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
    push against; press upon; constrain, impel
iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right

Rhēnus, Rhēnī m. (the) Rhine, a river in
    northeastern Gaul
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand;
    decide
trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsiī or trānsīvī,
    trānsitus go across, cross

46. Caesar comments on a confused moment caused by a surprise attack of Germans.

> nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī novitāte perturbētur. (Caesar, Dē Bellō Gallicō VI.39)

novitās, novitātis f. newness, novelty; unfamiliarity, unexpectedness
perturbō (1-tr.) throw into confusion, upset, confound

47. On the eve of civil war Caesar hears that the citizens of Massilia have closed their gates to him and are siding with Pompey. He rushes to the city to negotiate with the Massilian leaders.

ēvocat ad sē Caesar Massiliā xv prīmōs.* cum hīs agit† nē initium īnferendī bellī ā

Massiliēnsibus oriātur: dēbēre eōs Italiae tōtīus auctōritātem sequī potius quam

ūnīus hominis voluntātī obtemperāre. reliqua, quae ad eōrum sānandās mentēs per-

tinēre arbitrābātur, commemorat. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ CĪVĪLĪ* I.35)

*prīmus, *here used substantively*, chief
†agō, *here*, treat, negotiate
commemorō (1-tr.) make mention (of)
ēvocō (ē- + vocō) (1-tr.) call out, summon out
initium, initiī *n.* beginning
Massilia, Massiliae *f.* Massilia, a town in Gaul
Massiliēnsēs, Massiliēnsium *m. pl.* inhabitants of Massilia, Massilians

obtemperō (1-intr.) obey (+ dat.)
pertinēre (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinuī, pertentus pertain
potius (comparative adv.) rather
sānō (1-tr.) heal, make well
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will

48. The historian explains why the consul Metellus proceeded cautiously through Numidia despite no outward signs of resistance.

nam in Iugurthā tantus dolus tantaque perītia locōrum et mīlitiae erat ut absēns

an praesēns, pācem an bellum gerēns, perniciōsior esset in incertō habērētur.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 46)

dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick, cunning
Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha, king of Numidia
mīlitia, mīlitiae *f.* military service

perītia, perītiae *f.* knowledge (acquired through experience)
perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive, deadly
praesēns, praesentis present

49. The poet describes the lovesick Dido after the end of the banquet honoring Aeneas.

post ubi dīgressī, lūmenque obscūra vicissim

lūna premit suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs,

sōla domō maeret vacuā strātīsque relictīs

incubat. illum absēns absentem audītque videtque . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.80–83)

dīgredior (dis- + gradior) go off, depart; separate; dīgressī, subject is Dido and Aeneas
incubō, incubāre, ——, incubitum lie on, recline on (+ dat.)
maereō, maerēre, ——, —— grieve, mourn
obscūrus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure
sīdus, sīderis *n.* star

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep
strātum, strātī *n.* bedding; couch
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus urge, advise; persuade
vacuus, -a, -um empty
vicissim (adv.) in turn

50. The poet sets a romantic scene.

Nox erat et caelō fulgēbat lūna serēnō

inter minōra sīdera . . . (HORACE, *EPODES* 15.1–2)

fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, —— gleam, shine
serēnus, -a, -um calm, serene
sīdus, sīderis *n.* star

51. The poet remarks on the advantages of delaying publication.

> . . . dēlēre licēbit

quod nōn ēdideris, nescit vōx missa revertī. (HORACE, *Ars Poëtica* 389–90)

ēdō (ē- + dō) emit; produce; publish
revertor, revertī, reversus sum turn back; return

52. Cynthia is about to run off after a praetor from Illyria.

> Tūne igitur dēmēns, nec tē mea cūra morātur?
>> an* tibi sum gelidā vīlior Illyriā?
> et tibi iam tantī, quīcumquest, iste vidētur,
>> ut sine mē ventō quōlibet īre velīs? (PROPERTIUS I.8A.1–4)

*an, *here, introduces an indignant or surprised*
  question expecting a negative answer, can it
  really be that . . .
dēmēns, dēmentis insane, (raving) mad
gelidus, -a, -um very cold, icy cold
Illyria, Illyriae *f.* Illyria, the territory of the
  Illyrians east of the Adriatic Sea

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef.
  rel. pron.) whoever, whatever
quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet (indef. adj.) any . . .
  you wish, any . . . at all
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
vīlis, vīle worthless, cheap

53. Addressing Cynthia, the poet announces a momentous change.

> Scrībant dē tē aliī vel sīs ignōta licēbit . . . (PROPERTIUS II.11.1)

ignōtus, -a, -um unknown

54. The poet states his theme.

> Sī quis in hōc artem populō nōn nōvit amandī,
>> hoc legat et lēctō carmine doctus amet.
> arte citae vēlōque ratēs rēmōque moventur,
>> arte levēs currūs, arte regendus amor. (OVID, *Ars Amātōria* I.1–4)

citus, -a, -um quick, swift
currus, currūs *m.* chariot
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach
ratis, ratis, -ium *f.* ship
rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar

55. Exiled to Tomis on the Black Sea, the poet comments on the locale and the native population.

> sīve locum spectō, locus est inamābilis, et quō
>
> > esse nihil tōtō trīstius orbe potest,
>
> sīve hominēs, vix sunt hominēs hōc nōmine dignī,
>
> > quamque lupī saevae plūs feritātis habent.
>
> nōn metuunt lēgēs, sed cēdit vīribus aequum,
>
> > victaque pugnācī iūra sub ēnse iacent. (Ovid, *Trīstia* V.7b.43–48)

ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
feritās, feritātis *f.* wildness, fierceness; savagery, brutality
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie
inamābilis, inamābile unlovable, disagreeable, unattractive

lupus, lupī *m.* wolf
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world
pugnāx, pugnācis fond of fighting, combative, warlike
sīve (conj.) or if; sīve ... sīve ... if ... or if ...
trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

56. The poet describes the length of his banishment in epic terms.

> at mihi iam videor patriā procul esse tot annīs,*
>
> > Dardana quot Graiō Troia sub hoste fuit.
>
> stāre† putēs, adeō prōcēdunt tempora tardē ... (Ovid, *Trīstia* V.10.3–5)

*tot annīs, *here*, for as many years
†stō, *here*, stand still
at (conj.) but
Dardanus, -a, -um Dardanian, Trojan

Graius, -a, -um Greek
prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, progress
procul (adv.) at a distance, far
tardē (adv.) slowly

57. When the Romans are prevented by dusk from engaging the opposing army, an enemy taunts them from behind his battle line.

> "longiōre lūce ad id certāmen quod īnstat nōbīs opus est. crāstinō diē, oriente sōle
>
> redīte in aciem; erit cōpia pugnandī; nē timēte."* hīs vōcibus inrītātus mīles in†
>
> diem posterum in castra redūcitur,‡ longam venīre noctem ratus quae moram
>
> certāminī faceret. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* III.2.9)

*nē timēte = negative imperative
†in, *here*, until
‡redūcitur historical use of present tense; translate as perfect
certāmen, certāminis *n.* contest; fight, battle
crāstinus, -a, -um of tomorrow; crāstinus diēs, tomorrow

īnstō (in- + stō), īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātūrus press (hostilely); loom, threaten
irrītō (1-tr.) annoy, vex, irritate; arouse
posterus, -a, -um next, following
redūcō (re- + dūcō) lead back
reor, rērī, ratus sum believe, think, imagine

58. The historian reports that after the Romans retook certain towns in southern Italy from the Carthaginians, they distinguished themselves in a disgraceful way.

> . . . tantum Pleminius Hamilcarem praesidiī praefectum,* tantum praesidiāriī mī-
>
> litēs Rōmānī Poenōs scelere atque avāritiā superāvērunt ut nōn armīs sed vitiīs
>
> vidērētur certārī. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXIX.8.7)

*praefectus, praefectī *m.* commander, officer
avāritia, avāritiae *f.* greed, avarice
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
Hamilcar, Hamilcaris *m.* Hamilcar, Carthaginian commander
Pleminius, Pleminiī *m.* (Q.) Pleminius, Roman military officer

Poenī, Poenōrum *m. pl.* (the) Phoenicians, (the) Carthaginians
praesidiārius, -a, -um forming a guard or garrison
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison
vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault

59. Seneca quotes the second-century B.C.E. philosopher Posidonius, who explains why he objects to the inclusion of explanations and introductions in Plato's *Laws*.

> lēgem enim brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab inperītīs teneātur.
>
> (Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* XCIV.38)

imperītus, -a, -um inexperienced, unacquainted

60. Seneca quotes a line that is said to have made the audience look at Caesar. It was uttered by the writer and actor Decimus Laberius at the time of the civil war.

> necesse est multōs timeat quem multī timent. (Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* IV.11.3)

61. Seneca reports how the Stoic philosopher Diogenes responded to being spit upon by one of his students during class.

> tulit hoc ille lēniter et sapienter: "nōn quidem" inquit "īrāscor, sed dubitō* tamen an
>
> oporteat īrāscī." (Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* V.38.1)

*dubitō, *here*, wonder
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
īrāscor, īrāscī, ——, become angry
lēniter (adv.) gently, mildly
sapienter (adv.) wisely

62. A definition and contemplation of death

    mors dolōrum omnium exsolūtiō est et fīnis ultrā quem mala nostra nōn exeunt,
    quae nōs in illam tranquillitātem in quā antequam nāscerēmur iacuimus repōnit. sī
    mortuōrum aliquis miserētur, et nōn nātōrum misereātur. mors nec bonum nec
    malum est; id enim potest aut bonum aut malum esse quod aliquid est; quod vērō
    ipsum nihil est et omnia in nihilum redigit, nūllī nōs fortūnae trādit.

    (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGĪ* VI.19.5)

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
exeō (ex- + eō), exīre, exiī or exīvī, exitum go out,
    exit
exsolūtiō, exsolūtiōnis *f.* dissolution
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie dead
misereor, miserērī, miseritus sum pity, take pity
    on (+ gen.)

redigō (red- + agō), redigere, redēgī, redāctus
    drive back; restore, convert
repōnō (re- + pōnō) put *or* place back
tranquillitās, tranquillitātis *f.* calm, tranquility
ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond

63. A character in a Senecan dialogue expresses his opinion on the nature of human life.

    nihil est tam fallāx quam vīta hūmāna, nihil tam īnsidiōsum: nōn meherculēs
    quisquam illam accēpisset nisi darētur ignōrantibus.

    (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGĪ* VI.22.3)

fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous
hūmānus, -a, -um human
ignōrō (1-tr.) be unaware (of), be ignorant (of)
īnsidiōsus, -a, -um treacherous, deceitful

64. The poet vividly characterizes Julius Caesar.

                    . . . sed Caesar in omnia praeceps,

    nīl āctum crēdēns cum quid superesset agendum, . . .

    (LUCAN, *BELLUM CĪVĪLE* II.656–57)

praeceps, praecipitis rushing forward, headlong
supersum (super- + sum), superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus remain, be left

65. The poet makes a concession.

    Sexte, nihil dēbēs, nīl dēbēs, Sexte, fatēmur.

        dēbet enim, sī quis solvere, Sexte, potest. (MARTIAL II.3)

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen; free; pay

66. Pliny describes to Trajan the effect of his having made two well-respected senators consuls.

    praecipuē tamen ex hōrum* cōnsulātū nōn ad partem aliquam senātūs sed ad tōtum
    senātum tanta laetitia pervēnit ut eundem honōrem omnēs sibi et dedisse et accē-
    pisse videantur. (PLINY THE YOUNGER, *PANĒGYRICUS* 62.1)

*hōrum refers to the two new consuls.
laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness
perveniō (per- + veniō) arrive (at), reach, extend
praecipuē (adv.) especially; more than anything else

67. Pliny reassures the senators about the emperor Trajan's concern for them.

vōs ille* praesentēs, vōs etiam absentēs in cōnsiliō habet. (PLINY, *PANĒGYRICUS* 62.5)

*ille refers to Trajan.
praesēns, praesentis present

68. A battle between Roman troops and Batavians revolting in Germany

pugnātum longō agmine et incertō Marte dōnec praelium nox dīrimeret.*

(TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* IV.35)

*The subjunctive in a subordinate clause in later Latin often does not express anticipation.
dīrimō, dīrimere, dīrēmī, dīrēmptus break up, dissolve
praelium = proelium

69. The historian reports an eclipse that stops a nascent mutiny of Roman troops prone to superstition.

noctem minācem et in scelus ēruptūram fors lēnīvit: nam lūna clārō repente caelō

vīsa languēscere. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLĒS* I.28)

ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth
languēscō, languēscere, languī, —— grow weak; fail; wane
lēniō, lēnīre, lēnīvī or lēniī, lēnītus moderate, calm, mitigate
mināx, minācis menacing, threatening
repente (adv.) suddenly, without warning

70. A group of Roman soldiers battling the Britons meets with a reversal.

ubi ventum ad aggerem, dum missilibus certābātur, plūs vulnerum in nōs et

plēraeque caedēs oriēbantur. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLĒS* XII.35)

agger, aggeris *m.* earthwork; fortification, rampart
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
missile, missilis, -ium *n.* projectile
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most

71. The biographer describes the changes made by Augustus to Rome.

urbem neque prō* maiestāte imperiī ornātam et inundātiōnibus incendiīsque obnoxiam excoluit adeō ut iūre sit glōriātus marmoream sē relinquere quam latericiam

accēpisset. (SUETONIUS, *VĪTA AUGUSTĪ* 28)

*prō, *here,* in accordance with
excolō, excolere, excoluī, excultus cultivate,
 improve, develop, decorate
glōrior (1-tr.) boast
incendium, incendiī *n.* fire
inundātiō, inundātiōnis *f.* flood

latericius, -a, -um made of brick
maiestās, maiestātis *f.* dignity, majesty
marmoreus, -a, -um made of marble, marble
obnoxius, -a, -um exposed, vulnerable
ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate

72. Macrobius comments on an aspect of Vergilian style.

> vīs audīre illum tantā brevitāte dīcentem ut artārī magis et contrahī brevitās ipsa nōn
>
> possit? "Et campōs, ubi Troia fuit." ecce paucissimīs verbīs maximam cīvitātem
>
> hausit et absorpsit, nōn relīquit illī nec* ruīnam. (MACROBIUS, *SATURNĀLIA* V.1.8)

*The redundant negative strengthens the
  negative idea.

absorbeō, absorbēre, absorpsī, absorptus engulf,
  devour

artō (1-tr.) tighten, restrict, make narrow; reduce,
  compress

brevitās, brevitātis *f.* brevity

contrahō, contrahere, contrāxī, contractus
  contract, reduce

hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus drain, empty out,
  consume

ruīna, ruīnae *f.* ruin(s)

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *In Verrem II* 2.162

Cicero attacks Verres directly for his barbarous treatment of a Roman citizen.

cum ignēs ardentēsque lāminae cēterīque cruciātūs admovēbantur, sī tē illīus*
acerba implōrātiō et vōx miserābilis nōn inhibēbat, nē cīvium quidem Rōmānōrum
quī tum aderant flētū et gemitū maximō commovēbāre? in crucem tū agere ausus es
quemquam quī sē cīvem Rōmānum esse dīceret?

*illīus refers to one of Verres's victims.

admoveō (ad- + moveō) move toward; apply, inflict

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire

commoveō (con- + moveō) disturb, trouble

cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* (instrument of) torture

crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross

flētus, flētūs *m.* weeping, tears

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

implōrātiō, implōrātiōnis *f.* appeal, entreaty

inhibeō (in- + habeō), inhibēre, inhibuī, inhibitus hold back, restrain, check

lāmina, lāminae *f.* thin sheet of metal, blade

miserābilis, miserābile miserable, wretched

2. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 1–2

Cicero opens his first speech against Catiline with a barrage of hostile questions directed at Catiline himself, who was present in the senate for the speech.

Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? quam diū etiam furor iste tuus
nōs ēlūdet? quem ad fīnem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? nihilne tē nocturnum
praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populī, nihil concursus bonōrum
omnium, nihil hic mūnītissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra voltūsque
mōvērunt? patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs, cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā
tenērī coniūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs? quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgeris, ubi
fueris, quōs convocāveris, quid cōnsilī cēperis quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris? ō
tempora, ō mōrēs! senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. vīvit? immō
vērō etiam in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī particeps, notat et dēsignat oculīs ad
caedem unum quemque nostrum.

abūtor (ab- + ūtor) abuse (+ abl.)

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

concursus, concursūs *m.* gathering

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy

cōnstringō, cōnstringere, cōnstrīnxī, cōnstrictus restrain

convocō (con- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon *or* call together

dēsignō (1-tr.) point out

effrēnātus, -a, -um unbridled, unrestrained

ēlūdō, ēlūdere, ēlūsī, ēlūsus mock

furor, furōris *m.* madness

iactō (1-tr.) throw, hurl

ignōrō (1-tr.) be unaware of, fail to recognize

immō vērō (adv.) no, even

mūnītus, -a, -um well fortified, well defended

nocturnus, -a, -um at night, nocturnal

notō (1-tr.) mark

Palātium, Palātiī *n.* (the) Palatine (hill)

particeps, participis *m.* participant, sharer

pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open

patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, patience

praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison

proximus, -a, -um nearest; most recent, last

scientia, scientiae *f.* knowledge

superior, superius (comparative adj.) upper; previous, earlier

ūsque (adv.) continuously, all the way (to); quō ūsque, (up) to what point, how far

vigilia, vigiliae *f.* watch (divided into four segments to cover a night)

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression; face

3. Cicero, *Prō Lēge Mānīliā* 14-16

Cicero explains how even the threat of war affects the provinces, particularly Asia, one of the wealthiest.

itaque haec vōbīs prōvincia, Quirītēs, sī et bellī ūtilitātem et pācis dignitātem retinēre voltis, nōn modo ā calamitāte sed etiam ā metū calamitātis est dēfendenda. nam in cēterīs rēbus cum vēnit calamitās, tum dētrīmentum accipitur; at in vectīgālibus nōn sōlum adventus malī sed etiam metus ipse adfert calamitātem. nam cum hostium cōpiae nōn longē absunt, etiam sī inruptiō nūlla facta est, tamen pecua relinquuntur, agrī cultūra dēseritur, mercātōrum nāvigātiō conquiēscit. ita neque ex portū neque ex decumīs* neque ex scrīptūrā vectīgal cōnservārī potest; quārē saepe tōtīus annī frūctus ūnō rūmōre perīculī atque ūnō bellī terrōre āmittitur.

*decumus, *here, as subst.,* tenth, (a type of) tax

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring toward, bring forth

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival

āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose

at (conj.) but

calamitās, calamitātis *f.* disaster, misfortune, injury

conquiēscō, conquiēscere, conquiēvī, —— rest; cease

cōnservō (con- + servō) (1-tr.) preserve thoroughly, maintain

cultūra, cultūrae *f.* cultivation

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon, desert, forsake

dētrīmentum, dētrīmentī *n.* harm

dignitās, dignitātis *f.* rank, status, dignity

frūctus, frūctūs *m.* profit, benefit; revenue

irruptiō, irruptiōnis *f.* assault, incursion

itaque (conj.) and so, and therefore

mercātor, mercātōris *m.* merchant, trader

nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis *f.* sailing, voyaging

pecua, pecuum *n. pl.* farm animals

portus, portūs *m.* harbor, port

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity

retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain

scrīptūra, scrīptūrae *f.* writing; tax

terror, terrōris *m.* fear, terror

ūtilitās, ūtilitātis *f.* usefulness, advantage

vectīgal, vectīgālis, -ium *n.* (tax) revenue

In 66 b.c.e. Cicero delivered the *Dē Lēge Mānīliā* endorsing a bill that was meant to strengthen Pompey's hand in dealing with Rome's enemies in the East.

4. Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* VII.1.3

Cicero writes to his friend Marius about the barbarity of the vēnātiōnēs, the hunting portion
of Roman games.

sed quae potest hominī esse polītō dēlectātiō cum aut homō imbecillus ā valentissimā
bestiā laniātur aut praeclāra bestia vēnābulō trānsverberātur? quae tamen, sī videnda
sunt, saepe vīdistī, neque nōs quī haec spectāvimus quicquam novī vīdimus. extrē-
mus elephantōrum diēs fuit. in quō admīrātiō magna vulgī atque turbae, dēlectātiō
nūlla exstitit; quīn etiam* misericordia quaedam cōnsecūta est atque opīniō eius
modī: esse quandam illī bēluae cum genere hūmānō societātem.

*quīn etiam, *introduces a correction of something
    just said,* no, even
admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis *f.* wonder, astonishment
bēlua, bēluae *f.* beast
bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal, creature
cōnsequor (con- + sequor) follow (as a
    consequence)
dēlectātiō, dēlectātiōnis *f.* (source of) delight,
    amusement
elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)titī, —— stand out,
    appear, emerge
extrēmus, -a, -um last
hūmānus, -a, -um human

imbecillus, -a, -um weak, feeble
laniō (1-tr.) tear savagely, mutilate
misericordia, misericordiae *f.* pity
opīniō, opīniōnis *f.* opinion, belief
polītus, -a, -um polished; refined
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; splendid,
    magnificent
societās, societātis *f.* fellowship, society; (close)
    relationship, connection
trānsverberō (1-tr.) strike so as to pierce through,
    transfix
turba, turbae *f.* crowd
vēnābulum, vēnābulī *n.* hunting spear
vulgus, vulgī *n.* common people, (the) multitude

Cicero's letters *Ad Familiārēs* in sixteen books are addressed to a wide variety of friends and acquaintances and treat
of many subjects. Also included in the collection are replies from many of the addressees. The *Ad Familiārēs* may
have been edited for publication by Cicero's freedman and secretary, Tiro.

5. Catullus XII (hendecasyllable)

The poet addresses an acquaintance with an annoying habit.

Marrūcīne Asinī, manū sinistrā

nōn bellē ūteris in iocō atque vīnō:

tollis lintea neglegentiōrum.

hoc salsum esse putās? fugit tē,* inepte:

quamvīs sordida rēs et invenustast.   5

nōn crēdis mihi? crēde Polliōnī

frātrī, quī tua furta vel talentō

mūtārī velit: est enim lepōrum

differtus puer ac facētiārum.

quārē aut hendecasyllabōs trecentōs   10

exspectā, aut mihi linteum remitte;

quod mē nōn movet aestimātiōne,

vērumst mnēmosynum meī sodālis.

nam sūdāria Saetaba ex Hibērīs

mīsērunt mihi mūnerī Fabullus   15

et Vērānius: haec amem necessest

ut Vērāniolum meum et Fabullum.

*fugit tē, *sc.*, ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* reason
aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis *f.* value, (monetary)
   worth
bellē (adv.) prettily, neatly, becomingly
differtus, -a, -um stuffed, filled full (+ gen.)
Fabullus, Fabullī *m.* Fabullus
facētiae, facētiārum *f. pl.* wit, drollery, humor
furtum, furtī *n.* theft, robbery
hendecasyllabī, hendecasyllabōrum *m. pl.*
   hendecasyllables
Hibērī, Hibērōrum *m. pl.* Iberians, Spaniards
ineptus, -a, -um silly, inept, foolish
invenustus, -a, -um ungraceful, inelegant
iocus, iocī *m.* jest, joke
lepor, lepōris *m.* pleasantness, charm
linteum, linteī *n.* linen cloth, napkin
Marrūcīnus Asinius, Marrūcīnī Asiniī *m.*
   Marrucinus Asinius
mnēmosynum, mnēmosynī *n.* remembrance,
   token

mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift
neglegēns, neglegentis careless, heedless
Polliō, Polliōnis *m.* Pollio
quamvīs (adv.) as you will, ever so
remittō (re- + mittō) send back, return
Saetabus, -a, -um of Saetabis, a town in Spain;
   Spanish
salsus, -a, -um salty; witty
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left
sodālis, sodālis, -ium *m.* comrade, companion
sordidus, -a, -um dirty; mean, vulgar
sūdārium, sūdāriī *n.* cloth, napkin
talentum, talentī *n.* talent, a sum of money
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take
   away, carry off
Vērāniolus, Vērāniolī *m.* (dear) little Veranius
Vērānius, Vērāniī *m.* Veranius
vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine

6. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* I.199–207

The poet summarizes one of the most important principles of nature.

dēnique cūr hominēs tantōs nātūra parāre

nōn potuit, pedibus quī pontum per vada possent   200

trānsīre et magnōs manibus dīvellere montīs

multaque vīvendō vītālia vincere saecla,

sī nōn māteriēs quia rēbus reddita certast

gignundīs, ē quā cōnstat quid possit orīrī?

nīl igitur fierī dē nīlō posse fatendumst,   205

sēmine quandō opus est rēbus, quō quaeque creātae

āeris in tenerās possint prōferrier aurās.

āēr, āeris *m.* air
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
cōnstō (con- + stō), cōnstāre, cōnstitī, ——
 stand still; be composed (of), consist (in);
 be fixed
creō (1-tr.) create, conceive
dēnique (adv.) finally
dīvellō, dīvellere, dīvellī, dīvulsus tear apart,
 tear up
gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus beget, produce;
 gignundīs = archaic form of gignendīs
māteriēs, māteriēī *f.* matter, material, primal
 substance
parō (1-tr.) prepare; furnish, produce
pēs, pedis *m.* foot

pontus, pontī *m.* sea
prōferō (prō- + ferō), prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātus
 bring forth; *in passive,* come forth, emerge;
 prōferrier = archaic form of prōferrī
quandō (conj.) since
reddō (red- + dō) give back; render
saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation
sēmen, sēminis *n.* seed
tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate
trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsiī or trānsīvī,
 trānsitus go across, cross
vadum, vadī *n.* shallow, shoal; *in pl.,* waters
 (of the sea)
vītālis, vītāle living, vital; life-giving

7. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.39

The effect on Caesar's men of rumors about the Germans

dum paucōs diēs ad* Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur,†
ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī mag-
nitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse
praedicābant—saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque
aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse—tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum oc-
cupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. hic prīmum
ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs‡ reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Cae-
sarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant. quōrum alius aliā causā in-
lātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte
discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent remanē-
bant. hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre§ poterant; abditī in
tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perī-
culum miserābantur. vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. hōrum vōcibus ac
timōre paulātim etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriō-
nēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur.

*ad, *here*, at, near
†morātur, subject is Caesar
‡praefectus, praefectī *m.* commander, officer
§teneō, *here*, hold back
abditus, -a, -um hidden
addūcō (ad- + dūcō) lead (toward); induce,
    influence
centuriō, centuriōnis *m.* centurion, an officer
    commanding a century
commeātus, commeātūs *m.* cargo; provisions
commūnis, commūne common, shared
congredior (con- + gradior) approach; join battle
equitātus, equitātūs *m.* cavalry
exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis *f.* training, exercise;
    skill, proficiency
familiāris, familiāre belonging to one's house-
    hold; well known, familiar; *as subst.*, friend,
    intimate
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion; make
    (up), simulate; compose
frūmentārius, -a, -um of grain;
    rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, supplies
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable
interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally
lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.* magnitude, size
mediocriter (adv.) to a moderate degree
mercātor, mercātōris *m.* merchant, trader

mīlitāris, mīlitāre military; rēs mīlitāris, military
    affairs, military practice
miseror (1-tr.) pity
necessārius, -a, -um necessary
nōnnūllī, -ae, -a a number, not a few, some
numerus, numerī *m.* number; saepe numerō,
    often (in respect to number)
obsignō (1-tr.) affix a seal to, seal
occupō (1-tr.) seize
paulātim (adv.) little by little
percontātiō, percontātiōnis *f.* interrogation
perturbō (1-tr.) upset, disturb, agitate
praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare
pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty
queror, querī, questus sum complain, protest;
    lament
remaneō (re- + maneō) remain
subitō (adv.) suddenly
suspīciō, suspīciōnis *f.* suspicion; trace
tabernāculum, tabernāculī *n.* tent
testāmentum, testāmentī *n.* will
tribūnus, tribūnī *m.* tribune, military
    commander
ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience
Vesontiō, Vesontiōnis *f.* Vesontio, the chief town
    of the Sequani, a Gallic tribe
vītō (1-tr.) avoid
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will; willingness, approval
vulgō (adv.) commonly; all together, en masse
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

8. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.1

A profile of the Suebi, a German tribe

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā suīs ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. hī rursus invicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus. quae rēs et cibī genere et cōtīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs* nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

*ā puerīs, *here,* from boyhood
addūcō (ad- + dūcō) lead (toward)
assuēfaciō, assuēfacere, assuēfēcī, assuēfactus make accustomed, accustom
alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed, nourish
apertus, -a, -um open; exposed, uncovered
armātus, armātī *m.* armed man, soldier
bellicōsus, -a, -um warlike, fond of war
bellō (1-intr.) wage war
cibus, cibī *m.* food
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; farm
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* practice, custom, habit
cōtīdiānus, -a, -um daily
cultūra, cultūrae *f.* cultivation
disciplīna, disciplīnae *f.* training
ēdūcō (ē- + dūcō) lead out
exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis *f.* physical exercise, practice
exiguitās, exiguitātis *f.* smallness, scantiness
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
frīgidus, -a, -um cold, icy
frūmentum, frūmentī *n.* grain
Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
immānis, immāne enormous, tremendous

intermittō (inter- + mittō) interrupt
———, vicis *f.* turn; succession; invicem, in turn; against one another
lac, lactis *n.* milk
lavō, lavāre or lavere, lāvī, lautus or lōtus wash; *in passive,* wash oneself
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.* size, magnitude
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, task
pāgus, pāgī *m.* district
pecus, pecoris *n.* (herd) animal, livestock
pellis, pellis, -ium *f.* (animal) skin, hide
prīvātus, -a, -um private
quotannīs (adv.) yearly, every year
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; method, way
remaneō (re- + maneō) remain
rursus (adv.) again
sēparātus, -a, -um separate
singulī, -ae, -a individual
Suēbī, Suēbōrum *m. pl.* (the) Suebi, a German tribe
ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience, practice
vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis *f.* hunting (activity)
vestītus, vestītūs *m.* clothes, clothing
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.44

Caesar reports on a rivalry between two of his centurions.

erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī centuriōnēs quī iam prīmīs ordinibus adpropin-
quārent, Tītus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus. hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant
uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendē-
bant. ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad* mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, "quid dubitās," inquit,
"Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? hic diēs dē nostrīs con-
trōversiīs iūdicābit." haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit† extrā mūnītiōnēs quāque‡ hostium
pars cōnfertissima est vīsa, inrumpit. nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vallō continet,
sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum
in hostēs inmittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit. quō percussō ex-
animātōque hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant
prōgrediendī facultātem. trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur.
āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum
impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī

*ad, *here*, at, near
†prōcēdit, historical present tense, used here and
    in several subsequent verbs to add vividness;
    may be translated as present or past
‡quā, *here* (adv.), where
anteferō (ante- + ferō), anteferre, antetulī,
    antelātus place *or* rank above, prefer
appropinquō (1-intr.) approach; be close (to) (+dat)
āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus turn (something)
    away
balteus, balteī *m.* shoulder band, sword belt
centuriō, centuriōnis *m.* centurion
circumsistō, circumsistere, ——, —— surround
cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close
    together
coniciō (con- + iaciō) throw (together), cast
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus
    struggle
contineō (con- + teneō), continēre, continuī,
    contentus hold in, contain
contrōversia, contrōversiae *f.* dispute
dēfigō, dēfigere, dēfīxī, dēfīxus embed, bury, stick
dexter, dextra, dextrum right
ēdūcō (ē- + dūcō) lead forth; draw
exanimō (1-tr.) deprive of life, kill
exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis *f.* opinion, judgment
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside
facultās, facultātis *f.* ability, power; opportunity,
    possibility
immittō (in- + mittō) send in, send against
impediō, impedīre, impedīvī *or* impediī,
    impedītus obstruct, hinder, impede
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing.*
    pres. act. indic.

irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptus break in,
    burst into
iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine
mediocris, mediocre moderate, fairly small
multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude
mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis *f.* fortification
ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank
percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus strike
perpetuus, -a, -um continual
pīlum, pīlī *n.* spear, javelin
probō (1-tr.) prove, demonstrate
prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) proceed, advance
prōcurrō, prōcurrere, prō(cu)currī, prōcursum
    run forward, run out in front
prōgredior (prō- + gradior) go forward, advance
prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus protect,
    defend
Tītus Pullō, Tītī Pullōnis *m.* Titus Pullo
scūtum, scūtī *n.* shield
simultās, simultātis *f.* quarrel, feud
spatium, spatiī *n.* space, interval
subsequor (sub- + sequor) follow close behind
succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum run to
    aid, assist, help
trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce, transfix
trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfīxī, trānsfīxus pierce
    through
ūniversus, -a, -um all together
vāgīna, vāgīnae *f.* sheath
vallum, vallī *n.* palisade (of stakes), fortification
vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, show
    respect to; dread, fear
verūtum, verūtī *n.* (short) throwing spear
Lūcius Vorēnus, Lūciī Vorēnī *m.* Lucius Vorenus

subvenit. ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Vorēnus gladiō rem comminus gerit atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum īnferiōrem dēiectus concidit. huic rursus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude intrā mūnītiōnēs sē recipiunt. sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

ambō, ambae, ambō (*pl. adj. and pron.*) both; ambō = *masc. pl. nom.*

anteferō (ante- + ferō), anteferre, antetulī, antelātus place *or* rank above, prefer

certāmen, certāminis *n.* contest; fight, battle

circumveniō (circum- + veniō) (tr.) surround

comminus (adv.) in close contact, at close quarters, hand to hand

complūrēs, complūra *or* complūria several, very many

concidō (con- + cadō), concidere, concidī, ——— fall down, collapse

cōnfestim (adv.) immediately

contentiō, contentiōnis *f.* effort; rivalry; conflict

convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus reverse; change; sē convertere, to direct oneself

dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw *or* push down

dīiūdicō (1-tr.) settle, decide

incolumis, incolume unharmed; safe

īnferior, īnferius lower

īnstō (in- + stō), īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātūrus press (hostilely), press on, pursue

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

laus, laudis *f.* praise

multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude

mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis *f.* fortification

prōpellō (prō- + pellō), prōpellere, prōpulī, prōpulsus push forward, repel

Pullō, Pullōnis *m.* Titus Pullo

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; sē recipere, to withdraw

rursus (adv.) again

subsidium, subsidiī *n.* aid, help

subveniō (sub- + veniō) come to the aid (of), assist

trānsfīgō, trānsfīgere, trānsfīxī, trānsfīxus pierce through

uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each (of two)

versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning round

verūtum, verūtī *n.* (short) throwing spear

Vorēnus, Vorēnī *m.* Vorenus

10. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 8

The historian identifies an important difference between the Athenians and the Romans.

sed profectō fortūna in omnī rē dominātur; ea rēs cūnctās ex lubīdine magis quam
ex vērō celebrat obscūratque. Athēniēnsium rēs gestae, sīcutī ego aestumō, satis
amplae magnificaeque fuēre, vērum aliquantō minōrēs tamen quam fāmā feruntur.
sed quia prōvēnēre ibi scrīptōrum magna ingenia, per terrārum orbem Athēniēn-
sium facta prō maxumīs celebrantur. ita eōrum quī fēcēre virtūs tanta habētur quan-
tum eam verbīs potuēre extollere praeclāra ingenia. at populō Rōmānō numquam ea
cōpia fuit, quia prūdentissumus quisque maxumē negōtiōsus erat, ingenium nēmō
sine corpore exercēbat, optumus quisque facere quam dīcere, sua ab aliīs bene facta
laudārī quam ipse aliōrum nārrāre mālēbat.

aliquantō (adv.) somewhat, not a little
amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished
at (conj.) but
Athēniēnsēs, Athēniēnsium *m. pl.* Athenians
celebrō (1-tr.) make famous
dominor (1-intr.) be master, hold sway, rule
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy,
　occupy; train, exercise
extollō, extollere, ——, —— raise up, elevate;
　praise
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
magnificus, -a, -um magnificent, splendid

nārrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of)
negōtiōsus, -a, -um busy, occupied, devoted to
　business
obscūrō (1-tr.) make obscure, cover up
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; orbis terrārum,
　circle of lands, world
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous
profectō (adv.) in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly
prōveniō (prō- + veniō) come forth, appear
prūdēns, prūdentis wise, sensible, clever
scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer
sīcutī (conj.) just as

11. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 25

The historian describes a fascinating woman from a noble family who was involved in the Catilinarian conspiracy.

sed in iīs* erat Semprōnia, quae multa saepe virīlis audāciae facinora conmīserat. haec mulier genere atque formā, praetereā virō, līberīs† satis fortūnāta fuit; litterīs Graecīs, Latīnīs docta, psallere, saltāre ēlegantius quam necesse est probae, multa alia, quae īnstrūmenta luxuriae sunt. sed eī cāriōra semper omnia quam decus atque pudīcitia fuit; pecūniae an fāmae minus parceret haud facile discernerēs; lubīdō sīc adcēnsa ut saepius peteret virōs quam peterētur. sed ea saepe antehāc fidem prōdiderat, crēditum‡ abiūrāverat, caedis cōnscia fuerat: luxuriā atque inopiā praeceps abierat. vērum ingenium eius haud absurdum: posse versūs facere, iocum movēre, sermōne ūtī vel modestō vel mollī vel procācī; prōrsus multae facētiae multusque lepōs inerat.

*iīs refers to a number of women who were under Catiline's sway

†līberī, *here*, children

‡crēditum, crēditī *n.* that which has been entrusted (for safekeeping); loan

abiūrō (1-tr.) falsely deny knowledge of under oath

absurdus, -a, -um discordant; inappropriate

accendō, accendere, accendī, accēnsus set on fire, kindle; stir up, arouse

antehāc (adv.) before this time, previously

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter; murder

committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in, commit

cōnscius, -a, -um sharing knowledge, privy (to) (+ gen.)

decus, decoris *n.* esteem, honor, glory; decorum

discernō, discernere, discrēvī, discrētus separate; distinguish, determine

doctus, -a, -um learned, educated, erudite

ēleganter (adv.) gracefully, in a refined manner

facētiae, facētiārum *f. pl.* wit, drollery, humor

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty

fortūnātus, -a, -um fortunate

Graecus, -a, -um Greek

inopia, inopiae *f.* poverty, destitution

īnstrūmentum, īnstrūmentī *n.* equipment; instrument

īnsum (in- + sum), inesse, īnfuī, —— be in

iocus, iocī *m.* joke

Latīnus, -a, -um Latin

lepōs, lepōris *m.* pleasantness, charm

libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust

luxuria, luxuriae *f.* extravagance, excess, luxury

modestus, -a, -um restrained, temperate, mild

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

mulier, mulieris *f.* woman

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

praeceps, praecipitis rushing forward, headlong

praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition

probus, -a, -um excellent, upright, virtuous

procāx, procācis undisciplined, licentious; lively; frivolous

prōdō (prō- + dō) abandon, betray, forsake

prōrsus (adv.) in fact, all in all, in sum

psallō, psallere, ——, —— play on the cithara (or lyre)

pudīcitia, pudīcitiae *f.* chastity, virtue

saltō (1-intr.) dance

Semprōnia, Semprōniae *f.* Sempronia

sermō, sermōnis *m.* speech, (style of) conversation

versus, versūs *m.* verse, line (of poetry)

virīlis, virīle of *or* belonging to a man, masculine, virile

12. Vergil, *Eclogues* II.63–68

    The lovesick shepherd Corydon speaks to his unattainable beloved, Alexis.

    torva leaena lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam,

    flōrentem cytisum sequitur lascīva capella,

    tē Corydōn, ō Alexi: trahit sua quemque voluptās.   65

    aspice, arātra iugō referunt suspēnsa iuvencī,

    et sōl crēscentīs dēcēdēns duplicat umbrās:

    mē tamen ūrit amor; quis* enim modus adsit amōrī?

*quis, interrog. pron. used adjectivally	iugum, iugī *n.* yoke
Alexis, Alexis *m.* Alexis; Alexi = *voc. sing.*	iuvencus, iuvencī *m.* bull; ox
arātrum, arātrī *n.* plough	lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from
aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus look (toward),	restraint
behold	leaena, leaenae *f.* lioness
capella, capellae *f.* she-goat	lupus, lupī *m.* wolf
Corydōn, Corydōnis *m.* Corydon	suspendō, suspendere, suspendī, suspēnsus
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase	hang up, suspend
cytisus, cytisī *m.* or *f.* clover .	torvus, -a, -um fierce
dēcēdō (dē- + cēdō) go down	trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; attract
duplicō (1-tr.) double	ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn; inflame; consume
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —— bloom, blossom	voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

13. Vergil, *Eclogues* IV.18–25

    The poet addresses a child whose birth will initiate a new golden age on earth.

    at tibi prīma, puer, nūllō mūnuscula cultū

    errantīs hederās passim cum baccare tellūs

    mixtaque rīdentī colocāsia fundet acanthō.   20

    ipsae lacte domum referent distenta capellae

    ūbera, nec magnōs metuent armenta leōnēs;

    ipsa tibi blandōs fundent cūnābula flōrēs.

    occidet et serpēns, et fallāx herba venēnī

    occidet; Assyrium vulgō nāscētur amōmum.   25

acanthus, acanthī *m.* bear's foot, acanthus	fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth
amōmum, amōmī *n.* balsam	hedera, hederae *f.* ivy
armentum, armentī *n.* herd (of cattle)	herba, herbae *f.* grass; plant; herb
Assyrius, -a, -um Assyrian	lac, lactis *n.* milk
at (conj.) but	leō, leōnis *m.* lion
baccar, baccaris *n. baccar,* the plant cyclamen	misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix
blandus, -a, -um charming, seductive, soothing	mūnusculum, mūnusculī *n.* small gift
capella, capellae *f.* she-goat	passim (adv.) everywhere
colocāsium, colocāsiī *n.* Egyptian bean	rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus smile
cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation	serpēns, serpentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* serpent, snake
cūnābula, cūnābulōrum *n. pl.* cradle	tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
distentus, -a, -um swollen, distended	ūber, ūberis *n.* udder
fallāx, fallācis deceitful, treacherous	venēnum, venēnī *n.* poison
flōs, flōris *m.* flower	vulgō (adv.) commonly

14. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.657–63

Aeneas reports what he said in response to his father's refusal to join the family in fleeing from Troy.

mēne efferre pedem, genitor, tē posse relictō

spērāstī tantumque nefās patriō excidit ōre?

sī nihil ex tantā superīs placet urbe relinquī,

et sedet hoc* animō peritūraeque addere Troiae   660

tēque tuōsque iuvat, patet istī iānua lētō,

iamque aderit multō Priamī dē sanguine Pyrrhus,

nātum ante ōra patris, patrem quī obtruncat ad† ārās.

*hoc, *here*, scans as if it were spelled **hocc**	lētum, lētī *n*. death, destruction
†ad, *here*, at, near	obtruncō (1-tr.) slay, slaughter, butcher
addō (ad- + dō) add	pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
efferō (ex- + ferō), efferre, extulī, ēlātus	patrius, -a, -um of a father, paternal
bear forth	pēs, pedis *m*. foot
excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidī, ——	Pyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m*. Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
fall (from)	sanguis, sanguinis *m*. blood
genitor, genitōris *m*. father	sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated;
iānua, iānuae *f*. door; doorway, entrance	be fixed
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist; please	superī, superōrum *m. pl.* (the) gods above

15. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.382–87

Enraged Dido concludes her speech to Aeneas after he has claimed that the gods have ordered him to leave her realm.

spērō equidem mediīs, sī quid pia nūmina possunt,

supplicia hausūrum scopulīs et nōmine Dīdō

saepe vocātūrum. sequar ātrīs ignibus absēns

et, cum frīgida mors animā sēdūxerit artūs,   385

omnibus umbra locīs aderō. dabis, improbe, poenās.

audiam et haec Mānīs veniet mihi fāma sub īmōs.

artus, artūs *m*. joint (of the body), limb	nūmen, nūminis *n*. divine power, divinity, divine
āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark	spirit, numen
frīgidus, -a, -um cold, icy	scopulus, scopulī *m*. projecting rock, boulder,
hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus (rarely, hausus)	crag
drink (in), absorb; hausūrum, *sc.* tē	sēdūcō (sē- + dūcō) lead away, separate
improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless	supplicium, suppliciī *n*. punishment
īmus, -a, -um lowest, deepest	
Mānēs, Mānium *m. pl.* Manes, spirits of the	
dead; the underworld	

16. Horace, *Carmina* III.9 (Asclepiadean)

A dialogue between former lovers

Dōnec grātus eram tibi

    nec quisquam* potior bracchia candidae

cervīcī iuvenis dabat,

    Persārum viguī rēge beātior.

"dōnec nōn aliā magis   5

    arsistī neque erat Lȳdia post Chloēn,

multī Lȳdia nōminis

    Rōmānā viguī clārior Īliā."

mē nunc Thrēssa Chloē regit,

    dulcīs docta modōs† et citharae sciēns,   10

prō quā nōn metuam morī,

    sī parcent animae fāta superstitī.

"mē torret face mūtuā

    Thūrīnī Calais fīlius Ornȳtī,

prō quō bis patiar morī,   15

    sī parcent puerō fāta superstitī."

*quisquam, indef. pron. used adjectivally

†modōs, *here, Accusative of Respect,* in (respect to) measures or verses

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire

beātus, -a, -um happy, blessed, fortunate

bis (adv.) two times, twice

bracchium, bracchiī *n.* (lower) arm

Calais, Calais *m.* Calais

candidus, -a, -um white, clear, bright, radiant

cervīx, cervīcis *f.* neck

Chloē, Chloēs *f.* Chloe; Chloēn = *acc. sing.*

cithara, citharae *f.* cithara; lute

doctus, -a, -um learned, skilled, clever

fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch

Īlia, Īliae *f.* Ilia, mother of Romulus and Remus

iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* or *f.* young man, young woman

Lȳdia, Lȳdiae *f.* Lydia

mūtuus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual

Ornȳtus, Ornȳtī *m.* Ornytus

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

Persae, Persārum *f. pl.* (the) Persians

potior, potius more powerful; preferable

superstes, superstitis standing by, present; surviving

Thrēssa, Thrēssae *f.* (a) Thracian woman

Thūrīnus, -a, -um of Thurii, a city in southern Italy

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus parch, roast, scorch, burn

vigeō, vigēre, viguī, —— be vigorous, thrive, flourish, live

quid sī prīsca redit Venus

   dīductōsque iugō cōgit aēneō,

sī flāva excutitur Chloē

   reiectaeque patet iānua Lȳdiae?   20

"quamquam sīdere pulchrior

   ille est, tū levior cortice et inprobō

īrācundior Hadriā,

   tēcum vīvere amem, tēcum obeam lubēns."

aēneus, -a, -um of bronze, bronze	improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless; relentless
Chloē, Chloēs f. Chloe	īrācundus, -a, -um irascible, angry, moody
cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive together, force, compel	iugum, iugī n. yoke
	libēns, libentis willing, glad
cortex, corticis m. or f. cork	Lȳdia, Lȳdiae f. Lydia
dīdūcō (dis- + dūcō) draw apart, separate	obeō (ob- + eō), obīre, obiī or obīvī, obitus go to meet; fall, perish, die
excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussus shake off, cast out	pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond	prīscus, -a, -um of former times, old, ancient
Hadria, Hadriae m. or f. Adriatic sea	reiciō (re- + iaciō) throw back, reject
iānua, iānuae f. door	sīdus, sīderis n. star

17. Propertius II.19.1–8

The poet imagines that a stay in the country will keep Cynthia safe from romantic entanglements.

Etsī mē invītō discēdis, Cynthia, Rōmā,

   laetor quod sine mē dēvia rūra colēs.

nūllus erit castīs iuvenis corruptor in agrīs,

   quī tē blanditiīs nōn sinat esse probam;

nūlla* neque ante tuās oriētur rixa fenestrās,   5

   nec tibi clāmātae somnus amārus erit.

sōla eris et sōlōs spectābis, Cynthia, montēs

   et pecus et fīnēs pauperis agricolae.

*The redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.	fenestra, fenestrae f. window
	invītus, -a, -um unwilling
amārus, -a, -um bitter, harsh	iuvenis, iuvenis young
blanditia, blanditiae f. ingratiating speech, blandishment; in pl., sweet nothings	laetor (1-intr.) rejoice, be glad, be delighted
	pauper, pauperis poor
castus, -a, -um free from vice, moral, chaste	pecus, pecoris n. herd animal; livestock
clāmō (1-tr.) shout for, call by name	probus, -a, -um excellent, upright, virtuous
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; inhabit	rixa, rixae f. altercation, brawl
corruptor, corruptōris m. corrupter, seducer	sinō, sinere, sīī or sīvī, situs allow, permit
Cynthia, Cynthiae f. Cynthia	somnus, somnī m. sleep
dēvius, -a, -um out of the way, remote, secluded	

18. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* II.46.3–7

The historian describes a battle between the Romans and the Etruscans, particularly those from the city of Veii. Three members of the Fabii give evidence of Roman bravery.

vix explicandī ordinis spatium Etruscīs fuit cum, pīlīs inter prīmam trepidātiōnem abiectīs temere magis quam ēmissīs, pugna iam in manūs, iam ad gladiōs, ubi Mars est atrōcissimus, vēnerat. inter prīmōrēs genus Fabium īnsigne spectāculō exemplōque cīvibus erat. ex hīs Q. Fabium—tertiō hic annō ante cōnsul fuerat— prīncipem in cōnfertōs Veientēs euntem ferōx vīribus et armōrum arte Tuscus, in- cautum inter multās versantem hostium manūs, gladiō per pectus trānsfīgit; tēlō extractō praeceps Fabius in volnus abiit.* sēnsit utraque aciēs ūnīus virī cāsum, cēdēbatque inde Rōmānus cum M. Fabius cōnsul trānsiluit iacentis corpus obiec- tāque parmā, "hoc iūrāstis" inquit, "mīlitēs, fugientēs vōs in castra reditūrōs? adeō ignāvissimōs hostēs magis timētis quam Iovem Martemque per† quōs iūrāstis? at ego iniūrātus aut victor revertar aut prope tē hīc, Q. Fabī, dīmicāns cadam." cōn- sulī tum Caesō Fabius, priōris annī cōnsul: "verbīsne istīs, frāter, ut pugnent, tē

*abeō, *here*, fall over

†per, *here* (in oaths), by

abiciō (ab- + iaciō) cast away, throw away, cast down

at (conj.) but

atrōx, atrōcis dark, gloomy; cruel, fierce

cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together

dīmicō (1-intr.) contend, fight

ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send forth, hurl, cast

Etruscī, Etruscōrum *m. pl.* (the) Etruscans

exemplum, exemplī *n.* example

explicō (1-tr.) unfold, unfurl; spread out, extend

extrahō, extrahere, extrāxī, extractus draw out, extract

Fabius, -a, -um of the Fabii, Fabian

Caesō Fabius, Caesōnis Fabiī *m.* Caeso Fabius

M. Fabius, M. Fabiī *m.* M. Fabius

Q. Fabius, Q. Fabiī *m.* Q. Fabius

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie; lie dead

ignāvus, -a, -um lazy; cowardly, spiritless; ignoble

incautus, -a, -um heedless, unaware

iniūrātus, -a, -um not having taken an oath, unsworn

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

īnsignis, īnsigne prominent, eminent, distin- guished

iūrō (1-intr.) take an oath, swear

obiciō (ob- + iaciō) put in the way, interpose

ordō, ordinis *m.* order; row, line, arrangement; (battle) order

parma, parmae *f.* (small, round) shield (carried by infantry)

pīlum, pīlī *n.* (heavy) javelin

praeceps, praecipitis headlong, head first

prīmōrēs, prīmōrum *m. pl.* leading men, front ranks

prīnceps, prīncipis first, in front

prope (prep. + acc.) near

pugna, pugnae *f.* battle

revertor, revertī, reversus sum turn back; return

spatium, spatiī *n.* space; (space of) time, interval

spectāculum, spectāculī *n.* sight, spectacle

temere (adv.) by chance, at random; rashly

trānsfīgō, trānsfīgere, trānsfīxī, trānsfīxus pierce

trānsiliō, trānsilīre, trānsiluī, —— leap across, jump over

trepidātiō, trepidātiōnis *f.* alarm, agitation, confu- sion, consternation

Tuscus, -a, -um Tuscan, Etruscan

uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. adj.) each (of two)

Veientēs, Veientium *m. pl.* the people of Veii, Veiians

versō (1-intr.) turn, twist, whirl about

victor, victōris *m.* victor, conqueror

impetrātūrum crēdis? dī impetrābunt per* quōs iūrāvēre; et nōs, ut decet procerēs, ut Fabiō nōmine est dignum, pugnandō potius quam adhortandō accendāmus mīlitum animōs." sīc in prīmum† īnfēnsīs hastīs prōvolant duo Fabiī, tōtamque mōvērunt sēcum aciem.

*per, *here* (in oaths), by

†prīmum, prīmī *n.* front line

accendō, accendere, accendī, accēnsus set on fire, kindle; stir up, arouse

adhortor (1-tr.) encourage, urge on

decet, decēre, decuit (impersonal verb) it becomes, it befits

Fabius, -a, -um of the Fabiī, Fabian

hasta, hastae *f.* spear

impetrō (1-tr.) obtain by entreaty; persuade

īnfēnsus, -a, -um hostile, threatening

iūrō (1-intr.) take an oath, swear

potius (comparative adv.) rather

procerēs, procerum *m. pl.* leading men, leaders

prōvolō (1-intr.) fly out, fly forth; rush forward

19. Lucan, *Bellum Cīvīle* IX.961–69

The poet describes Caesar visiting the ruins of Troy.

Sīgēasque petit* fāmae mīrātor harēnās

et Simoëntis aquās et Graiō nōbile bustō

Rhoetion et multum dēbentīs vātibus umbrās.

circumit exustae nōmen memorābile Troiae

magnaque Phoebēī quaerit vestīgia mūrī.   965

iam silvae sterilēs et putrēs rōbore truncī

Assaracī pressēre domōs et templa deōrum

iam lassā rādīce tenent, ac tōta teguntur

Pergama dūmētīs: etiam periēre ruīnae.

*petit, subject is Caesar
aqua, aquae *f.* water
Assaracus, Assaracī *m.* Assaracus, king of Troy
bustum, bustī *n.* funeral pyre; grave mound,
  tomb
circumeō (circum- + eō), circumīre, circumiī,
  circumitus go around, encircle
dūmēta, dūmētōrum *n. pl.* thorns, thickets,
  bushes
exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustus destroy by fire,
  burn completely
Graius, -a, -um Greek
harēna, harēnae *f.* sand
lassus, -a, -um exhausted, weary, tired
memorābilis, memorābile memorable
mīrātor, mīrātōris *m.* admirer
nōbilis, nōbile noble; renowned, famous
Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama, citadel
  of Troy

Phoebēus, -a, -um of *or* associated with Phoebus
  (Apollo)
putris, putre decomposed, rotten, putrid
rādīx, rādīcis, -ium *f.* root
Rhoetion, Rhoetiī *n.* Rhoetion, a town near Troy
rōbur, rōboris *n.* oak tree; timber; strength,
  firmness
ruīna, ruīnae *f.* ruin
Sīgēus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Sigeum,
  a town near Troy; Trojan
silva, silvae *f.* forest
Simoīs, Simoëntis *m.* (the river) Simois near
  Troy
sterilis, sterile barren, sterile
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
truncus, truncī *m.* (tree) trunk
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet
vestīgium, vestīgiī *n.* trace, remnant, vestige

Marcus Annaeus Lucānus (39–65 c.e.) was the nephew of Seneca the Younger and served as a quaestor under
Nero. Discovered in a plot to kill the emperor, he was forced to take his own life. Lucan's epic style is marked by
vivid and rapid narration, elegant and sometimes artificial language, and a pessimistic tone strongly in contrast to
Vergil's *Aeneid*.

   The *Pharsālia* or *Bellum Cīvīle* is an epic poem in ten books, which begins with Caesar's crossing of the Ru-
bicon and recounts the closing episodes of Rome's civil wars. Many books are devoted to the exploits of Caesar and
Pompey, their final rift, and Pompey's murder in Egypt.

20. Petronius, *Satyricon* 37

A first-time guest at a wealthy man's dinner party has asked the identity of a woman scurrying about the dining room. A veteran guest offers a description of the host's wife and of the host, Trimalchio.

"uxor," inquit, "Trimalchiōnis, Fortūnāta appellātur, quae nummōs modiō mētītur. et modo modo quid fuit? ignōscet mihi genius tuus, nōluissēs* dē manū illīus pānem accipere. nunc, nec quid nec quāre, in caelum abiit et Trimalchiōnis topanta est. ad summam,† merō merīdiē sī dīxerit illī tenebrās esse, crēdet. ipse nescit quid habeat, adeō saplūtus est; sed haec lupātria prōvidet omnia, est ubi nōn putēs. est sicca, sōbria, bonōrum cōnsiliōrum—tantum aurī vidēs—est tamen malae linguae, pīca pulvīnāris. quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat. ipse‡ fundōs habet, quā§ mīlvī volant, nummōrum nummōs. argentum in ostiāriī illīus cellā plūs iacet quam quisquam in fortūnīs habet. familia vērō babae babae, nōn meherculēs putō decumam partem esse quae dominum suum nōverit.

*nōluissēs, verb in apodosis of Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence (protasis is omitted)

†ad summam, *here*, in short, to sum up

‡ipse refers to Trimalchio.

§quā, *here* (adv.), where

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

argentum, argentī *n.* silver; silver plate

babae babae (interj.) *exclamation indicating surprise and admiration* babae! babae!
  (< Greek *babai! babai!* transliterated into Latin)

cella, cellae *f.* small room; storeroom

Fortūnāta, Fortūnātae *f.* Fortunata

familia, familiae *f.* household; family slaves

fundus, fundī *m.* (piece of) land; farm, estate

genius, geniī *m. genius*, tutelary deity of a person or place; divine nature; spiritual part

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie (open); be at hand

ignōscō (in- + nōscō), ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus forgive, pardon (+ dat.)

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language

lupātria, lupātriae *f. lupatria*, abusive term for a woman, whore

merō merīdiē (adv.) right at noon, at noon exactly

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum measure; mete (out)

mīlvus, mīlvī *m.* kite (bird of prey)

modius, modiī *m. modius*, a Roman grain measure; peck

nummus, nummī *m. nummus*, a Roman coin

ostiārius, ostiāriī *m.* doorkeeper, porter

pānis, pānis, -ium *m.* bread

pīca, pīcae *f.* magpie

prōvideō (prō- + videō) see to, attend to

pulvīnāris, pulvīnāre of *or* pertaining to a cushion *or* pillow; resting on a couch; pīca pulvīnāris, *apparently* a gossipy bird

saplūtus, -a, -um very rich (< Greek *zaploutos* transliterated into Latin)

siccus, -a, -um dry

sōbrius, -a, -um sensible, sober; cautious

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

topanta (indeclinable noun) everything
  (< Greek *ta panta* transliterated into Latin)

Trimalchiō, Trimalchiōnis *m.* Trimalchio

uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

volō (1-intr.) fly

As identified by the historian Tacitus in his *Annālēs*, Petronius lived during the reign of Nero in the first century C.E. In the course of describing Petronius's protracted suicide—compelled by his loss of favor with Nero—the historian gives to Petronius the title arbiter ēlegantiae (minister of culture) and thereby suggests what role Petronius may have played in Neronian society. It is likely that this Petronius was the author of the work entitled the *Satyricon*.

From the surviving fragments the *Satyricon* appears to have been a long work of prose fiction recounting the Odyssean and surreal adventures of three young men. The fragments are written in a mixed literary style that includes many allusions to and parodies of other works of Latin and Greek literature. Since many of the characters are drawn from the common life of the Greek settlements in southern Italy, the *Satyricon*'s fragments are a valuable source of information about colloquial Latin, the sermō cottīdiānus (daily speech), of the first century C.E. The largest fragment, usually referred to as the *Cēna Trimalchiōnis* (Banquet of Trimalchio), contains vivid speeches in character by many of the dinner guests, for the most part successful businessmen of the upper middle class.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 15–16

potestne tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, aut huius caelī spīritus esse iūcundus, cum sciās esse
hōrum nēminem quī nesciat tē prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās Lepidō et Tullō cōnsulibus
stetisse in Comitiō cum tēlō, manum cōnsulum et prīncipum cīvitātis interficien-
dōrum causā parāvisse, scelerī ac furōrī tuō nōn mentem aliquam aut timōrem tuum
sed fortūnam populī Rōmānī obstitisse? ac iam illa omittō—neque enim* sunt aut
obscūra aut nōn multa commissa posteā—quotiēns tū mē dēsignātum,† quotiēns
vērō cōnsulem interficere cōnātūs es! quot ego tuās petītiōnēs ita coniectās ut vītārī
posse nōn vidērentur parvā quādam dēclīnātiōne et, ut aiunt, corpore effūgī! nihil
agis, nihil adsequeris, neque tamen‡ cōnārī ac velle dēsistis. quotiēns iam tibi extorta
est ista sīca dē manibus, quotiēns excidit cāsū aliquō et ēlāpsa est! quae quidem
quibus abs tē initiāta sacrīs ac dēvōta sit nesciō, quod eam necesse putās esse in cōn-
sulis corpore dēfīgere.

*neque enim for . . . not . . .
†dēsignātum, *sc.* cōnsulem
‡neque tamen and yet . . . not . . .
abs = ab
assequor (ad- + sequor) gain, reach, attain
aiō (defective verb) say; aiunt = *3rd pl. pres. act.*
  indic.
Comitium, Comitiī *n.* (the) Comitium, place
  where the assembly met
commissum, commissī *n.* offense, crime
coniciō (con- + iaciō) throw (together), cast, bring
dēclīnātiō, dēclīnātiōnis *f.* swerving, swerve
dēfīgō, dēfīgere, dēfīxī, dēfīxus fix, plant
dēsignātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet
  installed)
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, —— cease, leave off
dēvoveō, dēvovēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus dedicate
effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape
ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum slip out
excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidī, —— fall *or*
  slip from
extorqueō, extorquēre, extorsī, extortus twist out
furor, furōris *m.* madness

Iānuārius, -a, -um of January
initiō (1-tr.) consecrate
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
Kalendae, Kalendārum *f. pl.* (the) Kalends, the
  first day of a month
Lepidus, Lepidī *m.* Lepidus
obscūrus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure; uncertain
obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstitī, obstātum stand
  in the way; hinder, block
omittō (ob- + mittō) disregard, pass over
parō (1-tr.) prepare; get
petītiō, petītiōnis *f.* attack, thrust
posteā (adv.) after, afterward
prīdiē (prep. + acc.) on the day before
prīnceps, prīncipis first, foremost, chief;
  as subst., leading man
quotiēns (adv.) how many times
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred
sīca, sīcae *f.* dagger
spīritus, spīritūs *m.* breath, breeze
Tullus, Tullī *m.* Tullus
vītō (1-tr.) avoid

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 4

igitur ubi animus ex multīs miseriīs atque perīculīs requiēvit et mihi relicuam aetā-
tem ā rē pūblicā procul habendam dēcrēvī, nōn fuit cōnsilium socordiā atque dēsidiā
bonum ōtium conterere, neque vērō agrum colundō aut vēnandō, servīlibus officiīs,
intentum aetātem agere; sed ā quō inceptō studiōque mē ambitiō mala dētinuerat,
eōdem regressus statuī rēs gestās populī Rōmānī carptim, ut quaeque memoriā
digna vidēbantur, perscrībere, eō magis quod mihi ā spē, metū, partibus reī pūblicae
animus līber erat. igitur dē Catilīnae coniūrātiōne quam vērissumē poterō* paucīs†
absolvam; nam id facinus in prīmīs‡ ego memorābile exīstumō sceleris atque perīculī
novitāte. dē quoius hominis mōribus pauca prius explānanda sunt quam initium nār-
randī faciam.

*quam vērissumē poterō = quam vērissumē
†paucīs, *sc.* verbīs
‡in prīmīs, *here,* especially, above all; first
absolvō, absolvere, absolvī, absolūtus finish,
  complete; sum up, describe briefly
ambitiō, ambitiōnis *f.* flattery, adulation; desire
  for power, ambition
carptim (adv.) in parts, separately
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; colundō
  = archaic form of colendō
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
conterō, conterere, contrīvī, contrītus grind, wear
  out; consume, spend
dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus determine,
  decide, decree
dēsidia, dēsidiae *f.* idleness, inactivity, sloth
dētineō (dē- + teneō), dētinēre, dētinuī, dētentus
  hold back, detain; hinder, prevent
exīstimō (ex- + aestimō) (1-tr.) reckon, suppose,
  estimate
explānō (1-tr.) make plain, make clear, explain
facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

initium, initiī *n.* beginning
intentus, -a, -um stretched, attentive, intent
memorābilis, memorābile worthy of being
  remembered, remarkable
miseria, miseriae *f.* misery
nārrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of); describe
novitās, novitātis *f.* newness, strangeness
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, task
ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure, idleness
perscrībō (per- + scrībō) write a detailed *or* full
  account of
procul (adv.) at a distance, far
regredior (re- + gradior) go back, return
relicuam = archaic form of reliquam
requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvī, requiētum
  (take a) rest; desist
servīlis, servīle of *or* belonging to a slave, servile
socordia, socordiae *f.* laziness, indolence,
  inactivity
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand,
  set up, establish; decide
vēnor (1-intr.) hunt

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.533–46

hīc Priamus, quamquam in mediā iam morte tenētur,

nōn tamen abstinuit nec vōcī īraeque pepercit:

"at tibi prō scelere," exclāmat, "prō tālibus ausīs*   535

dī, sī qua est caelō pietās quae tālia cūret,

persolvant grātēs dignās et praemia reddant

dēbita, quī nātī cōram mē cernere lētum

fēcistī et patriōs foedāstī fūnere vultūs.

at nōn ille, satum quō tē mentīris, Achillēs   540

tālis in† hoste fuit Priamō; sed iūra fidemque

supplicis ērubuit corpusque exsangue sepulcrō

reddidit Hectoreum mēque in mea rēgna remīsit."

sīc fātus senior tēlumque imbelle sine ictū

coniēcit, raucō quod prōtinus aere repulsum,   545

et summō clipeī nēquīquam umbōne pependit.

---

*ausum, ausī *n.* bold deed, exploit; crime, outrage

†in, *here,* in the case of

Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles

abstineō (abs- + teneō), abstinēre, abstinuī, abstentus hold back, restrain, refrain

aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze

at (conj.) but

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, determine, perceive; see

clipeus, clipeī *m.* shield

coniciō (con- + iaciō) throw (together), cast

cōram (adv.) face to face, in person

cūrō (1-tr.) watch over, look after

ērubēscō, ērubēscere, ērubuī, —— blush (for shame); feel shame in the presence of

exclāmō (1-intr.) cry out

exsanguis, exsangue bloodless

foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile

for (1-tr.) speak, utter

fūnus, fūneris *n.* in *sing.* or *pl.* funeral (procession); death

grātēs, grātium *f. pl.* thanks

Hectoreus, -a, -um of Hector, Hector's

ictus, ictūs *m.* thrust, blow

imbellis, imbelle not suited to warfare, unwarlike

lētum, lētī *n.* death, destruction

mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum lie, tell a lie

nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

patrius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to a father, paternal

pendeō, pendēre, pependī, —— hang, be suspended

persolvō, persolvere, persolvī, persolūtus pay in full; render

pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

praemium, praemiī *n.* reward, prize

prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway

raucus, -a, -um harsh-sounding, noisy, raucous

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return; hand over, deliver

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

remittō (re- + mittō) send back

repellō (re- + pellō), repellere, reppulī, repulsus push back, repel

serō, serere, sēvī, satus sow; engender, beget

senex, senis old

sepulcrum, sepulcrī *n.* tomb, grave

supplex, supplicis suppliant

umbō, umbōnis *m.* boss (of a shield)

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; *in pl.,* face

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.504–39

"nympha, precor, Pēnēi, manē! nōn īnsequor hostis;

nympha, manē! sīc agna lupum, sīc cerva leōnem, 505

sīc aquilam pennā fugiunt trepidante columbae,

hostēs quaeque suōs: amor est mihi causa sequendī!

mē miserum! nē prōna cadās indignave laedī

crūra notent sentēs et sim tibi causa dolōris!

aspera, quā* properās, loca sunt: moderātius, ōrō, 510

curre fugamque inhibē, moderātius īnsequar ipse.

cui placeās inquīre tamen: nōn incola montis,

nōn ego sum pāstor, nōn hīc armenta gregēsque

horridus observō. nescīs, temerāria, nescīs

quem fugiās, ideōque fugis: mihi Delphica tellūs 515

*quā, *here* (adv.) where
agna, agnae *f.* lamb
aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle
armentum, armentī *n.* herd
asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce; pitiless
cerva, cervae *f.* deer; doe
columba, columbae *f.* dove
crūs, crūris *n.* leg
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum run, rush
Delphicus, -a, -um Delphic, of Delphi, a Greek
    town and seat of Apollo's oracle
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
grex, gregis *m.* or *f.* flock
horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible
ideō (adv.) for this reason; therefore
inhiheō (in- + habeō), inhibēre, inhibuī,
    inhibitus hold back, check, restrain
inquīrō (in- + quaerō), inquīrere, inquīsiī or
    inquīsīvī, inquīsītus inquire into, investigate
īnsequor (in- + sequor) follow closely, pursue

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm
leō, leōnis *m.* lion
lupus, lupī *m.* wolf
moderātē (adv.) moderately, temperately
notō (1-tr.) mark; scar
nympha, nymphae *f.* nymph, a semidivine spirit
observō (ob- + servō) (1-tr.) watch over, guard,
    observe
pāstor, pāstōris *m.* shepherd
Pēnēis, Pēnēidos descended from the river god
    Peneus; Pēnēi = *fem. sing. voc.*
penna, pennae *f.* wing
precor (1-tr.) pray
prōnus, -a, -um (leaning) forward, headlong
properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush
sentis, sentis, -ium *m.* briar, bramble
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
temerārius, -a, -um rash
trepidō (1-intr.) tremble
-ve (enclitic conj.) or

et Claros et Tenedos Patarēaque rēgia servit;

Iuppiter est genitor; per mē quod eritque fuitque

estque patet; per mē concordant carmina nervīs.

certa quidem nostra est, nostrā tamen ūna sagitta

certior, in vacuō quae vulnera pectore fēcit!   520

inventum* medicīna meum est, opiferque per orbem

dīcor, et herbārum subiecta potentia nōbīs.

ei mihi, quod nūllīs amor est sānābilis herbīs

nec prōsunt dominō, quae prōsunt omnibus, artēs!"

plūra locūtūrum timidō Pēnēia cursū   525

fūgit cumque ipsō verba inperfecta relīquit,

tum quoque vīsa decēns; nūdābant corpora† ventī,

*inventum, inventī *n.* discovery, invention
†corpora, *here,* limbs
Claros, Clarī *f.* Claros, a town in Ionia
concordō (1-intr.) be in harmony
cursus, cursūs *m.* running, run
decēns, decentis becoming, graceful
ei (interj.) *expression of anguish,* o! alas!; ei mihi,
    woe is me!
genitor, genitōris *m.* father
herba, herbae *f.* grass; plant; herb
imperfectus, -a, -um unfinished, incomplete
medicīna, medicīnae *f.* medicine
nervus, nervī *m.* sinew; (bow-)string; string
    (of an instrument)
nūdō (1-tr.) make naked, bare, lay bare
obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving
    against, opposed in direction
opifer, opifera, opiferum aid-bringing
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world

Patarēus, -a, -um of Patara, a city in Asia Minor
pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open; be revealed
Pēnēius, -a, -um of Peneus (a river god)
potentia, potentiae *f.* power, influence
properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush
prōsum (prō- + sum), prōdesse, prōfuī, prō-
    futūrus be an aid, benefit
rēgia, rēgiae *f.* palace; royal seat, capital
sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
sānābilis, sānābile able to be healed, curable
serviō, servīre, servīvī or serviī, servītum be a
    slave, serve (+ dat.)
subiciō (sub- + iaciō) place below; make subject
Tenedos, Tenedī *f.* Tenedos, an island off Troy
timidus, -a, -um fearful, afraid, timid
vacuus, -a, -um empty; idle; free, available; care-
    free, disengaged
ventus, ventī *m.* wind

obviaque adversās vibrābant flāmina vestēs,

et levis inpulsōs retrō dabat aura capillōs,

auctaque forma fugā est. sed enim nōn sustinet ultrā   530

perdere blanditiās iuvenis deus, utque monēbat

ipse Amor, admissō sequitur vestīgia passū.

ut canis in vacuō leporem cum* Gallicus arvō

vīdit,* et hic praedam pedibus petit, ille salūtem;

alter inhaesūrō similis iam iamque† tenēre   535

spērat et extentō stringit vestīgia rostrō,

alter in ambiguō est an sit conprēnsus, et ipsīs

morsibus ēripitur tangentiaque ōra relinquit:

sīc deus et virgō est, hic spē celer, illa timōre.

*cum . . . vīdit whenever . . . sees
†iam iamque at any time now
admittō (ad- + mittō) admit; let go, release
adversus, -a, -um opposite, opposing
ambiguum, ambiguī *n.* ambiguity; in ambiguō,
  in an ambiguous state, in doubt
arvum, arvī *n.* (ploughed) field
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus grow, increase
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
blanditia, blanditiae *f.* ingratiating speech, bland-
  ishment; *in pl.*, sweet nothings
canis, canis *m.* or *f.* dog
celer, celeris, celere swift, fast
capillus, capillī *m. in sing. or pl.* hair
comprendō, comprendere, comprendī,
  comprēnsus take hold of, seize, catch
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch
  away
extendō, extendere, extendī, extentus or extēnsus
  make taut, stretch out
flāmen, flāminis *n.* blast, gust (of wind); breeze
forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty
Gallicus, -a, -um of Gaul, Gallic
impellō (in + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
  push against; press upon

inhaereō, inhaerēre, inhaesī, inhaesūrus hold on
  tightly, stick, cling
iuvenis, iuvene young
lepus, leporis *m.* hare
morsus, morsūs *m.* bite; *in pl.*, teeth, jaws
obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving
  against, opposed in direction
passus, passūs *m.* pace, step, stride
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder; prey
retrō (adv.) toward the rear, backward
rostrum, rostrī *n.* snout, muzzle
stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strīnctus graze, skim,
  touch lightly
sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinuī, ——
  withstand, endure
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch; reach
ultrā (adv.) beyond; further, more; *in negative
  clauses,* any more, any longer
vacuus, -a, -um empty
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
vestīgium, vestīgiī *n.* footprint, track, trace
vestis, vestis, -ium *f.* clothing, garment
vibrō (1-tr.) (cause to) move to and fro *or* flap
virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

CHAPTER XV

Vocabulary

➤ caput, capitis *n.* head

➤ nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen

➤ orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle
  ➤ orbis terrārum, world

➤ vultus, vultūs *m. in sing. or pl.* expression; face

➤ circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus place round; surround

➤ for (1-tr.) speak, say

➤ obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātum stand in the way; hinder, block (§138)

➤ vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid (§138)

➤ dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus deter, prevent (§138)

➤ prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid (§138)

➤ vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, show respect to; dread, fear (§137)

➤ cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround; gird (on oneself)

➤ cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus set up, establish; decide

➤ rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus seize, tear away, carry (off)
  ➤ ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

➤ solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen; free, release; dissolve

impediō, impedīre, impedīvī or impediī, impedītus hinder, impede (§138)

interest, interesse, interfuit it is important, it concerns (§139)

➤ miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est it moves (one) to pity (§139)
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit it causes (one) to repent *or* regret (§139)
piget, pigēre, piguit it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (§139)

➤ pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est it makes (one) ashamed (§139)
rēfert, rēferre, rētulit it is important, it concerns (§139)

➤ taedet, taedēre, taesum est it makes (one) tired *or* sick (§139)

celer, celeris, celere swift
dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

nē (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause,* that (§137)
quīn (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause,* that . . . not, from (§138)

➤ quod (conj.) the fact that

➤ quōminus (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause,* by which the less, from (§138)
ut (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause,* that . . . not (§137)

Vocabulary Notes

In addition to meaning "head," **caput, capitis** *n.* may mean the "life" of a man, particularly in oaths and when representing the price paid for an offense. **Caput** is also used, with affection or contempt, to refer to the entire "person."

nūmen, nūminis *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix -men to a stem of the verb *nuō, *nuere, *nuī, *nūtus, "nod."[1] **Nūmen** may mean the "divine will" that approves of or lies behind events or actions, or it may mean more generally the "divine power," "divinity," or "(divine) spirit" that each god possesses.

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* may indicate many circular shapes (ring, circle, sphere, ball, disk). The idiom **orbis terrārum** (occasionally **orbis terrae**) is so common that sometimes **orbis** unmodified by a genitive form of terra may also mean "world."

vultus, vultūs *m.* may refer to a particular facial "expression" or more generally to a person's "countenance" or "appearance" (with an emphasis on the appearance of the face). In both the singular and the plural it may indicate a person's "face." When **vultus** is used in combination with ōs, **vultus** refers to the upper portion of the face, and ōs to the lower.

circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix circum- to dō. (For the prefix circum- see Appendix P.) It may appear with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (see §144). **Circumdō** may also mean "place" something (Accusative, Direct Object) "around" something (Dative with a Compound Verb).

for, fārī, fātus sum is cognate with **fāma**. For is far more common in poetry than in prose. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object or introduce a direct quotation. It does *not* introduce Indirect Statement. **For** is often used of the utterances of gods and occasionally of humans when they are speaking prophetically. The noun **fātum** is in origin a substantive of the neuter perfect passive participle of this verb (a having been spoken thing). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **FOR** DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ob- to stō. (For the prefix ob- see Appendix P.) It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third principal part. **Obstō** may take a Dative with a Compound Verb and may introduce a Prevention clause (see §138).

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus is an irregular first-conjugation verb. For constructions with **vetō** see §138.

dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix dē- to terreō. (For the prefix dē- see Appendix P.) **Dēterreō** may introduce a Prevention clause (see §138).

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix prō- to habeō. (For the prefix prō- see Appendix P.) It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. For constructions with **prohibeō** see §138.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum may introduce a Fear clause (see §137), and while it may mean "fear" or "dread," it often means "show respect for" or "be in awe of" those who are greater in rank or being (gods, parents, kings). It has a broader meaning than **timeō**, a verb that reports fear but not awe or reverence. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **VEREOR** DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus often appears with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (see §144). It may also be used to mean "surround" or "encircle" something (Accusative, Direct Object) with something (Ablative of Means). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **CINGŌ** DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus has a broad range of meanings, which include "station" or "draw up" (soldiers, troops); "establish" or "build" (towers, altars); "make" or "create" (the human race, laws, peace); and "fix," "appoint," or "agree upon" (a price, a specific day, boundaries). When **cōnstituō** means "decide," it is followed by an Object Infinitive.

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus describes the violent action of seizing and carrying off things or people. It is also used to mean "(sexually) violate" or "rape."

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix ē- to rapiō. (For the prefix ē- see Appendix P.) It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. Although **ēripiō** is a synonym of rapiō, it is also used to mean "snatch" or "rescue" (from danger, death). THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **RAPIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒRIPIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **RAPIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

---

1. While the simple verb *nuō does not occur in the Latin that survives, several compounds (e.g., **abnuō, adnuō, innuō,** and renuō) are common.

The basic meaning of **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus** is "loosen" or "untie" (bonds, ropes). Its extended meanings include "free," "release," or "relax" (persons, souls, limbs). Finally, **solvō** is used to mean "resolve," "acquit," or "discharge" (problems, debts, vows, legal charges). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM SOLVŌ DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF SOLVŌ APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, *BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.*

miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est has *two* third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. Both are extremely rare in the Latin that survives.

pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est has *two* third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. Puditum est is extremely rare.

The third principal part of **taedet, taedēre, taesum est** appears only once in the Latin that survives. Slightly more frequent is the compound form **pertaesum est.**

When **quod** means "the fact that," it introduces a noun clause with a verb in the indicative mood. Such a clause may be used with the impersonal verbs paenitet, piget, and **pudet** (see §139), but **quod**-the-fact-that clauses also appear frequently with other verbs or in apposition to a variety of nouns or pronouns.

> Eius factum fortissimum meminerimus, quod vulnere accepto vitam consulis servavit.
> We shall remember his very brave deed, the fact that, with a wound received, he saved the consul's life.

quōminus is a compound conjunction made up of the relative pronoun **quō** (by which degree) and the comparative adverb **minus** (less). It is often written as two separate words (**quō minus**). The use of quōminus to introduce Prevention clauses (see §138) reflects their origins as Purpose clauses.

	Derivatives	Cognates
cingō	cinch; suc*cinct*	
caput	*capital; capitulate; captain; chapter;* head; chief; de*capit*ate	
orbis	orb; orbit	
paenitet	penitent	
rapiō	rape; rapt; *ravish; raven; rapid*	
solvō	dis*solve;* solute	for*lorn;* -less; *loose;* lose; ana*lysis*
taedet	*tedium*	
vereor	re*vere*	*wary; aware;* ste*ward; guard*

§137. Fear Clauses

A verb or other expression of fearing may introduce a subordinate clause that expresses the thing feared. Such a clause, called a **Fear clause**, is introduced by the conjunction **ut** (that . . . not) or **nē** (that) and has its verb in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

> Magnopere metuit *nē* filius in bellō *moriātur*.
> Greatly he fears *that* (his) son in war *will die*.
> He greatly fears *that* his son *will die* in war.
> Pater timēbat *ut* filius ē bellō *redisset*.
> The father was fearing *that* (his) son (out) from the war *had not returned*.
> The father was fearing *that* his son *had not returned* from the war.
> Ūna cūra sociōs movēbat *nē* Rōmānī auxilium *nōn mitterent*.
> One concern the allies (d.o.) was stirring up: *that* the Romans aid (d.o.) *were not sending/would not send*.
> One concern was stirring up the allies: *that* the Romans *were not sending/would not send* aid.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Fear clause was originally an independent sentence whose verb was an Optative subjunctive expressing a wish in relation to a feeling of fear:

> **Magnopere metuit. *Nē* filius in bellō *moriātur*.**
> He greatly fears. *If only* his son *would not die* in war.

Such a paratactic arrangement easily became one sentence:

> **Magnopere metuit *nē* filius in bellō *moriātur*.**
> He greatly fears *that* his son *will die* in war.

The apparent reversal of the English translations of ut and nē can be accounted for in this way:

> What one *wishes would* happen one *fears will not* happen (ut).
> What one *wishes would not* happen one *fears will* happen (nē).

2. In the third sentence above nē . . . nōn (that . . . not) is used to introduce a negative Fear clause. In early Latin the conjunction ut introducing such a clause is much more common than nē . . . nōn. By the classical period nē . . . nōn is much more common than the simple ut, and it is regularly used when the expression of fearing is *negated*. For example:

> **Nōn metuō nē domum post bellum filius *nōn redeat*.**
> *I do not fear that* my son *will not return* home after the war.

3. The subjunctive verbs in Fear clauses follow the rules of sequence. Thus the syntax of, for example, moriātur is **present subjunctive**, **Fear clause**, **primary sequence**. In this sentence the present tense of the subjunctive indicates an action that is *subsequent* to the action of the main verb.[2] Such a fear for the future may be expressed more emphatically with an active periphrastic:

> **Magnopere metuit *nē* filius in bellō *moritūrus sit*.**
> He greatly fears *that* his son *is going to/will die* in war.

---

2. Although the present subjunctive may also indicate an action that is simultaneous with the main verb, sense makes this less likely in this sentence.

4. In the second sentence above the subjunctive redīsset is *pluperfect* to indicate an action that is *prior to* the action of the main verb. In the third sentence mitterent is *imperfect* to indicate an action that is either *simultaneous with* or *subsequent to* the action of the main verb. The tense of the English translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

☛ Drill 137 may now be done.

§138. Prevention Clauses

A verb of hindering or preventing may introduce a subordinate clause that expresses the action hindered or prevented. Such a clause, called a **Prevention clause**, is introduced by the conjunction **quōminus**, **nē**, or **quīn** and has its verb in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

> Quid tibi obstat *nē* Rōmā *discēdās?* (obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātum stand in the way, hinder, block)
> What hinders you *in order that* from Rome *you may not depart?*
> What hinders you *from departing* from Rome?
> Timor mē dēterruit *quōminus* in senātū bene *dīcerem.*
> Fear deterred me *by which the less* in the senate I *might speak* well. (dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus deter, prevent)
> Fear deterred me *from speaking* well in the senate.
> Bellum nōn dēterrēbit *quīn agricolae* in agrīs *labōrent.*
> War will not prevent *that the farmers* in the fields *not work.*
> War will not prevent *the farmers from working* in the fields.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Prevention clauses closely resemble Purpose clauses. (Cf. the use of nē to introduce negative Purpose clauses and of quō to introduce Purpose clauses containing a comparative adjective or adverb.)

2. When the *main clause* is *negated*, or when negation is implied, the Prevention clause is introduced by the conjunction quīn (as in the third sentence) or, less frequently, by quōminus. When the main clause is *not* negated, the Prevention clause is introduced by quōminus or nē.

3. The English words "from _____ing" (employing the English gerund) are used in translating Prevention clauses. Sometimes the *subject of a Prevention clause* is better translated as the *direct object of the verb of preventing*, as in the third sentence.

Certain verbs of prohibiting or forbidding are *not* followed by a Prevention clause but regularly take an Object Infinitive with a Subject Accusative. For example:

> Caesar *suōs* prohibuit castra *relinquere.* (prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent, prohibit, forbid)
> Caesar prohibited *his own men to abandon the camp.*
> Caesar prohibited *his own men from abandoning the camp.*
> *Tē* vetō dē hīs *loquī.* (vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid)
> I forbid *you to speak* about these things.

Object Infinitives that follow verbs such as **prohibeō** and **vetō** may be translated with the English words "from _____ing" or "to _____" according to correct English usage.

☛ DRILL 138 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§139. Impersonal Constructions II: *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet, rēfert, interest*

Two groups of impersonal verbs, those expressing emotions and those expressing concern or interest, have a variety of words and constructions that may function as their *subjects.*

Verbs Expressing Emotion

miseret, miserēre, miscruit or miseritum est it moves (one) to pity
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit it causes (one) to repent or regret
piget, pigēre, piguit it disgusts (one), it irks (one)
pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est it makes (one) ashamed
taedet, taedēre, taesum est it makes (one) tired *or* sick

The first and third principal parts of these verbs are given in the *third person singular* because impersonal verbs appear in that person and number *only.* Miseret and pudet have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives. The third principal part of taedet is also an impersonal passive.

The *person affected* by an emotion is expressed by an Accusative, Direct Object, and the *cause* or *object* of the emotion is regularly expressed in the *genitive* case. For example:

Illārum mē miseret.	*Those women* move *me* to pity. *I pity those women.*
Num Catilīnam scelerum paenituit?	*(His) crimes* did not cause *Catiline* to repent, did they? *Catiline* did not repent *his crimes,* did he?

Because the syntax of Latin sentences using these verbs is so different from the way English would express similar ideas, literal translations should be avoided. Translations such as the second ones given above are to be preferred.

With the verbs **paenitet, piget,** and **pudet** the genitive that expresses the cause or object of the emotion may be replaced by two other constructions:

1. Subject Infinitive (with or without a Subject Accusative)
2. Subject clause introduced by the conjunction **quod,** "the fact that"

For example:

> Tē pudeat *haec dīcere*. (Subject Infinitive)
> Let *saying these things* make you ashamed.
> Let it shame you *to say these things*.
> Eum paenitēbat *quod nōs relīquerat*. (subject clause introduced by quod)
> *The fact that he had abandoned us* was causing him to regret.
> He was regretting *the fact that he had abandoned us*.

Verbs Expressing Concern or Interest

> rēfert, rēferre, rētulit it is important, it concerns...
> interest, interesse, interfuit it is important, it concerns

The *person to whom* something is important or of concern is regularly expressed by the *feminine singular ablative of a possessive adjective*: meā, nostrā, tuā, or vestrā.[3] The person concerned may also be expressed in the *genitive* case. The *cause* or *object* of concern may be expressed by any of these:

1. Neuter pronoun in the nominative case
2. Subject Infinitive (with or without a Subject Accusative)
3. Substantive Ut clause (subject clause); negative = nē
4. Indirect Question

For example:

> *Tuāne hoc rēfert?* (neuter pronoun)
> Is *this thing* important *to you?*
> *Meā rēfert audīre tuam sententiam*. (Subject Infinitive)
> *To hear your opinion* is important *to me*.
> *Meā maximē interest ut quam prīmum discēdās*. (Substantive Ut clause)
> It concerns *me* very greatly *that you depart as soon as possible*.
> *Omnium intererat quid cōnsilī cōnsulēs caperent*. (Indirect Question)
> It was important *to all people what (of) plan the consuls were forming*.
> *What plan the consuls were forming* was important *to all people*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Rēfert is a compound verb formed by the addition of rē (feminine singular ablative of rēs) to the verb ferō. The feminine singular ablative of the possessive adjective in each of the first two sentences agrees with this prefixed rē: "it bears in respect to my situation (your situation)."

2. In the third sentence the feminine singular ablative of the possessive adjective (meā) is used with interest by analogy with the usage with rēfert. The genitive of the person concerned was originally used with interest only, but also by analogy occasionally appears with rēfert.

3. Literal English translations of sentences with rēfert and interest should be avoided. Translations such as those given above are to be preferred.

☛ DRILL 139 MAY NOW BE DONE.

---

3. The reflexive-possessive adjective suā is used rarely with rēfert or interest in Indirect Statement. In such situations, suā refers to the subject of the verb that introduces the Indirect Statement.

§140. Direct and Indirect Reflexives

Reflexive pronouns and reflexive-possessive adjectives have been said to *refer to the subjects of the clauses or sentences in which they appear* (see §44). A reflexive so used may be called a **direct reflexive**. When a reflexive word in a subordinate clause points *outside* its own clause to the *subject of the main verb*, it is called an **indirect reflexive**.

When the subject of an infinitive in Indirect Statement is different from the subject of the main verb, a reflexive pronoun or reflexive-possessive adjective appearing within the Indirect Statement may be either a direct or an indirect reflexive. For example:

> Rēx sēnsit cīvēs *suam* urbem regere nōn posse. (direct reflexive)
> The king perceived that the citizens were not able to rule *their own* city.
> Rēx sēnsit cīvēs *sē* ōdisse. (indirect reflexive)
> The king perceived that the citizens hated *him*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence suam is a direct reflexive because it refers to cīvēs, the subject of the clause in which **suam** appears. In the second sentence sē is an indirect reflexive because it refers to rēx, the subject of the main clause.

2. Context helps to determine whether a reflexive is direct or indirect. Sometimes the intensive adjective ipse modifies a reflexive pronoun and identifies it as direct or indirect. For example:

> Rēx sēnsit cīvēs *sē ipsōs* ōdisse. (direct reflexive)
> The king perceived that the citizens hated *themselves*.

In subordinate clauses such as Purpose clauses, Indirect Commands, and Indirect Questions, reflexive pronouns and reflexive-possessive adjectives are often *indirect* reflexives. That is, they refer to the *subjects of the main clauses* rather than to the subjects of the subordinate clauses in which they appear. For example:

> Imperātor mīlitēs hortātus est ut glōriam *sibi* caperent.
> The commander urged the soldiers that they win glory *for him*.
> Caesar nescit cūr sociī *suīs* verbīs parēre nōlint.
> Caesar does not know why the allies are unwilling to obey *his* words.

Sometimes reflexives are freely used to refer to grammatical elements that are *not the subject* of any clause, and in certain authors, direct *and* indirect reflexives are found within the same clause. For example:

Ariovistus respondit . . . nēminem *sēcum* sine *suā* perniciē contendisse. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.36)

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus struggle   perniciēs, perniciēī *f.* destruction, ruin

Ariovistus answered . . . that no one had contended with *him* without *his own* ruin.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence sē is an indirect reflexive referring to Ariovistus, the subject of the main verb. Suā is a direct reflexive referring to nēminem, the subject of the Indirect Statement.

☛ DRILL 140 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§141. Subjunctive by Attraction

It has been observed that subordinate clauses in Indirect Statement regularly have their verbs in the subjunctive to indicate that the clause is part of the original direct statement (see §108). Sometimes the subjunctive mood is also used in clauses that are subordinate to infinitives *not* in Indirect Statement or to other clauses with verbs in the subjunctive. A subjunctive verb so used is called the **Subjunctive by Attraction** and follows the rules of sequence. For example:

> **Sapientis est fugere ubi periculum *sentiat*.**
> It is characteristic of a wise man to flee when *he perceives* danger.
> **Scisne quid pater, priusquam *mortuus sit*, dīxerit?**
> Do you know what the father said before *he died*?
> **Hortābātur ut eadem quae *dīxisset* dicerem.**
> She was urging that I say the same things that *she had said*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The information in a subordinate clause with a Subjunctive by Attraction is *essential* to the thought of the clause or infinitive on which it depends. For example, the clause ubi periculum sentiat in the first sentence indicates the *essential circumstance* under which a wise man would flee. An indicative verb in such a clause would indicate *nonessential* information.

2. The syntax of, for example, dīxisset is pluperfect subjunctive, Subjunctive by Attraction, secondary sequence (prior time).

§142. Supine

In addition to the infinitive and the gerund, there is a third *verbal noun* in Latin called the **supine**, which appears in *only two forms*, the *accusative singular* and the *ablative singular*. The stem for the supine of *all verbs* may be obtained by dropping the ending from the fourth principal part. To this stem the endings **-um** (accusative) and **-ū** (ablative) are added. For example:

4th Principal Part	Stem	Accusative Supine	Ablative Supine
lēctus	lēct-	lēctum	lēctū
vīsus	vīs-	vīsum	vīsū

OBSERVATION

The endings of the supine have been borrowed from the fourth declension masculine/feminine endings.

Each case of the supine has only *one syntactic function*. The accusative supine *expresses purpose with a verb of motion* (or a verb implying motion). The ablative supine is an *Ablative of Respect*. For example:

> **Hostēs *oppugnātum* patriam nostram *veniunt*.**
> The enemies *are coming for the purpose of attacking/to attack* our country.
> **Deōs superat—sī hoc fās est *dictū*.**
> He surpasses the gods—if this thing is right *in respect to saying/to say*.

1. The accusative supine in the first sentence appears with a verb that expresses motion, veniunt. It takes a direct object, **patriam.** The accusative supine is translated "for the purpose of _____ing" or "to _____."[4]

2. The ablative supine may be translated literally, "in respect to _____ing," but an adverbial use of the English infinitive, "to _____," will often be more idiomatic.

§143. Accusative of Respect

Many Roman poets (and a few prose writers as well) chose to imitate Greek syntax in Latin for two distinct uses of the accusative case, *each* of which is sometimes called the **Greek Accusative.**

When a noun in the accusative case is used to qualify or limit an adjective (often a perfect passive participle), it is called the **Accusative of Respect.**[5] For example:

> Aenéās . . . *ōs umerōsque* deō similis . . . (umerus, umeri *m*. shoulder)
> Aeneas . . . similar to a god *in (respect to) (his) face* and *shoulders* . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.589)
> hōc concussa metū *mentem* . . . (concutiō, concutere, concussī, concussus strike)
> (She) having been struck *in respect to (her) mind* by this fear . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.468)

The syntax of each italicized word **(ōs, umerōs, mentem)** is **Accusative of Respect.**

1. The Accusative of Respect developed from the idea of *extent* inherent in the accusative case. Thus, for example, **ōs umerōsque deō similis** means "similar to a god to the extent of (his) face and shoulders," "similar to a god as far as his face and shoulders."

2. The Accusative of Respect is similar in sense to the more common Ablative of Respect (see §39).

3. Sometimes the noun in the Accusative of Respect is an adjective used as a substantive. For example: omnia sapiēns, "wise in (respect to) all things."

§144. Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb

In addition to the active and passive voices, ancient Greek has a *middle* voice, whose forms are most often identical to those of the passive. The middle voice in Greek, which frequently takes a direct object, is often used for actions that benefit or physically affect the subject.[6] Certain *passive* verb forms in Latin are used to represent Greek *middle* voice verbs and so may take an Accusative, Direct Object. For example:

---

4. The rare future passive infinitive (see §104) is made with the accusative supine and the impersonal passive infinitive of eō. For example: **Putō eum captum īrī** (I think that there is a going to capture him, I think that he is going to be captured).

5. The Accusative of Respect is also known as the Accusative of the Part Affected.

6. The existence of the middle voice in Greek is a remnant of the system of voice in IE, which had active and middle voices *only*. Many deponent verbs in Latin—verbs with passive forms that take direct objects—were in origin middle voice verbs.

> *Ferrum* cingitur. (cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround; gird [oneself])
> He girds *a sword* on himself. (Vergil, *Aeneid* II.511)
> . . . cīnctus [est] honōre *caput*. (caput, capitis *n.* head)
> (He) surrounded (his) *head* with honor. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* III.392)

The syntax of each italicized word (**ferrum, caput**) is Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb.

OBSERVATION

> Although **cingitur** and **cīnctus** (est) are *passive* in form, they should be considered *middle*: the subject of each *performs* the action of the verb, and each verb takes an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb. Verbs that mean "put on" or "take off" (clothing, armor) may take such an accusative.

§145. Historical Infinitive

In vivid narration the present infinitive may appear in place of a finite verb in the imperfect or perfect tense (simple past). An infinitive so used, usually with a *subject* in the *nominative* case, is called a **Historical Infinitive**.[7] For example:

> *Rōmānī* ex omnibus partibus, signō datō, *oppugnāre.*
> The *Romans* from all parts, with the signal having been given, *attacked.*
> *Catilīna* in prīmā aciē *stāre*, sociōs *hortārī.*
> *Catiline was standing* in the first battle line; *he was encouraging* his allies.
> *Augustō mortuō*, in urbe *timēre*, in prōvinciīs bellum *exspectāre.*
> With *Augustus having died*, in the city *people were afraid*, in the provinces *people were expecting war.*

OBSERVATIONS

> 1. In the first sentence the present active infinitive **oppugnāre** stands for a perfect active indicative verb, *past* time, *simple* aspect. In the second sentence **stāre** and **hortārī** stand for imperfect active indicative verbs, *past* time, *progressive* aspect. Context helps to determine which past tense a historical infinitive represents.
>
> 2. The *subjects* of the Historical Infinitives in the first two sentences are *nominative*. The nominative subject of a Historical Infinitive is an *exception* to the general rule that subjects of infinitives are in the accusative case (see §107).
>
> 3. In the third sentence the Historical Infinitives **timēre** and **exspectāre** appear without subjects. Such a usage emphasizes the verbal action *alone*. However, when a Historical Infinitive appears without a subject, a subject must be supplied (e.g., people, men, soldiers, they).
>
> 4. Several Historical Infinitives often appear together when a scene of intense activity is reported. Historical Infinitives may also appear in combination with finite verbs.

☞ DRILL 141–145 MAY NOW BE DONE.

---

7. The Historical Infinitive may look back to the earliest stage of the verb's development, in which a verbal noun (the infinitive) with no endings to indicate person and number was placed with a noun subject simply to name the action being performed.

Short Readings

1. Sosia, Amphitruo's slave, remains firm in the face of his master's threats to cut out his tongue.

   tamen quīn loquar haec utī facta sunt hīc,

   numquam ūllō modō mē potes dēterrēre. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUŌ* 559–60)

utī = ut

2. Megadorus describes his uncomfortable relationship with his would-be father-in-law, Euclio.

   . . . fastīdit meī

   quia videt mē suam amīcitiam velle: mōre hominum facit;

   nam sī opulentus it petītum pauperiōris grātiam,

   pauper metuit congredīrī, per metum male rem gerit.

   īdem, quandō occāsiō illaec periit, post sērō cupit. (PLAUTUS, *AULULĀRIA* 245–49)

congredior (con- + gradior) go near, approach;   occāsiō, occāsiōnis *f.* opportunity, chance
  congredīrī = archaic form of congredī   opulentus, -a, -um rich
fastīdiō, fastīdīre, fastīdīvī or fastīdiī, fastīdītus   pauper, pauperis poor
  be scornful (of), disdain (+ gen.); *subject*   quandō (conj.) when
  is Euclio   sērō (adv.) late; post sērō, too late
illaec = archaic form of illa

3. After doing all the talking, the slave Olympio won't let Chalinus answer.

   abeō intrō. taedet tuī sermōnis. (PLAUTUS, *CASĪNA* 142)

intrō (adv.) within, inside
sermō, sermōnis *m.* speech, talk, conversation

4. After explaining his plan of having one girl pretend to be two, Palaestrio lists possible excuses to avoid any request to see both girls at the same time.

   facilest: trēcentae possunt causae conligī:

   "nōn domīst, abiit ambulātum, dormit, ornātur, lavat,

   prandet, potat: . . . " (PLAUTUS, *MĪLES GLŌRIŌSUS* 250–52)

colligō (con- + legō), colligere, collēgī, collēctus   ornō (1-tr.) prepare, arrange; dress, beautify
  collect, amass   potō (1-tr.) drink
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī or dormiī, dormītum   prandeō, prandēre, prandī, prānsus eat breakfast;
  sleep, be asleep   eat lunch
lavō, lavāre or lavere, lāvī, lautus or lōtus wash
  (oneself)

5. Antipho's daughter Panegyris explains to her father why neither she nor her two sisters are willing to be remarried. (The three sisters are waiting for their long-lost husbands.)

Pan. Stultitiast, pater, vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs.

hostis est uxor, invīta quae virō nuptum datur.

Ant. Certumne est neutram vostrārum* persequī imperium patris?

Pan. Persequimur, nam quō† dedistī‡ nuptum, abīre nōlumus.

(PLAUTUS, *STICHUS* 139–42)

*vostrārum, sc. sorōrum
†quō = ab eō cui
‡dedistī, sc. nōs as direct object
canis, canis m. or f. dog
invītus, -a, -um unwilling
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nuptus marry (of a woman)

persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly, conform to
stultitia, stultitiae f. foolishness, stupidity
uxor, uxōris f. wife
vēnor (1-intr.) go hunting, hunt

6. A despairing Cassandra addresses her mother, Hecuba.

māter, optumārum multō mulier melior mulierum,

missa sum* superstitiōsīs hariolātiōnibus;

mē Apollō fātīs fandīs dēmentem invītam ciet.

virginēs vereor aequālīs, patris meī meum factum pudet,

optumī virī. mea māter, tuī mē miseret, meī piget.

optumam prōgeniem Priamō peperistī extrā mē. hoc dolet.

(ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 34–39)

*mittō, *here*, drive
aequālis, aequāle equal, of the same age
cieō, ciēre, cīvī, citus rouse, stir up
dēmēns, dēmentis insane, (raving) mad
doleō, dolēre, doluī, —— cause pain, be painful
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside, except
hariolātiō, hariolātiōnis f. prophecy

invītus, -a, -um unwilling
mulier, mulieris f. woman
pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear
prōgeniēs, *prōgeniēī f. offspring, progeny
superstitiōsus, -a, -um ecstatic, exalted
virgō, virginis f. maiden, virgin

7. A fragment from a lost Ennian tragedy, *Erechtheus*

lapideō sunt corde multī quōs nōn miseret nēminis.*

(ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 140)

*The redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.
cor, cordis n. heart
lapideus, -a, -um (made of) stone

8. The poet employs alliteration to describe a gory death in battle.

ōscitat in campīs caput ā cervīce revolsum

sēmianimēsque micant oculī lūcemque requīrunt. (ENNIUS, *SĒD. INC.* FRAG. 483–84)

cervīx, cervīcis f. neck
micō, micāre, micuī, —— quiver, dart, flicker
ōscitō (1-intr.) gape
requīrō (re- + quaerō), requīrere, requīsiī or requīsīvī, requīsītus try to find, look for

revellō, revellere, revellī, revulsus tear, tear away
sēmianimis, sēmianime half-alive; *the first -i- of* sēmianimēs *is consonantal*

9. Micio discusses with his brother Demea the delinquent behavior of Demea's son Aeschinus.

   Micio. quid fēcit? *Demea.* quid ille fēcerit?* quem neque pudet

   quicquam neque metuit quemquam neque lēgem putat

   tenēre sē ūllam . . . (TERENCE, *ADELPHOE* 84–86)

   *fēcerit, perfect subj. in implied Indirect Question, *sc.* **Rogāsne**

10. Parmenio describes Philumena's behavior toward her mother-in-law, Sostrata, since being forced to move into her mother-in-law's house.

    Parmenio. sī quandō ad eam* accesserat†

    cōnfābulātum, fugere ē cōnspectū īlicō,

    vidēre nōlle . . . (TERENCE, *HECYRA* 181–83)

    *eam refers to Philumena.
    †sī quandō . . . accesserat = cum . . . accesserat subject is Sostrata
    cōnspectus, cōnspectūs *m.* (range of) sight, view
    cōnfābulor *(1-intr.)* converse, have a talk
    īlicō (adv) at once, immediately

11. In love with a prostitute, the young and poor Phaedria tries to get the pimp Dorio to listen to his excuses one more time.

    Phaedria. audī quod dīcam. *Dorio.* at enim taedet iam audīre eadem mīliēns.

    Ph. at nunc dīcam quod lubenter audiās. *Do.* loquere, audiō.

    (TERENCE, *PHORMIŌ* 487–88)

    at (conj.) but
    libenter (adv.) gladly
    mīliēns (adv.) a thousand times

12. While advocating that Pompey be given command in the east, Cicero explains and decries the attitude of many nations toward Rome.

    difficile est dictū, Quirītēs, quantō in odiō sīmus apud exterās nātiōnēs propter

    eōrum quōs ad eās per hōs annōs cum imperiō mīsimus libīdinēs et iniūriās.

    (CICERO, *PRŌ LĒGE MĀNĪLIĀ* 65)

    exter, extera, exterum external, foreign
    iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice
    libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
    nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation
    Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity

13. Cicero imagines what the populace would say to the prosecutor M. Juventus Laterensis if it
    were able to speak with one voice. Juventus was quaestor in Cyrene in 63 B.C.E., the year of
    the Catilinarian conspiracy.

    "Dēsīderārunt tē," inquit, "oculī meī, cum tū essēs Cyrēnīs; mē enim quam sociōs

    tuā fruī virtūte mālēbam, et quō plūs intererat, eō plūs aberat ā mē, cum tē nōn vidē-

    bam." (CICERO, *PRŌ PLANCIŌ* 13)

Cyrēnae, Cyrēnārum *f. pl.* Cyrene, a town in northwest Libya
dēsīderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

14. Cicero pauses in a speech to comment on the value of his own friendship.

    etenim ego dē mē tantum audeō dīcere amīcitiam meam voluptātī plūribus quam

    praesidiō fuisse, mēque vehementer vītae meae paenitēret sī in meā familiāritāte

    locus esset nēminī nisi lītigiōsō aut nocentī. (CICERO, *PRŌ PLANCIŌ* 82)

familiāritās, familiāritātis *f.* close friendship   vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly
lītigiōsus, -a, -um fond of going to law, litigious   voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy
nocēns, nocentis harmful, guilty
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard; defense,
    protection

15. After he speaks about appropriate embellishment in oratory, Crassus notes that much de-
    pends on the makeup of the audience and other factors.

    rēfert etiam quī audiant, senātus an populus an iūdicēs: frequentēs an paucī an sin-

    gulī, et quālēs: ipsīque ōrātōrēs quā sint aetāte, honōre, auctōritāte, dēbet vidērī;

    tempus, pācis an bellī, festīnātiōnis an ōtī. (CICERO, *DĒ ŌRĀTŌRE* III.211)

festīnātiō, festīnātiōnis *f.* haste, hurry
frequēns, frequentis crowded; present in crowds
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure
singulī, -ae, -a individual, single, one at a time

16. Scipio, a character in Cicero's dialogue, recalls a story about the newborns, Romulus and
    Remus.

    is* igitur, ut nātus sit, cum Remō frātre dīcitur ab Amūliō, rēge Albānō, ob labefac-

    tandī rēgnī timōrem ad† Tiberim expōnī iussus esse . . . (CICERO, *DĒ RĒ PŪBLICĀ* II.4)

*is refers to Romulus.   expōnō (ex- + pōnō) place out; expose, abandon
†ad, *here,* at, near   labefactō (1-tr.) weaken, undermine
Albānus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Alba Longa,   rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule
    a Latin city predating Rome; Alban   Tiberis, Tiberis *m.* (the) Tiber, a river that flows
Amūlius, Amūliī *m.* Amulius, legendary king of   through Rome; Tiberim = *acc. sing.*
    Alba Longa

17. Cicero recalls an outstanding trait of the orator Hortensius.

> prīmum memoria* tanta—quantam in nūllō cognōvisse mē arbitror—ut quae sēcum commentātus esset, ea sine scrīptō† verbīs eīsdem redderet quibus cōgitāvisset. (CICERO, *BRŪTUS* 301)

*memoria, *sc.* of Hortensius
†scrīptum, scrīptī *n.* writing; script
commentor (1-tr.) prepare beforehand, practice
reddō (red- + dō) give back; reproduce, repeat

18. Cicero explains why an orator must have a thorough knowledge of history.

> nescīre autem quid antequam nātus sīs acciderit, id est semper esse puerum. quid enim est aetās hominis nisi ea memoriā rērum veterum cum superiōrum aetāte contexitur? (CICERO, *ORĀTOR* 120)

contexō, contexere, contexuī, contextus weave together, connect, link
superior, superius upper; previous, earlier

19. Referring to the long, fortunate life of the Persian king Cyrus, Cato speaks about the pursuits of old age.

> hāc igitur fortūnā fruī licet senibus nec aetās impedit quō minus et cēterārum rērum et in prīmīs* agrī colendī studia teneāmus ūsque ad ultimum tempus senectūtis.
>
> (CICERO, *DĒ SENECTŪTE* 60)

*in prīmīs, *here,* especially, above all
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
senectūs, senectūtis *f.* old age

senex, senis old; *as masc. subst.,* old man
ultimus, -a, -um farthest; last, final
ūsque (adv.) continuously, all the way

20. One of the most important laws of friendship

> haec igitur lēx in amīcitiā sanciātur, ut neque rogēmus* rēs turpēs nec faciāmus* rogātī. turpis enim excūsātiō est et minimē accipienda cum in cēterīs peccātīs, tum sī quis contrā rem pūblicam sē amīcī causā fēcisse fateātur.†
>
> (CICERO, *DĒ AMĪCITIĀ* 40)

*ut . . . rogēmus . . . faciāmus, Substantive Ut clause in apposition to lēx
†fateor, *here,* claim
excūsātiō, excūsātiōnis *f.* excuse, justification
peccātum, peccātī *n.* error, mistake; offense
sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctus ratify, confirm

21. The speaker stresses the importance of polished writing.

> fierī autem potest ut rēctē quis sentiat et id quod sentit polītē ēloquī nōn possit; sed mandāre quemquam litterīs cōgitātiōnēs suās, quī eās nec dispōnere nec inlūstrāre possit nec dēlectātiōne aliquā allicere lēctōrem, hominis est intemperanter abūtentis et ōtiō et litterīs. (CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNĒS* I.6)

abūtor (ab- + ūtor) abuse (+ abl.)	intemperanter (adv.) immoderately
alliciō, allicere, **allēxī, allēctus** entice, attract, lure	lēctor, lēctōris *m.* reader
cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis *f.* thought	mandō (1-tr.) entrust, commit
dēlectātiō, dēlectātiōnis *f.* delight	ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure
dispōnō (dis- + pōnō) arrange	polītē (adv.) in a polished way
ēloquor (ē- + loquor) speak	rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly
illūstrō (1-tr.) illuminate, make clear	

22. With a series of rhetorical questions Cicero expresses his exasperation at Antony's actions.

> omniane bonīs virīs quae facere possunt facienda sunt, etiamne* sī turpia, sī perniciōsa erunt, sī facere omnīnō nōn licēbit? quid autem turpius aut foedius aut quod minus deceat quam contrā senātum, contrā cīvīs, contrā patriam exercitum dūcere? quid vērō magis vituperandum quam id facere quod nōn liceat? licet autem nēminī contrā patriam dūcere exercitum . . . (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS XIII* 14)

*-ne implies that the preceding question must be repeated.
decet, decēre, decuit, it is becoming, it is proper
foedus, -a, -um foul, loathsome, atrocious
perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive
vituperō (1-tr.) find fault with, criticize

23. A paragraph from a letter to Atticus on the unsavory state of affairs in the Roman Republic

> dē rē pūblicā nihil habeō ad tē scrībere* nisi summum odium omnium hominum in eōs quī tenent omnia. mūtātiōnis tamen spēs nūlla. sed, quod facile sentiās, taedet ipsum Pompeium eumque vehementer paenitet. nōn prōvideō satis quem exitum futūrum putem; sed certē videntur haec aliquō† ēruptūra. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* II.22.6)

*scrībere, *here*, infin. expressing purpose	exitus, exitūs *m.* outcome
†aliquō (adv.) in some direction	mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis *f.* change
ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth	prōvideō (prō- + videō) foresee
	vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly

24. A passage from a letter of Caesar to Cicero quoted in a letter of Cicero to his friend Atticus

> neque illud mē movet: quod iī quī ā mē dīmissī sunt discessisse dīcuntur ut mihi rursus bellum īnferrent; nihil enim mālō quam et mē meī similem esse et illōs suī.
>
> (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* IX.16.2)

dīmittō (dis- + mittō) send away, let go
rursus (adv.) again

25. In a letter to Atticus, Cicero admits implicitly to sharing in a common conceit.

    nēmō umquam neque* poēta neque* ōrātor fuit quī quemquam meliōrem quam

    sē arbitrārētur. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XIV.20.3)

*The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.

26. After admonishing Cicero not to let his grief over the death of his daughter keep him from
    actively participating in political life at a time of crisis, Sulpicius finally shows a little
    restraint.

    plūra mē ad tē dē hāc rē scrībere pudet, nē videar prūdentiae tuae diffīdere.

    (CICERO, *AD FAMILIĀRĒS* IV.5.6)

diffīdō, diffīdere, ——, diffīsum lack confidence in, have no faith in (+ dat.)
prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence

27. Cicero writes to Tiro, his freedman, secretary, and friend.

    sīc habētō,* mī Tīrō, nēminem esse quī mē amet quīn īdem tē amet; et cum tuā et

    meā maximē interest tē valēre, tum multīs est cūrae. (CICERO, *AD FAMILIĀRĒS* XVI.4.4)

*habētō, *2nd sing. fut. act. imper.*, (ye shall) consider
Tīrō, Tīrōnis *m.* Tiro

28. Caesar reports an early contact between himself and the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.

    Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs* dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt†

    rogātum auxilium . . . (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* I.11)

*iīs, refers to the Helvetians, a Gallic tribe
†mittunt, historical use of present tense; translate as perfect
Aeduī, Aeduōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aedui, a Gallic tribe
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend

29. When explaining his reasons for crossing the Rhine and pursuing war against certain Ger-
    man tribes, Caesar mentions a plea of one tribe allied to him.

    Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam

    fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter

    ab Suēbīs premerentur. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* IV.16)

obses, obsidis *m.* or *f.* hostage
Suēbī, Suēbōrum *m. pl.* (the) Suebi, a group of German tribes
Trānsrhēnānī, Trānsrhēnānōrum *m. pl.* those living across the Rhine
Ubiī, Ubiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Ubii, a German tribe

30. While on the march, the legions of Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta are
    ambushed by the Eburones, a Belgic tribe led by Ambiorix. Several lieutenants are seriously
    injured.

    hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titurius cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōn-

    spexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit* rogātum ut sibi mīliti-

    busque parcat. (CAESAR, DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ V.36)

*mittit, historical use of present tense; here
    introduces both secondary (cōnspexisset) and
    primary (parcat) sequence, the latter to
    emphasize the Indirect Command
Ambiorix, Ambiorigis m. Ambiorix
cohortor (co- + hortor) (1-tr.) exhort, encourage
cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, conspectus
    perceive, observe

interpres, interpretis m. or f. go-between, agent;
    interpreter
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be
    sparing (+ dat.)
permoveō (per- + moveō) thoroughly move,
    disturb
Cn. Pompeius, Cn. Pompeiī m. Gn. Pompey
procul (adv.) at a distance, from a distance
Q. Titurius, Q. Tituriī m. Q. Titurius

31. Caesar summarizes the military situation after he has pursued and hemmed in the troops
    led by Afranius and Petreius, two of Pompey's generals.

    sī proelium committerētur, propinquitās castrōrum celerem superātīs ex fugā re-

    ceptum dabat.* hāc dē causā cōnstituerat signa īnferentibus resistere, prior proeliō

    nōn lacessere. (CAESAR, DĒ BELLŌ CĪVĪLĪ I.82)

*dabat, imperf. indic. used for vividness in
    apodosis of Present Contrary-to-Fact
    conditional sentence
committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in
lacessō, lacessere, lacessiī or lacessīvī, lacessītus
    challenge; provoke, rouse

propinquitās, propinquitātis f. nearness,
    proximity
receptus, receptūs m. withdrawal, retreat
resistō, resistere, restitī, —— halt; make a stand
    against, resist (+ dat.)

32. Varro discusses the precise meaning of the verb for.

    fātur is quī prīmum homō significābilem ōre mittit vōcem. ab eō, antequam ita fa-

    ciant, puerī dīcuntur īnfantēs; cum id faciunt, iam fārī.

    (VARRO, DĒ LINGUĀ LATĪNĀ VI.52)

īnfāns, īnfantis not speaking; as subst., infant
significābilis, significābile capable of conveying meaning, meaningful

33. The historian describes the scene after Marius and the Roman forces win a bloody battle against Jugurtha, a Numidian king.

> tum spectāculum horribile in campīs patentibus: sequī, fugere, occīdī, capī; equī
>
> atque virī adflictī, ac multī volneribus acceptīs neque fugere posse neque quiētem
>
> patī, nītī modo ac statim concidere . . . (SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 101)

afflīgō, afflīgere, afflīxī, afflictus dash, strike, cast down; injure, shatter
concidō (con- + cadō) fall down, collapse; fall dead
equus, equī *m.* horse
horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful
nītor, nītī, nīxus or nīsus sum rest upon, rely upon; make an effort, strive

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill, slaughter
pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
quiēs, quiētis *f.* rest, repose; inaction
spectāculum, spectāculī *n.* sight, spectacle
statim (adv.) immediately

34. The historian describes the surprising fusion of the fugitive Trojans and the native people of Italy.

> hī* postquam in ūna moenia convēnēre, disparī genere, dissimilī linguā, alius aliō
>
> mōre vīventēs, incrēdibile memorātū est quam facile coaluerint: ita brevī† multitūdō
>
> dīvorsa atque vaga concordiā cīvitās facta erat. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 6)

*hī refers to the Trojans and the native Italians
†brevī, *sc.* tempore
coalēscō, coalēscere, coaluī, coalitum grow together, combine, coalesce
concordia, concordiae *f.* harmony
conveniō (con- + veniō) come together
dispār, disparis unequal; different

dīversus, -a, -um different
incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable, incredible
lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language
memorō (1-tr.) recount, recall, tell
multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude, mob
vagus, -a, -um roaming, wandering

35. The historian describes the virtue of the citizen of the early Roman Republic.

> sē quisque hostem ferīre, mūrum ascendere, cōnspicī dum tāle facinus faceret,
>
> properābat. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 7)

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus climb up, ascend, scale
cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, cōnspectus perceive, observe
facinus, facinoris *n.* deed
feriō, ferīre, ——, —— strike, hit
properō (1-tr.) hasten, rush; be eager; hurry to bring it about that

36. After the historian describes the moral decline in Roman society, he comments on how Catiline made use of the situation.

> in tantā tamque conruptā cīvitāte Catilīna, id quod factū facillumum erat, omnium
>
> flāgitiōrum atque facinorum circum sē tamquam stīpātōrum catervās habēbat.
>
> (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 14)

caterva, catervae *f.* throng, crowd, troop
circum (prep. + acc.) around
corruptus, -a, -um corrupt
facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

flāgitium, flāgitiī *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace
stīpātor, stīpātōris *m.* bodyguard, attendant
tamquam (conj.) as it were, as if

37. Speaking in the senate in the debate about punishment for the Catilinarian conspirators, a young Julius Caesar credits the ancestors with good judgment.

maiōrēs nostrī, patrēs cōnscrīptī, neque cōnsilī neque audāciae umquam eguēre;

neque illīs superbia obstābat quō minus aliēna īnstitūta, sī modo proba erant, imi-

tārentur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 51)

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien, foreign
egeō, egēre, eguī, —— lack, want, need (+ gen.)
imitor (1-tr.) copy, follow, imitate
īnstitūtum, īnstitūtī *n.* practice, custom, usage

probus, -a, -um excellent, well-developed; upright, virtuous
superbia, superbiae *f.* pride; arrogance, haughtiness

38. Queen Dido graciously welcomes a band of surviving Trojans.

tum breviter Dīdō vultum dēmissa profātur:

"solvite corde metum, Teucrī, sēclūdite cūrās." (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.561–62)

cor, cordis *n.* heart; mind
dēmittō (dē- + mittō) let down, drop
profor (prō- + for) speak out
sēclūdō, sēclūdere, sēclūsī, sēclūsus separate; put away
Teucrī, Teucrōrum *m. pl.* descendants of Teucer, Teucrians, Trojans

39. Aeneas describes the dreadful appearance of Hector's ghost.

ei mihi, quālis erat, quantum mūtātus ab illō

Hectore quī redit exuviās indūtus Achillī

vel Danaum Phrygiōs iaculātus puppibus ignīs! (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.274–76)

Achillēs, Achillī *m.* Achilles
Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks; Danaum = *gen. pl.*
ei (interj.) *expression of anguish,* o! alas!; ei mihi, woe is me!
exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor
Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector, son of Priam

iaculor (1-tr.) strike, throw, hurl
induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on, clothe, dress
Phrygius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan
puppis, puppis, -ium *f.* stern (of a boat); ship

40. Aeneas describes the effects of hearing the ghostly voice of a former Trojan comrade, Polydorus.

tum vērō ancipitī mentem formīdine pressus

obstipuī steteruntque* comae et vōx faucibus haesit. (VERGIL, *AENEID* III.47–48)

*steterunt = archaic form of stetērunt
anceps, ancipitis two-headed, double; wavering, doubtful
coma, comae *f. in sing. or pl.* hair
faucēs, faucium *f. pl.* jaws, gullet, throat

formīdō, formīdinis *f.* fear, terror
haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesūrus stick, cling, hold fast (+ dat.)
obstipēscō, obstipēscere, obstipuī, —— be stupefied, be dumbstruck

41. The poet describes Aeneas's perplexity after he has been commanded by Mercury to leave Carthage.

heu quid agat? quō nunc rēgīnam ambīre furentem

audeat adfātū? quae prīma exordia sūmat?

atque animum nunc hūc celerem nunc dīvidit illūc

in partīsque rapit variās perque omnia versat. (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.283–86)

affātus, affātūs *m.* address, utterance
ambiō (ambi- + eō), ambīre, ambiī or ambīvī, ambitus go around
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus separate, divide
exordium, exordiī *n.* starting point, beginning

furō, furere, ——, —— rage, rave
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize
varius, -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting
versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning

42. The poet describes Mercury as he appears to Aeneas in a dream.

huic sē forma deī vultū redeuntis eōdem

obtulit in somnīs rursusque ita vīsa monēre est,

omnia Mercuriō similis, vōcemque colōremque*

et crīnīs flāvōs et membra decōra iuventā: . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.556–59)

*colōremque elides into next line.
color, colōris *m.* color
crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. in sing. or pl.* hair
decōrus, -a, -um becoming; honorable, seemly
flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
forma, formae *f.* shape, form

iuventa, iuventae *f.* youth(fulness)
membrum, membrī *n.* limb
offerō (ob- + ferō), offerre, obtulī, oblātus put in (one's) path; offer, present, reveal
rursus (adv.) again
somnus, somnī *m.* sleep; dream

43. Pallas, son of King Evander, greets Aeneas and his companions, who have come to Evander's pastoral kingdom seeking aid for the war in Italy.

. . . "iuvenēs, quae causa subēgit

ignōtās temptāre viās? quō tenditis?" inquit.

"quī genus? unde domō? pācemne hūc fertis an arma?" (Vergil, *Aeneid* VIII.112–14)

ignōtus, -a, -um unknown
inquam (defective verb) say; **inquit** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* young man
subigō (sub- + agō), subigere, subēgī, subāctus incite, impel

temptō (1-tr.) try, test, attempt
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus stretch out, extend; aim, head

44. Abandoned by Theseus on the island of Naxos, Ariadne ponders her situation.

  quid faciam? quō sōla ferar? vacat īnsula cultū.

    nōn hominum videō, nōn ego facta boum.

    omne latus terrae cingit mare; nāvita nusquam,

      nūlla per ambiguās puppis itūra viās. (Ovid, HĒRŌIDES X.59–62)

ambiguus, -a, -um wavering, doubtful;
  untrustworthy, treacherous
bōs, bovis m. or f. bull; cow; in pl., cattle;
  boum = gen. pl.
cultus, cultūs m. cultivation; civilization

latus, lateris n. side
nāvita = nauta
nusquam (adv.) nowhere
puppis, puppis, -ium f. stern (of a boat); ship
vacō (1-intr.) be empty, be without (+ abl.)

45. The poet reveals why women go to public games and why men may wish to go there, too.

  spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. (OVID, ARS AMĀTŌRIA I.99)

46. The poet describes the moment when the water nymph Salmacis fell in love with Hermaphroditus.

  nunc perlūcentī circumdata corpus amictū

  mollibus aut foliīs aut mollibus incubat herbīs,

  saepe legit flōrēs. et tum quoque forte legēbat,

  cum puerum vīdit vīsumque optāvit habēre. (OVID, METAMORPHŌSĒS IV.313–16)

amictus, amictūs m. mantle, cloak
flōs, flōris m. flower
folium, foliī n. leaf
herba, herbae f. small plant, herb, grass
incubō, incubāre, ——, incubitum lie on, recline
  on (+ dat.)

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft
perlūceō, perlūcēre, ——, —— be transparent,
  be translucent; shine

47. Could the poet write prose?

  saepe pater dīxit, "studium quid inūtile temptās?

    Maeonidēs nūllās ipse relīquit opēs."

  mōtus eram dictīs, tōtōque Helicōne relictō

    scrībere temptābam verba solūta modīs.

  sponte suā carmen numerōs veniēbat ad aptōs,

    et quod temptābam scrībere versus erat. (OVID, TRĪSTIA IV.10.21–26)

aptus, -a, -um composed, fitted together; ready,
  fitting
Helicōn, Helicōnis m. Mount Helicon (in
  Boeotia), sacred to Apollo and the Muses
inūtilis, inūtile useless
Maeonidēs, Maeonidae m. (a) Maeonian or
  Lydian man; Homer

numerus, numerī m. number; rhythm, meter
*ops, opis f. power; in pl. resources, wealth
*spōns, *spontis f. will, volition
temptō (1-tr.) test; try, attempt
versus, versūs m. verse, line (of poetry)

48. The exiled poet addresses his wife.

> barbara mē tellūs orbisque novissima* magnī
>
> > sustinet et saevō cīnctus ab hoste locus.
>
> hinc ego trāicerer—neque enim mea culpa cruenta est—
>
> > esset, quae dēbet, sī tibi cūra meī. (Ovid, *TRĪSTIA* V.2.31–34)

*novissima, *here,* most remote, extreme
barbarus, -a, -um foreign, strange; barbarous, uncivilized
cruentus, -a, -um bloody
culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault, offense

sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinuī,
—— support, sustain
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) transport, transfer

49. The exiled poet resorts to prayer.

> adloquor ēn absēns absentia nūmina supplex,
>
> > sī fās est hominī cum Iove posse loquī. (Ovid, *TRĪSTIA* V.2.45–46)

alloquor (ad- + loquor) address
ēn (interj.) behold! look!
supplex, supplicis suppliant, humble

50. The poem informs a friend in Rome how the poet in exile feels about him.

> nec patriam magis ille* suam dēsīderat et quae
>
> > plūrima cum patriā sentit abesse sibi,
>
> quam vultūs oculōsque tuōs, ō dulcior illō
>
> > melle, quod in cērīs Attica pōnit apis. (Ovid, *TRĪSTIA* V.4.27–30)

*ille refers to the poet.
apis, apis, -ium *f.* bee
Atticus, -a, -um Attic, Athenian

cēra, cērae *f.* beeswax; wax cell; *in pl.,* honeycomb
dēsīderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
mel, mellis *n.* honey

51. The exiled poet makes a confession.

> ille ego Rōmānus vātēs—ignōscite, Mūsae!—
>
> > Sarmaticō cōgor plūrima mōre loquī.
>
> ēn pudet et fateor, iam dēsuētūdine longā
>
> > vix subeunt ipsī verba Latīna mihi.
>
> nec dubitō quīn sint et in hōc nōn pauca libellō
>
> > barbara: nōn hominis culpa, sed ista locī. (Ovid, *TRĪSTIA* V.7.55–60)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign, strange; barbarous, uncivilized
cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive together, force, compel
culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault
dēsuētūdō, dēsuētūdinis *f.* disuse, want of practice
ēn (interj.) lo! behold! see!
ignōscō (in- + nōscō), ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus forgive, pardon

Latīnus, -a, -um Latin
libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book
Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse
Sarmaticus, -a, -um Sarmatian, of Sarmatia, a region between the Vistula and Don rivers
subeō (sub- + eō) , subīre, subiī or subīvī, subitūrus go under; come up to; occur
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet, bard, poet

52. A plan of Tarquinius Priscus, fifth of the legendary kings of Rome, and an event that disrupted it

> mūrō quoque lapideō circumdāre urbem parābat cum Sabīnum bellum coeptīs* in-
>
> tervēnit. adeōque ea subita rēs fuit ut prius Aniēnem trānsīrent hostēs quam obviam
>
> īre ac prohibēre exercitus Rōmānus posset. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* I.36.1)

*coeptum, coeptī *n.* undertaking, enterprise, scheme
Aniēn, Aniēnis *m.* (the) Anio, a river in northern Latium
interveniō (inter- + veniō) interrupt
lapideus, -a, -um (made of) stone
obviam (adv.) in the way of, so as to meet; obviam īre, to go to meet

parō (1-tr.) prepare, make ready
Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine (of a territory and people northeast of Rome)
subitus, -a, -um sudden
trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsiī or trānsīvī, trānsitus go across

53. The historian describes the consul Volumnius's experience in fighting the Sallentini, a Samnian people living in the heel of Italy.

> Volumnium prōvinciae* haud paenituit. multa secunda proelia fēcit; aliquot urbēs
>
> hostium vī cēpit. praedae erat largītor et benignitātem per sē grātam comitāte adiu-
>
> vābat mīlitemque† hīs artibus fēcerat et perīculī et labōris avidum. (Livy, *Ab Urbe*
>
> *Conditā* IX.42.5)

*prōvincia, *here,* task, assignment
†mīles, *here, collective singular,* soldiery, soldiers
adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus help, assist; augment, enhance
aliquot (indecl. adj.) several
avidus, -a, -um greedy; eager, hungry (for) (+ gen.)

benignitās, benignitātis *f.* kindness, benevolence, generosity
comitās, comitātis *f.* friendliness, charm
largītor, largītōris *m.* bestower, giver
praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder
secundus, -a, -um favorable
Volumnius, Volumniī *m.* Volumnius

54. After describing a tremendous Roman victory over the Carthaginians in 207 B.C.E., the historian recounts a horrific moment in the Roman camp.

> C. Claudius cōnsul cum in castra redīsset, caput Hasdrubalis quod servātum cum
>
> cūrā attulerat prōicī ante hostium statiōnēs, captīvōsque Āfrōs vīnctōs ut erant os-
>
> tendī, duōs etiam ex iīs solūtōs īre ad Hannibalem et exprōmere quae ācta essent
>
> iussit. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXVII.51.11)

Āfer, Āfra, Āfrum African
afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring with one
C. Claudius, C. Claudiī *m.* C. Claudius (consul 207 B.C.E.)
captīvus, captīvī *m.* prisoner of war, captive
exprōmō, exprōmere, exprōmpsī, exprōmptus bring forth, disclose, reveal

Hasdrubal, Hasdrubalis *m.* Hasdrubal, Carthaginian general and brother of Hannibal
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus or ostēnsus present, show
prōiciō (prō- + iaciō) throw forward, fling
statiō, statiōnis *f.* guard post
vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, join, fetter

55. When Hannibal is crossing the Appenines near the end of winter, he and his troops are overwhelmed by a violent storm.

> tum vērō ingentī sonō caelum strepere et inter horrendōs fragōrēs micāre ignēs;
>
> captī auribus et oculīs metū omnēs torpēre; tandem effūsō imbre, cum eō magis ac-
>
> cēnsa vīs ventī esset, ipsō illō quō dēprēnsī erant locō castra pōnere necessārium
>
> vīsum est. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXI.58.5)

accendō, accendere, accendī, accēnsus set on fire, kindle; stir up, arouse
auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear
dēprendō, dēprendere, dēprendī, dēprēnsus seize (suddenly); overtake, catch
effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus pour out; send forth
fragor, fragōris *m.* crash, roar
horrendus, -a, -um terrible, tremendous

imber, imbris, -ium *m.* rain, shower; (rain-)water
micō, micāre, micuī, —— dart, flicker, flash
necessārius, -a, -um necessary
sonus, sonī *m.* sound, noise
strepō, strepere, strepuī, strepitum make a loud noise, crash
torpeō, torpēre, ——, —— be struck numb, be paralyzed
ventus, ventī *m.* wind

56. The historian describes a particularly narrow pass through a mountain range.

> haec ūna mīlitāris via est, quā trādūcī exercitūs, sī nōn prohibeantur, possint.
>
> (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXXVI.15.11)

mīlitāris, mīlitāre military, for soldiers
trādūcō (trāns- + dūcō) lead across

57. The leader of the Achaeans, allies of Rome involved in a dispute with the Spartans, concludes an appeal.

> verēmur quidem vōs, Rōmānī, et sī ita vultis, etiam timēmus: sed plūs et verēmur et
>
> timēmus deōs immōrtālēs. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXXIX.37.17)

immortālis, immortāle immortal

58. About to assume the governorship of Nearer Spain, Ti. Sempronius describes the nature of the people in that province and the challenges that lie ahead for him.

> dictū quam rē facilius est prōvinciam ingeniō ferōcem, rebellātrīcem cōnfēcisse.*
>
> paucae cīvitātēs, ut quidem ego audiō, quās vīcīna maximē hiberna premēbant, in
>
> iūs diciōnemque vēnērunt; ulteriōrēs in armīs sunt. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XL.35.13)

*cōnficiō, *here,* subdue, pacify
diciō, diciōnis *f.* sovereignty, sway, power
ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
hiberna, hibernōrum *n. pl.* winter quarters, winter (military) camp

rebellātrīx, rebellātrīcis rebellious
ulterior, ulterius farther, more distant
vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring

59. M. Servilius addresses the soldiers who are preventing the triumph of their general, L.
Aemilius Paulus, after his victory in Macedonia. A jealous rival had roused the soldiers' re-
sentment against Paulus, who had refused to let his troops indiscriminately seize booty
after the victory.

aliquis est Rōmae, praeter Perseā, quī triumphārī dē Macedonibus nōlit: et eum nōn

īsdem manibus discerpitis quibus Macedonas vīcistis? vincere vōs prohibuisset sī

potuisset, quī triumphantīs urbem inīre prohibet. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XLV.38.2)

discerpō, discerpere, **discerpsī, discerptus** tear to   Perseus, Perseos *m.* Perseus, last king of
    pieces   Macedonia; Perseā = *acc. sing.*
ineō (in + eō), inīre, iniī or inīvī, initus enter   triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph, triumph
Macedones, Macedonum *m. pl.* Macedonians, a
    people of northern Greece; Macedonas = *acc. pl.*

60. Seneca concludes a letter to Lucilius, in which he has argued about the advantage of what
many fear most.

negā nunc magnum beneficium esse nātūrae quod necesse est morī.

(Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CI.14)

beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit
negō (1-tr.) deny

61. Clytaemnestra urges herself to action.

accingere, anime: bella nōn levia apparās.

scelus occupandum est; pigra, quem expectās diem?

(Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 192–93)

accingō (ad + cingō) gird
apparō (1-tr.) prepare for; plan
occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy; take up
piger, pigra, pigrum sluggish, slow; idle, lazy

62. While consoling his friend Polybius, whose brother has recently died, Seneca reminds him
of a parallel from history.

quid tibi referam Scīpiōnem Āfricānum, cui mors frātris in exiliō nuntiāta est?

is frāter, quī ēripuit frātrem carcerī, nōn potuit ēripere fātō.

(Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* XI.14.4)

carcer, carceris *m.* prison
nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report
Scīpiō Āfricānus, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī *m.* (P. Cornelius) Scipio Africanus (consul 205 b.c.e.)

63. Quintilian recalls an opinion of Socrates.

   . . . Sōcratēs inhonestam sibi crēdidit ōrātiōnem quam eī Lysiās reō composuerat . . .

   (Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* II.15.30)

compōnō (com- + pōnō) put together; compose
inhonestus, -a, -um dishonorable, disgraceful
Lysiās, Lysiae *m.* Lysias, an Athenian orator and contemporary of Socrates
reus, reī *m.* defendant
Sōcratēs, Sōcratis *m.* Socrates

64. The satirist urges more care in the raising of a son than in preparing for a guest.

   grātum est quod patriae cīvem populōque dedistī,

   sī facis ut patriae sit idōneus, ūtilis agrīs,

   ūtilis et bellōrum et pācis rēbus agendīs.

   plūrimum enim intererit quibus artibus et quibus hunc tū

   mōribus īnstituās . . . (Juvenal, *Saturae* XIV.70–74)

idōneus, -a, -um suitable, apt, capable
īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus instruct, train, educate
ūtilis, ūtile useful

65. The beginning of a speech by Agricola to his troops before battle

   septimus annus est, commīlitōnēs, ex quō virtūte et auspiciīs imperiī Rōmānī,
   fidē atque operā vestrā Britanniam vīcistis. tot expedītiōnibus, tot proeliīs, seu forti-
   tūdine adversus hostīs seu patientiā ac labōre paene adversus ipsam rērum nā-
   tūram opus fuit, neque mē mīlitum neque vōs ducis paenituit.
   (Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 33)

adversus (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of
auspicium, auspiciī *n.* augury, omen
Britannia, Britanniae *f.* Britain
commīlitō, commīlitōnis *m.* fellow soldier
expedītiō, expedītiōnis *f.* military operation, expedition

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude
opera, operae *f.* effort, work
paene (adv.) nearly, almost
patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, hardiness
seu (conj.) or if, whether; seu . . . seu . . . whether . . . or (if) . . .

66. After recording the differing traditions about the emperor Galba's last words, the historian appends a tart remark.

   nōn interfuit occīdentium quid dīceret.* (Tacitus, *Historiae* I.41)

*dīceret, subject is Galba
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill, slaughter

67. The historian describes a battle between Roman forces and the Cherusci, a German tribe
    led by the fierce Arminius, whose first attempt to break through the line of Roman archers
    had been rebuffed.

    nīsū tamen corporis et impetū equī pervāsit, oblitus faciem suō cruōre nē nōscerē-

    tur. quīdam adgnitum ā Chaucīs inter auxilia Rōmāna agentibus* ēmissumque trā-

    didērunt. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLĒS* II.17)

*agō, *here*, do service
adgnōscō (ad- + nōscō), adgnōscere, adgnōvī,
  adgnitus recognize, identify
Chaucī, Chaucōrum *m. pl.* (the) Chauci, a
  German tribe
cruor, cruōris *m.* blood, gore
ēmittō (ē- + mittō) set free, release
equus, equī *m.* horse

faciēs, faciēī *f.* face; appearance
impetus, impetūs *m.* attack; onset, rush; vigor,
  force
nīsus, *nīsūs *m.* exertion, effort
oblinō, oblinere, oblēvī, oblitus smear, coat, cover
pervādō, pervādere, pervāsī, pervāsus pass
  through, penetrate, prevail; pervāsit, *subject is
  Arminius*

68. The historian recounts an old story indicating the extent of the emperor Tiberius's frustra-
    tion with the senate.

    memoriae prōditur Tiberium, quotiēs cūriā ēg

rederētur, Graecīs verbīs in hunc

    modum ēloquī solitum "ō hominēs ad servitūtem parātōs!" scīlicet etiam illum quī

    lībertātem pūblicam nōllet tam prōiectae servientium patientiae taedēbat. (TACITUS,

    ANNĀLĒS III.65)

cūria, cūriae *f.* the Curia, the senate house
ēloquor (ē- + loquor) utter, say
Graecus, -a, -um Greek
parō (1-tr.) prepare
patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, patience;
  submissiveness
prōdō (prō- + dō) hand down, transmit

prōiectus, -a, -um prominent; abject, groveling
quotiē(n)s (rel. adv.) as often as, whenever
scīlicet (particle) to be sure, no doubt, of course
serviō, servīre, servīvī or serviī, servītum be a
  slave, be enslaved
Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius, adopted son of and
  successor to Augustus

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō S. Rosciō Amerīnō* 56–57

Cicero likens prosecutors to the geese and dogs maintained at public expense in order to guard the Capitoline hill.

ānseribus cibāria pūblicē locantur et canēs aluntur in Capitōliō ut significent sī* fūrēs vēnerint. at fūrēs internōscere nōn possunt, significant tamen sī* quī noctū in Capitōlium vēnerint et, quia id est suspīciōsum, tametsī bestiae sunt, tamen in eam partem[†] potius peccant quae est cautior. quod sī lūce quoque canēs latrent cum deōs salūtātum aliquī vēnerint, opīnor, eīs crūra suffringantur quod ācrēs sint etiam tum cum suspīciō nūlla sit. simillima est accūsātōrum ratiō. aliī vestrum ānserēs sunt quī tantum modo[‡] clāmant, nocēre nōn possunt, aliī canēs quī et latrāre et mordēre possunt. cibāria vōbīs praebērī vidēmus; vōs autem maximē dēbētis in eōs impetum facere quī merentur. hoc populō grātissimum est. deinde, sī volētis, etiam tum cum vērī simile erit aliquem commīsisse, in suspīciōne latrātōte; id quoque concēdī potest. sīn autem sīc agētis ut arguātis aliquem patrem occīdisse neque dīcere

*sī, *here*, introduces Indirect Question
[†]in eam partem . . . quae . . . to that side that . . .
[‡]tantum modo only, merely
accūsātor, accūsātōris *m.* prosecutor
alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed, nourish
ānser, ānseris *m. or f.* goose
arguō, arguere, arguī, argūtus charge, allege
at (conj.) but
bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal
canis, canis *m. or f.* dog
Capitōlium, Capitōliī *n.* (the) Capitoline hill
cautus, -a, -um cautious
cibāria, cibāriōrum *n. pl.* ration *or* allowance of food provided to animals; provisions
clāmō (1-intr.) shout, make a noise
committō (con- + mittō) commit (an offense); break a law, offend
concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant
crūs, crūris *n.* leg
deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next
fūr, fūris, -ium *m.* thief, robber
impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault
internōscō (inter- + nōscō), internōscere, internōvī, internōtus distinguish; pick out (from others)
latrō (1-intr.) bark; make a noise; latrātōte = *2nd. pl. fut. act. imper.*, (ye shall) bark

locō (1-tr.) place
mereor, merērī, meritus sum deserve
mordeō, mordēre, momordī, morsus bite, wound (with the teeth)
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus be harmful, harm, do harm
noctū = nocte
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill
opīnor (1-tr.) suppose, imagine, think
peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake, err
potius (adv.) rather
praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus furnish, provide
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning; way, method
salūtō (1-tr.) say hello; call upon, pay one's respects (to)
significō (1-tr.) indicate, signify
sīn (conj.) but if
suffringō, suffringere, ——, —— break the lower part of
suspīciō, suspīciōnis *f.* suspicion; reason for suspicion
suspīciōsus, -a, -um suspicious
tametsī (conj.) even though

possītis aut quā rē aut quō modō, ac tantum modo* sine suspīciōne latrābitis, crūra
quidem vōbīs nēmō suffringet, sed, sī ego hōs† bene nōvī, litteram illam‡ cui vos
ūsque eō inimīcī estis ut etiam Kal. omnīs ōderitis ita vehementer ad caput adfigent
ut posteā nēminem alium nisi fortūnās vestrās accūsāre possītis.

*tantum modo only, merely

†hōs refers to the judges

‡litteram illam that infamous letter, K, for
kalumniātor, false accuser; *a prosecutor could
be so branded if he was found guilty of bringing
false charges*

accūsō (1-tr.) blame, find fault with; charge,
accuse

affīgō, affīgere, affīxī, affīxus fix, fasten, attach

crūs, crūris *n.* leg

Kalendae, Kalendārum *f. pl.* the Kalends, the first
day of a month; Kal. = **Kalendās**

latrō (1-intr.) bark; make a noise

posteā (adv.) after, afterward

suffringō, suffringere, ——, —— break the
lower part of

suspīciō, suspīciōnis *f.* suspicion; reason for
suspicion

ūsque (adv.) continuously; all the way (to);
ūsque eō, to such an extent, so

vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly

While Sulla ruled Rome as a dictator in 80 B.C.E., young Cicero defended S. Roscius Amerinus against charges of
murdering his own father. Roscius had been framed by those who had arranged the murder, two of his father's rel-
atives conspiring with a freedman of Sulla to acquire the property of the dead man. The *Prō S. Rosciō Amerīnō* shows
Cicero's rhetorical style in the making amid a complex political situation.

2. Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.9

In the hope that a discussion about death may be presented more suitably, Cicero offers an imitation of a Socratic dialogue.

Audītor. Malum mihi vidētur esse mors.

Magister. Iīsne, quī mortuī sunt, an iīs, quibus moriendum est?

A. Utrīsque.

M. Est miserum, igitur, quoniam malum.

A. Certē.

M. Ergō et iī quibus ēvēnit iam ut morerentur et iī quibus ēventūrum est miserī.

A. Mihi ita vidētur.

M. Nēmō ergō nōn miser.

A. Prorsus nēmō.

M. Et quidem, sī tibi cōnstāre vīs, omnēs, quīcumque nātī sunt eruntve, nōn sōlum miserī, sed etiam semper miserī. nam sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem tū quidem eōrum quī vīverent exciperēs (moriendum est enim omnibus), esset tamen miseriae fīnis in morte. quoniam autem etiam mortuī miserī sunt, in miseriam nāscimur sempiternam. necesse est enim miserōs esse eōs quī centum mīlibus annōrum ante occidērunt, vel potius omnīs, quīcumque nātī sunt.

audītor, audītōris *m.* listener
cōnstō (con- + stō), cōnstāre, cōnstitī, ——
 stand still; be consistent with (+ dat.)
ergō (adv.) therefore
ēveniō (ē- + veniō) come out, turn out; *here*,
 introduces Subst. Ut clause
excipiō (ex- + capiō) take out, exclude
magister, magistrī *m.* teacher
miseria, miseriae *f.* misery

potius (adv.) rather
prorsus (adv.) thoroughly, in every respect,
 altogether
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef.
 pron.) whoever, whatever
sempiternus, -a, -um everlasting, perpetual
uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each
 (of two), both
-ve (enclitic adv.) or

3. Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* V.15

Cicero responds to a letter from his friend L. Lucceius (praetor 67 b.c.e.), politician, lawyer,
historian, and an ally of Cicero during the Catilinarian conspiracy. Beset by ill health, Lucceius
wrote to Cicero in order both to console him in his grief over the recent death of his daugh-
ter Tullia and to encourage him to attend to the business of the crumbling Roman Republic.

M. CICERO S. D. L. LUCCEIO Q. F.*

Omnis amor tuus ex omnibus partibus sē ostendit in iīs litterīs quās ā tē proximē ac-

cēpī, nōn ille quidem mihi ignōtus sed tamen grātus et optātus; dīcerem "iūcundus"

nisi id verbum in† omne tempus perdidissem, neque ob eam ūnam causam quam tū

suspicāris et in quā mē lēnissimīs et amantissimīs verbīs ūtēns rē graviter accūsās,

sed quod illīus tantī vulneris quae remedia esse dēbēbant ea nūlla sunt. quid enim?

ad amīcōsne cōnfugiam? quam multī sunt? habuimus enim ferē commūnīs; quōrum

aliī occidērunt, aliī nescio quō‡ pactō obdūruērunt. tēcum vīvere possem equidem et

maximē vellem. vetustās, amor, cōnsuētūdō, studia paria—quod vinclum, quaesō,

dēest nostrae coniūnctiōnī? possumusne igitur esse ūnā?§ nec mehercule intellegō

quid impediat; sed certē adhūc nōn fuimus cum essēmus vīcīnī in Tusculānō, in

Puteolānō. nam quid dīcam in urbe, in quā, cum forum commūne sit, vīcīnitās nōn

requīritur?

*Q. F. = Quintī fīliō
†in, *here, expressing expected duration,* for
‡nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod (indef. adj.)
  sometimes written as two words, I-don't-know-
  who, I-don't-know-which, some . . . or other
§ūnā (adv.) together
accūsō (1-tr.) find fault with, censure
adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still
commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in
  common
cōnfugiō (con- + fugiō) flee for refuge *or* safety
coniūnctiō, coniūnctiōnis *f.* union, bond
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage
dēsum (dē- + sum), dēesse, dēfuī, ——
  be absent, be lacking, be missing
ferē (adv.) almost, nearly
ignōtus, -a, -um unknown
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
lēnis, lēne mild, gentle
L. Lucceius, L. Lucceiī *m.* L. Lucceius
obdūrēscō, obdūrēscere, obdūruī, —— become
  hard(ened), become callous

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus or
  ostēnsus present, show; offer
pactum, pactī *n.* means, manner, method, way
pār, paris equal; similar
proximē (adv.) most recently
Puteolānum, Puteolānī *n.* Puteolanum, an estate
  at or near Puteoli, a town near Naples
quaesō, *quaesere, ——, —— seek, pray for;
  1st sing. pres. act. indic., I ask you, please
remedium, remediī *n.* remedy, cure
requīrō (re- + quaerō), requīrere, requīsiī or
  requīsīvī, requīsītus seek again; call for, need
suspicor (1-tr.) imagine; suspect
Tusculānum, Tusculānī *n.* Tusculanum, an
  estate (particularly Cicero's estate) at or near
  Tusculum, a town in Latium
vetustās, vetustātis *f.* (old) age, antiquity
vīcīnitās, vīcīnitātis *f.* proximity, nearness
vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring; *as subst.,* neighbor
vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)lī *n.* bond, chain, link

sed cāsū nescio quō* in ea tempora nostra aetās incidit ut, cum maximē flōrēre nōs oportēret, tum vīvere etiam pudēret. quod enim esse poterat mihi perfugium spoliātō et domesticīs et forēnsibus ornāmentīs atque sōlāciīs? litterae, crēdō, quibus ūtor adsiduē; quid enim aliud facere possum? sed nescio quō* modō ipsae illae ex-clūdere mē ā portū et perfugiō videntur et quasi exprobrāre quod in eā vītā maneam in quā nihil īnsit nisi propāgātiō miserrimī temporis.

Hīc tū mē abesse urbe mīrāris, in quā domus nihil dēlectāre possit, summum sit odium temporum, hominum, forī, cūriae? itaque sīc litterīs ūtor, in quibus cōn-sūmō omne tempus, nōn ut ab iīs medicīnam perpetuam sed ut exiguam oblīviōnem dolōris petam. quod sī id ēgissēmus ego atque tū quod nē in mentem quidem nōbīs veniēbat propter cottīdiānōs metūs et omne tempus ūnā† fuissēmus, neque mē valētūdō tua offenderet neque tē maeror meus. quod, quantum fierī poterit, cōnse-quāmur. quid enim est utrīque nostrum aptius? propediem tē igitur vidēbō.

---

*nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod (indef. adj.) *sometimes written as two words*, I-don't-know-who, I-don't-know-which, some . . . or other

†ūnā (adv.) together

aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit(ting), appropriate

assiduē (adv.) continually, constantly

cōnsequor (con- + sequor) follow after, pursue

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus wear away, consume; spend, pass

cottīdiānus, -a, -um daily

cūria, cūriae f. the Curia, the senate house

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm

dolor, dolōris m. grief, sorrow, pain

domesticus, -a, -um personal, domestic

exclūdō, exclūdere, exclūsī, exclūsus keep out, exclude, debar

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

exprobrō (1-tr.) bring up as a reproach

flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —— blossom; prosper; be at the height of one's power

forēnsis, forēnse of *or* belonging to the forum, forensic; public

incidō (in- + cadō), incidere, incidī, incāsūrus fall into, pass; slip

īnsum (in- + sum), inesse, īnfuī, —— be in; be present, be contained

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

maeror, maerōris m. grief, sorrow, mourning

medicīna, medicīnae f. medicine; treatment, cure

mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at, be astonished

oblīviō, oblīviōnis f. (state of) forgetfulness, oblivion

offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus trouble, upset, give offense to, annoy

ornāmentum, ornāmentī n. adornment, embel-lishment; distinction, honor

perfugium, perfugiī n. place of refuge, shelter, sanctuary

perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, without interrup-tion; perpetual, everlasting

portus, portūs m. harbor; refuge, haven

propāgātiō, propāgātiōnis f. continuation, prolon-gation

propediem (adv.) before long, any day now, very soon

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)

sōlācium, sōlāciī n. comfort, solace, relief

spoliō (1-tr.) strip, rob

uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each (of two)

valētūdō, valētūdinis f. health; illness, indispo-sition

4. Catullus III (hendecasyllable)

A mock-tragic dirge

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,
et quantumst hominum venustiōrum:
passer mortuus est meae puellae,
passer, dēliciae meae puellae,
quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat: 5
nam mellītus erat suamque nōrat
ipsam* tam bene quam puella mātrem,
nec sēsē ā gremiō illius† movēbat,
sed circumsiliēns modo hūc modo illūc
ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.   10
quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum
illūc, unde negant redīre quemquam.
at vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae
Orcī, quae omnia bella‡ dēvorātis:
tam bellum‡ mihi passerem abstulistis.   15
ō factum male, ō miselle passer!
tuā nunc operā meae puellae
flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.

*ipsa, *here*, mistress
†The second -i- of **illīus** here scans *short*.
‡bellus, -a, -um pretty, charming, lovely
at (conj.) but
circumsiliō, circumsilīre, ——, —— leap about,
    hop
dēliciae, dēliciārum *f. pl.* delight, darling, beloved
dēvorō (1-tr.) swallow up, gulp down, devour
domina, dominae *f.* mistress
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)
gremium, gremiī *n.* bosom; lap
iter, itineris *n.* passage; road, route
lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī, lūctus mourn (for); grieve,
    lament
mellītus, -a, -um honey-sweet

misellus, -a, -um wretched (little), pitiable
negō (1-tr.) deny, say . . . not
ocellus, ocellī *m.* (little) eye
opera, operae *f.* effort, work; *in abl.*, fault
Orcus, Orcī *m.* Orcus, god of the underworld
    (= Dis)
passer, passeris *m.* sparrow
pīpiō (1-intr.) chirp, cheep, peep
rubeō, rubēre, ——, —— be red
tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
tenebricōsus, -a, -um full of shadows, gloomy
turgidulus, -a, -um swollen (little)
ūsque (adv.) continuously
venustus, -a, -um charming, pleasing

5. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.44

Caesar reports the German king Ariovistus's response to a series of Caesar's demands.

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit:
trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine
magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in
Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre
bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bel-
lum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē cas-
tra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ūnō ā sē proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse.

arcessō, arcessere, arcessiī or arcessīvī, arcessītus
    send for, summon; invite
Ariovistus, Ariovistī *m.* Ariovistus, a German
    king
concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant
cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus ac-
    custom, habituate; *in perfect active and passive,*
    be accustomed; cōnsuērint, *perf. subj. as if in*
    primary sequence
Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
impōnō (in- + pōnō) place on, impose on
obses, obsidis *m.* or *f.* hostage
postulātum, postulātī *n.* demand

praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare
praemium, praemiī *n.* reward, prize
propinquus, -a, -um near, close; *as subst.,* relative
Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine, a river in north-
    eastern Gaul
sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode
*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will
stīpendium, stīpendiī *n.* tax, tribute
trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsiī or trānsīvī,
    trānsitus go across, cross
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice

6. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.14

Caesar reports on practices of the Celtic tribes that he observed in Britain.

ex hīs* omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est mari-
tima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. interiōrēs plērīque frū-
menta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. omnēs vērō sē
Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt
in pugnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter
caput et labrum superius. uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs et max-
imē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs.† sed sī quī sunt ex iīs nātī, eōrum
habentur līberī,† quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

*hīs refers to the tribes of Britain.
†līberī, *here*, children
aspiciō, aspicere, **aspexī**, aspectus look at, look
   upon; behold
Britannī, Britannōrum *m. pl.* (the) Britons
   (inhabitants of Britain)
caeruleus, -a, -um (sky) blue
Cantium, Cantiī *n.* Cantium, a town in Britain
capillus, capillī *m.* hair
carō, carnis *f.* flesh, meat
color, colōris *m.* color
commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in
   common
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage
dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead away; bring home
   (as one's bride)
dēnī, dēnae, dēna ten together
duodēnī, duodēnae, duodēna twelve together
frūmentum, frūmentī *n.* grain
Gallicus, -a, -um of Gaul, Gallic
horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful
hūmānus, -a, -um human; humane, civilized
incolō, incolere, incoluī, —— inhabit

īnficiō (in- + faciō) dye
interior, interius situated farther from the coast,
   more remote
labrum, labrī *n.* lip
lac, lactis *n.* milk
maritimus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the sea;
   situated near the sea, coastal
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
pellis, pellis, -ium *f.* (animal) skin, hide
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
prōmittō (prō- + mittō) send forth; let grow long
pugna, pugnae *f.* fight, battle
rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus scrape; shave
regiō, regiōnis *f.* region, locality
serō, serere, sēvī, satus plant, sow
superior, superius upper
uxor, uxōris *f.* wife
vestiō, vestīre, vestīvī or **vestiī, vestītus** clothe,
   dress
virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin
vitrum, vitrī *n.* woad, a plant from which a blue
   dye is made; blue dye

7. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 12

The historian describes how Jugurtha's soldiers murdered King Hiempsal in his house.

quī* postquam in aedīs inrūpēre, dīvorsī rēgem quaerere, dormientīs aliōs, aliōs oc-
cursantīs interficere, scrūtārī loca abdita, clausa effringere, strepitū et tumultū omnia
miscēre, quom interim Hiempsal reperītur† occultāns sē tuguriō mulieris ancillae,
quō initiō pavidus et ignārus locī perfūgerat. Numidae caput eius, utī iussī erant, ad
Iugurtham referunt.†

*quī, connective relative referring to Jugurtha's
   soldiers
†reperītur, referunt, historical use of present
   tense; translate as perfect
abdō (ab- + dō) hide, conceal, keep secret
aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *in pl.*,
   house, abode
ancilla, ancillae *f.* maidservant
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus close, shut,
   close up
dīversus, -a, -um different, separate
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī or dormiī, dormītum
   sleep, be asleep
effringō, effringere, effrēgī, effrāctus break off,
   break open
Hiempsal, Hiempsalis *m.* Hiempsal, an African
   king and cousin of Jugurtha
ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, unacquainted
   (with) (+ gen.)
initium, initiī *n.* beginning

interim (adv.) meanwhile
irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptus break (in),
   burst (into)
Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha, a Numidian
   king
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix; throw into
   confusion
mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
Numidae, Numidārum *m. pl.* (the) Numidians
occultō (1-tr.) hide, conceal
occursō (1-tr.) run to meet, rush against, oppose
pavidus, -a, -um fearful
perfugiō (per- + fugiō) flee (for refuge)
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus find, discover
scrūtor (1-tr.) ransack, search, investigate
strepitus, strepitūs *m.* noise
tugurium, tuguriī *n.* hut, cottage, small dwelling
tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, tumult,
   panic
utī = ut

8. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 36

The historian reflects on the terrible power of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

eā tempestāte mihi imperium populī Rōmānī multō maxumē miserābile vīsum est.
quoi quom ad occāsum ab ortū sōlis omnia domita armīs pārērent, domī ōtium atque
dīvitiae, quae prīma mortālēs putant, adfluerent, fuēre tamen cīvēs quī sēque remque
pūblicam obstinātīs animīs perditum īrent. namque duōbus senātī dēcrētīs ex tantā
multitūdine neque praemiō inductus coniūrātiōnem patefēcerat neque ex castrīs
Catilīnae quisquam omnium discesserat: tanta vīs morbī atque utī tābēs plērōsque
cīvium animōs invāserat.

afflu**ō**, affluere, affluxī, affluxus flow toward,
   flow in; abound
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
dēcrētum, dēcrētī *n.* decree
dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* wealth, riches
domō, domāre, domuī, domitus tame, subdue,
   conquer
indūcō (in- + dūcō) lead in; persuade, induce
invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus enter (hostilely);
   invade, attack
miserābilis, miserābile pitiable, wretched
morbus, morbī *m.* sickness, disease
mortālis, mortāle mortal

multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude
obstinātus, -a, -um determined, resolute,
   inflexible
occāsus, occāsūs *m.* falling, setting
ortus, ortūs *m.* rising
ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure; peace
patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus lay
   open, disclose, expose
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
praemium, praemiī *n.* reward
tābēs, tābis *f.* wasting away, decay; plague
tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm; time
utī = ut, as if, as it were

9. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 60–61

With frequent use of the historical present, the historian vividly describes the final battle between Catiline's forces and those loyal to Rome. He then concludes his monograph with a description of the battle's aftermath.

sed ubi omnibus rēbus explōrātīs Petreius tubā signum dat, cohortīs paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostium exercitus. postquam eō ventum est unde ā ferentāriīs proelium conmittī posset, maxumō clāmōre cum īnfestīs signīs concurrunt; pīla omittunt, gladiīs rēs geritur. veterānī, pristinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācriter īnstāre, illī haud timidī resistunt: maxumā vī certātur. intereā Catilīna cum expedītīs in prīmā aciē vorsārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciīs arcessere, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī mīlitis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exequēbātur. Petreius, ubi videt Catilīnam contrā ac* ratus

*contrā ac different from, otherwise than

accessō, arcessere, arcessiī or arcessīvī, arcessītus send for, summon

certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive

clāmor, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting; noise

cohors, cohortis, -ium *f.* company of soldiers, division of an army, cohort

comminus (adv.) in close contact, at close quarters, hand to hand

committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in; enter upon, commence

concurrō, concurrere, concurrī, concursum rush together, charge

ex(s)equor (ex- + sequor) perform, execute, accomplish

expedītus, expedītī *m.* light-armed soldier

explōrō (1-tr.) examine, investigate

ferentārius, ferentāriī *m.* light-armed troop

feriō, ferīre, ——, —— strike, hit

incēdō (in- + cēdō) go in, enter; advance

īnfestus, -a, -um hostile, harmful

īnstō (in- + stō), īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātūrus press (hostilely), press on, pursue

integer, integra, integrum untouched; unhurt; fresh, vigorous

intereā (adv.) meanwhile

memor, memoris mindful, remembering (+ gen.)

officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, task; function

omittō (ob- + mittō) let loose, let go, let fall

paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually

Petreius, Petreiī *m.* (M.) Petreius, leader of the Roman troops who defeated Catiline at Pistoria

pīlum, pīlī *n.* heavy javelin (of the Roman infantry)

pristinus, -a, -um ancient; former; original

prōvideō (prō- + videō) foresee; provide for, see to

reor, rērī, ratus sum believe, think, imagine

saucius, -a, -um wounded

simul (adv.) at the same time

strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic

succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum run to aid, assist, help (+ dat.)

timidus, -a, -um fearful, afraid, timid

tuba, tubae *f.* horn, (war) trumpet

versor (1-intr.) remain, stay

veterānus, -a, -um old, veteran; *as subst.*, veteran (soldier)

erat, magnā vī tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs hostīs indūcit eōsque per-
turbātōs atque aliōs alibī resistentīs interficit. deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs
adgreditur. Manlius et Faesulānus in prīmīs pugnantēs cadunt. Catilīna postquam
fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucīs relicuom videt, memor generis atque pristinae suae
dignitātis in cōnfertissumōs hostīs incurrit ibique pugnāns cōnfoditur.

sed cōnfectō proeliō, tum vērō cernerēs quanta audācia quantaque animī vīs fuisset
in exercitū Catilīnae. nam ferē quem quisque vīvos pugnandō locum cēperat, eum
āmissā animā corpore tegēbat. paucī autem, quōs mediōs cohors praetōria disiēcerat,
paulō dīvorsius,* sed omnēs tamen advorsīs volneribus conciderant. Catilīna vērō

---

*paulō dīvorsius, *sc.* conciderant, had fallen a
    little more spread out
adversus, -a, -um turned toward; received in
    front
aggredior (ad- + gradior) assault, attack
alibī (adv.) elsewhere, in another place
āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, deter-
    mine, perceive, see
cohors, cohortis, -ium *f.* company of soldiers,
    division of an army, cohort
concidō (con- + cadō), concidere, concidī, ——
    fall down, collapse; fall lifeless, die
cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close
    together
cōnfodiō, cōnfodīre, cōnfōdī, cōnfossus dig
    thoroughly; pierce, transfix
deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next
dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity, rank, status
disiciō (dis- + iaciō) break, rout, disperse
dīversē (adv.) scattered, in different directions
Faesulānus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Faesulae,
    a city in Etruria; *as subst.*, the Faesulan, refer-
    ring to a commander of part of Catiline's
    troops

ferē (adv.) almost, nearly; for the most part
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth;
    rout, disperse; slay
incurrō (in- + currō), incurrere, incucurrī, incur-
    sum rush (into), attack
indūcō (in- + dūcō) bring (in), lead (in)
ingenuus, -a, -um natural, freeborn
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
Manlius, Manliī *m.* (C.) Manlius, centurion
    under Sulla, leader of Catiline's army
memor, memoris mindful, remembering
    (+ gen.)
perturbō (1-tr.) throw into disorder, confuse,
    disturb
praetōrius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the praetor,
    praetorian
pristinus, -a, -um ancient; former; original
relicuom = archaic form of reliquum
resistō, resistere, restitī, —— oppose, resist
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus stretch
    out, extend; strain, exert oneself, contend
timidus, -a, -um fearful, afraid, timid
utrimque (adv.) from both sides, on both sides
vīvus, -a, -um living, alive

longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera repertus est, paululum etiam spīrāns ferō-
ciamque animī, quam habuerat vīvos, in voltū retinēns. postrēmō ex omnī cōpiā*
neque in proeliō neque in fugā quisquam[†] cīvis ingenuos captus est: ita cūnctī suae
hostiumque vītae iuxtā pepercerant. neque tamen exercitus populī Rōmānī laetam
aut incruentam victōriam adeptus erat. nam strēnuissumus quisque aut occiderat in
proeliō aut graviter volnerātus discesserat. multī autem, quī ē castrīs vīsundī aut spo-
liandī grātiā prōcesserant, volventēs hostīlia cadāvera amīcum aliī, pars hospitem aut
cognātum reperiēbant; fuēre item quī inimīcōs suōs cognōscerent. ita variē per
omnem exercitum laetitia, maeror, lūctus, atque gaudia agitābantur.

***cōpia**, *here*, number; body of men
[†]**quisquam**, *indef. pron. used adjectivally*
adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum reach, obtain, get
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion, arouse
cadāver, cadāveris *n.* corpse
cognātus, cognātī *m.* kinsman, relative
dīversē (adv.) scattered, in different directions
ferōcia, ferōciae *f.* fierceness, savagery
gaudium, gaudiī *n.* joy
hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger; host
hostīlis, hostīle of *or* belonging to an enemy, hostile
incruentus, -a, -um bloodless
ingenuus, -a, -um natural, freeborn
item (adv.) similarly, in turn, likewise
iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally
laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness
lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning
maeror, maerōris *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)
paululum (adv.) a little
postrēmō (adv.) finally
prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, advance
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus find, discover
retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp
spīrō (1-tr.) breathe
spoliō (1-tr.) strip; plunder, pillage
strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic
variē (adv.) variously, differently, in different ways
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus go to see, visit; view; **vīsundī** = archaic form of **vīsendī**
vīvus, -a, -um living, alive
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* XI.816–31

The poet describes the death of Camilla, leader of a band of Volscian warrior-maidens fighting on the side of Turnus. The Trojan Arruns has wounded her with his spear.

illa manū moriēns tēlum trahit, ossa sed inter*

ferreus ad† costās altō stat vulnere mucrō.

lābitur exsanguis, lābuntur frīgida lētō

lūmina, purpureus quondam color ōra relīquit.

tum sīc exspīrāns Accam ex aequālibus ūnam   820

adloquitur, fīda ante aliās quae sōla Camillae

quīcum partīrī cūrās, atque haec ita fātur:

"hāctenus, Acca soror, potuī: nunc vulnus acerbum

cōnficit, et tenebrīs nigrēscunt omnia circum.

effuge et haec Turnō mandāta novissima‡ perfer: 825

succēdat pugnae Troiānōsque arceat urbe.

iamque valē." simul hīs dictīs linquēbat habēnās

ad terram nōn sponte fluēns. tum frīgida tōtō

paulātim exsolvit sē corpore, lentaque colla

et captum lētō posuit caput, arma relinquēns,   830

vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās.

---

*ossa . . . inter = inter ossa by anastrophe, the reversal in order of a preposition and its object

†ad, *here,* at, near

‡novissima, *here,* last

Acca, Accae *f.* Acca, sister of Camilla

aequālis, aequāle equal, like; *as subst.,* contemporary, fellow

alloquor (ad- + loquor) address

arceō, arcēre, arcuī, —— keep away, hold out

Camilla, Camillae *f.* Camilla

circum (adv.) all round, round about

collum, collī *n. in sing. or pl.,* neck

color, colōris *m.* color

costa, costae *f.* rib

effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee away

exsanguis, exsangue bloodless; lifeless

exsolvō (ex- + solvō) set loose, release

exspīrō (1-intr.) breathe out, exhale, expire

ferreus, -a, -um (made of) iron

fīdus, -a, -um trustworthy, faithful

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus flow, stream; fall

frīgidus, -a, -um cold

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

habēna, habēnae *f.* rein

hāctenus (adv.) as far as this, thus far

indignātus, -a, -um angered, reluctant

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum slip; slide, glide, fall

lentus, -a, -um pliant, supple, yielding

lētum, lētī *n.* death

linquō, linquere, līquī, —— forsake, give up, relinquish

mandātum, mandātī *n.* charge, command, order

mucrō, mucrōnis *m.* sharp point

nigrēscō, nigrēscere, ——, —— become black, grow dark

os, ossis *n.* bone

partior, partīrī, partītus sum divide, distribute, share; partīrī, Historical Infinitive

paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually

pugna, pugnae *f.* battle, fight

purpureus, -a, -um dark red, rosy, ruddy

quīcum = quācum

quondam (adv.) once, formerly

simul (adv.) at the same time

*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will

succēdō (sub- + cēdō) draw near

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; draw out, pull out

Troiānī, Troiānōrum *m. pl.* Trojans

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.938–52

The end of the *Aeneid*: after Turnus begs for his life, Aeneas hesitates.

  . . . stetit ācer in armīs

Aenēās volvēns oculōs dextramque repressit;

et iam iamque* magis cūnctantem flectere sermō   940

coeperat, īnfēlīx umerō cum appāruit altō

balteus et nōtīs† fulsērunt cingula bullīs

Pallantis puerī, victum quem vulnere Turnus

strāverat atque umerīs inimīcum īnsigne gerēbat.

ille, oculīs postquam saevī monimenta dolōris   945

exuviāsque hausit, furiīs accēnsus et īrā

terribilis: "tūne hinc spoliīs indūte meōrum

ēripiāre mihī?‡ Pallās tē hōc vulnere, Pallās

immolat et poenam scelerātō ex sanguine sūmit."

hoc dīcēns ferrum adversō sub pectore condit   950

fervidus; ast illī solvuntur frīgore membra

vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās.

*iam iamque, at any time now, now almost
†nōtus, *here*, well-known
‡The final -i of mihi here scans *long.*
accendō, accendere, accendī, accēnsus inflame, burn
adversus, -a -um turned toward, opposite; hostile
appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritum be visible, be clear; appear, become evident
ast (conj.) but
balteus, balteī *m.* shoulder band, sword belt
bulla, bullae *f.* boss *or* raised ornament, knob, stud
cingulum, cingulī *n.* band
condō, condere, condidī, conditus found, build; bury
cūnctor, cūnctārī, cūnctātus sum hesitate, delay; cūnctantem, *sc.* Aenēān
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.* (*sc.* manus) right hand
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor, spoils
fervidus, -a, -um seething, burning; passionate, furious
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influence
frīgus, frīgoris *n.* cold, chill
fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, —— shine, gleam

furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy
gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus drink (in), absorb
immolō (1-tr.) offer (someone) in sacrifice, kill (someone) in the manner of a sacrifice
indignātus, -a, -um angered, reluctant
induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on, clothe, dress
īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium *n.* emblem, decoration
membrum, membrī *n.* limb
monimentum, monimentī *n.* token, reminder
Pallās, Pallantis *m.* Pallas, son of Evander and comrade of Aeneas
reprimō (re- + premō) push back, repress; check, hold back
sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
scelerātus, -a, -um wicked, criminal
sermō, sermōnis *m.* speech
spolium, spoliī *n.* booty, spoil
sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew; lay low, slay, kill
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; exact
terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening
umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over, roll

12. Horace, *Carmina* I.37 (Alcaic strophe)

On the death of Cleopatra

Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede lībero

pulsanda tellūs, nunc Saliāribus

ornāre pulvīnar deōrum

tempus erat dapibus, sodālēs.

antehāc[8] nefās dēprōmere Caecubum   5

cellīs avītīs, dum Capitōliō

rēgīna dēmentīs ruīnās

fūnus et* imperiō parābat

contāminātō cum grege turpium

morbō virōrum, quidlibet inpotēns   10

spērāre fortūnāque dulcī

ēbria. sed minuit furōrem

*et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of -que.

antehāc (adv.) before this time, previously

avītus, -a, -um of a grandfather, ancestral

bibō, bibere, bibī, —— drink

Caecubum, Caecubī *n.* Caecuban wine (from the plain of Caecubum in Latium)

Capitōlium, Capitōliī *n.* (the) Capitoline hill

cella, cellae *f.* storeroom

contāminō (1-tr.) defile, pollute

daps, dapis *f.* feast, banquet

dēmēns, dēmentis insane, (raving) mad

dēprōmō, dēprōmere, dēprōmpsī, dēprōmptus bring out, draw forth

ēbrius, -a, -um drunk, intoxicated

fūnus, fūneris *n. in sing. or pl.* funeral (procession); ruin, destruction; death

furor, furōris *m.* madness

grex, gregis *m.* flock, herd; swarm, crowd

impotēns, impotentis powerless, helpless; unrestrained, unbridled

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus reduce, diminish

morbus, morbī *m.* sickness, disease

ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate

parō (1-tr.) prepare

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

pulsō (1-tr.) strike, beat

pulvīnar, pulvīnāris *n.* couch (for a statue of a god)

quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (indef. pron.) anyone *or* anything it pleases; anyone, anything

ruīna, ruīnae *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction

Saliāris, Saliāre Salian, of the Saliī, a college of priests of Mars noted for their sumptuous processions through the city every March

sodālis, sodālis, -ium *m.* comrade, companion

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

8. The vowels -e- and -ă- of antehāc here elide into a single sound -ā-. This internal elision is called synizesis (< Greek *synizesis*, collapse).

vix ūna sospes nāvis ab ignibus

mentemque lymphātam Mareōticō

    redēgit in vērōs timōrēs   15

        Caesar ab Italiā volantem

rēmīs adurgēns, accipiter velut

mollīs columbās aut leporem citus

    vēnātor in campīs nīvālis

        Haemoniae, daret ut catēnīs   20

fātāle mōnstrum: quae generōsius

perīre quaerēns nec muliebriter

    expāvit ēnsem nec latentīs

        classe citā reparāvit ōrās,

accipiter, accipitris *m.* bird of prey, hawk
adurgeō, adurgēre, ——, —— press on, pursue
   closely
catēna, catēnae *f.* chain
citus, -a, -um swift, fast
classis, classis, -ium *f.* fleet
columba, columbae *f.* dove
ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
expavēscō, expavēscere, expāvī, —— become
   frightened of, take fright at
fātālis, fātāle destined, fated; deadly, dangerous
generōsē (adv.) nobly
Haemonia, Haemoniae *f.* Haemonia, old name
   of Thessaly
lateō, latēre, latuī, —— hide, be hidden, be con-
   cealed
lepus, leporis *m.* hare
lymphātus, -a, -um frenzied, deranged

Mareōticum, Mareōticī *n.* Mareotic wine (from
   Mareotis in Egypt)
mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft
mōnstrum, mōnstrī *n.* omen, portent; monster
muliebriter (adv.) like a woman
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
nīvālis, nīvāle snowy
ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast
redigō (red- + agō), redigere, redēgī, redāctus
   bring back (down), force, subdue
rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar
reparō (1-tr.) recover; take in exchange
sospes, sospitis safe, unharmed, spared
triumphus, triumphī *m.* (a) triumph, the proces-
   sion through Rome of a victorious general
velut (conj.) even as, just as
vēnātor, vēnātōris *m.* hunter
volō (1-intr.) fly

ausa et iacentem vīsere rēgiam   25
voltū serēnō, fortis et asperās
   tractāre serpentēs, ut ātrum
      corpore conbiberet venēnum,

dēlīberātā morte ferōcior:
saevīs Liburnīs scīlicet invidēns   30
   prīvāta dēdūcī superbō
      nōn humilis mulier triumphō.

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless
āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark
combibō, combibere, combibī, —— drink
  (deeply)
dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; bring back
  (to Rome)
dēlīberō (1-tr.) weigh, consider; resolve, deter-
  mine
ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie in ruins
invideō (in- + videō) envy, be jealous; begrudge,
  refuse
Liburna, Liburnae f. (a) Liburnian galley
mulier, mulieris f. woman

prīvātus, -a, -um private; as subst., ordinary
  citizen
rēgia, rēgiae f. royal residence, palace
scīlicet (particle) to be sure, no doubt, of course
serēnus, -a, -um calm, serene
serpēns, serpentis, -ium m. or f. serpent
superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty
tractō (1-tr.) keep on dragging; touch, handle
triumphus, triumphī m. (a) triumph, the proces-
  sion through Rome of a victorious general
venēnum, venēnī n. poison
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus go to see, visit; view

13. Horace, *Carmina* III.30 (Asclepiadean)

The poet reflects on his achievements.

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius
rēgālīque sitū pȳramidum altius,
quod nōn imber edāx, nōn Aquilō impotēns
possit dīruere aut innumerābilis
annōrum seriēs et fuga temporum.   5
nōn omnis moriar multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam: ūsque ego posterā
crēscam laude recēns, dum Capitōlium
scandet cum tacitā virgine pontifex:

aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze; money
Aquilō, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo, the north wind
Capitōlium, Capitōliī *n.* (the) Capitoline hill
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase
dīruō, dīruere, dīruī, dīrutus demolish, destroy
edāx, edācis corrosive
exigō (ex- + agō), exigere, exēgī, exāctus drive
    out; finish, complete
imber, imbris *m.* rain; water
impotēns, impotentis powerless, helpless;
    unrestrained, unbridled
innumerābilis, innumerābile innumerable
laus, laudis *f.* praise
Libitīna, Libitīnae *f.* Libitina, goddess of corpses,
    at whose temple the registers of deaths were
    kept

monumentum, monumentī *n.* monument
perennis, perenne everlasting, perpetual,
    perennial
pontifex, pontificis *m.* priest; pontifex
posterus, -a, -um later, following, future
pȳramis, pȳramidis *f.* pyramid
recēns, recentis recent, fresh, new
rēgālis, rēgāle royal, kingly
scandō, scandere, ——, —— climb, mount,
    ascend
seriēs, seriēī *f.* series, chain
situs, sitūs *m.* position, structure; neglect, decay
tacitus, -a, -um silent
ūsque (adv.) continuously
virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin
vītō (1-tr.) avoid

dīcar, quā* violēns obstrepit Aufidus   10

et quā* pauper aquae Daunus agrestium

rēgnāvit populōrum, ex humilī potēns

prīnceps Aeolium carmen ad Ītalōs

dēdūxisse modōs. sūme superbiam

quaesītam meritīs et mihi Delphicā

laurō cinge volēns, Melpomenē, comam.   15

*quā, *here* (adv.), where

Aeolius, -a, -um Aeolic, Aeolian, of Aeolia,
    a region in northwest Asia Minor, supposed
    birthplace of Greek lyric poetry

agrestis, agreste rustic

Aufidus, Aufidī *m.* (the) Aufidus (river)
    (in Apulia)

coma, comae *f.* hair

Daunus, Daunī *m.* Daunus, legendary king of
    Apulia (Horace's home district)

dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; introduce;
    convert, adapt

Delphicus, -a, -um Delphic, of Delphi

impotēns, impotentis powerless, helpless;
    unrestrained, unbridled

Ītalus, -a, -um Italian

laurus, laurī *f.* laurel

Melpomenē, Melpomenēs *f.* Melpomene, a Muse

meritum, meritī *n.* merit; service

obstrepō, obstrepere, obstrepuī, obstrepitus roar

pauper, pauperis poor

potēns, potentis powerful

prīnceps, prīncipis first

rēgnō (1-tr.) rule, rule over (+ gen.)

situs, sitūs *m.* position, structure; neglect, decay

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take (up), adopt
    as suitable

superbia, superbiae *f.* pride; haughtiness, arro-
    gance

violēns, violentis violent, forceful

14. Propertius II.29a

The poet receives an unusual escort back to his beloved.

Hesternā, mea lūx, cum pōtus nocte vagārer,

   nec mē servōrum dūceret ūlla manus,

obvia, nescio quot* puerī, mihi turba, minūtī,

   vēnerat[†] (hōs vetuit mē numerāre timor);

quōrum aliī faculās, aliī retinēre sagittās,   5

   pars etiam vīsast vincla parāre mihi.

sed nūdī fuerant.[†] quōrum lascīvior ūnus

   "arripite hunc," inquit, "nam bene nōstis eum.

hic[‡] erat, hunc mulier nōbīs īrāta locāvit."

   dīxit, et in collō iam mihi nōdus erat.   10

hīc alter iubet in medium prōpellere, at alter

   "intereat, quī nōs nōn putat esse deōs!

*nescio quot, I-don't-know-how-many, some

[†]vēnerat, fuerant, pluperfects used to express a sudden action; translate as perfects

[‡]hic, *here*, scans as if it were spelled hicc

arripiō, arripere, arripuī, arreptus grasp, take hold of, seize; arrest

at (conj.) but

collum, collī *n.* neck

facula, faculae *f.* (little) torch

hesternus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to yesterday; hesterna nox, last night

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

intereō (inter- + eō), interīre, interiī, interitūrus perish, die

īrātus, -a, -um angry, irate

lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint

locō (1-tr.) place; assign

minūtus, -a, -um small, tiny, minute

mulier, mulieris *f.* woman

nōdus, nōdī *m.* knot; (knotted) rope

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude

numerō (1-tr.) number, count

obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving against, opposed in direction

parō (1-tr.) prepare, make ready

pōtō, pōtāre, pōtāvī, pōtātus or pōtus drink intoxicating drinks; *perf. pass. part. with active meaning*, having drunk, being drunk

prōpellō (prō- + pellō), prōpellere, prōpulī, prōpulsus push forward, propel; compel to go

retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp

sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow

turba, turbae *f.* crowd

vagor (1-intr.) wander

vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)lī *n.* bond, chain

haec tē nōn meritum tōtās exspectat in* hōrās:

at tū nescio quam† quaeris, inepte, forīs.

quae cum Sīdoniae nocturna ligāmina mitrae   15

solverit atque oculōs mōverit illa gravīs,

afflābunt tibi nōn Arabum dē grāmine odōrēs,

sed quōs ipse suīs fēcit Amor manibus.

parcite iam, frātrēs, iam certōs spondet amōrēs;

et iam ad mandātam vēnimus ecce domum."   20

atque ita mī iniectō dīxērunt rursus amictū:

"ī nunc et noctēs disce manēre domī."

*in, *here, expressing duration,* for

†nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod (indef. adj.),
sometimes written as two words, I-don't-know-
who, I-don't-know-which, some . . . or other

afflō (1-intr.) blow, breathe (upon) (+ dat.)

amictus, amictūs *m.* mantle, cloak

Arabēs, Arabum *m. pl.* Arabians, Arabs

discō, discere, didicī, —— learn (how) (+ inf.)

forīs (adv.) out of doors, outside; abroad

grāmen, grāminis *n.* grass; herb

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

ineptus, -a, -um having no sense of what is fit-
ting, foolish

iniciō (in- + iaciō) throw upon

ligāmen, ligāminis *n.* fastening, string

mandō (1-tr.) entrust, commit; assign, order

mereor, merērī, meritus sum deserve, earn

mī = mihi

mitra, mitrae *f.* (eastern) headdress

nocturnus, -a, -um at night, nocturnal

odor, odōris *m.* odor, scent

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be
sparing (+ dat.)

rursus (adv.) again

Sīdonius, -a, -um of Sidon, a Phoenician city
famed for its export of purple dye

spondeō, spondēre, spopondī, spōnsus pledge

15. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.253–73

When mortal men reached the Iron Age of greed and crime, Jupiter decided to destroy the human race and begin again.

iamque erat in tōtās sparsūrus fulmina terrās;

sed timuit nē forte sacer tot ab ignibus aethēr

conciperet flammās longusque ardēsceret axis: 255

esse quoque in fātīs reminīscitur adfore tempus

quō mare, quō tellūs correptaque rēgia caelī

ardeat et mundī mōlēs obsessa labōret.

tēla repōnuntur manibus fabricāta Cyclōpum;

poena placet dīversa, genus mortāle sub undīs   260

perdere et ex omnī nimbōs dēmittere caelō.

prōtinus Aeoliīs Aquilōnem claudit in antrīs

Aeolius, -a, -um of Aeolus, ruler of the winds; Aeolian

aethēr, aetheris *m. aether* or ether, the upper region of the sky; heaven

antrum, antrī *n.* cave, cavern

Aquilō, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo, the north wind

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire

ardēscō, ardēscere, ——, —— become inflamed, begin to burn

axis, axis, -ium *m.* (celestial) axis, pole

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus close, shut; confine, enclose

concipiō (con- + capiō) take on, absorb, catch

corripiō (con- + rapiō) snatch up, seize; ignite

Cyclōps, Cyclōpos *m.* one of the Cyclopes, the fabulous giants of Sicily

dēmittō (dē- + mittō) send down

dīversus, -a, -um different

fabricō (1-tr.) fashion, forge

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

fulmen, fulminis *n.* lightning; thunderbolt

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* (huge) mass

mortālis, mortāle mortal

mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world

nimbus, nimbī *m.* rain cloud

obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus besiege, beset, assail

prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway

rēgia, rēgiae *f.* royal house, palace

reminīscor, reminīscī, —— recall, recollect

repōnō (re- + pōnō) put back, put down, put away

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus scatter, sprinkle; shower; cast

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

unda, undae *f.* wave

et quaecumque fugant inductās flāmina nūbēs

ēmittitque Notum. madidīs Notus ēvolat ālīs,

terribilem piceā tēctus cālīgine vultum;   265

barba gravis nimbīs, cānīs fluit unda capillīs;

fronte sedent nebulae, rōrant pennaeque sinūsque.

utque manū lātē pendentia nūbila pressit,

fit fragor: hinc dēnsī funduntur ab aethere nimbī.

nuntia Iūnōnis, variōs indūta colōrēs,   270

concipit Īris aquās alimentaque nūbibus adfert.

sternuntur segetēs et dēplōrāta colōnī

vōta iacent, longīque perit labor inritus annī.

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring,
   add
aethēr, aetheris *m. aether* or ether, the upper
   region of the sky, heaven
āla, ālae *f.* wing
alimentum, alimentī *n.* nourishment
aqua, aquae *f.* water
barba, barbae *f.* beard
cālīgō, cālīginis *f.* darkness; mist, fog
cānus, -a, -um white; gray
capillus, capillī *m. in sing. or pl.* hair
colōnus, colōnī *m.* settler; farmer
color, colōris *m.* color
concipiō (con- + capiō) catch, take up
dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense
dēplōrō (1-tr.) weep, lament, cry over
ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out, release
ēvolō (1-intr.) fly out
flāmen, flāminis *n.* blast, gust (of wind)
fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus flow, run
fragor, fragōris *m.* crash, roar, din
frōns, frontis, -ium *f.* forehead, brow
fugō (1-tr.) put to flight, rout
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie in ruins
indūcō (in- + dūcō) bring in; draw over, spread
   over
induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on, clothe,
   dress

Īris, Īridis *f.* Iris, female messenger goddess
   (of the rainbow)
irritus, -a, -um useless, vain
lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
madidus, -a, -um wet, drenched, dripping
nebula, nebulae *f.* mist, fog; cloud
nimbus, nimbī *m.* rain cloud
Notus, Notī *m.* Notus, the south wind
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium *f.* cloud
nūbila, nūbilōrum *n. pl.* (rain) clouds
nuntia, nuntiae *f.* (female) messenger
pendeō, pendēre, pependī, —— hang, be sus-
   pended
penna, pennae *f.* feather; wing
piceus, -a, -um pitch black
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef.
   rel. adj.) whatever
rōrō (1-intr.) shed moisture, drip
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit
segēs, segitis *f.* field; crop
sinus, sinūs *m.* curve; fold
sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew, spread out,
   scatter
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening
unda, undae *f.* wave
varius, -a, -um various, different
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer; desire, hope; pledge

16. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* I.13.1–5

In need of wives for his male citizens, Romulus had arranged for the capture and forced marriage of many women from the nearby Sabines. When the Sabines later attacked Rome, these women became the peacemakers.

tum Sabīnae mulierēs, quārum ex iniūriā bellum ortum erat, crīnibus passīs scis-
sāque veste, victō malīs muliebrī pavōre, ausae sē inter tēla volantia īnferre, ex trāns-
versō impetū factō dīrimere īnfestās aciēs, dīrimere īrās, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs
ōrantēs nē sanguine sē nefandō socerī generīque respergerent, nē parricīdiō macu-
lārent partūs suōs, nepōtum illī, hī līberum* prōgeniem. "Sī adfīnitātis inter vōs, sī
cōnūbiī piget, in nōs vertite īrās; nōs causa bellī, nōs volnerum ac caedium virīs ac
parentibus sumus; melius perībimus quam sine alterīs vestrum viduae aut orbae
vīvēmus." movet rēs cum multitūdinem tum ducēs; silentium et repentīna fit quiēs;
inde ad foedus faciendum ducēs prōdeunt. nec pācem modo sed cīvitātem ūnam ex
duābus faciunt. rēgnum cōnsociant: imperium omne cōnferunt Rōmam. ita gemi-
nātā urbe, ut Sabīnīs tamen aliquid darētur Quirītēs ā Curibus appellātī.

*līberī, *here,* children; līberum = līberōrum

affīnitās, affīnitātis *f.* relationship by marriage

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter, killing

cōnsociō (1-tr.) unite

cōnūbium, cōnūbiī *n.* marriage

crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. in sing. or pl.* hair

Curēs, Curium *m. pl.* Cures, a Sabine town

dīrimō, dīrimere, dīrēmī, dīrēmptus break apart, separate, divide

foedus, foederis *n.* pact, treaty

geminō (1-tr.) double

gener, generī *m.* son-in-law

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault, onrush

īnfestus, -a, -um hostile; dangerous

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice

maculō (1-tr.) stain, defile, pollute

muliebris, muliebre of a woman, womanly

mulier, mulieris *f.* woman

multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude; populace

nefandus, -a, -um unspeakable; abominable

nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson

orbus, -a, -um bereft, bereaved; childless, orphaned

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus spread, extend; dishevel

parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent

parricīdium, parricīdiī *n.* murder (of parents or kinsmen), parricide

partus, partūs *m.* birth; offspring

pavor, pavōris *m. pl.* trembling; fear, dread

prōdeō (prō- + eō), prōdīre, prōdiī, prōditūrus go or come forward

prōgeniēs, *prōgeniēī *f.* offspring, progeny

quiēs, quiētis *f.* quiet

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* realm, kingdom; rule, kingship

repentīnus, -a, -um sudden

respergō, respergere, respersī, respersus besprinkle; defile

Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine; *as subst. pl.,* (the) Sabines

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

scindō, scindere, scīdī, scissus rend, tear

silentium, silentiī *n.* silence

socer, socerī *m.* father-in-law

trānsversus, -a, -um crosswise, transverse; ex trānsversō, from the flank

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn

vestis, vestis, -ium *f.* clothing, garment

viduus, -a, -um bereft, bereaved; spouseless, widowed

volō (1-intr.) fly

17. Petronius, *Satyricon* 45

A dinner guest tires of hearing the complaints of another guest and decides to interrupt.

"ōrō tē," inquit Echīōn centōnārius, "melius loquere. 'modo sīc, modo sīc,' inquit rūsticus; varium porcum perdiderat. quod hodiē nōn est, crās erit: sīc vīta trūditur. nōn meherculēs patria melior dīcī potest* sī hominēs habēret. sed labōrat hōc tempore, nec haec sōla. nōn dēbēmus dēlicātī esse, ubique† medius caelus‡ est. tū sī aliubi fueris, dīcēs hīc porcōs coctōs ambulāre. et ecce habitūrī sumus mūnus excellente in trīduō diē fēstā; familia nōn lanistīcia, sed plūrimī lībertī. et Tītus noster magnum animum habet et est caldicerebrius: aut hoc aut illud, erit quid§ utique. nam illī domesticus sum, nōn est mixcix. ferrum optimum datūrus est, sine fugā, carnārium in mediō, ut amphitheāter videat.

*potest, pres. indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence
†ubique (adv.) everywhere
‡caelus = caelum
§quid = aliquid
aliubi (adv.) in another place, in other places, elsewhere
amphitheāter (= amphitheātrum), amphitheātrī *m.* oval theater, amphitheater
caldicerebrius, -a, -um hot headed, impetuous
carnārium, carnāriī *n.* meat rack; slaughterhouse; carnage, butchery
centōnārius, centōnāriī *m.* maker of patchwork, rag seller; man who uses mats to extinguish fires
coquō, còquere, coxī, coctus cook, bake, boil, roast
crās (adv.) tomorrow
dēlicātus, -a, -um self-indulgent; hard to please; fastidious
domesticus, -a, -um belonging to the family; familiar

Echīōn, Echīonis *m.* Echion
excellēns, excellentis superior, excellent; excellente = *neut. sing. acc.*
familia, familiae *f.* household; troop, group
fēstus, -a, -um festal; fēsta or fēstus diēs festival day, holiday
hodiē (adv.) today
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
lanistīcius, -a, -um belonging to a lanista, a trainer of gladiators; gladiatorial
lībertus, lībertī *m.* freedman
mixcix (unknown) given to half-measures (?)
mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift; public show, spectacle, entertainment
porcus, porcī *m.* pig
rūsticus, rūsticī *m.* country man, peasant, rustic
trīduum, trīduī *n.* period of three days
trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsus shove, push; drive on
utique (adv.) in any case, at any rate, at least, certainly
varius, -a, -um varied; multicolored, mottled; spotted

18. Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 46

The reverent conclusion of the biography of the historian's father-in-law

sī quis* piōrum mānibus locus, sī, ut sapientibus placet, nōn cum corpore extin-
guuntur magnae animae, placidē quiēscās,[†] nōsque domum tuam ab īnfirmō dēsī-
deriō et muliebribus lamentīs ad contemplātiōnem virtūtum tuārum vocēs, quās
neque lūgērī neque plangī fās est. admīrātiōne tē potius et immortālibus laudibus
et, sī nātūra suppeditet, similitūdine colāmus: is vērus honōs, ea coniūnctissimī
cuiusque pietās. id fīliae quoque uxōrīque praecēperim, sīc patris, sīc marītī me-
moriam venerārī, ut omnia facta dictaque eius sēcum revolvant, formamque ac figū-
ram animī magis quam corporis complectantur, nōn quia intercēdendum putem[‡]
imāginibus quae marmore aut aere finguntur, sed, ut vultūs hominum, ita simu-
lācra vultūs imbecilla ac mortālia sunt, forma mentis aeterna, quam tenēre et ex-
primere nōn per aliēnam māteriam et artem, sed tuīs ipse mōribus possīs. quidquid

*quis, indef. pron. used adjectivally

†quiēscās, addressee is the deceased Agricola

‡putem, subjunctive in a clause of rejected
  reason; translate as indicative

admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis *f.* wonder; admiration,
  veneration

aes, aeris *n.* bronze

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; foreign

colō, colere, coluī, cultus inhabit; cultivate;
  adorn; cherish

complector, complectī, complexus sum embrace,
  cling to; comprehend; remember

coniūnctus, -a, -um linked together; closely asso-
  ciated, related

contemplātiō, contemplātiōnis *f.* contemplation,
  consideration

dēsīderium, dēsīderiī *n.* desire; regret; longing

extinguō, extinguere, extīnxī, extīnctus extin-
  guish; annihilate

exprimō (ex- + premō) express

figūra, figūrae *f.* form, composition; appearance

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make

forma, formae *f.* form, appearance; state, kind

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness; bust

imbecillus, -a, -um weak, feeble; fragile

immortālis, immortāle immortal

īnfirmus, -a, -um weak, feeble; ineffectual

intercēdō (inter- + cēdō) intervene, interfere;
  obstruct, oppose

lamenta, lamentōrum *n. pl.* wailing, weeping

laus, laudis *f.* praise

lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī, lūctus mourn (for); grieve,
  lament

mānēs, mānium *m. pl. Manes*, spirits of the dead;
  shade (of a particular person)

marītus, marītī *m.* husband

marmor, marmoris *n.* marble

māteria, māteriae *f.* material, matter

mortālis, mortāle mortal

muliebris, muliebre of a woman, womanly

pietās, pietātis *f.* dutifulness; loyalty

placidē (adv.) calmly, quietly

plangō, plangere, plānxī, plānctus beat
  (the breast), mourn (for), bewail

potius (comparative adv.) rather

praecipiō (prae- + capiō) advise, instruct

quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum be asleep;
  rest

quisquis, quidquid/quicquid (indef. rel. pron.)
  whoever, whatever

revolvō, revolvere, revolvī, revolūtus go back
  over; review, recall

similitūdō, similitūdinis *f.* similarity, resem-
  blance, likeness

simulācrum, simulācrī *n.* likeness, image;
  statue

suppeditō (1-tr.) support; supply; be available,
  be adequate

uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

veneror (1-tr.) revere, venerate

ex Agricolā amāvimus, quidquid mīrātī sumus, manet mānsūrumque est in animīs

hominum in aeternitāte temporum, fāmā rērum; nam multōs veterum velut inglō-

riōs et ignōbilīs oblīviō obruit: Agricola posteritātī nārrātus et trāditus superstes erit.

aeternitās, aeternitātis *f.* eternity
Agricola, Agricolae *m.* Agricola
ignōbilis, ignōbile unknown, undistinguished
inglōrius, -a, -um lacking renown, obscure
mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at
nārrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of); describe
oblīviō, oblīviōnis *f.* act *or* state of forgetting *or*
  being forgotten, oblivion

obruō, obruere, obruī, obrutus cover up, bury
posteritās, posteritātis *f.* later generations,
  posterity
quisquis, quidquid/quicquid (indef. rel. pron.)
  whoever, whatever
superstes, superstitis surviving, lasting
velut (conj.) even as, just as; as if

19. Tacitus, *Dialogus dē Ōrātōribus* 25

> In a discussion of contemporary oratory's enormous debt to the great speakers of past ages,
> one participant grants the vigor and variety of the old orators but insists that for both the
> Greeks and the Romans one greatest period can be identified.

sed quō modō* inter Atticōs ōrātōrēs prīmae† Dēmosthenī tribuuntur, proximum

locum Aeschinēs et Hyperidēs et Lysiās et Lycurgus obtinent, omnium autem con-

cessū haec ōrātōrum aetās maximē probātur, sīc apud nōs Cicerō quidem cēterōs

eōrundem temporum disertōs antecessit, Calvus autem et Asinius et Caesar et

Caelius et Brūtus iūre et priōribus et sequentibus antepōnuntur. nec rēfert quod inter

sē speciē differunt, cum genere cōnsentiant. adstrictior Calvus, numerōsior Asini-

us, splendidior Caesar, amārior Caelius, gravior Brūtus, vehementior et plēnior et

*quō modō, *here, correlative with* sīc, in the way
  in which
†prīmae, *sc.* partēs, first place
adstrictus, -a, -um constricted; restrained, terse
Aeschinēs, Aeschinis *m.* Aeschines, Athenian
  orator of the fourth century B.C.E.
amārus, -a, -um bitter; acrimonious; biting,
  caustic
antecēdō (ante- + cēdō) (tr.) go before, precede;
  surpass, excel
antepōnō (ante- + pōnō) place before, rank
  ahead of
Asinius, Asiniī *m.* (C.) Asinius (Pollio), Roman
  writer and orator of the first century B.C.E.
Atticus, -a, -um Attic, Athenian
Brūtus, Brūtī *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus, Roman ora-
  tor and politician of the first century B.C.E.
Caelius, Caeliī *m.* (M.) Caelius (Rufus), Roman
  orator and advocate of the first century B.C.E.
Calvus, Calvī *m.* (M. Licinius) Calvus, Roman
  orator and poet of the first century B.C.E.
concessus, concessūs *m.* permission, leave;
  agreement, concession
cōnsentiō (con- + sentiō) be in agreement; be
  similar

Dēmosthenēs, Dēmosthenis *m.* Demosthenes,
  Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.
disertus, -a, -um skilled in speaking, eloquent
Hyperidēs, Hyperidis *m.* Hyperides, Athenian
  orator of the fourth century B.C.E.
Lycurgus, Lycurgī *m.* Lycurgus, Athenian orator
  of the fourth century B.C.E.
Lysiās, Lysiae *m.* Lysias, Athenian orator of the
  fifth and fourth centuries B.C.E.
numerōsus, -a, -um plentiful, abundant; harmo-
  nious, rhythmical
obtineō (ob- + teneō), obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus
  have a hold on
plēnus, -a, -um full, abundant; sonorous; cover-
  ing the whole range
probō (1-tr.) approve of, commend, esteem
proximus, -a, -um nearest, next
splendidus, -a, -um bright, shining, vivid
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow,
  assign
vehemēns, vehementis energetic, vigorous,
  forceful

valentior Cicerō: omnēs tamen eandem sānitātem ēloquentiae prae sē ferunt, ut, sī omnium pariter librōs in manum sūmpseris, sciās, quamvīs in dīversīs ingeniīs, esse quandam iūdiciī ac voluntātis similitūdinem et cognātiōnem. nam quod invicem sē obtrectāvērunt et sunt aliqua epistulīs eōrum īnserta, ex quibus mūtua malignitās dētegitur, nōn est ōrātōrum vitium, sed hominum. nam et Calvum et Asinium et ipsum Cicerōnem crēdō solitōs et invidēre et līvēre et cēterīs hūmānae īnfirmitātis vitiīs adficī: sōlum inter hōs arbitror Brūtum nōn malignitāte nec invidiā, sed simpliciter et ingenuē iūdicium animī suī dētēxisse. an* ille Cicerōnī invidēret, quī mihi vidētur nē Caesarī quidem invīdisse?

*an, *here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer,* can it really be that . . .

afficiō (ad- + faciō) affect, influence

Asinius, Asiniī *m.* (C.) Asinius (Pollio)

Brūtus, Brūtī *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus

Calvus, Calvī *m.* (M. Licinius) Calvus

cognātiō, cognātiōnis *f.* kinship, affinity

dētegō, dētegere, dētēxī, dētēctus uncover, disclose, reveal

dīversus, -a, -um different

ēloquentia, ēloquentiae *f.* eloquence; rhetoric

epistula, epistulae *f.* letter

hūmānus, -a, -um human

īnfirmitās, īnfirmitātis *f.* weakness, sickness

ingenuē (adv.) in a manner befitting a freeborn person; honorably, generously

īnserō, īnserere, īnseruī, īnsertus put in, insert, include

——, vicis *f.* turn; succession; invicem in turn; against one another

invideō (in- + videō) envy, be jealous of

iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion

līveō, līvēre, ——, —— be livid, be envious *or* jealous

malignitās, malignitātis *f.* ill-will, spite, malice

mūtuus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual

obtrectō (1-tr.) criticize maliciously, disparage, belittle

pariter (adv.) equally; together, side by side

prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before; prae sē ferre, exhibit, display

quamvīs (conj.) although

sānitās, sānitātis *f.* healthiness, soundness

similitūdō, similitūdinis *f.* similarity

simpliciter (adv.) simply

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize

vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault

voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice

The *Dialogus dē Ōrātōribus* (Dialogue About Orators), which may date from around 100 c.e., is modeled on Ciceronian philosophical dialogues and is written in a Ciceronian style that contrasts dramatically with the elliptical, unbalanced style of Tacitus's other surviving works. The interlocutors in the *Dialogus* discuss rhetoric generally and treat in particular the interesting question of the relation between flourishing oratory and political turmoil.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 16–17

nunc vērō quae tua est ista vīta? sīc enim iam tēcum loquar, nōn ut odiō permōtus esse videar, quō dēbeō, sed ut misericordiā, quae tibi nūlla dēbētur. vēnistī paulō ante in senātum. quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentiā, tot ex tuīs amīcīs ac necessāriīs salūtāvit? sī hoc post* hominum memoriam contigit nēminī, vōcis exspectās contumēliam, cum sīs gravissimō iūdiciō taciturnitātis oppressus? quid, quod† adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, quod omnēs cōnsulārēs quī tibi‡ persaepe ad caedem cōnstitūtī fuērunt,§ simul atque adsēdistī, partem istam subselliōrum nūdam atque inānem relīquērunt, quō tandem animō tibi ferendum putās? servī mehercule meī sī mē istō pactō metuerent ut tē metuunt omnēs cīvēs tuī, domum meam relinquendam

*post, *here,* since
†quid, quod, what about the fact that
‡tibi, *here,* Dative of Agent
§cōnstitūtī fuērunt = cōnstitūtī sunt
adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival
assīdō, assīdere, assēdī, —— sit down
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
cōnsulāris, cōnsulāris, -ium *m.* ex-consul
contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus happen, befall (+ dat.)
contumēlia, contumēliae *f.* abuse, insult
frequentia, frequentiae *f.* crowd
inānis, ināne empty
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion

misericordia, misericordiae *f.* pity
necessārius, -a, -um necessary; *as subst.,* relative; friend, client, patron
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted
pactum, pactī *n.* stipulation; way, manner
permoveō (per- + moveō) thoroughly move
persaepe (adv.) very often
salūtō (1-tr.) greet, hail, salute
simul atque (conj.) as soon as
subsellium, subselliī *n.* bench, seat
taciturnitās, taciturnitātis *f.* silence
vacuēfaciō, vacuēfacere, vacuēfēcī, vacuēfactus (make) empty

putārem: tū tibi urbem nōn arbitrāris? et sī mē meīs cīvibus iniūriā suspectum tam
graviter atque offēnsum vidērem, carēre mē aspectū cīvium quam īnfestīs omnium
oculīs cōnspicī māllem: tū, cum cōnscientiā scelerum tuōrum agnōscās odium om-
nium iūstum et iam diū tibi dēbitum, dubitās quōrum mentīs sēnsūsque volnerās,
eōrum aspectum praesentiamque vītāre? sī tē parentēs timērent atque ōdissent tuī
neque eōs ratiōne ūllā plācāre possēs, ut opīnor, ab eōrum oculīs aliquō* concēderēs.
nunc tē patria, quae commūnis est parēns omnium nostrum, ōdit ac metuit et iam
diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē parricīdiō suō cōgitāre: huius tū neque auctōritātem
verēbere nec iūdicium sequēre nec vim pertimēscēs?

*aliquō, *here* (adv.), to some place
agnōscō (ad- + nōscō), agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitus
   recognize
aspectus, aspectūs *m.* sight
commūnis, commūne common, shared
concēdō (con- + cēdō) concede; go away
cōnscientia, cōnscientiae *f.* awareness
cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, cōnspectus
   catch sight of, perceive, observe
īnfestus, -a, -um hostile
iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice; iniūriā, *abl.*
   sing. as adv., unjustifiably, unjustly
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion
iūdicō (1-tr.) form an opinion, judge
iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right

offēnsus, -a, -um offensive
opīnor (1-tr.) suppose, imagine, think
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
parricīdium, parricīdiī *n.* murder
pertimēscō, pertimēscere, pertimuī, ——
   become very afraid, take fright; thoroughly
   fear
plācō (1-tr.) appease, calm
praesentia, praesentiae *f.* presence
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; way, method
suspectus, -a, -um viewed with suspicion,
   suspect
vītō (1-tr.) avoid
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 5

L. Catilīna, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingeniō malō
prāvōque. huic ab adulēscentiā bella intestīna, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia cīvīlis grāta
fuēre, ibique iuventūtem suam exercuit. corpus patiēns inediae, algōris, vigiliae,
suprā quam quoiquam crēdibile est. animus audāx, subdolus, varius, quoius reī
lubet* simulātor ac dissimulātor, aliēnī adpetēns, suī profūsus, ardēns in cupidi-
tātibus; satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum. vāstus animus inmoderāta, incrēdi-
bilia, nimis alta semper cupiēbat. hunc post dominātiōnem L. Sullae lubīdō max-
uma invāserat reī pūblicae capiundae;† neque id quibus modīs adsequerētur, dum
sibi rēgnum parāret, quicquam pēnsī habēbat. agitābātur magis magisque in dies‡
animus ferōx inopiā reī familiāris et cōnscientiā scelerum, quae utraque iīs

*quī . . . libet, quae . . . libet, quod . . . libet
    (indef. adj.) any . . . it pleases
†capiundae = archaic form of capiendae
‡in dies day by day
adulēscentia, adulēscentiae *f.* youth, adolescence
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass
algor, algōris *m.* cold
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another
appetēns, appetentis desirous (of), greedy (for)
    (+ gen.)
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage
assequor (ad- + sequor) gain, reach, attain
audāx, audācis bold, daring, confident; auda-
    cious, presumptuous, rash
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
cīvīlis, cīvīle of *or* connected with citizens, civil
cōnscientia, cōnscientiae *f.* consciousness,
    awareness
crēdibilis, crēdibile believable, credible
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
discordia, discordiae *f.* discord, dissension, con-
    flict
dissimulātor, dissimulātōris *m.* dissembler, con-
    cealer
dominātiō, dominātiōnis *f.* absolute rule, tyranny
ēloquentia, ēloquentiae *f.* eloquence
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy,
    occupy; exercise, train
familiāris, familiāre of *or* belonging to the house-
    hold; rēs familiāris, (one's) private property,
    estate, patrimony

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
immoderātus, -a, -um without measure, unre-
    strained, excessive
incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable
inedia, inediae *f.* lack of food
inopia, inopiae *f.* lack of resources, poverty; lack
intestīnus, -a, -um internal
invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus enter (hostilely);
    take hold of
iuventūs, iuventūtis *f.* youth, early manhood
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
nimis (adv.) excessively, too
nōbilis, nōbile noble
parō (1-tr.) prepare; get
pēnsum, pēnsī *n.* weight; importance
prāvus, -a, -um twisted, corrupt, perverse
profūsus, -a, -um generous, lavish
rapīna, rapīnae *f.* plundering, pillaging
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule
simulātor, simulātōris *m.* feigner, pretender
subdolus, -a, -um somewhat crafty, cunning
suprā (adv.) above, beyond; further, more
uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each
    (of two)
varius, -a, -um varying, changeable
vāstus, -a, -um desolate; vast, immense; ravaged
vigilia, vigiliae *f.* wakefulness

artibus auxerat, quās suprā memorāvī. incitābant praetereā conruptī cīvitātis mōrēs, quōs pessuma ac dīvorsa inter sē mala, luxuria atque avāritia, vexābant. rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur, quoniam dē mōribus cīvitātis tempus admonuit, suprā repetere ac paucīs* īnstitūta maiōrum domī mīlitiaeque, quō modō rem pūblicam habuerint quantamque relīquerint, ut† paulātim inmūtāta ex pulcherrumā <atque optumā> pessuma ac flāgitiōsissuma facta sit, disserere.

*paucīs, _sc._ verbīs
†ut, _here_ (interrog. adv.), how
admoneō (ad- + moneō) bring to mind, remind, suggest
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus grow, increase
avāritia, avāritiae _f._ greed, avarice
corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī, corruptus corrupt
disserō, disserere, disseruī, dissertus examine, discuss, treat
dīversus, -a, -um opposite, separate, different
flāgitiōsus, -a, -um shameful, disgraceful, infamous

immūtō (in- + mūtō) (1-tr.) change, alter, transform
incitō (1-tr.) rouse, excite, urge forward
īnstitūtum, īnstitūtī _n._ custom, institution
luxuria, luxuriae _f._ extravagance, excess, luxury
memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell
mīlitia, mīlitiae _f._ military service; mīlitiae = _loc._
paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually
praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition
repetō (re- + petō) seek again, seek back
suprā (adv.) above, beyond; further, more
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.547–58

cui Pyrrhus: "referēs ergō haec et nuntius ībis

Pēlīdae genitōrī. illī mea trīstia facta

dēgeneremque Neoptolemum nārrāre mementō.

nunc morere." hoc dīcēns altāria ad* ipsa trementem   550

trāxit et in multō lāpsantem sanguine nātī,

implicuitque comam laevā, dextrāque coruscum

extulit ac laterī capulō tenus abdidit ēnsem.

haec fīnis Priamī fātōrum, hic exitus illum

sorte tulit† Troiam incēnsam et prōlāpsa videntem   555

Pergama, tot quondam populīs terrīsque superbum

rēgnātōrem Asiae. iacet ingēns lītore truncus,

āvulsumque umerīs caput et sine nōmine corpus.

*ad, *here*, at, near
†ferō, *here*, carry away
abdō (ab- + dō) hide, put away; plunge, bury
altāria, altārium *n. pl.* (high) altar (for sacrifice)
Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia, a Roman province (Asia Minor)
āvellō, āvellere, āvellī or āvolsī, āvulsus tear away
capulus, capulī *m.* sword handle, hilt
coma, comae *f.* hair
coruscus, -a, -um quivering; glittering, gleaming, flashing
dēgener, dēgeneris low-born; degenerate
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.* (*sc.* manus), right hand
ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
ergō (adv.) therefore
exitus, exitūs *m.* departure; end, conclusion
efferō (ex- + ferō), efferre, extulī, ēlātus carry out; raise
genitor, genitōris *m.* father
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie dead
implicō, implicāre, implicāvī or implicuī, implicātus or implicitus entwine, enfold; take hold of
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn
laevus, -a, -um left; *as fem. subst.* (*sc.* manus), left hand

lāpsō (1-intr.) lose one's footing, slip
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach
nārrō (1-tr.) tell, say; describe
Neoptolemus, Neoptolemī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles (= Pyrrhus)
nuntius, nuntiī *m.* messenger
Pēlīdēs, Pēlīdae *m.* son of Peleus, Achilles
Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama, citadel of Troy
prōlābor, prōlābī, prōlāpsus sum slip forward; give way, collapse
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles (= Neoptolemus)
quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly
rēgnātor, rēgnātōris *m.* ruler, king, lord
sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; destiny
superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty
tenus (prep. + *preceding* abl.) (right) up to, as far as
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag
tremō, tremere, tremuī, —— tremble, quiver, quake
trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
truncus, truncī *m.* trunk, torso
umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.540–67

qui tamen īnsequitur pennīs adiūtus amōris,   540

ōcior est requiemque negat tergōque fugācis

inminet et crīnem sparsum cervīcibus adflat.

vīribus absūmptīs expalluit illa citaeque

victa labōre fugae spectāns Pēnēidas undās

"fer, pater," inquit "opem! sī flūmina nūmen habētis,   545

quā nimium placuī, mūtandō perde figūram!"   547

vix prece fīnītā torpor gravis occupat artūs,

mollia cinguntur tenuī praecordia librō,†

in frondem crīnēs, in rāmōs bracchia crēscunt,   550

pēs modo tam vēlōx pigrīs rādīcibus haeret,

ōra cacūmen habet: remanet nitor ūnus in illā.

hanc quoque Phoebus amat positāque in stīpite dextrā

sentit adhūc trepidāre novō sub cortice pectus

*A line is missing because of textual corruption.

†liber, *here*, (inner) bark (of a tree)

absūmō, absūmere, absūmpsī, absūmptus use up, spend; exhaust

adhūc (*adv.*) up to the present time; still

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus aid, assist; strengthen, nourish

afflō (1-tr.) breathe upon

artus, artūs *m.* joint (of the body), limb

bracchium, bracchiī *n.* (lower) arm

cacūmen, cacūminis *n.* peak, top (of a tree)

cervīx, cervīcis *f. in sing. or pl.* neck

citus, -a, -um swift

cortex, corticis *m. or f.* outer covering of a tree, bark

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase

crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. in sing. or pl.* hair

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.* (*sc.* manus), right hand

expallēscō, expallēscere, expalluī, ——— turn pale

figūra, figūrae *f.* form, shape, appearance

fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī *or* fīniī, fīnītus end, complete, conclude

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, leafy bough

fugāx, fugācis fugitive, fleeing, running away

haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesūrus cling, stick (+ dat.)

immineō, imminēre, ———, ——— hang over, threaten (+ dat.)

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

īnsequor (in- + sequor) follow closely, pursue, chase

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

negō (1-tr.) deny, refuse

nimium (*adv.*) too much, excessively

nitor, nitōris *m.* brightness, splendor

occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy

ōcior, ōcius swifter

ops, opis *f.* aid, help

Pēnēis, Pēnēidos of *or* belonging to the river god Peneus; Pēnēidas = *fem. pl. acc.*

penna, pennae *f.* wing

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)

piger, pigra, pigrum sluggish, inactive, slow

praecordia, praecordiōrum *n. pl.* (lower) chest, breast

*prex, *precis *f.* prayer

rādīx, rādīcis *f.* root

rāmus, rāmī *m.* branch

remaneō (re- + maneō) remain

requiēs, requiētis *f.* rest, respite; requiem = *acc. sing.*

spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus scatter, distribute

stīpes, stīpitis *m.* trunk (of a tree)

tenuis, tenue thin, slight, slender

tergum, tergī *n.* back

torpor, torpōris *m.* loss of power, numbness

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble

unda, undae *f.* wave

vēlōx, vēlōcis rapid, swift, speedy

conplexusque suīs rāmōs ut membra lacertīs   555

ōscula dat lignō; refugit tamen ōscula lignum.

cui deus "at, quoniam coniūnx mea nōn potes esse,

arbor eris certē" dīxit "mea! semper habēbunt

tē coma, tē citharae, tē nostrae, laure, pharetrae;

tū ducibus Latiīs aderis, cum laeta triumphum   560

vōx canet et vīsent longās Capitōlia pompās;

postibus augustīs eadem fīdissima custōs

ante forēs stābis mediamque* tuēbere quercum,

utque meum intōnsīs caput est iuvenāle capillīs,

tū quoque perpetuōs semper gere frondis honōrēs!"   565

fīnierat Paeān: factīs modo laurea rāmīs

adnuit utque caput vīsa est agitāsse cacūmen.

---

*medius, *here,* in the middle

adnuō, adnuere, adnuī, adnūtum nod (in agreement), assent

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion, shake

arbor, arboris *f.* tree

at (conj.) but

augustus, -a, -um solemn, venerable; majestic, august

cacūmen, cacūminis *n.* peak, top (of a tree)

capillus, capillī *m. in sing. or pl.* hair

Capitōlia, Capitōliōrum *n. pl.* (the) Capitoline hill, site of the Temple of Jupiter Optimus Maximus and the end point of a triumph

cithara, citharae *f.* cithara; lute

coma, comae *f.* hair

coniūnx, coniugis *m.* or *f.* spouse; husband; wife

complector, complectī, complexus sum embrace

custōs, custōdis *m.* or *f.* guardian, protector, sentry

fīdus, -a, -um trustworthy

fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī or fīniī, fīnītus end, complete, conclude

foris, foris, -ium *f.* door; *in pl.,* double doors

frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, leafy bough

intōnsus, -a, -um uncut, unshorn

iuvenālis, iuvenāle of *or* belonging to a young man, youthful, young

lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm

Latius, -a, -um of Latium, Latin, Roman

laurea, laureae *f.* laurel tree

laurus, laurī *f.* laurel tree; sprig *or* branch of laurel

lignum, lignī *n.* wood

membrum, membrī *n.* limb

ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss

Paeān, Paeānis *m.* Paean, a Greek god (= Apollo)

perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, without interruption; perpetual, everlasting

pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver

pompa, pompae *f.* (ceremonial) procession, parade

postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

quercus, quercūs *f.* oak tree; oak wreath

rāmus, rāmī *m.* branch

refugiō (re- + fugiō) flee, shun

triumphus, triumphī *m.* (a) triumph, the procession through Rome of a victorious general; a ritual cry that accompanies a triumph

tueor, tuērī, tuitus or tūtus sum look at; protect

vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus go to see; view, behold

LATIN TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Note: Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (6, e.g.) or section (§16, e.g.) in which the vocabulary word is introduced.

ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (away) from (1); (prep. + abl.) by (3)

A. = Aulus, Aulī *m.* Aulus (§16)

abeō, abīre, abiī or abīvī, abitum go away (5)

absēns, absentis absent (14)

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus be absent, be distant (14)

ac or atque (conj.) and (what's more) (3)

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum go *or* come to, approach (5)

accidō, accidere, accidī, —— happen (14)

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of) (5)

ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen; fierce (8)

acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh (7)

aciēs, aciēī *f.* sharp edge; keenness; battle line (8)

ad (prep. + acc.) toward, to (1); (prep. + acc.) for the purpose of (13)

adeō (adv.) to such *or* so great an extent, (so) very (14)

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present, be near (14)

Aenēās, Aenēae *m.* Aeneas; Aenēān = *acc. sing.*; Aenēā = *voc. sing.* (§16)

aequus, -a, -um level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil (10)

aestimō (1-tr.) estimate, value (13)

aetās, aetātis *f.* age; lifetime; time (14)

ager, agrī *m.* field (1)

agmen, agminis *n.* line (of march), column; army; multitude, throng (14)

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus drive; do; spend, conduct (4)

    causam agere (idiom) to conduct *or* plead a case (4)

    grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)

    age, agite, *used to strengthen other commands,* come on! (§32)

agricola, agricolae *m.* farmer (1)

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) some, any (14)

aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)

alius, alia, aliud other, another (9)

alter, altera, alterum the other (of two) (9)

altum, altī *n.* deep sea; height (4)

altus, -a, -um tall, high; deep (4)

ambulō (1-intr.) walk (2)

amīcitia, amīcitiae *f.* friendship (5)

amīcus, -a, -um friendly (+ dat.) (3)

amīcus, amīcī *m.* friend (3)

amō (1-tr.) love (2)

amor, amōris *m.* love (6)

Amor, Amōris *m.* Love, Amor (§60)

an (conj.) *introduces an alternative question,* or; *introduces an indirect question,* whether (12)

———. . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)

anima, animae *f.* breath; life force; soul (1)

animal, animālis, -ium *n.* animal (6)

animus, animī *m.* (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *in pl.,* strong feelings (2)

annus, annī *m.* year (8)

ante (adv.) before, earlier, previously; (prep. + acc.) before; in front of (7)

antequam (conj.) before (13)

antīquus, -a, -um old, ancient (6)

M. Antōnius, M. Antōnii *m.* Marcus Antonius, Marc Antony (§16)

Apollō, Apollinis *m.* Apollo (§60)

App. = Appius, Appiī *m.* Appius (§16)

Appius, Appiī *m.* Appius (§16)

apud (prep. + acc.) at, near; at the house of, in the presence of, among (10)

āra, ārae *f.* altar (7)

arbitror (1-tr.) judge, consider, think (11)

arma, armōrum *n. pl.* arms, weapons (2)

ars, artis, -ium *f.* skill, art; guile; trick (7)

Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* Athens (6)

atque or ac (conj.) and (what's more) (3)

auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority; influence (14)

audācia, audāciae *f.* boldness; recklessness, audacity (11)

audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare (8)

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear, listen (to) (4)

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, take away, remove (7)

Aulus, Aulī *m.* Aulus (§16)

aurum, aurī *n.* gold (1)

aut (conj.) or; aut . . . aut . . . either . . . or . . . (7)

autem (postpositive conj.) however; moreover (6)

auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* auxiliary troops (4)

auxilium, auxiliī *n.* aid, help (4)

Bacchus, Bacchī *m.* Bacchus (§60)

bellum, bellī *n.* war (1)

bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)

bene (adv.) well (5)

bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)

bonus, -a, -um good (3)

brevis, breve short, brief (11)

C. = Gaius, Gaiī *m.* Gaius (§16)

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum fall, sink; die (10)

caecus, -a, -um blind; hidden, secret, dark (9)

caelum, caelī *n.* sky, heaven (4)

Caesar, Caesaris *m.* Caesar (§60)

campus, campī *m.* (flat) plain (11)

canō, canere, cecinī, cantus sing (of) (4)

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus take (up), capture; win (4)

cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)

caput, capitis *n.* head (15)

careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus lack, be without, be free from (+ abl.) (6)

carmen, carminis *n.* song, poem (6)

Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.* Carthage (6)

cārus, -a, -um precious; dear (to) (+ dat.) (7)

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp (11)

castra movēre (idiom) to break camp (11)

castra pōnere (idiom) to pitch *or* make camp (11)

cāsus, cāsūs *m.* fall; occurrence, chance, misfortune (10)

Catilīna, Catilīnae *m.* Catiline (§16)

Catō, Catōnis *m.* Cato (§60)

Catullus, Catullī *m.* Catullus (§16)

causā (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)

causa, causae *f.* reason, cause; case (4)

causam agere (idiom) to conduct *or* plead a case (4)

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum go, move; yield; withdraw (5)

celer, celeris, celere swift (15)

centēsimus, -a, -um hundredth (§91)

centum (indeclinable adj.) hundred (§91)

Cerēs, Cereris *f.* Ceres (§60)

certē (adv.) surely, certainly; at least (7)

certō (adv.) surely, certainly (7)

certus, -a, -um sure, certain, reliable (7)

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other (13)

Cicerō, Cicerōnis *m.* Cicero (§60)

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround; gird (on oneself) (15)

circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus place round; surround (15)

cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m.* or *f.* citizen (6)

cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship (7)

clārus, -a, -um bright, clear; famous (4)

Cn. = Gnaeus, Gnaeī *m.* Gnaeus (§16)

——, ——, coepī, coeptus (defective verb) began, have begun (13)

cōgitō (1-tr.) think; ponder (2)

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus come to know, learn; *in perfect,* know (10)

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus bring together; collect, compare; direct; confer (on) (14)

    sē cōnferre (idiom) to betake oneself, to go (14)

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus accomplish, complete (12)

cōnor (1-tr.) try, attempt (8)

cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment (1)

    cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus set up, establish; decide (15)

cōnsul, cōnsulis *m.* consul (8)

cōnsulātus, cōnsulātūs *m.* consulship (8)

contrā (adv.) face to face; in opposition, in turn; (prep. + acc.) facing; against, contrary to (10)

cōpia, cōpiae *f.* wealth, abundance; *in pl.,* troops, forces (7)

Corinna, Corinnae *f.* Corinna (§60)

L. Cornēlius Sulla, L. Cornēliī Sullae *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla (§16)

Cornēlius Tacitus, Cornēliī Tacitī *m.* Cornelius Tacitus (§16)

corpus, corporis *n.* body (6)

Crassus, Crassī *m.* Crassus (§16)

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus trust, believe (+ dat.) (11)

cum (prep. + abl.) with (1); (conj.) when; since; although (12)

cūnctus, -a, -um all (14)

Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* Cupid, Amor (§60)

cupidus, -a, -um desirous (+ gen.) (4)

cupiō, cupere, cupiī or cupīvī, cupītus desire, long for, want (7)

cūr (interrog. adv.) why (2)

cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety (2)

Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* Cynthia (§60)

D. = Decimus, Decimī *m.* Decimus (§16)

dē (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning (1)

dea, deae *f.* goddess (1)

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus owe; ought (2)

decem (indeclinable adj.) ten (4)

decimus, -a, -um tenth (§91)

Decimus, Decimī *m.* Decimus (§16)

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus destroy (10)

dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus deter, prevent (15)

deus, deī *m.* god (1)

Diāna, Diānae *f.* Diana (§60)

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus say, speak, tell (4)

dictum, dictī *n.* word; saying (6)

Dīdō, Dīdōnis *f.* Dido (§60)

diēs, diēī *m.* or *f.* day (8)

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus carry in different directions, scatter; postpone, defer; *(intr.)* differ, be different (7)

difficilis, difficile difficult (8)

difficiliter or difficulter (adv.) with difficulty (8)

dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)

dīligentia, dīligentiae *f.* diligence, attentiveness (3)

Dīs, Dītis *m.* Dis, Pluto (§60)

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum go away, depart (5)

dissimilis, dissimile dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. or dat.) (11)

diū (adv.) for a long time (11)

    diūtius (adv.) longer (11)

    diūtissimē (adv.) longest (11)

dīvīnus, -a, -um belonging to the gods, divine (§60)

dīvus, -a, -um deified, divine (§60)

dō, dare, dedī, datus give, grant (2)

    poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)

    vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)

dominus, dominī *m.* master, lord (1)

domus, domī *f.* house, home (6)

domus, domūs *f.* house, home (8)

dōnec (conj.) while, as long as; until (13)

dōnō (1-tr.) give; present, reward (2)

dōnum, dōnī *n.* gift (1)

dubitō (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (12)

dubium, dubiī *n.* doubt, hesitation (12)

dubius, -a, -um doubtful (12)

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus lead; consider (4)

dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant (15)

dum (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (13)

dummodo (conj.) provided that (13)

duo, duae, duo two (§91)

dūrus, -a, -um hard; harsh (5)

dux, ducis *m.* or *f.* leader (10)

ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (out) from (1)

ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look!

efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus make; bring about (14)

ego, meī (personal pron.) I; me (4)

—, meī (reflexive pron.) myself (5)

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum go *or* come out (13)

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out, expel; sē ēicere (idiom) to rush forth (11)

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus buy (13)

enim (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for (2)

eō (adv.) to that place, thither (§130)

eō, īre, iī or īvī, itum go (3)

eōdem (adv.) to the same place (§130)

equidem (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part (4)

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away (15)

errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake (2)

et (conj.) and; et . . . et . . . both . . . and . . .; (adv.) even, also (1)

etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact (2)

etiam (adv.) also, even; still (7)

etsī (conj.) although (5)

exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army (8)

experior, experīrī, expertus sum test; try; experience (8)

ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* exile, banishment (9)

ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect (13)

facile (adv.) easily, readily (8)

facilis, facile easy (8)

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus make; do (4); reckon (13)

factum, factī *n.* deed (1)

falsō (adv.) falsely (7)

falsus, -a, -um deceptive, false (7)

fāma, fāmae *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame (1)

fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted (12)

fateor, fatērī, fassus sum confess, admit (8)

fātum, fātī *n.* destiny, fate; *in pl. (often),* death (5)

fēlīx, fēlīcis fortunate, happy (8)

fēmina, fēminae *f.* woman; wife (1)

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring, bear, carry; endure (5)

legem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (9)

sē ferre (idiom) to proceed (quickly), to go (5)

ferrum, ferrī *n.* iron; sword (1)

fidēs, fideī *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness; confidence (8)

fīlia, fīliae *f.* daughter (1)

fīlius, fīliī *m.* son (1)

fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m.* or *f.* end, limit, boundary; *in pl.,* territory (10)

fīō, fierī, factus sum become, happen; be made, be done (13)

for (1-tr.) speak, say (15)

fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse (11)

fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck (12)

fortis, forte brave; strong (8)

fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance (7)

forum, forī *n.* public square, marketplace, forum (3)

frāter, frātris *m.* brother (6)

fuga, fugae *f.* flight (8)

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus flee (7)

Gaius, Gaiī *m.* Gaius (§16)

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family (12)

genus, generis *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort (10)

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus bear; manage, conduct; perform (4)

bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)

gladius, gladiī *m.* sword (1)

glōria, glōriae *f.* renown, glory (4)

Gnaeus, Gnaeī *m.* Gnaeus (§16)

Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* Gracchus (either of the Gracchi brothers) (§16)

gradior, gradī, gressus sum walk, step (13)

Graecia, Graeciae *f.* Greece (§16)

grātiā (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)

grātia, grātiae *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks (12)

  grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)

  grātiam or grātiās habēre (idiom) to feel grateful (12)

  grātiam or grātiās referre (idiom) to render thanks, to return a favor (12)

grātus, -a, -um charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased (13)

gravis, grave heavy, deep; important, serious; severe (9)

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold; consider (2)

  grātiam or grātiās habēre (idiom) to feel grateful (12)

  ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech (10)

Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* Hannibal (§60)

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means (14)

herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules! (§71)

heu (interj.) alas! o!

hīc (adv.) here, in this place; at this time (§130)

hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (8)

hinc (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth; hinc . . . hinc . . . on this side . . . on that side . . .; hinc . . . illinc . . . on this side . . . on that side . . . (§130)

homō, hominis *m.* human being, man; *in pl.*, people (6)

honestus, -a, -um honorable, respectable (10)

honor or honōs, honōris *m.* honor, respect; (political) office (13)

Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātiī Flaccī *m.* Quintus Horatius Flaccus, Horace (§16)

hortor (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort (9)

hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (public) enemy (6)

hūc (adv.) to here, hither (§130)

humilis, humile humble (11)

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw; utter; lay, establish (11)

iam (adv.) now; by now, by then, already (9)

ibi (adv.) in that place, there; then, thereupon (§130)

īdem, eadem, idem same (9)

igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore (11)

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire (11)

Īlium, Īliī *n.* Ilium, Troy (§16)

ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (8)

illīc (adv.) there, in that place (§130)

illinc (adv.) from there, thence; hinc . . . illinc . . . on this side . . . on that side . . . (§130)

illūc (adv.) to there, thither (§130)

impediō, impedīre, impedīvī or impediī, impedītus hinder, impede (15)

imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general (11)

imperium, imperiī *n.* power, authority, command; empire (3)

imperō (1-intr.) give an order, order, command (+ dat.) (9)

impius, -a, -um disloyal, wicked (5)

in (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against; (prep. + abl.) in, on (1)

inceptum, inceptī *n.* beginning, undertaking (13)

incertō (adv.) uncertainly (7)

incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable (7)

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus take on, begin (13)

incola, incolae *m.* or *f.* inhabitant (3)

inde (adv.) from that place, from there, thence; from that time, thereupon (§130)

indignus, -a, -um unworthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)

īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis unfortunate, unhappy (8)

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus carry (into); inflict (on) (12)

ingenium, ingeniī *n.* ability, talent; disposition (7)

ingēns, ingentis huge (8)

ingrātus, -a, -um unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased (13)

inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* enmity, hostility; *in pl.*, unfriendly relations, enmity (5)

inimīcus, -a, -um unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.) (3)

inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (personal) enemy (3)

inīquus, -a, -um uneven; inequitable, unjust (10)

īnsidiae, īnsidiārum f. pl. ambush, plot, treachery (7)

īnsula, īnsulae f. island (1)

intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus understand (6)

inter (prep. + acc.) between, among; during (6)

interest, interesse, interfuit it is important, it concerns (15)

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus kill (5)

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus find, discover (11)

invidia, invidiae f. envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment (4)

ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive adj.) -self, -selves; very (5)

īra, īrae f. anger, wrath (2)

is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those; (personal pron.) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (4)

iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that (of yours); those (of yours) (8)

ita (adv.) in this manner, thus, so (7)

Italia, Italiae f. Italy (1)

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus order (2)

Iūlia, Iūliae f. Julia (§16)

C. Iūlius Caesar, C. Iūliī Caesaris m. Gaius Julius Caesar (§60)

Iūnō, Iūnōnis f. Juno (§60)

Iuppiter, Iovis m. Jupiter (§60)

iūre (adv.) rightly, justly (6)

iūs, iūris n. right, law; judgment; court (6)

L. = Lūcius, Lūciī m. Lucius (§16)

labor, labōris m. work; effort, hardship (10)

labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed (2)

laetus, -a, -um happy (3)

Latīnus, Latīnī m. Latinus (§60)

laudō (1-tr.) praise (3)

lēgātus, lēgātī m. legate, envoy; lieutenant (10)

legiō, legiōnis f. legion (11)

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus gather; choose; read (6)

Lesbia, Lesbiae f. Lesbia (§60)

levis, leve light; trivial; fickle (9)

lēx, lēgis f. law
    lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (9)

līber, lībera, līberum free (3)

Līber, Līberī m. Liber, Bacchus (§60)

liber, librī m. book (1)

līberō (1-tr.) free, liberate (6)

lībertās, lībertātis f. freedom (9)

licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est it is permitted (14)

M. Licinius Crassus, M. Liciniī Crassī m. Marcus Licinius Crassus (§16)

littera, litterae f. letter (of the alphabet); in pl., letter, epistle; literature (12)

Līvia, Līviae f. Livia (§16)

locus, locī m. place; loca, locōrum n. pl. places (8)

longē (adv.) a long way, far; by far (11)

longus, -a, -um long; far; long-standing; far-reaching (11)

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum speak (11)

Lūcius, Lūciī m. Lucius (§16)

lūmen, lūminis n. light, radiance; in pl., eyes (13)

lūna, lūnae f. moon (14)

lūx, lūcis f. light, daylight (11)
    prīmā lūce (idiom) at daybreak (11)

M. = Marcus, Marcī m. Marcus (§16)

M' = Manius, Maniī, m. Manius (§16)

magis (adv.) more greatly (11)

magnopere (adv.) greatly (10)

magnus, -a, -um large, big; great (3)

maior, maius (adj.) greater (11)

maiōrēs, maiōrum m. pl. ancestors (11)

male (adv.) badly (5)
    male velle (idiom) to wish ill (12)

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— want more, prefer (12)

malus, -a, -um bad, evil (3)

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain, stay; await (7)

Manius, Maniī, m. Manius (§16)

manus, manūs f. hand; band, troop (8)

Marcus, Marcī m. Marcus (§16)

mare, maris, *-ium n. sea (6)

Mars, Martis m. Mars (§60)

māter, mātris f. mother (6)

maximē (adv.) most greatly; especially (11)

maximus, -a, -um greatest (11)

medius, -a, -um middle (of); as subst., midst (10)

mehercule or meherculēs (interj.) by Hercules! (§71)

—, meī (reflexive pron.) myself (5)

melior, melius (adj.) better (11)

melius (adv.) better (11)

meminī, meminisse (defective verb) remember, be mindful (of) (5)

memoria, memoriae f. memory (12)

mēns, mentis, -ium f. mind; intention, purpose; attitude (6)

Mercurius, Mercuriī m. Mercury (§60)

metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread (14)

metus, metūs m. fear, dread, anxiety (9)

meus, -a, -um my, mine (4); my (own) (5)

mī, masc. sing. voc. of meus, -a, -um (4)

mīles, mīlitis m. soldier (6)

mīlle; mīlia, mīlium thousand (§91)

mīllēsimus, -a, -um thousandth (§91)

Minerva, Minervae f. Minerva (§60)

minimē (adv.) least; not at all (11)

minimus, -a, -um smallest (11)

minor, minus (adj.) smaller (11)

minus (adv.) less (11)

miser, misera, miserum wretched, pitiable, miserable (3)

miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est it moves (one) to pity (15)

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus send (4)

modo (adv.) only, just; now, just now (12); (conj.) provided that (13)

modus, modī m. measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way (9)
quō modō in what manner, how (9)

moenia, moenium n. pl. (city) walls (6)

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus warn; remind; advise (9)

mōns, montis, -ium m. mountain (12)

mōnstrō (1-tr.) show, point out (2)

mora, morae f. delay (3)

morior, morī, mortuus sum die (8)

moror (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait (13)

mors, mortis, -ium f. death (7)

mōs, mōris m. custom, practice; in pl. (sometimes), character (10)

mōtus, mōtūs m. motion, movement; disturbance (8)

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus set in motion, stir (up), move (2)

mox (adv.) soon; then (3)

multum (adv.) much, a lot (5)

multus, -a, -um much, many (3)

mūrus, mūrī m. wall (11)

mūtō (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange (13)

nam (conj.) for (2)

namque (conj.) for in fact (2)

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum be born (10)

nātūra, nātūrae f. nature (6)

nātus, nātī m. son (10)

nauta, nautae m. sailor (1)

-ne (interrog. enclitic particle) added to the first word of a question (2)

-ne . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)

nē (adv.) not (7); (conj.) introduces negative Purpose clause, in order that . . . not (9); introduces negative Indirect Command, that . . . not (9); (conj.) introduces positive Fear clause, that (15)

nē . . . quidem not . . . even (4)

nec or neque (conj.-adv.) and not; neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . neither . . . nor . . . (2)

necesse (indeclinable adj.) necessary (14)

necne (conj.) in Indirect Question, or not (12)

nefās (indeclinable noun) n. (what is divinely) forbidden, sacrilege (12)

nēmō, nēminis m. or f. no one (10)

Neptūnus, Neptūnī m. Neptune (§60)

neque or nec (conj.-adv.) and not; neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . neither . . . nor . . . (2)

Nerō Claudius Caesar, Nerōnis Claudiī Caesaris m. Nero Claudius Caesar, Nero (§60)

nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī or nesciī, nescītus not know (11)

neuter, neutra, neutrum neither (of two) (9)

nihil or nīl (indeclinable noun) n. nothing (3)

nihilum, nihilī or nīlum, nīlī n. nothing (13)

nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless (5)

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— be unwilling, not want, not wish (12)
nōlī, nōlīte (+ inf.) do not (12)

nōmen, nōminis n. name (14)

nōn (adv.) not (2)

nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . . (7)

nōnne (interrog. particle) introduces a direct question expecting the answer "yes" (12)

nōnus, -a, -um ninth (§91)

nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) we; us (4)

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus come to know, learn; *in perfect*, know (10)

noster, nostra, nostrum our, ours (4); our (own) (5)

——, nostrum/nostrī (reflexive pron.) ourselves (5)

novem (indeclinable adj.) nine (§91)

novus, -a, -um new; strange (6)

nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night (8)

nūllus, -a, -um not any, no (9)

num (interrogative particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer "no"; introduces an Indirect Question,* whether (12)

nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen (15)

numquam (adv.) never (6)

nunc (adv.) now (3)

ō (interj.) O (1)

ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (9)

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum forget (+ gen.) (12)

obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātum stand in the way; hinder, block (15)

occidēns, occidentis *m.* west (14)

occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus fall, set; die (14)

octāvus, -a, -um eighth (§91)

octō (indeclinable adj.) eight (§91)

oculus, oculī *m.* eye (9)

ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb) hate (5)

odium, odiī *n.* hatred (3)

omnīnō (adv.) entirely; *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions,* at all (8)

omnis, omne every; all (8)

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, it is proper, it is right (14)

oppidum, oppidī *n.* town (1)

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press on; close; overwhelm, oppress (14)

oppugnō (1-tr.) attack (10)

optimē (adv.) best (11)

optimus, -a, -um best (11)

optō (1-tr.) desire; choose (2)

opus, operis *n.* work, need (10)
   opus est there is need of (+ abl. or nom.) (10)

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.* oration, speech (10)
   ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech (10)

ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.* speaker (10)

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle (15)
   orbis terrārum world (15)

oriēns, orientis *m.* east (14)

orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise, arise (14)

ōrō (1-tr.) pray (for), beg (for) (12)

ōs, ōris *n. in sing. or pl.* mouth; face (14)

P. Ovidius Nāsō, P. Ovidiī Nāsōnis *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso, Ovid (§60)

P. = Publius, Publiī *m.* Publius (§16)

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit it causes (one) to repent *or* regret (15)

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (9)

pars, partis, -ium *f.* part; *in sing. or pl.,* (political) faction (7)

parum (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough; (adv.) too little, inadequately (11)

parvus, -a, -um small, little (3)

pater, patris *m.* father (6)

patior, patī, passus sum experience, suffer, endure; permit, allow (9)

patrēs cōnscrīptī *voc. pl.* enrolled fathers, senators (6)

patria, patriae *f.* country, homeland (1)

paucī, paucae, pauca few (6)

paulum, *paulī *n.* small amount, a little (11)

pāx, pācis *f.* peace; favor (9)

pectus, pectoris *n.* chest, breast; heart (10)

pecūnia, pecūniae *f.* money (1)

peior, peius (comparative adj.) worse (11)

peius (comparative adv.) worse (11)

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus push, drive (off) (9)

per (prep. + acc.) through (4)

perditē (adv.) recklessly, desperately, ruinously (13)

perditus, -a, -um (morally) lost, ruined, depraved (13)

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus destroy; lose (13)

pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus pass away, be destroyed; perish, die (11)

perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus suffer, endure; report (10)

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus
complete, accomplish (5)

perīculum, perīculī *n.* danger (1)

pessimē (adv.) worst (11)

pessimus, -a, -um worst (11)

petō, petere, petiī or petīvī, petītus ask for,
seek; attack (7)

piget, pigēre, piguit it disgusts (one), it irks
(one) (15)

pius, -a, -um dutiful, loyal (5)

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum be pleas-
ing, please (+ dat.) (9)

plūrimē (adv.) most (11)

plūrimus, -a, -um most (11)

plūs (adv.) more (11)

plūs; plūrēs, plūra (adj.) more (11)

poena, poenae *f.* punishment, penalty (2)
poenās dare (idiom) to pay the
penalty (2)

poēta, poētae *m.* poet (1)

Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Cn. Pompeiī
Magnī *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus,
Pompey the Great (§16)

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus put, place;
set aside (4)

populus, populī *m.* (the) people; popu-
lace (3)

M. Porcius Catō, M. Porciī Catōnis *m.*
Marcus Porcius Cato, Cato the Elder
or Cato the Censor (§60)

possum, posse, potuī, —— be able,
can (2)

post (adv.) after(ward), later; behind;
(prep. + acc.) after; behind (7)

postquam (conj.) after (5)

praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus
prefer (to) (12)

praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus
put in charge (of) (12)

praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus
be in charge (of) (12)

praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond; except (12)

premō, premere, pressī, pressus press
(hard); overpower; check (14)

pretium, pretiī *n.* price, value (13)

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (§60)

prīmum (adv.) first; for the first time (11)
quam prīmum as soon as possible (11)

prīmus, -a, -um first (§91)
prīmā lūce (idiom) at daybreak (11)

prior, prius (adj.) earlier (11)

prius (adv.) before,
sooner (11)

priusquam (conj.) before (13)

prō (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of,
for; in return for, instead of (3)

proelium, proeliī *n.* battle (5)

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum
set out, set forth (10)

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus
prevent; prohibit, forbid (15)

Sex. Propertius, Sex. Propertiī *m.* Sextus
Propertius (§60)

propter (prep. + acc.) on account of,
because of (3)

prōvincia, prōvinciae *f.* province (3)

pūblicus, -a, -um public (8)

Publius, Publiī *m.* Publius (§16)

pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est
it makes (one) ashamed (15)

puella, puellae *f.* girl (1)

puer, puerī *m.* boy (1)

pugnō (1-intr.) fight (3)

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful,
handsome (3)

putō (1-tr.) think, suppose (11)

Q. = Quintus, Quintī *m.* Quintus (§16)

quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī or quaesīvī,
quaesītus search for, seek, ask (9)

quālis, quāle what sort of; of which sort,
as (13)

quam (adv.) as, how; (conj.) than (11)

quam ob rem (adv.) on account of which
thing, why; therefore (9)

quam prīmum as soon as possible (11)

quamquam (conj.) although (5)

quantus, -a, -um how much, how great;
as much, as great (13)

quārē (adv.) because of which thing, why;
therefore (9)

quartus, -a, -um fourth (§91)

quattuor (indeclinable adj.) four (§91)

-que (enclitic conj.) and (1)

quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) some, any (14)

quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) what . . . ,
which . . . (9)

quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) who, which,
that (9)

quia (conj.) because (13)

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (indef. pron.)
(a) certain person, (a) certain thing (10)
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (indef. adj.)
(a) certain (10)
quidem (adv.) indeed, certainly; at least (4)
nē . . . quidem not even (4)
quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces Relative Clause of
Characteristic,* who, that . . . not (10);
(conj.) *introduces Doubting clause,* that
(12); (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause,*
that . . . not, from (15)
quīnque (indeclinable adj.) five (§91)
quintus, -a, -um fifth (§91)
Quintus, Quintī *m.* Quintus (§16)
quīque, quaeque, quodque (indef. adj.)
each, every (14)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) who, what (9);
(indef. pron.) someone, something; any-
one, anything (14)
quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) some-
one, something; anyone, anything (14)
quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.)
each/every man/woman, each/every
thing (14)
quō (rel. adv.) to where, whither (10);
(interrog. adv.) to where, whither (12)
quod (conj.) because (13); (conj.) the fact
that (15)
quodsī (conj.) but if (14)
quōminus (conj.) *introduces Prevention
clause,* by which the less, from (15)
quō modō in what manner, how (9)
quoniam (conj.) since, because (5)
quoque (adv.) also, too (8)
quot (indeclinable adj.) how many; as
many (13)

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus seize, tear away,
carry (off) (15)
redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum go back,
return (5)
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus bring back;
report (10)
grātiam or grātiās referre (idiom) to
render thanks, to return a favor (12)
rēfert, rēferre, rētulit it is important, it con-
cerns (15)
rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.* queen (1)
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control (4)
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus leave
(behind), abandon (8)

reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of) (14)
Remus, Remī *m.* Remus (§16)
rēs, reī *f.* thing; property; matter, affair;
activity; situation (8)
rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.* accom-
plishments; history (8)
rēs novae, rērum novārum *f. pl.* revolu-
tion (8)
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae *f.* republic (8)
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōn-
sus answer (2)
rēx, rēgis *m.* king (6)
rogō (1-tr.) ask (for) (12)
Rōma, Rōmae *f.* Rome (6)
Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* (the)
Romans (3)
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman (3)
Rōmulus, Rōmulī *m.* Romulus (§16)
rūmor, rūmōris *m.* rumor (12)
rūs, rūris *n. in sing. or pl.* country(side) (6)

saepe (adv.) often (8)
saepius (adv.) more often (11)
saepissimē (adv.) most often (11)
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage (13)
C. Sallustius Crispus, C. Sallustiī Crispī *m.*
Gaius Sallustius Crispus, Sallust (§16)
salūs, salūtis *f.* safety; health (§71)
salūtem dīcere to say "greetings," to say
hello (§71)
salvē/salvēte hello! good day! (§71)
sapiēns, sapientis wise (11)
sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom (2)
satis or sat (indeclinable subst.) enough;
(adv.) enough, sufficiently (10)
scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime; vil-
lainy (13)
sciō, scīre, scīvī or sciī, scītus know (11)
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus write (4)
secundus, -a, -um second (§91)
sed (conj.) but (2)
semper (adv.) always (3)
Semprōnia, Semprōniae *f.*
Sempronia (§16)
C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semprōniī
Gracchī *m.* Gaius Sempronius
Gracchus (§16)
Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semprōniī
Gracchī *m.* Tiberius Sempronius
Gracchus (§16)
senātus, senātūs *m.* senate (8)

sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* perception, feeling;
  sense (11)

sententia, sententiae *f.* thought, feeling;
  opinion (4)

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive;
  feel (4)

septem (indeclinable adj.) seven (§91)

septimus, -a, -um seventh (§91)

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow (8)

Ser. = Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)

L. Sergius Catilīna, L. Sergiī Catilīnae *m.*
  Lucius Sergius Catilina, Catiline (§16)

servitūs, servitūtis *f.* slavery (6)

Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)

servō (1-tr.) save, preserve (10)

servus, servī *m.* slave (1)

sex (indeclinable adj.) six (§91)

Sex. = Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)

sextus, -a, -um sixth (§91)

Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)

sī (conj.) if (5)

sīc (adv.) thus, so, in this way, in such a
  way (5)

signum, signī *n.* sign, signal; standard (11)

similis, simile similar (+ gen. or dat.) (11)

sine (prep. + abl.) without (3)

socius, -a, -um allied (4)

socius, sociī *m.* ally, comrade (4)

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun (14)

soleō, solēre, solitus sum be accus-
  tomed (11)

sōlum (adv.) only (7)

sōlus, -a, -um alone, only (9)

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen; free,
  release; dissolve (15)

soror, sorōris *f.* sister (6)

Sp. = Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)

speciēs, *speciēī *f.* appearance, aspect (8)

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe (14)

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for) (12)

spēs, speī *f.* hope (9)

Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)

stō, stāre, stetī, statum stand; stand fast,
  endure (10)

studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pur-
  suit, study (2)

sub (prep. + acc.) under; up to; (prep.
  + abl.) under; at the foot of; near (6)

—, suī (reflexive pron.) himself, herself,
  itself; themselves (5)

Sulla, Sullae *m.* Sulla

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus be; exist (2)

summus, -a, -um highest; top (of); last,
  final (11)

superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass (3)

suus, -a, -um his (own), her (own), its
  (own); their (own) (5)

T. = Tītus, Tītī *m.* Titus (§16)

Tacitus, Tacitī *m.* Tacitus (§16)

taedet, taedēre, taesum est it makes (one)
  tired *or* sick (15)

tālis, tāle such, of such a sort (13)

tam (adv.) so (13)

tamen (adv.) nevertheless (5)

tandem (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions
  and commands,* pray, I ask you, then (9)

tantus, -a, -um so much, so great (13)

tēlum, tēlī *n.* spear; weapon (11)

templum, templī *n.* temple (7)

tempus, temporis *n.* time (8)

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus hold, grasp;
  keep, possess; occupy (3)

terra, terrae *f.* land, earth (3)

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus terrify,
  frighten (7)

tertius, -a, -um third (§91)

Ti. = Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius (§16)

Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius (§16)

timeō, timēre, timuī, —— fear, be afraid
  (of) (2)

timor, timōris *m.* fear (6)

Tītus, Tītī *m.* Titus (§16)

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many (13)

tōtus, -a, -um whole (9)

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus hand over,
  surrender; hand down (7)

trēs, tria three (§91)

Troia, Troiae *f.* Troy (§16)

tū, tuī (personal pron.) you (4)

—, tuī (reflexive pron.) yourself (5)

Tullia, Tulliae *f.* Tullia (§16)

M. Tullius Cicerō, M. Tulliī Cicerōnis *m.*
  Marcus Tullius Cicero (§60)

tum *or* tunc (adv.) then, at that time (12)

Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (§60)

turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful (15)

tuus, -a, -um your, yours (4); your (own) (5)

ubi (conj.) when (5); (interrog. adv.) where,
  when (5); (rel. adv.) where (10)

ūllus, -a, -um any (9)

umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade (7)

umquam (adv.) ever (6)

unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence (10); (interrog. adv.) from where, whence (12)

ūnus, -a, -um one; only (9)

urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* city (6)

ut (conj.) as; when (5); (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause*, in order that (9); *introduces Indirect Command*, that (9); (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause*, that . . . not (15)

uter, utra, utrum (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (9)

utinam (particle) *introduces an Optative subjunctive* (7)

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum use; experience, enjoy (+ abl.) (10)

utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question of a double direct or Indirect Question* (12)

utrum . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)

valdē (adv.) strongly

valē/valēte greetings! farewell! (§71)

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus be strong, be able; be well, fare well (§71)

C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valeriī Catullī *m.* Gaius Valerius Catullus (§16)

validus, -a, -um strong; healthy (4)

vel (conj.) or; vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .; (adv.) even (14)

vēlum, vēlī, *n.* sail (2)

vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)

vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus sell (13)

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum come (4)

Venus, Veneris *f.* Venus (§60)

verbum, verbī *n.* word (1)

vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, show respect to; dread, fear (15)

P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliī Marōnis *m.* Publius Vergilius Maro, Vergil (§60)

vērō (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact) (7)

vērum (conj.) but (7)

vērus, -a, -um real, true (7)

Vesta, Vestae *f.* Vesta (§60)

vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.), yours (pl.) (4); your (pl.) (own) (5)

—, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid (15)

vetus, veteris old (14)

via, viae *f.* way, road, street (1)

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see (2); *in passive,* be seen; seem (3)

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus conquer, overcome (7)

vir, virī *m.* man; husband (1)

virtūs, virtūtis *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue (7)

vīs, ——, -ium *f.* force, power; violence; *in pl.,* (physical) strength (6)

vīta, vītae *f.* life (2)

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus live, be alive (6)

vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly (14)

vocō (1-tr.) call; summon; name (2)

volō, velle, voluī, —— be willing, want, wish (12)

bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)

male velle (idiom) to wish ill (12)

vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) you (pl.) (4)

—, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)

vōx, vōcis *f.* voice; word (7)

Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* Vulcan (§60)

vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound (13)

vultus, vultūs *m. in sing. or pl.* expression; face (15)

MORPHOLOGY APPENDIX

Note: Forms in brackets are not introduced in this book.

Verbs

First Conjugation

Principal Parts: **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	

Present

	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			Singular		
1	vocō	vocor	1	vocem	vocer
2	vocās	vocāris/vocāre	2	vocēs	vocēris/vocēre
3	vocat	vocātur	3	vocet	vocētur
			Plural		
1	vocāmus	vocāmur	1	vocēmus	vocēmur
2	vocātis	vocāminī	2	vocētis	vocēminī
3	vocant	vocantur	3	vocent	vocentur

Imperfect

	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			Singular		
1	vocābam	vocābar	1	vocārem	vocārer
2	vocābās	vocābāris/vocābāre	2	vocārēs	vocārēris/vocārēre
3	vocābat	vocābātur	3	vocāret	vocārētur
			Plural		
1	vocābāmus	vocābāmur	1	vocārēmus	vocārēmur
2	vocābātis	vocābāminī	2	vocārētis	vocārēminī
3	vocābant	vocābantur	3	vocārent	vocārentur

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE

Future

	Active	Passive
		Singular
1	vocābō	vocābor
2	vocābis	vocāberis/vocābere
3	vocābit	vocābitur
		Plural
1	vocābimus	vocābimur
2	vocābitis	vocābiminī
3	vocābunt	vocābuntur

Perfect

	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			Singular		
1	vocāvī	vocātus, -a, -um sum	1	vocāverim	vocātus, -a, -um sim
2	vocāvistī	vocātus, -a, -um es	2	vocāveris	vocātus, -a, -um sīs
3	vocāvit	vocātus, -a, -um est	3	vocāverit	vocātus, -a, -um sit
			Plural		
1	vocāvimus	vocātī, -ae, -a sumus	1	vocāverimus	vocātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	vocāvistis	vocātī, -ae, -a estis	2	vocāveritis	vocātī, -ae, -a sītis
3	vocāvērunt/ vocāvēre	vocātī, -ae, -a sunt	3	vocāverint	vocātī, -ae, -a sint

Pluperfect

	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			Singular		
1	vocāveram	vocātus, -a, -um eram	1	vocāvissem	vocātus, -a, -um essem
2	vocāverās	vocātus, -a, -um erās	2	vocāvissēs	vocātus, -a, -um essēs
3	vocāverat	vocātus, -a, -um erat	3	vocāvisset	vocātus, -a, -um esset
			Plural		
1	vocāverāmus	vocātī, -ae, -a erāmus	1	vocāvissēmus	vocātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2	vocāverātis	vocātī, -ae, -a erātis	2	vocāvissētis	vocātī, -ae, -a essētis
3	vocāverant	vocātī, -ae, -a erant	3	vocāvissent	vocātī, -ae, -a essent

Future Perfect

	Active	Passive
		Singular
1	vocāverō	vocātus, -a, -um erō
2	vocāveris	vocātus, -a, -um eris
3	vocāverit	vocātus, -a, -um erit
		Plural
1	vocāverimus	vocātī, -ae, -a erimus
2	vocāveritis	vocātī, -ae, -a eritis
3	vocāverint	vocātī, -ae, -a erunt

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	vocāns, vocantis	
Perfect		vocātus, -a, -um
Future	vocātūrus, -a, -um	vocandus, -a, -um

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	vocāre	vocārī
Perfect	vocāvisse	vocātus, -a, -um esse
Future	vocātūrus, -a, -um esse	[vocātum īrī]

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 vocā	vocāre
Plural	2 vocāte	vocāminī

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 vocātō	vocātor
	3 vocātō	vocātor
Plural	2 vocātōte	
	3 vocantō	vocantor]

Second Conjugation

Principal Parts: moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	

Present

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 moveō	moveor	1 moveam	movear
2 movēs	movēris/movēre	2 moveās	moveāris/moveāre
3 movet	movētur	3 moveat	moveātur
	Plural		
1 movēmus	movēmur	1 moveāmus	moveāmur
2 movētis	movēminī	2 moveātis	moveāminī
3 movent	moventur	3 moveant	moveantur

Imperfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 movēbam	movēbar	1 movērem	movērer
2 movēbās	movēbāris/movēbāre	2 movērēs	movērēris/movērēre
3 movēbat	movēbātur	3 movēret	movērētur
	Plural		
1 movēbāmus	movēbāmur	1 movērēmus	movērēmur
2 movēbātis	movēbāminī	2 movērētis	movērēminī
3 movēbant	movēbantur	3 movērent	movērentur

| INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE |

Future

Active	Passive
	Singular
1 movēbō	movēbor
2 movēbis	movēberis/movēbere
3 movēbit	movēbitur
	Plural
1 movēbimus	movēbimur
2 movēbitis	movēbiminī
3 movēbunt	movēbuntur

Perfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular	
1 mōvī	mōtus, -a, -um sum	1 mōverim	mōtus, -a, -um sim
2 mōvistī	mōtus, -a, -um es	2 mōveris	mōtus, -a, -um sīs
3 mōvit	mōtus, -a, -um est	3 mōverit	mōtus, -a, -um sit
		Plural	
1 mōvimus	mōtī, -ae, -a sumus	1 mōverimus	mōtī, -ae, -a sīmus
2 mōvistis	mōtī, -ae, -a estis	2 mōveritis	mōtī, -ae, -a sītis
3 mōvērunt/mōvēre	mōtī, -ae, -a sunt	3 mōverint	mōtī, -ae, -a sint

Pluperfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular	
1 mōveram	mōtus, -a, -um eram	1 mōvissem	mōtus, -a, -um essem
2 mōverās	mōtus, -a, -um erās	2 mōvissēs	mōtus, -a, -um essēs
3 mōverat	mōtus, -a, -um erat	3 mōvisset	mōtus, -a, -um esset
		Plural	
1 mōverāmus	mōtī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 mōvissēmus	mōtī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 mōverātis	mōtī, -ae, -a erātis	2 mōvissētis	mōtī, -ae, -a essētis
3 mōverant	mōtī, -ae, -a erant	3 mōvissent	mōtī, -ae, -a essent

Future Perfect

Active	Passive
	Singular
1 mōverō	mōtus, -a, -um erō
2 mōveris	mōtus, -a, -um eris
3 mōverit	mōtus, -a, -um erit
	Plural
1 mōverimus	mōtī, -ae, -a erimus
2 mōveritis	mōtī, -ae, -a eritis
3 mōverint	mōtī, -ae, -a erunt

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	movēns, moventis	
Perfect		mōtus, -a, -um
Future	mōtūrus, -a, -um	movendus, -a, -um

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	movēre	movērī
Perfect	mōvisse	mōtus, -a, -um esse
Future	mōtūrus, -a, -um esse	[mōtum īrī]

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 movē	movēre
Plural	2 movēte	movēminī

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 movētō	movētor
	3 movētō	movētor
Plural	2 movētōte	
	3 moventō	moventor]

Third Conjugation

Principal Parts: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	

Present

	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	regō	regor	1	regam	regar
2	regis	regeris/regere	2	regās	regāris/regāre
3	regit	regitur	3	regat	regātur
		Plural			
1	regimus	regimur	1	regāmus	regāmur
2	regitis	regiminī	2	regātis	regāminī
3	regunt	reguntur	3	regant	regantur

Imperfect

	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular			
1	regēbam	regēbar	1	regerem	regerer
2	regēbās	regēbāris/regēbāre	2	regerēs	regerēris/regerēre
3	regēbat	regēbātur	3	regeret	regerētur
		Plural			
1	regēbāmus	regēbāmur	1	regerēmus	regerēmur
2	regēbātis	regēbāminī	2	regerētis	regerēminī
3	regēbant	regēbantur	3	regerent	regerentur

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	

Future

Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 regam	regar		
2 regēs	regēris/regēre		
3 reget	regētur		
Plural			
1 regēmus	regēmur		
2 regētis	regēminī		
3 regent	regentur		

Perfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
Singular			
1 rēxī	rēctus, -a, -um sum	1 rēxerim	rēctus, -a, -um sim
2 rēxistī	rēctus, -a, -um es	2 rēxeris	rēctus, -a, -um sīs
3 rēxit	rēctus, -a, -um est	3 rēxerit	rēctus, -a, -um sit
Plural			
1 rēximus	rēctī, -ae, -a sumus	1 rēxerimus	rēctī, -ae, -a sīmus
2 rēxistis	rēctī, -ae, -a estis	2 rēxeritis	rēctī, -ae, -a sītis
3 rēxērunt/rēxēre	rēctī, -ae, -a sunt	3 rēxerint	rēctī, -ae, -a sint

---

Pluperfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
Singular			
1 rēxeram	rēctus, -a, -um eram	1 rēxissem	rēctus, -a, -um essem
2 rēxerās	rēctus, -a, -um erās	2 rēxissēs	rēctus, -a, -um essēs
3 rēxerat	rēctus, -a, -um erat	3 rēxisset	rēctus, -a, -um esset
Plural			
1 rēxerāmus	rēctī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 rēxissēmus	rēctī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 rēxerātis	rēctī, -ae, -a erātis	2 rēxissētis	rēctī, -ae, -a essētis
3 rēxerant	rēctī, -ae, -a erant	3 rēxissent	rēctī, -ae, -a essent

---

Future Perfect

Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 rēxerō	rēctus, -a, -um erō		
2 rēxeris	rēctus, -a, -um eris		
3 rēxerit	rēctus, -a, -um erit		
Plural			
1 rēxerimus	rēctī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 rēxeritis	rēctī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 rēxerint	rēctī, -ae, -a erunt		

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	regēns, regentis	
Perfect		rēctus, -a, -um
Future	rēctūrus, -a, -um	regendus, -a, -um

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	regere	regī
Perfect	rēxisse	rēctus, -a, -um esse
Future	rēctūrus, -a, -um esse	[rēctum īrī]

Imperative

Present	Active		Passive
Singular	2	rege	regere
Plural	2	regite	regiminī

[Future	Active		Passive
Singular	2	regitō	regitor
	3	regitō	regitor
Plural	2	regitōte	
	3	reguntō	reguntor]

Third I-stem Conjugation

Principal Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

	INDICATIVE			**SUBJUNCTIVE**	

Present

	Active	Passive			Active	Passive
			Singular			
1	capiō	capior		1	capiam	capiar
2	capis	caperis/capere		2	capiās	capiāris/capiāre
3	capit	capitur		3	capiat	capiātur
			Plural			
1	capimus	capimur		1	capiāmus	capiāmur
2	capitis	capiminī		2	capiātis	capiāminī
3	capiunt	capiuntur		3	capiant	capiantur

Imperfect

	Active	Passive			Active	Passive
			Singular			
1	capiēbam	capiēbar		1	caperem	caperer
2	capiēbās	capiēbāris/capiēbāre		2	caperēs	caperēris/caperēre
3	capiēbat	capiēbātur		3	caperet	caperētur
			Plural			
1	capiēbāmus	capiēbāmur		1	caperēmus	caperēmur
2	capiēbātis	capiēbāminī		2	caperētis	caperēminī
3	capiēbant	capiēbantur		3	caperent	caperentur

| INDICATIVE | | SUBJUNCTIVE | |

Future

Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 capiam	capiar		
2 capiēs	capiēris/capiēre		
3 capiet	capiētur		
Plural			
1 capiēmus	capiēmur		
2 capiētis	capiēminī		
3 capient	capientur		

Perfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 cēpī	captus, -a, -um sum	1 cēperim	captus, -a, -um sim
2 cēpistī	captus, -a, -um es	2 cēperis	captus, -a, -um sīs
3 cēpit	captus, -a, -um est	3 cēperit	captus, -a, -um sit
	Plural		
1 cēpimus	captī, -ae, -a sumus	1 cēperimus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus
2 cēpistis	captī, -ae, -a estis	2 cēperitis	captī, -ae, -a sītis
3 cēpērunt/cēpēre	captī, -ae, -a sunt	3 cēperint	captī, -ae, -a sint

Pluperfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 cēperam	captus, -a, -um eram	1 cēpissem	captus, -a, -um essem
2 cēperās	captus, -a, -um erās	2 cēpissēs	captus, -a, -um essēs
3 cēperat	captus, -a, -um erat	3 cēpisset	captus, -a, -um esset
	Plural		
1 cēperāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 cēpissēmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 cēperātis	captī, -ae, -a erātis	2 cēpissētis	captī, -ae, -a essētis
3 cēperant	captī, -ae, -a erant	3 cēpissent	captī, -ae, -a essent

Future Perfect

Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 cēperō	captus, -a, -um erō		
2 cēperis	captus, -a, -um eris		
3 cēperit	captus, -a, -um erit		
Plural			
1 cēperimus	captī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 cēperitis	captī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 cēperint	captī, -ae, -a erunt		

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	**capiēns, capientis**	
Perfect		**captus, -a, -um**
Future	**captūrus, -a, -um**	**capiendus, -a, -um**

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**capere**	**capī**
Perfect	**cēpisse**	**captus, -a, -um esse**
Future	**captūrus, -a, -um esse**	**[captum īrī]**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **cape**	**capere**
Plural	2 **capite**	**capiminī**

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **capitō**	**capitor**
	3 **capitō**	**capitor**
Plural	2 **capitōte**	
	3 **capiuntō**	**capiuntor]**

Fourth Conjugation

Principal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	

Present

Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 **audiō**	**audior**	1 **audiam**	**audiar**
2 **audīs**	**audīris/audīre**	2 **audiās**	**audiāris/audiāre**
3 **audit**	**audītur**	3 **audiat**	**audiātur**
		Plural		
1 **audīmus**	**audīmur**	1 **audiāmus**	**audiāmur**
2 **audītis**	**audīminī**	2 **audiātis**	**audiāminī**
3 **audiunt**	**audiuntur**	3 **audiant**	**audiantur**

Imperfect

Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 **audiēbam**	**audiēbar**	1 **audīrem**	**audīrer**
2 **audiēbās**	**audiēbāris/audiēbāre**	2 **audīrēs**	**audīrēris/audīrēre**
3 **audiēbat**	**audiēbātur**	3 **audīret**	**audīrētur**
		Plural		
1 **audiēbāmus**	**audiēbāmur**	1 **audīrēmus**	**audīrēmur**
2 **audiēbātis**	**audiēbāminī**	2 **audīrētis**	**audīrēminī**
3 **audiēbant**	**audiēbantur**	3 **audīrent**	**audīrentur**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	

Future

Active	Passive		
	Singular		
1 audiam	audiar		
2 audiēs	audiēris/audiēre		
3 audiet	audiētur		
	Plural		
1 audiēmus	audiēmur		
2 audiētis	audiēminī		
3 audient	audientur		

Perfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 audīvī	audītus, -a, -um sum	1 audīverim	audītus, -a, -um sim
2 audīvistī	audītus, -a, -um es	2 audīveris	audītus, -a, -um sīs
3 audīvit	audītus, -a, -um est	3 audīverit	audītus, -a, -um sit
	Plural		
1 audīvimus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus	1 audīverimus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2 audīvistis	audītī, -ae, -a estis	2 audīveritis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3 audīvērunt/audīvēre	audītī, -ae, -a sunt	3 audīverint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

Pluperfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 audīveram	audītus, -a, -um eram	1 audīvissem	audītus, -a, -um essem
2 audīverās	audītus, -a, -um erās	2 audīvissēs	audītus, -a, -um essēs
3 audīverat	audītus, -a, -um erat	3 audīvisset	audītus, -a, -um esset
	Plural		
1 audīverāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 audīvissēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 audīverātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis	2 audīvissētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3 audīverant	audītī, -ae, -a erant	3 audīvissent	audītī, -ae, -a essent

Future Perfect

Active	Passive		
	Singular		
1 audīverō	audītus, -a, -um erō		
2 audīveris	audītus, -a, -um eris		
3 audīverit	audītus, -a, -um erit		
	Plural		
1 audīverimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 audīveritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 audīverint	audītī, -ae, -a erunt		

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	audiēns, audientis	
Perfect		audītus, -a, -um
Future	audītūrus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	audīre	audīrī
Perfect	audīvisse	audītus, -a, -um esse
Future	audītūrus, -a, -um esse	[audītum īrī]

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 audī	audīre
Plural	2 audīte	audīminī

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 audītō	audītor
	3 audītō	audītor
Plural	2 audītōte	
	3 audiuntō	audiuntor]

Irregular Verbs

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*		*Present*	*Imperfect*
		Singular			
1 sum	eram	erō		sim	essem
2 es	erās	eris		sīs	essēs
3 est	erat	erit		sit	esset
		Plural			
1 sumus	erāmus	erimus		sīmus	essēmus
2 estis	erātis	eritis		sītis	essētis
3 sunt	erant	erunt		sint	essent
Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*		*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
		Singular			
1 fuī	fueram	fuerō		fuerim	fuissem
2 fuistī	fuerās	fueris		fueris	fuissēs
3 fuit	fuerat	fuerit		fuerit	fuisset
		Plural			
1 fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus		fuerimus	fuissēmus
2 fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis		fueritis	fuissētis
3 fuērunt/fuēre	fuerant	fuerint		fuerint	fuissent

Participle:	Future Active: futūrus, -a, -um

Infinitive:	Present Active: esse
	Perfect Active: fuisse
	Future Active: futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore

[*Imperative*	*Present Active*		*Future Active*	
Singular	2 es	2 estō		3 estō
Plural	2 este	2 estōte		3 suntō]

Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
		Singular		
1 possum	poteram	poterō	possim	possem
2 potes	poterās	poteris	possīs	possēs
3 potest	poterat	poterit	possit	posset
		Plural		
1 possumus	poterāmus	poterimus	possīmus	possēmus
2 potestis	poterātis	poteritis	possītis	possētis
3 possunt	poterant	poterunt	possint	possent
Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*	*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
		Singular		
1 potuī	potueram	potuerō	potuerim	potuissem
2 potuistī	potuerās	potueris	potueris	potuissēs
3 potuit	potuerat	potuerit	potuerit	potuisset
		Plural		
1 potuimus	potuerāmus	potuerimus	potuerimus	potuissēmus
2 potuistis	potuerātis	potueritis	potueritis	potuissētis
3 potuērunt/ potuēre	potuerant	potuerint	potuerint	potuissent

Infinitive:	Present Active: **posse**	Perfect Active: **potuisse**

Principal Parts: **eō, īre, iī or īvī, itum**

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
		Singular		
1 eō	ībam	ībō	eam	īrem
2 īs	ībās	ībis	eās	īrēs
3 it	ībat	ībit	eat	īret
		Plural		
1 īmus	ībāmus	ībimus	eāmus	īrēmus
2 ītis	ībātis	ībitis	eātis	īrētis
3 eunt	ībant	ībunt	eant	īrent

INDICATIVE			**SUBJUNCTIVE**	
Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*	*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
		Singular		
1 iī/īvī	ieram/īveram	ierō/īverō	ierim/īverim	īssem/īvissem
2 īstī/īvistī	ierās/īverās	ieris/īveris	ieris/īveris	īssēs/īvissēs
3 iit/īt/īvit	ierat/īverat	ierit/īverit	ierit/īverit	īsset/īvisset
		Plural		
1 iimus/īmus/	ierāmus/	ierimus/	ierimus/	īssēmus/
īvimus	īverāmus	īverimus	īverimus	īvissēmus
2 īstis/īvistis	ierātis/īverātis	ieritis/īveritis	ieritis/īveritis	īssētis/īvissētis
3 iērunt/iēre	ierant/īverant	ierint/īverint	ierint/īverint	īssent/īvissent
īvērunt/īvēre				

Participle		
	Active	Passive
Present	iēns, euntis	
Perfect		itum
Future	itūrus, -a, -um	eundum

Infinitive		
	Active	Passive
Present	īre	[īrī]
Perfect	īsse/īvisse	itum esse
Future	itūrus, -a, -um esse	

Imperative	*Present Active*	[*Future Active*	
Singular	2 ī	2 ītō	3 ītō
Plural	2 īte	2 ītōte	3 euntō]

Principal Parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

INDICATIVE			**SUBJUNCTIVE**	
Present				
Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 ferō	feror		1 feram	ferar
2 fers	ferris/ferre		2 ferās	ferāris/ferāre
3 fert	fertur		3 ferat	ferātur
		Plural		
1 ferimus	ferimur		1 ferāmus	ferāmur
2 fertis	feriminī		2 ferātis	ferāminī
3 ferunt	feruntur		3 ferant	ferantur

<div style="text-align:center">INDICATIVE   SUBJUNCTIVE</div>

Imperfect

Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 ferēbam	ferēbar		1 ferrem	ferrer
2 ferēbās	ferēbāris/ferēbāre		2 ferrēs	ferrēris/ferrēre
3 ferēbat	ferēbātur		3 ferret	ferrētur
		Plural		
1 ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur		1 ferrēmus	ferrēmur
2 ferēbātis	ferēbāminī		2 ferrētis	ferrēminī
3 ferēbant	ferēbantur		3 ferrent	ferrentur

Future

Active	Passive
	Singular
1 feram	ferar
2 ferēs	ferēris/ferēre
3 feret	ferētur
	Plural
1 ferēmus	ferēmur
2 ferētis	ferēminī
3 ferent	ferentur

Perfect

Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 tulī	lātus, -a, -um sum		1 tulerim	lātus, -a, -um sim
2 tulistī	lātus, -a, -um es		2 tuleris	lātus, -a, -um sīs
3 tulit	lātus, -a, -um est		3 tulerit	lātus, -a, -um sit
		Plural		
1 tulimus	lātī, -ae, -a sumus		1 tulerimus	lātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2 tulistis	lātī, -ae, -a estis		2 tuleritis	lātī, -ae, -a sītis
3 tulērunt/tulēre	lātī, -ae, -a sunt		3 tulerint	lātī, -ae, -a sint

Pluperfect

Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 tuleram	lātus, -a, -um eram		1 tulissem	lātus, -a, -um essem
2 tulerās	lātus, -a, -um erās		2 tulissēs	lātus, -a, -um essēs
3 tulerat	lātus, -a, -um erat		3 tulisset	lātus, -a, -um esset
		Plural		
1 tulerāmus	lātī, -ae, -a erāmus		1 tulissēmus	lātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 tulerātis	lātī, -ae, -a erātis		2 tulissētis	lātī, -ae, -a essētis
3 tulerant	lātī, -ae, -a erant		3 tulissent	lātī, -ae, -a essent

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE

uture Perfect

Active		Passive
	Singular	
1 tulerō		lātus, -a, -um erō
2 tuleris		lātus, -a, -um eris
3 tulerit		lātus, -a, -um erit
	Plural	
1 tulerimus		lātī, -ae, -a erimus
2 tuleritis		lātī, -ae, -a eritis
3 tulerint		lātī, -ae, -a erunt

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	ferēns, ferentis	
Perfect		lātus, -a, -um
Future	lātūrus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	ferre	ferrī
Perfect	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse
Future	lātūrus, -a, -um esse	[lātum īrī]

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 fer	ferre
Plural	2 ferte	feriminī

[Future	Active	
Singular	2 fertō	fertor
	3 fertō	fertor
Plural	2 fertōte	——
	3 feruntō	feruntur]

Principal Parts:	volō, velle, voluī, ——
	nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——
	mālō, mālle, māluī, ——

	INDICATIVE ACTIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE		

Present

			Singular			
1 volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
2 vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3 vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
			Plural			
1 volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2 vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3 volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint

| | INDICATIVE ACTIVE | | | SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE | | |

Imperfect

Singular

1 volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2 volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3 volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	vellet	nōlit	māllet

Plural

1 volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2 volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3 volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	vellent	nōllent	māllent

Future

Singular

1 volam	*nōlam	*mālam
2 volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3 volet	nōlet	mālet

Plural

1 volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2 volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3 volent	nōlent	mālent

Perfect

Singular

1 voluī	nōluī	māluī	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2 voluistī	nōluistī	mālistī	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3 voluit	nōluit	māluit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit

Plural

1 voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2 voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3 voluērunt/	nōluērunt/	māluērunt/	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint
voluēre	nōluēre	māluēre			

Pluperfect

Singular

1 volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2 voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3 voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset

Plural

1 voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2 voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3 voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Future Perfect

	Singular		
1	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
2	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
	Plural		
1	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

Participle:	Present Active: volēns, volentis; nōlēns, nōlentis
Infinitive:	Present Active: velle, nōlle, mālle
	Perfect Active: voluisse, nōluisse, māluisse
Imperative	Present Active: nōlī (2nd sing.), nōlīte (2nd pl.)

fīō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE ACTIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE	
Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
		Singular		
1 fīō	fīēbam	fīam	fīam	fierem
2 fīs	fīēbās	fīēs	fīās	fierēs
3 fit	fīēbat	fīēt	fīat	fieret
		Plural		
1 fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus	fīāmus	fierēmus
2 fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis	fīātis	fierētis
3 fīunt	fīēbant	fīent	fīant	fierent

Infinitive:	Present Active: fierī
Imperative	Present Active: fī (2nd sing.), fīte (2nd pl.)

Nouns

First Declension

puella, puellae *f.*

Second Declension

servus, servī *m.*
puer, puerī *m.*
perīculum, perīculī *n.*

		M./F.		N.
Singular				
Nom.	puella	servus	puer	perīculum
Gen.	puellae	servī	puerī	perīculī
Dat.	puellae	servō	puerō	perīculō
Acc.	puellam	servum	puerum	perīculum
Abl.	puellā	servō	puerō	perīculō
Voc.	puella	serve	puer	perīculum
Plural				
Nom./Voc.	puellae	servī	puerī	perīcula
Gen.	puellārum	servōrum	puerōrum	perīculōrum
Dat.	puellīs	servīs	puerīs	perīculīs
Acc.	puellās	servōs	puerōs	perīcula
Abl.	puellīs	servīs	puerīs	perīculīs

Third Declension

mīles, mīlitis *m.*
urbs, urbis, -ium *f.*

corpus, corporis *n.*
animal, animālis, -ium *n.*

	M./F.	M./F. I-stem	N.	N. I-stem
Singular				
Nom./Voc.	mīles	urbs	corpus	animal
Gen.	mīlitis	urbis	corporis	animālis
Dat.	mīlitī	urbī	corporī	animālī
Acc.	mīlitem	urbem	corpus	animal
Abl.	mīlite	urbe	corpore	animālī
Plural				
Nom./Voc.	mīlitēs	urbēs	corpora	animālia
Gen.	mīlitum	urbium	corporum	animālium
Dat.	mīlitibus	urbibus	corporibus	animālibus
Acc.	mīlitēs	urbēs/urbīs	corpora	animālia
Abl.	mīlitibus	urbibus	corporibus	animālibus

Fourth Declension

mōtus, mōtūs *m.*
cornū, cornūs *n.*

	M./F.	[N.
Singular		
Nom./Voc.	mōtus	cornū
Gen.	mōtūs	cornūs
Dat.	mōtuī/mōtū	cornū
Acc.	mōtum	cornū
Abl.	mōtū	cornū
Plural		
Nom./Voc.	mōtūs	cornua
Gen.	mōtuum	cornuum
Dat.	mōtibus	cornibus
Acc.	mōtūs	cornua
Abl.	mōtibus	cornibus]

Fifth Declension

rēs, reī *f.*
aciēs, aciēī *f.*

	Stem ends in *consonant*	Stem ends in *vowel*
rēs	aciēs	
reī	aciēī	
reī	aciēī	
rem	aciem	
rē	aciē	
rēs	aciēs	
rērum	aciērum	
rēbus	aciēbus	
rēs	aciēs	
rēbus	aciēbus	

Adjectives and Pronouns

First-Second-Declension Adjectives

bonus, bona, bonum
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

Singular	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Plural						
Nom./ Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bonōs	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

Third-Declension Adjectives

With three nominative singular forms: ācer, ācris, ācre
With two nominative singular forms: fortis, forte

Singular	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	fortis	forte
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	fortis	fortis	fortis
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī	fortī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	fortem	fortem	forte
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī	fortī
Plural						
Nom./Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	ācrēs/ācrīs	ācrēs/ācrīs	ācria	fortēs/ fortīs	fortēs/ fortīs	fortia
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

With one nominative singular form: ingēns, ingentis; vocāns, vocantis

Singular	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	ingēns	ingēns	ingēns	vocāns	vocāns	vocāns
Gen.	ingentis	ingentis	ingentis	vocantis	vocantis	vocantis
Dat.	ingentī	ingentī	ingentī	vocantī	vocantī	vocantī
Acc.	ingentem	ingentem	ingēns	vocantem	vocantem	vocāns
Abl.	ingentī	ingentī	ingentī	vocantī/ vocante	vocantī/ vocante	vocantī/ vocante
Plural						
Nom./Voc.	ingentēs	ingentēs	ingentia	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
Gen.	ingentium	ingentium	ingentium	vocantium	vocantium	vocantium
Dat.	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus
Acc.	ingentēs/ ingentīs	ingentēs/ ingentīs	ingentia	vocantēs/ vocantīs	vocantēs/ vocantīs	vocantia
Abl.	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus

Comparative Adjectives

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	pulchrior	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs	pulchriōrēs	pulchriōra
Gen.	pulchriōris	pulchriōris	pulchriōris	pulchriōrum	pulchriōrum	pulchriōrum
Dat.	pulchriōrī	pulchriōrī	pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus
Acc.	pulchriōrem	pulchriōrem	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs/ pulchriōrīs	pulchriōrēs/ pulchriōrīs	pulchriōra
Abl.	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns

hic, haec, hoc

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

is, ea, id

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī/iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs

iste, ista, istud

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Personal Pronouns

First Person	ego, meī	
	nōs, nostrum/nostrī	
Second Person	tū, tuī	
	vōs, vestrum/vestrī	

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum/nostrī	tuī	vestrum/vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

Third Person   is, ea, id

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī/iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs

Reflexive Pronouns

First Person	——, meī	
	——, nostrum/nostrī	
Second Person	——, tuī	
	——, vestrum/vestrī	
Third Person	——, suī	

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Sing./Pl.
Nom.	——	——	——	——	——
Gen.	meī	nostrum/nostrī	tuī	vestrum/vestrī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē/sēsē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē/sēsē

Intensive Adjective

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Relative Pronoun

quī, quae, quod

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective

quis, quid

	Singular			Plural		
	M./F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid		quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui		quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid		quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō		quibus	quibus	quibus

quī, quae, quod

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

aliquis, aliquid (pron.)

Singular

	M./F.	N.
Nom.	aliquis	aliquid
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā

Does not occur in the plural

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (adj.)

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Does not occur in the plural

quis, quid (pron.)

	Singular		*Plural*		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

quī, qua, quod (adj.)

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	qua	quod	quī	quae	qua
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	qua
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

quisquam, quicquam (pron.)

Singular

	M./F.	N.
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam

Does not occur in the plural

quisque, quidque (pron.)

	Singular			Plural		
	M./F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quisque	quidque (quicque)		quīque	quaeque	quaeque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque		quōrumque	quārumque	quōrumque
Dat.	cuique	cuique		quibusque	quibusque	quibusque
Acc.	quemque	quidque (quicque)		quōsque	quāsque	quaeque
Abl.	quōque	quāque		quibusque	quibusque	quibusque

quīque, quaeque, quodque (adj.)

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīque	quaeque	quodque	quīque	quaeque	quaeque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	quōrumque	quārumque	quōrumque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	cuique	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque
Acc.	quemque	quamque	quodque	quōsque	quāsque	quaeque
Abl.	quōque	quāque	quōque	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.)

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (adj.)

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

Irregular Adjectives

First-Second-Declension Adjectives Irregular in the Singular Only

alius, alia, aliud
alter, altera, alterum
neuter, neutra, neutrum
nūllus, -a, -um
sōlus, -a, -um
tōtus, -a, -um
ūllus, -a, -um
ūnus, -a, -um
uter, utra, utrum

Singular	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

īdem, eadem, idem

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem/eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem

Adverbs

Adverbs in the Positive Degree Formed from First-Second-Declension Adjectives

acerbē < acerbus, -a, -um
pulchrē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

Adverbs in the Positive Degree Formed from Third-Declension Adjectives

fortiter < fortis, forte

Adverbs in the Comparative Degree

acerbius < acerbus, -a, -um
pulchrius < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
fortius < fortis, forte

Adverbs in the Superlative Degree

acerbissimē < acerbus, -a, -um
pulcherrimē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
fortissimē < fortis, forte

APPENDIX P

Prefixes may be used to form compound verbs, nouns, adjectives, or adverbs. In the list of prefixes below the first form given is the *unassimilated* form. It is followed, where applicable, by forms of the prefix that may occur according to fixed rules of assimilation and compensatory lengthening. The meanings given are the general meanings associated with these prefixes, and often one may guess the meanings of compound words with a knowledge of these meanings and the meanings of the simple word to which a prefix has been joined.

In this list prefixes that may be used separately as adverbs, prepositions, or both are *italicized*.

ā-, *ab-*, *abs-*, au- from, away from; at a distance; completely, thoroughly; *indicates absence*

ad-, ac-, af-, ag-, al-, ar-, as-, at- to, toward; against; upon; near; *intensifier*

ante- before; in front

circum- around; round about

com-, co-, col-, con-, cor- (< *cum*-) together (with); completely

dē- down from; utterly

dis-, dī-, dif- apart; in different directions

ē-, *ex-*, ef- out, away; thoroughly

in-[1] in, on; against

in-[2], il-, im-, ir- not

inter- between; at intervals; to the bottom

ob-, oc-, of-, op- to meet; toward; against

per- through; thoroughly

post- after

prae- in front; ahead; *with adjectives, indicates preeminence in the quality,* very

praeter- past; by; beyond

prō-, pro-, prōd- forward, forth; in front of

re-, red- back; again

sē- apart

sub-, suc-, suf-, sum-, sup-, sur-, sus- under; up from under; somewhat

super- over; above

trāns- across

INDEX OF
AUTHORS AND PASSAGES

A boldfaced citation indicates a Longer Reading or a Continuous Reading. An asterisk next to a page number indicates that a biography of an author or a description of a work appears with the passage.

GENERAL INDEX